Marcus Tullius Cicero

From the bust in the Vatican
MARCUS TULLIUS CICERO

SEVEN ORATIONS

WITH SELECTIONS FROM THE LETTERS, DE SENECTUTE, AND SALLUST'S BELLUM CATILINAE

EDITED

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES, GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX, AND PROSE COMPOSITION

BY

WALTER B. GUNNISON, Ph.D.
LATE PRINCIPAL ERASMUS HALL HIGH SCHOOL,
BROOKLYN, NEW YORK
AND

WALTER S. HARLEY, A.M.
TEACHER OF LATIN, ERASMUS HALL HIGH SCHOOL

SILVER, BURDETT AND COMPANY
BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO
Copyright, 1912, by
Silver, Burdett and Company
PREFACE

The great success of the plan of the previous Latin books of this series has been an encouragement to the authors to present this volume of the works of Cicero and other reading matter for the third year in college preparatory work. The orations selected are those usually required for reading, supplemented by selections from Cicero's Letters and De Senectute and from Sallust, as recommended by the American Philological Association and by the Regents of the State of New York.

The general arrangement of the book is that which was followed in the Caesar text which preceded it,—that is, sufficient grammar has been furnished for the full explanation of the text, with careful references to all the standard grammars for fuller explanation. This is followed also by exercises in prose composition giving as much as usually can be done during the year by an ordinary class. A very careful effort has been made to present the essential grammatical points of the author and the essential characteristics of his style. This, together with the full vocabulary and notes, it is hoped will equip the pupils fully for the reading of the third year.

We wish to acknowledge the valuable criticism of the manuscript, made by Dr. Sidney G. Stacey and by Dr. William F. Tibbetts.

THE AUTHORS.

Erasmus Hall High School, Brooklyn, N.Y.
May 1, 1912.
PUBLISHERS' NOTE

For helpful suggestions in regard to the illustrations and for the loan of valuable photographs, the publishers desire to express their indebtedness to Professor Adeline Belle Hawes, of Wellesley College; Professor John Francis Greene, of Brown University; Professor Alexander Rice, of Boston University; and Mrs. Harriet Peirce Fuller, of the English High School, Providence. Thanks are also due to the Boston Museum of Fine Arts, the Boston Public Library, and the Farnsworth Art Gallery at Wellesley College, for courteous permission to reproduce photographs from their collections.
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>List of Maps</th>
<th>viii</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>List of Illustrations</td>
<td>ix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introduction:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marcus Tullius Cicero</td>
<td>xvii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roman Oratory</td>
<td>xxvi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roman Citizens</td>
<td>xxvii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Popular Assemblies</td>
<td>xxviii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Senate</td>
<td>xxx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Magistrates</td>
<td>xxxii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Courts</td>
<td>xxxvi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provinces</td>
<td>xxxvi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Forum and the Public Buildings</td>
<td>xxxvii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Works of Reference</td>
<td>xl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Orations:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oratio in Catilinam Prima</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oratio in Catilinam Secunda</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oratio in Catilinam Tertia</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oratio in Catilinam Quarta</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>De Imperio Cn. Pompei Oratio</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pro Archia Poeta Oratio</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Selections for Sight Reading:</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pro M. Marcello Oratio</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epistulœ Selectœ</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cato Maior De Senectute Liber</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Sallusti Bellum Catilinae</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

vii
CONTENTS—LIST OF MAPS

Abbreviations .................................................. 180
Notes ............................................................... 181
Grammatical Appendix ................................. 284
Latin Prose Composition ......................... 346
English-Latin Vocabulary .......................... 399
Latin-English Vocabulary .......................... 415

LIST OF MAPS

Italy in Cicero's Time ........................................... 20
The Roman Empire in Greece and Asia Minor .... 74
**LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS**

[Note. — Nearly all of the illustrations in this book have been made from photographs. In the few exceptional cases, the publishers take pleasure in stating in this list the works to which they are indebted.]

Marcus Tullius Cicero. From the bust in the Vatican, Rome.

_Brunn-Arndt photograph._ [For discussion, see Bernoulli, v. I, pp. 138–140, T. xii; Burckhardt, v. I, p. 165]  *Frontispiece*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IN THE INTRODUCTION</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scenes from the life of a famous Roman. Relief from a sarcophagus in the Galleria degli Uffizi, Florence</td>
<td>xvii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;Cicero’s Tower&quot; at Arpinum</td>
<td>xviii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antium</td>
<td>xx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>So-called ruins of Cicero's villa at Tusculum</td>
<td>xxi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raphael’s idea of Cicero. From Raphael’s sketch book in the Museo Civico, Venice</td>
<td>xxvi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cicero before the Senate. From one of the Pomfret Marbles in the Ashmolean Museum at Oxford, England. Photographed from the engraving by J. K. Sherwin, in <em>Oxonii, E Typographeo Clarendoniano</em>, 1783</td>
<td>xlii</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IN THE TEXT</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Headpiece: Roman eagle and oak wreath. Ornament from Trajan’s Forum; now in the vestibule of the Church of the Santi Apostoli, Rome</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The insignia of the Pontificate. From the frieze of the temple of Vespasian</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The end of a Roman bronze bed (Pompeii). Museo Nazionale, Naples</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Image</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cicero and Catiline in the Senate. From the painting by Maccari.</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A city gate. Porta Latina, in Rome, as it is to-day.</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A domestic shrine. In the middle, the genius of the master of the house, sacrificing, holding a libation saucer and box of incense; at the sides, two Lares (household gods), each with a drinking horn and pail; below, a crested serpent about to devour the offerings; in the pediment above, sacrificial implements. From the house of the Vettii, Pompeii.</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ruins of the temple of Jupiter Stator. On the Palatine Hill, Rome.</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Roman Forum as it is to-day. View from the Tabularium, looking toward the Coliseum. The columns of the Temple of Saturn are prominent at the right. (See map, p. xxxix) In the distance (right) the Palatine Hill.</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A gladiator’s helmet, with reliefs representing an episode of the Trojan war (Herculaneum). Museo Nazionale, Naples.</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The end of a Roman banquet. From a Pompeian wall painting, Museo Nazionale, Naples.</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Roman sacrifice, showing soldiers carrying the signa militaria. Relief of the time of Marcus Aurelius, from the Arch of Constantine, Rome.</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ruins of the Roman theater at Fiesole (Faesulae).</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L. Cornelius Sulla. From the head in the Vatican, Rome. (See Helbig, 90).</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The interior of the carcer to-day. Lower dungeon (Tullianum). (See Forum map and restoration, pp. xxxviii and xxxix).</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A gladiator’s shield and greaves. The shield is adorned with a head of Medusa and an olive wreath (Pompeii). Museo Nazionale, Naples.</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An orator in the toga. British Museum, London.</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tailpiece: A Roman altar. The right-hand relief represents a goddess with a torch; the left hand, Leda and the swan. Altar of the Castores, from the Lacus Juturnae, Roman Forum.</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headpiece: Sacrificial animals. From a relief on a balustrade in the Roman Forum.</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Mulvian bridge. Ponte Molle, as it is now called, rests on the foundation of the Pons Mulvius, built by the Censor, M. Aemilius Scaurus, in b.c. 109. The four central arches are ancient.</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Cumaean Sibyl with the Sibylline books.</td>
<td>From the fresco by Michelangelo in the Sistine Chapel, the Vatican, Rome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Roman sacrifice.</td>
<td>Showing Marcus Aurelius sacrificing before the temple of Jupiter Capitolinus. From a relief in the Palazzo dei Conservatori, Rome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Bronze Wolf of the Capitol.</td>
<td>Palazzo dei Conservatori, Rome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jupiter.</td>
<td>The Zeus Verospi in the Vatican, Rome. (See Helbig, No. 245)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Roman sacrificial procession.</td>
<td>From reliefs belonging to the Ara Pacis in the Galleria degli Uffizi, Florence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Roman in the toga, sacrificing.</td>
<td>Vatican, Rome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Roman altar.</td>
<td>Altar of Juturna, Roman Forum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A corner in a Roman house.</td>
<td>The wall painting at the left shows Daedalus, pointing out to Pasiphae the wooden cow that he has made. The painting at the right represents the punishment of Ixion; the prominent standing figure is that of Mercury; Juno sits on a throne at the right. From a dining-room in the house of the Vettii, Pompeii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Vestal Virgin.</td>
<td>Found in the Atrium Vestae. Now in the Museo delle Terme Diocleziane, Rome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Atrium in the house of the Vestal Virgins.</td>
<td>Showing the statues of the Vestals and the marble-lined cisterns for receiving rain water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A painting from a household shrine (Pompeii).</td>
<td>In the center the goddess of Fortune sacrificing, while a servant brings the pig destined for an offering; on the right and left, two Lares; below, two serpents at the altar. Museo Nazionale, Naples. <em>Photograph, G. Sommer &amp; figlio</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scipio Africanus, the elder.</td>
<td>Capitoline Museum, Rome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marcus Tullius Cicero.</td>
<td>From the bust in the Galleria degli Uffizi. <em>Brunn-Arndt photograph.</em> (For discussion, see Bernoulli, v. I, p. 132; Burckhardt, pp. 524, 525; Dütschke, v. III, p. 293)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cn. Pompeius.</td>
<td>From the bust in the Museo Nazionale, Naples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The triumph of a Roman general.</td>
<td>Relief from a sarcophagus in the Vatican, Rome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medea.</td>
<td>From the painting by N. Sichel. By courtesy of the Franz Hanfstaengl Fine Art Publishing House, 28 West 38th Street, New York</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**List of Illustrations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Illustration</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ostia. Showing the river and the main street bordered by ruined shops</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View of Rome as it looks to-day. Ruins of Sublician Bridge in foreground</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fortuna. From the statue in the Vatican, Rome</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M. Claudius Marcellus. From the statue in the Capitoline Museum, Rome.</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quintus Hortensius. From the herma in the Villa Albani, Rome.</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Appian Way. Showing the aqueduct of Claudius</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marcus Tullius Cicero. From the bust in the Capitoline Museum, Rome.</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headpiece: Poet and Muse. The poet is evidently reciting from the scroll in his left hand. Relief from a sarcophagus, British Museum, London</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antioch personified. The mural crown distinguishes her as a city goddess. Below her feet the god of the Orontes issues from the ground. From the statue in the Vatican, Rome</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A comic poet, with muse and actors' masks. On the wall above the table, a writing tablet. The muse is supposed to have held a stilus in her right hand, ready to write down the poet's words. From a relief in the Lateran, Rome</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ennius. From the bust on the Scipio tomb, in the Vatican, Rome</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orpheus, Eurydice, and Hermes. From the relief in the Villa Albani, Rome</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The bust of Ennius on the Scipio sarcophagus. The Vatican, Rome. (For translation of inscription, see Helbig, No. 127)</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alexander the Great. From the bust in the Capitoline, Rome.</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calliope, the muse of epic poetry. From the statue in the Vatican, Rome</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thalia, muse of comedy. Vatican, Rome</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tailpiece: Roman bronze lamp (Pompeii). Museo Nazionale, Naples</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**In the Selections for Sight Reading**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Selection</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Julius Caesar. From the bust in the Museo Nazionale, Naples.</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Piraeus, the harbor of Athens, where Marcellus was assassinated</td>
<td>134</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Illustration Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A girl with tabellae and stilus. From a Herculanean wall painting in the Museo Nazionale, Naples</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The harbor at Baiae</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arpinum (general view)</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A grain mill at Pompeii. A corner of a baker's shop, showing the baking oven at the left; grain mills at the right</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A group of Roman women. From a Herculanean wall painting, sometimes called &quot;The Tiring of the Bride.&quot; Museo Nazionale, Naples</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Roman woman sacrificing. From the statue sometimes called &quot;Livia&quot; (Pompeii). Museo Nazionale, Naples</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tombs on the Appian Way</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Themistocles. From the bust in the Vatican, Rome</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appius Claudius entering the Senate. From the painting by Maccari</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activities on shipboard. A ship entering port. From a relief on the end of the tomb of Naevoleia Tyche, Pompeii</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Homer. From the bust in the British Museum, London</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Socrates. From the herma in the Museo Nazionale, Naples. Visconti has translated the Greek inscription as follows: &quot;Not only now, but always, it has been my habit to follow the dictates of my own judgment. Mature reflection, I find, after strict examination, to be the best of all things.&quot;</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An ancient theater (Tusculum)</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tailpiece: A cinerary urn. Vatican, Rome</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

# IN THE NOTES

The temple of Jupiter Stator. Restoration from *Duruy's History of Rome* | 182 |

The Palatine Hill as seen from the Forum. View from the Tabularium | 184 |

Caius Marius. From the bust in the Uffizi, Florence | 187 |

Subsellium. A bench about six feet long and one foot wide, used in the Senate house. *Trollope, Illustrations of Ancient Art*, London, 1854 | 193 |

A Roman house. Showing the shrine (sacrarium) in place. House of Castor and Pollux, Pompeii | 197 |

Gladiators. From a stucco relief on the tomb of Umbricius Scaurus, Pompeii. Real Museo Borbonico, Naples, 1824. 207

Cicero in the toga. (See description of cut, p. xlii). 215

Tabellae et stilus. Objects in order: tablets, double inkstand, stilus, inscribed parchment. Real Museo Borbonico, 1824. 220

A Roman sacrifice. Showing the altar, the ram destined as an offering, and the person sacrificing holding the patera. From a relief in the Museum of Fine Arts, Boston. 222

Gladiatorial combats. Showing a vanquished gladiator holding up his thumb in an appeal to the populace for mercy. From a relief on the tomb of Umbricius Scaurus, Pompeii. Real Museo Borbonico, Naples, 1824. 225

Cato (Uticensis) and Porcia (so-called). From the portrait group in the Vatican, Rome. 229

A section of the career. Showing the upper chamber and the lower, or Tullianum, where the conspirators were put to death. From Duruy's History of Rome. 230

Sella curulis. A chair about fourteen inches high, which could be folded together like a modern camp stool, and so could be carried about after the consul whenever he appeared in public. Trollope, Illustrations of Ancient Art, London, 1854. 231

Plan of a shop (Pompeii). From Mau's Pompeii. By courtesy of the Macmillan Company. 238

A baker's shop. From a Pompeian wall painting. Museo Nazionale, Naples. 239

Front elevation of the Rostra. Restoration after Fig. 27, Huelsen, The Roman Forum, G. E. Stechert & Co., 1909. 245

Coin of Mithridates VI, king of Pontus (b.c. 121-63). Baumeister, Denkmäler des klassischen Altertums, Munich, 1885. 246

Coin of Perseus, last Greek king of Macedon. Baumeister, Denkmäler des klassischen Altertums, Munich, 1885. 262

A rostral column. The columna rostrata of Duilius. From the restoration in the Palazzo dei Conservatori, Rome. Photograph, Anderson. 263

Children at dice play. Medea with a knife, at the right. From a Pompeian wall painting. Museo Nazionale, Naples. Photograph, G. Sommer & figlio, Naples. 276

Orpheus with his lyre. From a Pompeian wall painting. Museo Nazionale, Naples. 279

Plato. From the herma in the Vatican, Rome. 283
BIBLIOGRAPHY

[The following authorities may prove helpful in connection with the objects pictured in this book, and with other monuments of the time of Cicero.]

AMELUNG, WALther. Führer durch die Antiken in Florenz, Munich, 1897.

BAUMEISTER. Denkmäler des klassischen Altertums, Munich, 1885.


BRUNN. Denkmäler griechischer und römischer Sculptur. Unter Leitung von Heinrich Brunn herausg. von Friedrich Bruckmann, Munich, 1888–


BURCKHARDT, JACOB. Der Cicerone, Leipzig u. Berlin, 1900.


DÜTSCHKE. Antike Bildwerke in Oberitalien, Leipzig, 1878.


MICHAELIS. Ancient Marbles in Great Britain.


TROLLOPE, EDWARD. Illustrations of Ancient Art, London, 1854.
INTRODUCTION

MARCUS TULLIUS CICERO

1. Early Life. — Marcus Tullius Cicero, the foremost Roman orator and writer, was born Jan. 3, 106 B.C. His birthplace was Arpinum, a small country town about seventy miles southeast of Rome, famous also as the birthplace of Marius. His father, a member of the equestrian order, was descended from a family of old standing. Quintus, a younger brother of Marcus, became a praetor at Rome, and afterwards won distinction as one of Caesar’s lieutenants in Gaul. The two brothers were early taken to Rome and placed under the care of the best instructors. One of these was Archias, the Greek poet, whose citizenship the orator defended in later years before Quintus, when the latter was presiding judge.

After a general training in grammar, rhetoric, and the Greek language, Marcus began the study of law under Mucius Scaevola, the greatest lawyer of his time. This study he supplemented by attending the courts and the Forum, listening to such advocates as Crassus and Antonius. Then at the age of eighteen a short military campaign under Pompeius Strabo, uncle of Pompey the

1 The group at the left represents the great man’s triumph. Note the horses, and Victory with the palm. The central group shows him sacrificing; and the third represents his marriage. Notice that the principal figure is made carefully the same in all three groups; that in the two first, however, he is represented in the tunic, and in the third, as wearing the toga.

xvii
Great, gave Cicero all the experience he desired as a soldier. Gladly he resumed his studies, — rhetoric, logic, philosophy, and oratory, — pursuing them for two years, at Athens, in Asia Minor, and at Rhodes. At Athens he met Pomponius Atticus, who became his intimate friend and correspondent. At Rhodes, he was instructed by the celebrated rhetorician, Apollonius Molo, who also taught Caesar. It was this instructor who said, after listening to the young orator, "You have my praise and admiration, Cicero, and Greece my pity and commiseration, since those arts and that eloquence, which are the only glories that remain to her, will now be transferred to Rome."

2. Cicero as an Advocate. — Cicero's first appearance as an advocate was in 81 B.C., in a civil suit in defense of Publius Quinctius, with the brilliant Hortensius as the opposing counsel. The following year he appeared in a criminal suit defending Sextus Roscius against a plaintiff who was a favorite of Sulla. His success in winning the case was therefore a special triumph.
77, after his return from foreign study, he resumed the practice of law, in which he was destined soon to take the leadership.

3. Cicero's Early Political Career. — It is significant of Cicero's qualifications that being a novus homo, i.e., one whose ancestors had never held office, he himself was elected to the four offices of the cursus honorum at the earliest legal age: quaestor at thirty, curule aedile at thirty-six, praetor at thirty-nine, and consul at forty-two. The quaestorship in 75 B.C. was spent in the province of Sicily, where his justice and impartiality endeared him to the people, while he greatly increased his popularity at home by sending grain from the province at a time of great scarcity. The holding of this office entitled Cicero to a seat in the Senate for life. Five years later the Sicilians appealed to Cicero to prosecute their Roman governor Verres, for tyranny and extortion. He conducted the impeachment with such skill that Hortensius, the defendant's counsel, gave up the case and Verres voluntarily went into exile.

In 69, as curule aedile, Cicero pleased the people by the public games which he furnished in good taste, though not with the lavish expenditure of his wealthier predecessors. His praetorship in 66 was made memorable by the passing of the Manilian Law, conferring upon Pompey supreme command in the war with Mithridates. Cicero's speech in behalf of the bill was the first he delivered to the people from the Rostra, an oration noted for its perfect form (see p. 243). By means of it he won the favor of Pompey, who was soon to become an important political factor, and, while incurring the opposition of the senatorial party, he secured the support of the populace. It paved the way to the consulship.

4. Cicero's Consulship. — Declining the governorship of a province at the close of his term as praetor, Cicero devoted his attention to securing the highest prize, the consulship. His name was presented in 64 B.C., with five other candidates, including Antonius and Catiline. Cicero owed his election to his clean record, which secured for him the solid support of the equites, his own order, and of many patricians of the better sort. He was the first novus homo to be elected since Marius, his fellow
INTRODUCTION

Arpinate. Antonius, second in the contest, became his colleague.

During his term he opposed the agrarian law of Servilius Rullus, defended Rabirius, an aged senator falsely accused of murder, and also the consul-elect, Murena, charged with bribery. But the main event of his consulship, and indeed of his life, was the suppression of the conspiracy of Catiline (see p. 181). This task was the more difficult because his colleague was in sympathy with the conspirators, and Caesar and Crassus had supported Catiline in his candidacy. Furthermore, there was no strong garrison in Rome at the time, for the legions were with Pompey in the East, and the nearest troops were in Cisalpine Gaul. It was the consul’s prompt action that made him pater patriae, and honored him with a supplicatio, the first given to a civilian.

5. Cicero in Exile. — Having passed the goal of his political ambition, Cicero spent the next four years as an active member of the Senate. In 62 B.C. he delivered his oration for the poet
Archias, his former teacher (see p. 269). He also defended P. Cornelius Sulla, who was charged with complicity in the conspiracy of Catiline. In private life there was much that added to the enjoyment of the honors he had earned. His house was on the Palatine Hill, the best residential section of Rome. He had villas or country seats at Antium, Cumae, Formiae, Pompeii, and Tusculum, with their libraries and works of art.

But a cloud hung over his pleasures. On the last day of his consulship, as he ascended the Rostra to give an account of his administration, Metellus, the tribune, had tried to prevent him by declaring that a magistrate who had put Roman citizens to death without trial, should not himself speak. The gathering storm of opposition burst in the tribuneship of Clodius, 58 B.C. This profligate patrician had become the personal enemy of the orator because the latter had testified against his character. As the agent of the triumvirs whom Cicero had offended, he proposed a bill that whoever had put to death a Roman citizen with-
out trial should be outlawed. It was evident against whom it was aimed. Failing to receive assistance from Pompey and the consuls, Cicero went into voluntary exile. Immediately another bill of Clodius was passed, declaring Cicero a public enemy, confiscating his property, and prohibiting him from fire and water within four hundred miles of the city. Cicero fled to Southern Italy, thence to Greece and Thessalonica. This was about the time of Caesar’s battle with the Helvetians. The rest of the year he remained crushed in spirit and hopeless, notwithstanding the consolation and kindness extended to him by the provincials.

But in Rome opposition was turning to favor. Clodius had lost his hold. Pompey and the new consuls and tribunes of 57 urged the return of the exile. A month after the bill recalling him was passed in the assembly of the people, he reached Rome. His homeward journey was marked with demonstrations of affection. His entry into the city was like a triumphal procession. Later his house on the Palatine and his villas were rebuilt at the public expense.

6. Cicero as Ex-consul. — Cicero resumed his place in the Senate and in the courts, but his life was one of weakened influence. His friendship was sought by Caesar, and finally won, so that he wrote to Atticus, “The delightful friendship with Caesar is the one plank saved from my shipwreck which gives me real pleasure.” It was after his return from exile that Cicero began to write upon rhetorical and philosophical subjects (see sec. 10). In 53 B.C., he was honored with an appointment to the college of augurs. In 52, while attempting to speak in behalf of Milo, who was clearly guilty of the murder of Clodius, he was humiliated by failure, breaking down “in the presence of the drawn swords of the soldiers, and of the intense excitement of the bystanders.” The oration, which was delivered only in part, was afterwards written out, and is one of his best. The following year Cicero was made governor of Cilicia, a province that had been grossly misruled by his predecessor. The new governor won the hearty gratitude of his subjects by his reforms in many ways, and by subduing their enemies with his legions. He was
proclaimed *imperator*, and on his return to Rome would probably have been awarded a triumph, had the citizens not been distracted by Caesar's crossing of the Rubicon.

7. Cicero and the Civil War.—Cicero's position between Caesar and Pompey was indeed difficult. Both leaders had claims upon his friendship. Failing as a peacemaker, he finally took the side of Pompey, following him to Greece. After Caesar's victory at Pharsalus, he returned to Brundisium, awaiting for months the will of the conqueror, until the message came with a generous offer of pardon. This was in 47 B.C. With but little interest in politics, Cicero sought comfort in writing. Three busy years followed, in which he produced four works on rhetoric and oratory, three on ethics, two on philosophy, besides essays on other subjects. Domestic sorrows came. His wife Terentia was estranged, and finally divorced. This was followed by the death of his only daughter Tullia, to whom he was devotedly attached.

Then came the assassination of Caesar in 44 B.C., which in the course of events, Cicero was more than ready to approve. Once again, at the age of 63, he threw his energy into the struggle for the freedom of the republic. He became the life and soul of the senatorial party, aiding the young Octavianus in his claims against Antony. His last oratorical efforts were called forth in the fourteen "Philippics," hurled against Antony, in which he declared the tyrant to be a public enemy, and called upon the Romans to maintain their liberty. But the voice of her greatest orator could not save the state.

8. Cicero's Assassination.—The formation of the second triumvirate blasted all hopes of the patriots. Once more the proscription lists were made, and to satisfy Antony, the young Octavianus consented to sacrifice Cicero. His brother Quintus was also proscribed. Marcus might have made his escape, but was overtaken by the assassins near his villa at Formiae, December 7, 43 B.C. His faithful slaves would have fought to the end, but he permitted no resistance. It is recorded that his head and hands were taken to Rome and in mockery nailed to the *Rostra* by order of Antony.
9. Cicero as an Orator. — "It happened many years after," writes Plutarch, "that Augustus once found one of his grandsons with a work of Cicero's in his hands. The boy was frightened and hid the book under his gown; but the emperor took it from him, and standing there motionless, read through a great part of the book; then he gave it back to the boy and said: 'This was a great orator, my child; a great orator, and a man who loved his country well.'"

Rome was a nation of orators. Not only did Cicero hold the first place among them, but his influence has been recognized by all men of eloquence since his day. To natural ability, a commanding voice and a pleasing personality, were added long and careful discipline and experience. It is true that he argued chiefly as an advocate, often exaggerating or evading facts in order to emphasize. He was criticised for being verbose, but this defect he partly corrected. With his incisive wit, his keen sense of humor, his wonderful mastery of words, he swayed the people and the Senate at his will. Of one hundred and seven orations attributed to Cicero, over fifty have been preserved entire, with fragments of twenty others. Most of these were revised for publication after being delivered.

10. Cicero as a Writer. — The name of Cicero is the greatest in Roman literature. Mackail says, "Cicero's imperishable glory is that he created a language which remained for sixteen centuries that of the civilized world, and used that language to create a style which nineteen centuries have not replaced, and in some respects have scarcely altered. He stands in prose, like Virgil in poetry, as the bridge between the ancient and the modern world." One can hardly understand how a busy man could find time to write so much upon so many subjects. His writings, as they have come down to us, fill ten volumes, about five thousand pages. Besides his orations and letters we have his works on rhetoric and philosophy. With his broad experience no one could write with more authority than he upon rhetoric and oratory. In his De Oratore, Brutus, and Orator, he treats of the ideal orator, his education and training, and the history of oratory down to his own time.
The treatises in philosophy were written in the last years of his life. In 46-44 B.C. he produced fifteen works, including *De Republica*, *De Legibus*, *De Officiis*, *De Amicitia*, *De Senectute*, *De Finibus*, *De Natura Deorum*, and the *Tusculan Disputations*. He had studied Greek philosophy from his youth. But very little had been written in Latin on this subject. To reproduce the thoughts of the Greeks without aiming to be original, to teach the lessons of philosophy to his countrymen in their own tongue, this was his task. Of the Tusculan Disputations it was Erasmus who said: "I cannot doubt that the mind from which such teachings flowed was in some sense inspired by divinity. I always feel a better man for reading Cicero."

11. Cicero's Letters. — To the modern world most interesting are the letters of Cicero. Of these we have over eight hundred, written to his family and friends (*Ad Familiares*), to his intimate friend and publisher, T. Pomponius Atticus (*Ad Atticum*), to his brother Quintus (*Ad Q. Fratrem*), and to Marcus Brutus (*Ad M. Brutum*). They cover a period of twenty-five years, 68 to 43 B.C., and are a priceless source of information of the times of Cicero, the last days of the republic. And yet as we read these charming and natural expressions of the great Roman, we are impressed with their modern tone and our common civilization.

12. The Character of Cicero. — Historians vary greatly in their estimate of Cicero. Perhaps it is nearest the truth to say that he had many weaknesses but much strength. He was emotional, vain, sensitive. As a statesman he made many mistakes. He failed to grasp the supreme problems of his time. He lacked force, will, and aim. He was vacillating in the civil war, but his choice of affiliation had to be made between two evils. That he was a patriot there can be no doubt. His greatest desire was to save and free the republic. That he was honest and incorruptible is shown in his provincial administration. He was a man of peace and honor, pure in life and purpose, and sympathetic with the oppressed. A biographer well says: "His fidelity to his prudent friend Atticus, his affection to his loyal freedman Tiro, his unfailing courtesy toward his wife Terentia, the love he lav-
ished upon his daughter Tullia, his unworthy son Marcus, and his sturdy brother Quintus, stand forth in striking contrast to the coldness of the typical Roman of his day."

**ROMAN ORATORY**

13. In the time of Cicero there were two styles of oratory, the Asiatic and the Attic. The former style called for ornamentation, and attention to language and delivery rather than to thought; the latter was direct, simple, natural. Hortensius represented the Asiatic; Cicero, the Attic, though being a pupil of the Rhodian School, he was inclined to strike a mean between the two extremes.

14. Orations were judicial, deliberative, or demonstrative. (1) Judicial orations, of which the *Pro Archia* is an example, were delivered in a court of justice. (2) Deliberative orations were delivered to the Senate or the popular assembly in the discussion of some public question. The oration for the Manilian Law and those against Catiline were of this kind. (3) Demonstrative orations were designed to praise or censure some one. These are illustrated by the oration *Pro Marcello*, by the portions of the Manilian Law eulogizing Pompey, and portions of the Catiline orations denouncing the conspirator.

15. The formal outline of an oration included six parts: (1) the *exordium*, or introduction; (2) the *narratio*, or statement of the
case, including the *propositio*, or statement of the main theme; (3) the *partitio*, or division of the argument. (4) the *confirmatio*, or affirmative argument from the speaker's side; (5) the *refutatio*, or rebuttal of the opponent's argument; (6) the *peroratio*, or conclusion.

**Roman Citizens**

16. The old distinction between patricians and plebeians was wiped out as early as 300 B.C., when both classes alike were entitled to hold any office, civil or religious. But another distinction arose, dividing the people into three classes, the senatorial order, the knights, and the commons.

17. The Senatorial Order, or Optimates. — This order included all who were descended from a curule magistrate or who had themselves held office. They therefore constituted an hereditary nobility. They practically held a monopoly of the offices, for while any freeborn citizen might be a candidate, the power of the senatorial party was against all except the nobles. Senators were excluded by law from trade and banking. Their distinctive dress was the tunic with a broad purple stripe.

18. The Equites, or Knights. — This term, originally applied to the cavalry of the state, came to be used of the men who had the property qualification of 400,000 sesterces, about 20,000 dollars (*ordo equester*). They formed, therefore, an aristocracy of wealth, controlling capital and farming the public revenues. They had no constitutional privileges until the time of Gaius Gracchus, when they were given the exclusive right to sit on juries. The *equites* then lost their military connection and became influential in politics, often as rivals of the senators. The insignia of the order was a gold ring and two purple stripes on the tunic.

19. The Commons. — In Cicero's time the older families had all become senators or knights. The great body of the people constituted the *populus, plebs, or populares*. By amassing sufficient wealth one of the inferior class could rise to the *equites*; by holding the offices, he became a senator. Such a man ennobled his family, and being the first to hold office, was a *novus homo* (a man without ancestry). "The condition of the commons was
piti\-able. The combinations of capital shut them out of commerce and manufacture, while the competition of slave labor almost closed agriculture and trade against them. Some found employment in the colonies and provinces, some eked out a scanty living on their farms, some made war their trade; but the idle and degraded flocked into the capital to live on the cheap corn provided by the treasury, and to sell their votes to the highest bidder."

(Johnston.)

20. Freed slaves (\textit{liberti, libertini}) were citizens and had the right to vote, but not to hold office until the taint of slavery was removed by two or more generations.

21. \textit{Municipia}, or municipal towns, were conquered communities subject to taxation and military service, which finally gained full citizenship. \textit{Civitates foederatae} were communities whose privileges depended on special treaty with Rome. Colonies sent from the city (\textit{coloniae}), as a rule, enjoyed full citizenship. A \textit{praefectura} was a town in which justice was administered by a prefect sent from Rome. Individual foreigners were often honored with citizenship by special gift, sometimes conferred by a commander.

\section*{THE POPULAR ASSEMBLIES}

There were three assemblies based on three different divisions of the citizens.

22. \textit{The Comitia Curiata}. — This was the old assembly of thirty \textit{curiae} or wards. Originally its function was to confer \textit{imperium} on the king and to decide on peace and war. In the time of the republic its only duty was the conferring of authority on the consuls and praetors as a matter of form, each \textit{curia} being represented by a single delegate.

23. \textit{Comitia Centuriata}. — This assembly began as a military organization in the days of Servius Tullius, when the people were divided into centuries (\textit{centuriae}). The century or division to which a man belonged was determined by the amount of his wealth. About 250 B.C. the assembly was reorganized into three hundred and seventy-three centuries. This comitia elected the consuls, praetors, and censors, and for a long time decided ques-
tions of peace and war. This latter function, however, was transferred to the Senate. Its power of legislation was transferred largely to the comitia tributa, and its judicial power to the standing courts. It could be summoned by a consul, praetor, or dictator. Being military in theory, its meetings were usually held in the Campus Martius.

24. Comitia Tributa.—This was an assembly of the tribes, thirty-five in number, growing out of the older concilium plebis. The assembly convened under either name according to whether the patricians were included (comitia tributa), or excluded (concilium plebis). Their functions were elective, legislative, and judicial. The comitia tributa elected curule aediles, quaestors, and certain lesser magistrates, and was presided over by a consul or praetor. Its enactments were known as leges. The concilium plebis, whose presiding officer was a tribune, elected the plebeian tribunes and aediles and came to be the chief legislative body of the government. Its laws, known as plebiscita, had the same validity as the leges of the comitia tributa, and did not require the sanction of the Senate. Like the comitia centuriata, these tribal assemblies relegated their judicial authority to the standing courts, though as late as 63 B.C., Rabinius was tried before the tributa with Cicero as his defender. The sessions of these assemblies were held in the Campus for elections, and in the Forum for law-making.

25. Methods of Voting. Adjournment.—The assemblies mentioned above were called for taking action not for deliberation. The voting was done by secret ballot. At legislative meetings each voter received an affirmative and a negative ballot. At meetings to elect magistrates he received a blank tabella, on which he wrote the name of the candidate of his choice. In each century or tribe the individual votes determined the vote of the century or tribe which was then cast as a unit, a majority of these divisions deciding the vote of the assembly. So, for example, the favoring vote of eighteen of the thirty-five tribes would pass a bill, though the individuals represented might be less than those who opposed it. If the voting was not completed by sunset, all was void. The session might then be ad-
journeyed by the presiding officer, by his colleague, or a superior officer, or by the occurrence of lightning or storm. Finally the voting would have to be repeated if the officer failed or refused to announce the result.

26. Contiones. — An assembly of citizens to listen to an address or to a discussion was a contio. The people came together as individuals. Though called together by magistrates only, the assembly could be addressed by private citizens. It had no powers, and adopted no resolutions. If action was to follow, a comitia had to be properly called. The second and third orations against Catiline and the oration for the Manilian Law were delivered before contiones.

27. Political Parties. — As in all nations, two factions sprang up, the aristocratic and the democratic (optimates and populares). Cicero defined the former thus: "All those are optimates who, no matter to what class of citizens they belong, bravely defend the institutions of our ancestors." They formed the conservative class, including the nobility as the chief element. "Those who wish the things which they do and say to be pleasing to the multitude," said Cicero, "are the populares." The intense party strife between these factions which began with the Gracchi lasted till the time of Caesar, who became the successful popular champion.

THE SENATE

28. Membership. — In the earlier days of the republic any citizen of proper age was eligible to the Senate, though the preference was given to ex-magistrates. After Sulla, the Senate became exclusively a body of ex-magistrates, serving ex-officio for life. Before admission to membership, a candidate must be declared worthy by the censor, must be thirty-one years old, and must abstain from certain occupations. While there was no property requirement, only men of means would be able to serve, as they did, without pay. The senators in a body were addressed as patres conscripti, i.e. patres et conscripti, a phrase first used in 509 B.C. to include the original senators (patres) and the newly enrolled (conscripti) plebeians. The number of senators
was fixed by Sulla at 600, by Caesar at 900, and afterwards reduced to 600.

29. The Session. — The regular meeting place of the Senate was the Curia Hostilia on the north side of the Comitium, but any temple might be used instead. The first oration against Catiline was delivered in the Temple of Jupiter Stator, the fourth in the Temple of Concord. A session was called generally by a consul, praetor, or tribune, who became the presiding officer. None but members were admitted, but others might listen to the proceedings from the entrance.

30. Procedure. — After the senators had been summoned by the herald (praeco) or by proclamation, the presiding officer took the auspices. He then proposed the question to be considered (rem ad senatum referre), and called upon the members to express their opinions (rogare sententias). The privilege of speech was given first to magistrates-elect, then to ex-magistrates ranking as consuls, praetors, aediles, tribunes, quaestors. The presiding officer was entitled to speak at any stage of the debate. The members either spoke at length or simply expressed agreement, or nonagreement with the motion. After the discussion the voting was by division. All voted except magistrates in office. A decision of the Senate which was not vetoed was called a senatus consultum; but if vetoed by any magistrate having the right of veto, it was only a senatus auctoritas. To be valid, the decision must be reached before sunset. Filibustering was practised, for the opponent of a measure could prevent action on it by talking until sunset.

31. Functions. — The Senate was primarily an advisory body, giving advice only when asked, but by reason of the dignity of its members, it gained in power until it controlled all legislation and elections. Among its special powers were the following:

1. In religious matters the Senate ordered the consultation of the soothsayers or the Sibyline books, decreed a thanksgiving (supplicatio), games, or holidays, and cooperated with the religious officers in times of peril.

2. In financial matters the Senate controlled taxation, revenues, appropriations, and coinage.
3. The Senate declared war and concluded peace, assigning troops and military commands, awarding the title of imperator and granting a triumph or a supplicatio.

4. The Senate could enter into an alliance by treaty with a foreign nation, assume the protectorate of a territory, or confer the title of king or friend of the Roman people on a foreign potentate. Embassies from foreign nations were sent to it, and demands addressed to a foreign nation were sent by the Senate.

5. The government of the provinces was under the jurisdiction of the Senate, which assigned the proconsuls and the propraetors.

6. The Senate discussed bills which were to be presented to the legislative assemblies.

7. The Senate had the sole right of naming a dictator, or might suspend the ordinary laws by passing a senatus consultum ultimum, directing the consuls videant ne quid res publica detrimenti capiat.

THE MAGISTRATES

32. There were six ordinary magistrates in the republican period: consul, censor, praetor, tribune of the plebs, aedile, quaestor. The dictator and magister equitum were extraordinary, appointed only in critical times. The consul and praetor (dictator and magister equitum) were magistrates with imperium, i.e. with supreme executive authority, military, civil, and judicial, which had formerly belonged to the kings. The other officials were magistrates with potestas. The consul, censor, praetor, curule aedile (dictator and magister equitum) were curule magistrates, i.e. were entitled to use the sella curulis, an ivory chair of peculiar shape, as a symbol of authority. Non-curule magistrates used a subsellium, a low wooden bench. By a law in 180 B.C., a cursus honorum was established, making it necessary for one to have been quaestor before becoming praetor, and to have been praetor before becoming consul. Furthermore, it was considered desirable to be aedile before being praetor, though not essential. Besides this sequence, a minimum age limit was fixed for the incumbent of each office; for quaestor, thirty-one; aedile, thirty-seven; praetor, forty; consul, forty-three. The
date of the elections was usually set by the Senate for July, but postponements might occur. Quaestors were inaugurated the following December 5; tribunes, December 10; others, January 1. The term of office was one year, except for the censor, who served eighteen months. An interval of two years was necessary between the different offices, and one of ten years before reelection to the same office. Every magistrate possessed the power of veto over his colleague or an inferior magistrate. There was no salary for public officials, but an ex-magistrate found a source of gain in the province to which he was assigned.

33. Consuls. — The two consuls were theoretically of equal power, exercising their authority on alternate months. They were the chief magistrates, checking by veto any other except a tribune. Each consul was limited by the veto power of the other and of the tribune, and was restrained by the fact that he would have to give an account of his administration to the people. In the transaction of foreign affairs, they presided over the Senate, and executed its orders. They conducted the election of the curule magistrates in the popular assemblies. They had the power to levy troops, and were nominally the commanders, but in Cicero's time it was unusual for them to take the field. In times of peril, the consuls were invested by the Senate with the power of a dictator. A consul whose authority was prolonged beyond his term of office became a proconsul and acted as governor of a province. The consular insignia were the toga praetexta, sella curulis, and twelve lictors, who bore the fasces.

34. Praetors. — In case of the absence of both consuls from the city, the praetors acted in their place. But their chief duty was to act as judges. As the government developed, their number was increased from one to eight, as it was in Cicero's time. Of these, one was the praetor urbanus, in charge of cases between citizens; another was the praetor inter peregrinos, in charge of cases between foreigners, or between a foreigner and a citizen; the remaining six presided over the standing courts for special offences. The praetor urbanus was the chief judge of Rome. At the close of his year, a praetor became propraetor, in the capacity of provincial governor.
35. Aediles. — There were four aediles, two "curule" and two "plebeian." The former were chosen by the comitia tributa, the latter by the concilium plebis (24). Their duties were practically the same, the city being divided into four districts, one for each aedile. These duties were the care of the streets and public buildings, the water supply and the grain market, the superintending of the police, and the providing against fire. An important function was to provide for the public games and festivals. For this purpose there was a state appropriation of funds, but the desire to win the favor of the people often led the aedile to excessive expenditure which he expected to pay by means of later income in the provinces.

36. Quaestors. — The quaestors were the public treasurers. Before the third century B.C. they also prepared evidence in public prosecutions (hence the name, from quaero). They collected money due the state and paid it out by order of the Senate. They were also custodians of the public documents such as census lists, contracts, and copies of laws. Their number, at first two, was increased by Sulla to twenty. Two of these (quaestores urbani), served in the city as general financial officers, while the others were with the army or in the provinces as paymasters. Their year of office began December 5, when they drew lots for assignments as referred to in Cat. IV. 7.

37. Tribunes. — The ten tribunes of the plebs were of necessity plebeian, either by birth or adoption (24). The office was first created to protect the people against the arbitrary action of a magistrate. Though they had no positive duties except to preside at certain elections (24) they came to be the most powerful officers in the state, for by their power of veto (ius intercedendi) they could prevent the act of any curule magistrate, the passage of laws by the assemblies, or the decree of the Senate. The only check upon them was the veto of a colleague. They could also convoke and preside over the Senate (28) and the comitia tributa, and initiate legislation. Their activity was confined to the city, from which they were permitted to be absent only a day at a time. As protectors of the people, the houses of the tribunes stood open day and night. Their persons were declared sacred,
i.e. death might be inflicted on any man who harmed the tribune in the exercise of his authority.

38. Censors. — Two censors were elected every five years. They served for eighteen months and then abdicated, their duties for the remaining time being assigned to the other magistrates. These duties were (1) to take the census, assess property, and arrange for the register of tribes, classes, and centuries; (2) to revise the lists of senators and knights, excluding the unworthy (28), and in general to supervise public morals; (3) to sell the privileges of collecting taxes, and to let contracts for public buildings. A man could be degraded from his rank, remaining so for the current register. On the other hand, a master could free a slave by having him inscribed on the censor’s list of citizens. In the last century of the republic the office lost much of its prestige, and from 86 to 70 B.C. no censors were elected (Archias, ch. 5).

39. Dictator. — In times of special peril the consuls appointed a dictator by order of the Senate. His authority lasted for six months, or less if regular order was restored. There was no appeal from his decisions. He appointed a military assistant to command the cavalry (magister equitum), while he commanded the infantry. There was no regular dictator after 202 B.C., for Sulla and Caesar, who were so called, usurped the office.

40. Religious Officers. — The religion of the Romans was a state institution. The priests were men of great influence and had much to do with public life. The most important of the priestly colleges were the pontiffs (pontifices) and the augurs (augures). The former, 15 in number, supervised all religious observances, chose and guarded the Vestals, regulated the Calendar, fixing the days for legal business and for festivals. They held office for life. The president of the college, the pontifex maximus, was not prevented from engaging in secular pursuits. Thus Caesar was elected to this office at the age of thirty-six, and continued his public career. The augurs observed and interpreted the auspices or reputed natural signs. These signs were derived from the heavens, including thunder and lightning, from the flight of birds, from the behavior of sacred chickens, and in
INTRODUCTION

other ways according to traditional rules. Unless the auspices were first taken, no assembly, no meeting of the Senate, no election could be held, neither could war be declared, nor could public business of any kind be transacted. Cicero was made one of the fifteen augurs in 53 B.C.

Haruspices from Etruria foretold the future in detail, rather than simple answers "yes" or "no." They were an unofficial guild, consulted in special cases.

THE COURTS

41. The Roman courts were in charge of the praetors (34). In cases of minor importance, the praetor either gave the decision himself or referred it to a judge (index) or jury. For cases of greater importance, standing courts were established by Sulla, the quaestiones perpetuae, presided over by the praetors. These courts considered cases concerning misgovernment (extortion), murder, forgery, embezzlement, treason, assault, etc. Juries varied in number of men, and were selected by the presiding judge. After 70 B.C. a law provided that they should be taken equally from the senators, the knights, and the tribuni aerarii. Their service was honorary. Trials were first held in the open air at the tribunal of the praetor in the Forum, but after 184 B.C., often in the basilicas around the Forum. From the decisions of the standing courts there was no appeal. By the Valerian law (509 B.C.) citizens condemned to death or excessive fine by any magistrate had the right of appeal to the comitia centuriata and tributa respectively. But capital punishment and the flogging of citizens were abolished by the Porcian law (198 B.C.). Imprisonment as a penalty was not known in Rome, though one awaiting trial might be kept in the carcer. The ordinary penalties were a fine (multa), loss of citizenship (infamia), or exile. Exile was either voluntary, or practically imposed by the denial of the use of fire and water (aquae et ignis interdictio).

PROVINCES

42. A Roman province was organized under a charter prepared by the conquering general with the sanction of the Senate. Its
government was intrusted to a proconsul when an army was necessary, to a propraetor when the province was quiet. As far as practicable, the freedom of the provincials in local matters was not interfered with. "The tax exacted of a province was a tithe (decuma), or a fixed amount in money (stipendium). Besides the tithe, the Senate might impose the burden of supplying further produce at a fixed price." (Gow.) During the later years of the republic, especially, the provinces were plundered by the governors as well as by the tax farmers. Although charges could be brought in the special court at Rome against the offender, yet in fact such action brought little permanent relief.

THE FORUM AND THE PUBLIC BUILDINGS

43. The Forum was the low open space between the Capitoline and Palatine Hills, originally a market place. "It was about two hundred and twenty yards long, sixty yards wide near the Capitoline, narrowing to thirty-five near the Palatine." (Gow.) Adjacent to it on the northwest corner was a small square, the Comitium, used in earlier days as the center of public life. Between the Forum and the Comitium stood the Rostra, the speaker's platform, from which audiences could be addressed on either side. It was from this platform that Cicero's orations to the people were delivered. The Capitoline Hill on the west was famed for its temple of Jupiter. The Palatine Hill on the southeast was the site of many shrines, and of the residences of wealthy citizens. On the north side of the Comitium was the Senate House, the Curia Hostilia, whose site is now marked by the Church of St. Adriano. At the western end of the Forum was the Temple of Concord, built to commemorate the final harmony between the patricians and the plebeians. The Temple of Jupiter Stator, in which Cicero delivered his first oration against Catiline probably stood on the slope of the Palatine, a short distance to the east of the Forum. Among the other buildings of interest about the Forum were the Temple of Vesta, with its sacred fire; the Regia, formerly the palace of the king, later the residence of the pontifex maximus; the basilicae, used for the law courts; and the tabernae, rows of shops. The Forum was therefore the center
PLAN OF THE FORUM IN CICERO'S TIME
of the religious, legal, and business interests. On the northwest corner stood the Tullianum or state's prison, which exists to-day, the place of the execution of Catiline's fellow-conspirators (see p. 32).

**WORKS OF REFERENCE**

44. **Beesly, A. H.**, Catiline, Clodius, and Tiberius.  
    **Boissier, G.**, Cicero and his Friends.  
    **Collins, W. L.**, Cicero (Ancient Classics for English Readers.)  
    **Fausset, W. Y.**, The Student's Cicero.  
    **Forsyth, W.**, Life of Cicero.  
    **Froude, J. A.**, Caesar, a Sketch.  
    **Oman, Ch.**, Pompey (Seven Roman Statesmen).  
    **Plutarch**, Life of Cicero.  
    **Strachan-Davidson, J. L.**, Cicero and the Fall of the Roman Republic.  
    **Trollope, A.**, Life of Cicero.

__________

**Cruttwell, C. T.**, A History of Roman Literature.  
**Fowler, H. N.**, A History of Roman Literature.  
**Middleton and Mills**, The Students' Companion to Latin Authors.  
**Sears, L.**, The History of Oratory.

__________

**Church, A. J.**, Roman Life in the Days of Cicero.  

__________

**Huelsen, Ch.**, Forum Romanum.  
**Lanciani, R.**, The Ruins and Excavations of Ancient Rome.  
**Nichols, F. M.**, The Roman Forum.
Cicero before the Senate

(From the statue at Oxford)
M. TULLI CICERONIS
ORATIO IN CATILINAM PRIMA
IN SENATU HABITA

The orator arraigns Catiline for his boldness.


Ad mortem tē, Catilina, dūcī iussū cōnsulis iam prīdem oportēbat; in tē cōnferrī pestem, quam tū in nōs māchī-
20 nāris. An vērō vir amplissimus, P. Scīpiō, pontifex māximus, Ti. Gracchum mediocrīter labefactantem statum reī pūblicae privātus interfēcit; Catilīnam orbem terrae caede atque incendiūs vāstāre cupidentem nōs cōnsulēs per-
erēmus? Nam illa nimis antiquā praetereō, quod C. 25 Servīlius Ahāla Sp. Maelium novīs rēbus studentem manū suā occidit. Fuit, fuit ista quondam in hāc rē pūblicā virtūs, ut vīri fortēs ācriōribus supplicīus cīvem perniciō-
sum quam acerbissimum hostem coērcērent. Hābēmus senātūs cōnsultum in tē, Catilīna, vehemēns et grave. 30 Nōn deest reī pūblicae cōnsilium neque auctōritās hūius ōrdinis; nōs, nōs, dīcō apertē, cōnsulēs dēsumus.

The Senate has decreed against Catiline, but he is allowed to live.

2. Dēcrēvit quondam senātus, ut L. Opīnius cōnsul vidēret, nē quid rēs pūblica dētrimentī caperet. Nox nūlla intercessit; interfectus est propēr quāsdam sēdi-
35 tōnūm suspiciōnēs C. Gracchus, clārissimō patre, avō, māiōribus; occīsus est cum īberīs M. Fulvius cōnsulāris. Similī senātūs cōnsultō C. Mariō et L. Valeriō cōnsulibus est permissa rēs pūblica. Num ūnum diem postē L. Sāturnīnum tribūnūm plēbis et C. Servīlium praetōrem
mors ac rei publicae poena remorāta est? At nōs vīcēsi-mum iam diem patimur hebēscere aciem hōrum auctōritātis. Hābēmus enim hūiusce modī senātūs consulūm, vērum inclusūm in tabulis tamquam in vāginā reconditum, quē ex senātūs consultō cōnfēstum tē interfectum esse, Catilīna, convēnit. Vivis, et vivis nōn ad dēpōnen-dam, sed ad cōnfirmandam audāciam.

Cupiō, patrēs cōnscriptī, mē esse clēmentem, cupiō in tantōs rei publicae periculis mē nōn dissolūtum vidēri, sed iam mē ipse inertiae nēquītiaeque condemnō. Castra sunt in Ċitāliā contrā populum Rōmānum in Etrūriæ faucis; crēscit in diēs singulōs hostium numerus; eōrum autem castrōrum imperātorem ducemque hostium intrā moenia atque adeō in senātū vidēmus, intestinam aliquam cotīdiē perniciem rei publicae mōlientem.

Sī tē iam, Catilīna, comprehendi, si interfici iussero, crēdō, erit verendum mihi, nē nōn potius hōc omnēs boni sērius ā mē quam quisquam crūdēlius factum esse dicat. Vērum ego hōc, quod iam prīdem factum esse oportuit, certā dē causā nōndum addūcor ut faciam. Tum dēnique interficiēre cum iam nēmō tam improbus, tam perditus, tam tui similis invenīri poterit quī id nōn iūre factum esse fateātur. Quamdiū quisquam erit quī tē dēfendere audeat, vivēs, et vivēs ita ut vivēs, multīs meis et firmīs praesidiīs obsessus, nē commovēre tē contrā rem publicam possis. Multōrum tē etiam oculī et aurēs nōn sentientem, sīcūt adhūc fēcērunt, speculābuntur atque custōdient.

The conspiracy is fully known.

3. Etenim quid est, Catilīna, quod iam amplius espectēs, si neque nox tenebrīs obscurāre coeptūs nefāriōs nec privāta domus parietibus contīnere vōcēs consīūrātionis tuae potest, si inluāstrantur, si ēruptūn omnia? Mūtā iam istam mentem; mihi crēde, oblīvīscere caedis
atque incendiōrum. Tenēris undique; lūce sunt clāriōra
nobīs tua cōnsilia omnia, quae iam mēcum licet recog-
nōscās. Meministīne mē ante diem xii Kalendās Novem-
75brēs dicere in senātū fore in armīs certō diē, quī diēs fu-
tūrus esset ante diem vi Kalendās Novembrēs, C. Mān-
lium, audāciae satellitem atque administrum tuae?
Num mē fefellit, Catilīna, nōn modo rēs tanta, tam
atrōx tamque incrēdibilis, vērum, id quod multō magis
80est admirandum, diēs?

Dixi ego idem in senātū caedem tē optimātium con-
tulisse in ante diem v Kalendās Novembrēs, tum cum
multi principēs civitātīs Rōmā nōn tam suī cōnservandi
quam tuōrum cōnsiliōrum reprimendōrum causā profū-
gērunt. Num ūnītāriā potes tē illō ipsō diē meīs praes-
sidiīs, meā diligentiā circummelūsum commovēre tē contra
rem pūblicam nōn potuisse, cum tū diessū cēterōrum,
nostrā tamen, quī remānsissēmus, caede tē contentum
esse dīcebās? Quid? Cum tē Praeneste Kalendīs ipsīs
90Novembrībus occūpātūrum nocturnō impetū esse cōn-
fiderēs, sēnsistīne illam colōniam meō iussū meīs praes-
sidiīs, custōdiis, vigiliīs esse mūnitam? Nihil agis, nihil
mōlīris, nihil cōgitās, quod nōn ego nōn modo audiam,
sed etiam videam plānēque sentiam.

The meeting of conspirators at the house of Laeca. The attempt on
the life of Cicero.

4. Recognōsee tandem mēcum noctem illam superiōrem;
iam intellegēs multō mē vigilāre ācrius ad salūtem quam
tē ad perniciem reī pūblicae. Dicō tē priōre nocte vēnisse
inter falcāriōs (nōn agam obscūrē) in M. Laecae domum;
convēnisse eōdem complūrēs eiusdem āmentiae sceleris-
que sociōs. Num negāre audēs? Quid taceās? Convīn-
cam, sī negās. Videō enim esse hīc in senātū quōsdam
quī tēcum ūnā fuērunt.
Ô dī immorótālēs! Ubinam gentium sumus? In quā urbe vivimus? Quam rem pūblicam habēmus? Hīc, hīc sunt in nostrō numerō, patrēs cōnscriptī, in hōc orbīs 105 terrae sāncissimō gravissimōque cōnsiliō, quī dē nostrō omnium interitū, quī dē hūius urbīs atque adeō dē orbīs terrārum exitīō cōgitent. Hōs ego vīdeo cōnsul et dē rē pūblicā sententiam rogō, et quōs ferrō trucidārī oportēbat, eōs nōndum vōce vulnerō!

Fuīstī igitur apud Laecam 111 nocte, Catillna; distribuīstī partēs Itāliae; statuīstī quō quemque proficiēcī placēret; dēlēgīstī quōs Rōmæ reiinquerēs, quōs tēcum ēducerēs; discrēpsistī urbis partēs ad incendīa; cōnfirmāstī tē ipsum iam esse exitūrum; dīxistī paulum tībi esse etiam nunc morae, quōd ego vīverem. Repertī sunt duo equitēs Rōmānī quī tē ĭstā cūrā liberārent, et sēsē illā ipsā nocte paulō ante lūcem mē in meō lectulō interfectūrōs pollicērentur. Haec ego omnia, vixdum etiam 130 coetū vestrō dīmissō, comperī; domum meam māioribus praesidīs mūnīvī atque firmāvī; exclusī eōs quōs tū ad mē salūtātum māne miserās, cum illsī ipsī vēnissent quōs ego iam multīs ac summīs virīs ad mē id temporis ventūrōs esse praedīxeram.
Catiline is urged to leave the city and join his waiting forces.

5. Quae cum ita sint, Catilīna, perge quō coepisti. Ægredere aliquandō ex urbe; patent portae; proficiscere. Nimium diū tē imperātōrem tua illa Mānliāna castra dēsiderant. Ėduc tēcum etiam omnēs tuōs; sī minus, quam plurīmōs; pūrgā urbem. Māgnō mē metū liberā-bis, dum modo inter mē atque tē mūrus intersit. Nōbis-cum versāri iam diūtius nōn potes; nōn feram, nōn patiar, nōn sinam.

Māgna dis immortālibus habenda est atque huic ipsī Iōvī Statōrī, antīquissīmō custōdī hūius urbīs, grātīa, quod hanc tam taetram, tam horribilem tamque īnfēstam reī públicae pestem totiēns iam effūgimus. Nōn est saepeius in ūnō homine summa salūs periclitanda reī públicae. Quamdiū mihi cōnsulī désignātō, Catilīna, īnsidiātus es, nōn públicō mē praeсидīō, sed prīvātā diligentīā dēfendi. Cum proximis comītūs cōnsulāribus mē cōnsulem in camπō et competitōrēs tuōs interficere voluisti, compressī cōnā-tūs tuōs nefāriōs amīcōrum praeсидīō et cōpiis, nūllo tu-multū públicē concitātō; dēnique, quotiēnscumque mē petiśtī, per mē tibi obstiśī, quamquam vidēbam perniciem meam cum māgnā calamitāte reī públicae esse coniūnc-tam. Nunc iam apertē rem públicam ūniversam petiś; templa dēorum immortālium, tēcta urbīs, vitam omnium cīvium, Ītaliām tōtam ad exitium et vāstitātem vocās.

160 Quī rē, quoniam id quod est primum, et quod hūius imperī disciplīnaeque mājōrum proprium est, facere nōn-dum audeō, faciam id quod est ad sevēritātem lēnius et ad commūnem salūtem ūtilius. Nam sī tē interficī iussērō, residēbit in rē públicā reliqua coniūrātōrum manus; sīn tū, quod tē iam dūdum hortor, exieris, exhauriētur ex urbe tuōrum comitum māgna et perniciōsa sentīna reī públicae. Quid est, Catilīna? Num dubītās id, mē im-
ORATIO IN CATILINAM PRIMA


All men fear Catiline because of his crimes.

6. Quid est enim, Catilīna, quod tē iam in hāc urbe dēlectāre possit, in quā nēmō est extrā istām coniūrā-tionem perditōrum hominum qui tē nōn metuat, nēmō quī nōn Ŀōderit? Quae nota domesticae turpitudinis non inūsta vitae tuae est? Quod privātārum rērum dēdecus nōn haeret in fāmā? Quae libīdō ab oculis, quod facinus ā manibus umquam tuīs, quod flāgītium ā tōtō corpore ľūfīt? Cui tū adulēscentulo, quem corruptēlārum in-lecebrīs inrētīssēs, nōn aut ad audāciam ferrum aut ad libīdinem facem praetulistī?

Quid vērō? Nūper cum morte superiōris uxōris novīs nūptiīs domum vacuēfēcessēs, nōnne etiam aliō incrēdibilī scelere hōc scelus cumulāstī? Quod ego praetermittō et facile patior sīlērī, nē in hāc cīvitāte tanti facinoris im-mānitās aut exstītisse aut nōn vindicāta esse videātur. Praetermittō ruinās fortūnārum tuārum, quās omnēs im-pendēre tibi proximīs Īdibus sentiēs. Ad illa veniō quae nōn ad privātām ignōminiam vitiórum tuōrum, nōn ad domēsticam tuam difficultātem ac turpītūdinem, sed ad summam rem pūblīcām atque ad omnium nostrum vitam salūtemque pertinēnt.

Potestne tibi haec lūx, Catilīna, aut huïus caeli spīritus esse iūcundus, cum sciās esse hōrum nēminem qui nesciat tē priēdiē Kalendās Iānuāriās Lepīdō et Tullō cōnsulis stetisse in comitiō cum tēlō, manum cōnsulum et prīnci-pum cīvitātīs interficiendōrum causā parāvisse, scelerī ac ūrōri tuō nōn mentem aliquam aut timōrem tuum, sed fortūnam populi Rōmānī obstītisse? Ac iam illa omissō (neque enim sunt aut obscūra aut nōn multa commissa
"Quid, quod adventū tuō ista subsellia vacuefacta sunt?"
ORATIO IN CATILINAM PRIMA

postea); quotiens tū mē dēsignātum, quotiens cōnsulem interficere cōnātus es! Quot ego tuās petītiōnēs, ita coniectās ut vītāri posse nōn vidērentur, parvā quādam dēclīnātiōne et, ut aiunt, corpore effūgi! Nihil adsequeris, neque tamen cōnāri ac velle dēsīstis. Quotiēns tibi iam extorta est ista sīca dē manibus! Quotiēns excīdit cāsū alīquō et ēlapsa est! Quae quidem quibus abs tē initiāta sacrīs ac dēvōta sit nesciō, quod eam ncessesse putās esse in cōnsulis corpore dēsīgere.

The senators show their hostility. Their country cries out against him.

7. Nunc vērō quae tua est ista vīta? Sic enim iam tēcum loquar, nōn ut odiō permōtus esse videar, quō dēbeō, sed ut mēsicitordiā, quae tibi nūlla dēbētur. Vēnistī paulō ante in sēnātum. Quīs tē ex hāc tāntā frequentiā totque tuīs amīcis ac necessāriīs salūtāvit? Sī hōc post hominum memoriam contigit nēminī, vōcis exspectās contumēliam, cum sīs gravissimō iūdiciō taciturnītātis oppres- sus? Quīd, quod adventū tuō ista subsellia vacuéfacta sunt, quod omnēs cōnsulārēs, quī tibi persaepe ad caedem cōnstitūti fuérunt, simul atque adsēdistī, partem istam subselliōrum nūdam atque inānem reliquērunt, quō tandem animō tībi ferendum putās?

Servi, mehercule, mē si mē istō pactō metuerent, ut tē metuunt omnēs cīvēs tuī, domum meam relinquuendam putārem; tū tibi urbem nōn arbitrāris? Et, si mē meis cīvibus iniūriā suspicītūm tam graviter atque offēsum vidērem, carēre mē aspectū cīvium quam infēstīs omnium oculīs cōnspicī māllem. Tū cum cōnscientiā scelerum tuōrum agnōscās odium omnium iūstum et iam diū tibi dēbitum, dubitās, quōrum mentēs sēnsūsque vulnerās, eōrum aspectum praesentiamque vītāre? Si tē parentēs timērent atque ōdissent tūi neque eōs ūllā ratiōne plācāre
possēs, ut opinor, ab eōrum oculis aliquō concèderēs. Nunc tē patria, quae commūnis est parēns omnium nos-
trum, ēdit ac metuit, et iam diū nihil tē iūdicat nisi dē
parricidiō suō cōgitāre; hūius tū neque auctōritātem
verēbere nec iūdiciōm sequēre nec vim pertimēscēs?

Quae tēcum, Catilīna, sic agit et quōdam modō tacita
loquitur: ‘Nūllum iam aliquot annīs facinus exstitit nisi
per tē, nūllum fāgitium sine tē; tibi ūnī multōrūm cīvīum
necēs, tibi vexātiō direptiōque sociōrum impūnīta fuit ac
libera; tū nōn sōlum ad neglegendās lēgēs et quaeṣtiōnēs,
vērum etiam ad ēvertendās perfringendāsque valuisti. Su-
periōra illa, quamquam ferenda nōn fuērunt, tamen, ut
potuī, tulī; nunc vērō mē tōtam esse in metū propter
ūnum tē, quicquid increpuerit, Catilīnam timērī, nūllum
vidērī contrā mē cōnsiliōm inīrī posse quod ā tuō scelere
abhorrēt, nōn est ferendum. Quam ob rem discēde atque
hunc mihi timōrem ēripe; sī est vērus, nē opprimar; sīn
falsus, ut tandem aliquamōdō timēre dēsinam.’

Catiline has judged himself deserving of custody.

8. Haec sī tēcum, ita ut dīxi, patria loquātur, nōnne
impetrāre dēbeat, etiamṣī vim adhibēre nōn possīt?
Quid, quod tū tē ipse in custōdiam dedisti, quod vītandae
suspicēionis causā ad M’ Lepidum tē habitāre velle dīxistī?
Ā quō nōn receptus etiam ad mē venīre ausus es, atque ut
domī meae tē adservāre mō rogāsti. Cum ā mē quoque id
respōnsum tulissēs, mē nūllō modō posse īsdem parietibus
tūtō esse tēcum, quī māgnō in periculō essem, quod īsdem
moenibus contīnerēmur, ad Q. Metellum praetōrem
vēnisti. Ā quō repudiātus ad sodālem tuum, virum opti-

mum, M. Metellum, dēmigrāstī; quem tū vidēlicet et ad
custōdiendum diligentissimum et ad suspicandum sagā-
cissimum et ad vindicandum fortissimum fore putāstī. Sed
quam longē vidētur ā carcere atque ā vinculis abesse
debere, quī sē ipse iam dignum custōdiā iūdicārit? Quae cum ita sint, Catilīna, dubitās, sī ēmorī aequō animō nōn potes, abīre in aliquās terrās et vitam istam multīs supplīcīs iūstitīs dēbitīsque ereptam fugae sōlitūdinīque mandāre?

'Refer,' inquis, 'ad senātum'; id enim postulās, et, sī hīc ōrdō placēre décrēverit tē ire in exsilium, obtemperāturūm tē esse dicis. Nōn referam, id quod abhorret a meis mōribus, et tamen faciam ut intellegās quid hī dē tē sentiant. Egredere ex urbe, Catilīna; libera rem publicam metū; in exsilium, sī hanc vocēm exspectās, proficiscere. Quid est, Catilīna? Ecquid attendis, ecquid animadvertis horum silentium? Patiuntur, tacent. Quid exspectās auctōritātem loquentium, quorum voluntātem tacitōrum perspicis? At sī hoc idem huiuc adulēscenti optimō, P. Sēstiō, sī fortissimō virō, M. Mārcellō, dīxis-

A City Gate
sem, iam mihi consuli hoc ipsó in templō iūre optimō
senātus vim et manūs intulisset. Dē tē autem, Catilīna,
cum quiēscunt, probant; cum patiuntur, dēcernunt; cum
tacent, clāmant; neque hī sōlum, quōrum tībī auctōritās
est vidēlicet cāra, vītā vilissima, sed etiam illī equitēs
Rōmānī, honestissimi atque optimi vīrī, cēterīque fortissimi
civēs, quī circumstant senātum, quōrum tū et frequentiam
vidēre et studia perspicere et vōcēs paulō ante exaudire
potuistī. Quōrum ego vix abs tē iam diū manūs ac tēla
contineō, eōsdem facile addūcam ut tē haec, quae vāstāre
iam prīdem studēs, relinquentem ľusque ad portās prōse-
quantur.

In the face of unpopularity Cicero again calls upon the enemy to go
into exile.

9. Quamquam quid loquor? Tē ut ūlla rēs frangat?
Tū ut umquam tē corrīgās? Tū ut ūllam fugam medi-
tēre? Tū ut ūllum exsilium cōgitēs? Utinam tībī istam
mentem dī immortālēs duīnt! Tamētsī videō, sī meā vōce
perterritus ĭre in exsilium animum indūxeris, quanta tem-
pestās invidiae nōbīs, sī minus in praeśēns tempus recentī
memorīa scelerum tuōrum, at in posteritātem impendēat.
Sed est tantī, dum modo ēsta sit privāta calamītās et ā reī
publicae periculīs sēiungātur. Sed tū ut vitīs tuīs com-
movēare, ut légum poenās pertīmėscās, ut temporibus reī
publicae cēdās, nōn est postulandum. Neque enim is es,
Catilīna, ut tē aut pudor umquam ā turpitiūdine aut metus
ā periculō aut ratiō ā furōre revocārit.

Quam ob rem, ut saepe iam dīxi, proficiscere, ac, sī
mihi inimīcō, ut praedīcās, tuō cōnflāre ĭs invidiam, rēctā
perge in exsilium. Vix feram sermōnēs homīnum, sī id
feceris; vix mōlem īstīus invidiae, sī in exsilium iussū
cōnsulis ieriis, sustinēbō. Sīn autem servīre meae laudī et
glōriæ māvis, ēgredere cum importūnā scelerātōrum manū,
cönfer tē ad Mānlium, concitā perditōs cīvēs, sēcerne tē ā 310 bonīs, īnfer patriae bellum, exsultā impiō latrōciniō, ut ā mē nōn ēiectus ad aliēnōs, sed invitātus ad tuōs īsse videāris.

Quamquam quid ego tē invītem, ā quō iam sciam esse praemissōs, qui tibi ad Forum Aurēlium praestōlārentur 315 armātī; cui iam sciam pactam et cōnstitūtam cum Mānliō diem; ā quō etiam aquilam illam argenteam, quam tibi ac tuīs omnibus cōnfidō perniciōsam ac fūnestam futūram, cui domī tuae sacrārium cōnstitūtum fuit, sciam esse praemissam? Tū ut illā carēre diūtius possīs, quam venerārī 320
ad caedem proficiscēns solēbās, ā cīius altāribus saepē istam impiam dexteram ad necem cīvium trānstulistī?

The character of Catiline.

10. Ībis tandem aliquandō quō tē iam prīdem ista tua cupiditās effrēnāta ac furiōsa rapiēbat; neque enim tībi haec rēs adfert dolōrem, sed quandam incrēdibilem volup-

Hīc tū quā laetitiā perfruērē, quibus gaudīis exsultābis, quantā in voluptāte bacchābere, cum in tantō numerō tuōrum neque audiēs virum bonum quemquam neque vidēbis! Ad hūius vitae studium meditātī illī sunt quī feruntur labōrēs tuī: iaceēre humī nōn sōlum ad obsidendum stuprum, vērum etiam ad facinus obeundum, vigilāre nōn sōlum īnsidiantem somnō marītōrum, vērum etiam bonīs ōtiōsōrum. Habēs ubi ostentēs tuam illam praecláram patientiam famis, frīgoris, inopiae rērum omnium, quibus tē brevī tempore cōnfectum esse sentiēs. Tantum profēcī tum, cum tē ā cōnsulātū reppuli, ut exsul potius temptāre quam cōnsul vexāre rem pūblicam possēs, atque ut iā, quod esset ā tē scelerātē susceptum, latrōcinium potius quam bellum nōminārētur.

The whole country demands that the consul punish the traitor.

11. Nunc, ut ā mē, patrēs cōnscriptī, quandam propiōstam patriae querimōniam dētester ac dēprecer, per-
cipite, quaesō, diligenter quae dicam, et ea penitus animīs vestrīs mentibusque mandāte. Etenim si mēcum patria, quae mihi vitā meā multō est cārior, si cūneta Ītalia, si omnis rēs pūblica loquātur:

Cicero’s reason for recommending exile rather than death.

12. Hīs ego sāncctissimīs reī publicae vocibus et eōrum hominum qui hoc idem sentiunt mentibus paucā respon- dōbō. Ego sī hoc optimum factū iūdicārem, patrēs cōnscripī, Catilīnam morte multāri, ūnīus ūsūram hōrae gladiātōri īsti ad vivendum nōn dedissem. Etenim sī summī virī et clārissimī civēs Saturnīnī et Gracchōrum et Flacci et superiōrum complūriōm sanguine nōn modo sē nōn contāminārunt, sed etiam honestārunt, certē verendum mihi nōn erat nē quid hoc parricīdā civium inter-
fectō invidiae mihi in posteritātem redundāret. Quodsi ea mihi māximē impedēret, tamen hoc animō fui semper, 385 ut invidiam virtūte partam glōriam, nōn invidiam putārem.

Quamquam nōn nūlli sunt in hoc ōrdine, quī aut ea quae imminent, nōn videant aut ea quae vident dissimulēnt; quī spem Catilīnae mollibus sententīās aluērunt coniūrātiōnemque nāscentem nōn crēdendō corrōborā-390 vērunt; quōrum auctōritāte multī nōn sōlum improbī, vērum etiam imperītī, sī in hunc animadvertīsem, crūdē- liter et rēgīe factum esse dīcerent. Nunc intellegō, sī iste, quō intendit, in Mānliāna castra pverērīt, nēminem tam stultum fore quī nōn videat coniūrātiōnem esse factam, 395 nēminem tam improbum quī nōn fateātur. Hōc autem ūnō interfecōt intellegō hanc reī publicae pestem paulisper reprimī, nōn in perpetuōm comprimī posse. Quodsi sē ēiēcerit sēcūmque suōs ēdūxerit et eōdem cēterōs undique collectōs naufragōs adgregārit, exstinguētur atque dēlē-400 bitur nōn modo haec tam adulta reī publicae pestis, vērum etiam stirps ac sēmen malōrum omnium.

All patriots will unite under the guidance of Heaven to save the state

13. Etenim iam diū, patrēs cōnscriptī, in hīs perīculīs coniūrātiōnis insidīāisque versāmur, sed nescīō quō pactō omnium scelerum ac veteris furōris et audāciāe mātūritās 405 in nostrī cōnsulātūs tempus ērūpit. Quodsi ex tantō la-trōciniō iste ūnus tollētur, vidēbimur fortasse ad breve quoddam tempus cūrā et metū esse relevātī; perīculum autem residēbit et erit inclūsum penitus in vēnīs atque in visceribus reī publicae. Ut saepe hominēs aegri morbō 410 gravī, cum aestū febrīque iactantur, siquam gelidam bibērunt, prīmō relevārī videntur, deinde multō gravius vehementiusque addūctantur, sic hīc morbus qui est in reī públicā, relevātūs istīus poenā vehementius reliquis vivīs ingravēscet.
Quarē sēcēdant improbī, sēcernant sē a bonīs, unum in locum congregentur, mūrō dēnique, quod saepe iam dixī, sēcernantur a nōbīs; dēsīnat īnsidērī domī suae cōnsulī, circumstāre tribūnāl praetōris urbānī, obsidēre cum gladiīs cūriam, malleolōs et facēs ad īnflammandam urbem comparāre; sit dēnique īnsciptum in fronte unīus cūiusque quid dē re pūblīca sentiat. Polliceor hōc vōbīs, patrēs cōnscriptī, tantam in nōbīs cōnsulibus fore diligentiam, tantam in vōbīs auctōritātem, tantam in equitibus Rōmānīs virtūtem, tantam in omnibus bonīs cōnsēnsiōnem, ut Catilinae profectōne omnia patefacta, inlūstrāta, oppressa, vindicāta esse videātis.

Hisce ōminibus, Catilīna, cum summā reī pūblīcae salūte, cum tuā peste ac pernicie, cumque eōrum exitiō qui sē tēcum omni scelere parricīdiōque iūnxērunt, proficīscere ad impium bellum ac nefārium. Tū, Iuppiter, qui īsdem quibus haec urbs auspiciōs a Rōmulo es cōnstitūtus, quem Statōrem hūius urbīs atque imperi vērē nōmināmus, hunc et hūius sociōs ā tuīs cēterīisque templīs, ā tēctīs urbīs ac moenibus, ā vitā fortūnīisque civium arcēbis et hominēs bonōrum inimīcōs, hostēs patriae, latrōnēs Italīae, scelerum foedere inter sē ac nefāriā societāte coniūnectōs, aeternīs suppliciūs vīvōs mortuōsque mactābis.
M. TULLI CICERÖNIS
ÖRÅTIÖ IN CATILINAM SECUNDA
AD POPULUM

Cicero announces the departure of Catiline.

ITALY IN CICERO’S TIME
suís faucibus éreptam esse lūget; quae quidem mihi laetāri vidētur, quod tantam pestem ēvomuerit forāisque prōīcērit.

**Why he was allowed to go without arrest.**

2. Ac sī quis est tālis, quālēs esse omnēs oportēbat, quī in hoc ipsō, in quō exsultat et triumphant ōrātiō mea, mē vehemens accūset, quod tam capitālem hostem nōn comprehenderim potius quam ēmiserim, nōn est ista mea culpa, Quirītēs, sed temporum. Interfectum esse L. 30 Catilinam et gravissimō suppliciō adfectum iam prōdem oportēbat, idque ā mē et mōs māiōrum et hūius imperī severitās et rēs pūblica postulābat. Sed quam multōs fuisse putātis quī quae ego dōferrem nōn crēderent, quam multōs quī etiam défenderent? Ac sī illō sublātō dēpellī 35 ā vōbis omne perīculum iūdicārem, iam prōdem ego L. Catilinam nōn modo invīdiae meae, vērum etiam vitae perīculō sustulīssem. Sed cum vidērem, nē vōbīs quidem omnibus rē etiam tum probātā, si illum, ut erat meritus, morte multāssem, fore ut ēius sociōs invīdiā oppressus ē sequī non possem, rem hūc dēdūxī ut tum palam pūgnāre possētis, cum hostem apertē vidērōtis.

Quem quidem ego hostem, Quirītēs, quam vehemens forīs esse timendum putem, licet hinc intellegātis, quod etiam illud molestē ferō, quod ex urbe parum comitātus exierit. Utinam ille omnēs sēcum suās cōpiās édūxisset! Tongilium mihi édūxit, quem amāre in praepterā coeperat, Públicium et Minucium, quōrum aes aliēnum contrāctum in popīnā nūllum reī pūblicae mōtum adferre poterat; reliquit quōs virōs, quantō aere aliēnō, quam valentēs, quam nōbilēs!

**Cicero's contempt for the conspirators left in the city.**

3. Itaque ego illum exercitum prae Gallicānīs legiōni-bus et hoc dīlēctu, quem in agrō Picēnō et Gallicō Q.
Metellus habuit, et hīs cōpiīs quae ā nōbīs cotīdiē com-
parantur, māgnō opere contemnō, collēctum ex senibus
dēspērātis, ex agrestī lūxuriā, ex rūsticīs dēcoctōribus, ex
eīs quī vadimōnia dēserere quam illum exercitum mā-
luērunt; quibus ego nōn modo sī aciem exercītūs nostrī,
vērum etiam sī ēdictum prætōris ostenderō, concident.

Hōs quōs videō volitāre in forō, quōs stāre ad eūriam,
quōs etiam in senātum venīre, quī nitent unguentīs, quī
fulgent purpurā, māllem sēcum suōs militēs ēdūxisset; quī
sī hīc permanent, mementōte nōn tam exercitum illum
esse nōbīs quam hōs qui exercitum dēseruērunt perti-
mēscendōs. Atque hoc etiam sunt timendi magis, quod,
quid cōgitent, mē seīre sentiunt, neque tamen permovem-
tur.

Videō cui sit Āpūlia attribūta, quis habeat Etrūriam,
quīs agrum Picēnum, quis Gallicum, quis sībi hās urbānās
īnsidiās caedis atque incendiōrum dēpopōscerit. Omnia
superiōris noctīs cōnsilia ad mē perlāta esse sentiunt;
patefēcī in senātū hesternō diē. Catilīna ipse pertimum,
profūgit; hī quid exspectant? Nē illī vehementer errant,
sī illam meam prīstinam lēnitātem perpetuam spērant
futūram.

These men should follow Catiline.

4. Quod exspectāvī, iam sum adsecūtus, ut vōs omnēs
factam esse apertēconiūrātiōnem contrā rem pūblicam
viderētis; nisi vērō sī quis est, quī Catilīnae similēs cum
Catilīnā sentīre nōn putet. Nōn est iam lēnitātī locus;
sevēritātem rēs ipsa flāgitat. Unum etiam nunc concē-
dam: exeant, profiēscantur, nē patiēntur dēsideriō suī
Catilīnam miserum tābēscere. Dēmōnstrābō iter: Aurēliā
viā profectus est; sī accelerāre volent, ad vespērām cōn-
sequentur.

Ō fortūnātam rem pūblicam, sī quidem hanc sentīnām
urbis ēiēcerit! Ūnō, meherculē, Catilīnā exhaustō, levātā
mihi et recreāta rēs pūblica vidētur. Quid enim mali aut sceleris fingī aut cōgitāri potest quod nōn ille conscēperit? Quis tōta Italīā venēficus, quis gladiātor, quis latrō, quis sīcārius, quis parricīda, quis testāmentōrum subiector, quīs circumscīptor, quis gāneō, quis nepōs, quis adulter, quae mulier infāmis, quis corruptor iuventūtis, quis corrup- tus quis perditus invenīrī potest, quī sē cum Catilīnā nōn familiārissimē vīxisse fateātur? Quae caedes per hōsce annōs sine illō facta est, quod nefārium stuprum nōn per illum?


Fate overhangs these degenerate traitors.

5. Atque ut ēius diversa studia in dissimili ratiōne per- spicer possītis, nēmō est in lūdō gladiātōriō paulō ad faci-
nus audacior qui sē nōn intimum Catilīnae esse fāteātur, nēmō in scaenā levior et nēquior quī sē nōn ēiusdēm prope sodālem fuisse commemoret. Atque īdem tamen, stuprōrum et scelerum exercitātiōne adsuēfactus frīgore et famē et sītī et vigiliīs perferendīs fortis ab īstīs praedīcābātur, cum industriae subsidia atque īnstrūmenta virtūtīs in libīdīne audāciāque cōnsūmeret.

125 Hunc vērō sī secūtī erunt sūi comitēs, sī ex urbe exierint dēspērātōrum hominum flāgitiōsi gregēs, Ī nōs beātōs! Ī rem pūblicam fortūnātam! Ī praēclāram laudem cōnsulātūs meī! Nōn enim iam sunt mediocrēs hominum libīdinēs, nōn hūmānae ac tolerandae audāciae; nihil cōgitant nisi caedem, nisi incendia, nisi rapīnās. Patrimōnia sua profūdērunt, fortūnās suās obligāvērunt; rēs eōs iam prīdem dēseruit, fidēs nūper dēficere coepit; eadem tamen illa quae erat in abundantiā, libīdō permanet. Quodsī in vīnō et āleā cōmissātiōnēs sōlum et scortā 130 quaererent, essent illī quidem dēspērāndī, sed tamen essent ferendī; hoc vērō quis ferre possit, inertēs hominem fortissimīs virīs īnsidiārī, stultissimōs prūdentissimīs, eбриōsōs sōbriūs, dormientēs vigilantibus? Quī mihi accūbantēs in convivīus, complexī mulierēs impudīcā·, vīnō languidī, cōnfertī cibō, sertūs redimītī, unguentīs oblītī, dēbilitātī stuprīs ēructant sermōnibus suīs caedem bonōrum atque urbīs incendia.

Quibus ego cōnfidō impendēre fātum aliquod, et poenam iam diū improbitātī, nēquītiae, scelerī, libīdinī dēbitam aut īnstitāre iam plānē aut certē adpropinquare. Quōs si meas cōnsulātus, quoniam sānāre nōn potest, sustulerit, nōn breve nesciō quod tempus, sed multa saecula prōpāgārit reī pūblicae. Nūlla est enim nātiō quam pertimeōscāmus, nūllus rēx quī bellum populō Rōmānō facere possit. Omnia sunt externa ūnīus virtūtē terrā marīque pācāta; domesticum bellum manet; ĭntus īnsidiae sunt,
intus inclusum periculum est; intus est hostis. Cum luxuria nobis, cum amentiā, cum scelere certandum est. Huic ego mē bellō ducem profiteor, Quirītēs; suscipiō inimīcitīās hominum perditōrum! Quae sānāri poterunt, quācumque ratione sānābō; quae resecanda erunt, nōn patiar ad pernicium civitātis manēre. Proinde aut ex-eant aut quiēscant aut, sī et in urbe et in eādem mente permanent, ea quae merentur exspectent.

1 This illustration taken from a badly damaged Pompeian wall painting shows the Roman custom of reclining at a feast (accubantēs in conviviīs). In the foreground (almost obliterated) is a slave putting on his master’s shoe; another offers the wine cup; and a third supports a banqueter who is vīnō languidus.
Cicero narrates the arraignment of Catiline.

160 6. At etiam sunt quì dìcant, Quirìtès, à mē ëiectum in exsilìum esse Catiìnàm. Quod ego sì verbō adsequì possem, istōs ipsōs ëicerem quì haec loquuntur. Homō enim vidēlicet timidus aut etiam permodestus vōcem consulis ûerre non potuit; simul atque ire in exsilium iussus est, pāruit, ìvit.

Hesternō diē, Quirìtès, cum domī meae paene interfectus essem, senātum in aedem Ioìvì Statòris convocāvi, rem omnem ad patrēs conscriptōs dētuli. Quō cum Catilīnā vēnisset, quis eum senātōr appellāvit, quis salūtāvit, quis dēnīque ita aspexit ut perditum ëívem ac non potius ut importūnissimum hostem? Quīn etiam princeps eius ordinis partem illum subselliōrum ad quam ille accesserat nūdam atque inānem reliquērunt. Hīc ego vehemēns ille cōnsul qui verbō civēs in exsilium ëiciō quæsīvī à Catiìnā in nocturnō conventū apud M. Laecam fuisset necne. Cum ille homō audācisssimus cōscientiā convictus prīmō reticuisset, patefēci cētera; quīd eā nocte ëgisset, quīd in proximam cōnstituisset, quem ad modum esset eī ratio tōtius belλī dēscripta, ëdociū. Cum haesitātaret, cum tenērētur, quaeśivī quid dubitāret proficisçi eō quō iam prīdem pāraret, cum arma, cum secūrēs, cum fascēs, cum tubās, cum sīgna militāria, cum aquilām illum argenteam, cui ille etiam sacrārium domī suae fēcerat, scīrem esse praemissam. In exsilium ëiciēbam quem iam ingressum esse in bellum vidēbam? Etenim, crēdō, Mānlius iste centuriō, quī in agrō Faesulānō castra posuit, bellum populō Rōmānō suō nōmine indīxit, et illa castra nunc non Catiìnām ducem exspectant, et ille ëiectus in exsilium sē Massiliam, ut ìiunt, nōn in haec castra cōnferet.
A Roman Sacrifice, showing Soldiers carrying the Signa Militaria
(Notice also the aquila.)
Cicero is willing to endure unpopularity.

7. Ō condicionem miseram nōn modo administrandae, vērum etiam cōnservandae reī pūblicae! Nunc sī L. Catilīna cōnsiliis, labōribus, periculīs mēis circumclūsus ac dēbilitātus subitō pertimuerit, sententiam mūtāverit, dēseruerit suōs, cōnsilium bellī faciendī abiēcerit, et ex hoc cursū sceleris ac bellī iter ad fugam atque in exsilium converterit, nōn ille ā mē spoliātus armīs audāciās, nōn obstupefactus ac perterritus mēa diligentia, nōn dē spē cōnātūque dépulsus, sed indemnātus, innocēns in exsilium ēiectus ā cōnsule vi et minīs esse dicētur; et erunt qui illum, sī hoc fēcerit, nōn improbum sed miserum, mē nōn diligentissimum cōnsulem sed crūdēlissimum tyrannum exīstimārī velint!

Est mihi tantī, Quīrītēs, hūius invidiae falsae atque ini- quae tempestātem subīre, dum modo ā vōbīs hūius horri-
ORATIO IN CATILINAM SECUNDA


Six classes of men in Catiline's forces.

8. Sed ēūr tam diū dē ūnō hoste loquimur, et dē eō hoste quī iam fatētur sē esse hostem, et quem, quia, quod 225 semper volui, mūrus interest, nōn timeō; dē hīs, quī dissimulant, quī Rōmae remanent, quī nōbīscum sunt, nihil dicimus? Quōs quidem ego, sī ūllō modō fierī possit, nōn tam uleīscī studeō quam sānāre sībi ipsīs, plācāre reī publicae; neque id quārē fierī nōn possit, sī mē audīre 230 volent, intellegō. Expōnam enim vōbīs, Quirītēs, ex qui-bus generibus hominum istae cōpiae comparentur; deinde singulīs medicīnam cōnsilī atque įrātiōnis meae, sī quam poterō, adferam.
First: Men of wealth, unwilling to pay their debts.


Second: Debtors ambitious for political power.

9. Alterum genus est eōrum quī, quamquam premunitur aere alienō, dominātiōnem tamen exspectānt, rērum potīrī volunt; honōrēs, quōs quiētā rē públicā dēspērant, perturbātā sē cōsequī posse arbitrantur. Quibus hoc praecipiendum vidētur, ūnum scīliet et idem quod reliquīs omnibus, ut dēspērent sō id quod cōnāntur cōsequī posse; prīmum omnium mē ipsum vigilāre, adesse, prōvidēre reī públicae; deinde māgnōs animōs esse in bonis virīs, māgnam concordiam, māgnās praetereā cōpiās militum; deōs dénique immortālēs huic invictō populō, clāris simō imperiō, pulcherrimae urbi, contra tantam vim sceleris praesentēs auxilium esse lātūrōs. Quodsī iam sint id
quod summō furōre cupiunt adeptī, num illī in cinere urbis et in sanguine cīvium, quae mente cōnscelerātā ac nefāriā concupīvērunt, cōnsulēs sē aut dictātōrēs aut etiam rēgēs spērānt futūrōs? Nōn vident id sē cupere quod, sī adeptī sint, fugiōvō alicui aut gladiātōrī concēdī sit necesse?

Third: Sulla’s veterans, who hope for the spoils of another war.

Tertium genus est aetāte iam adfectum, sed tamen exercitātiōne rōbustum; quō ex genere iste est Mānlius cui nunc Catilīna succēdīt. Hī sunt hominis ex eis colōniis quās Sulla cōnstituit; quās ego ūniversās cīvium esse optimōrum et fortissimōrum virōrum sentiō, sed tamen eī sunt colōnī qui sē in īnspērātīs ac repentīnīs pecūniīs sūmptuōsīus īnsolementiūsque iactārunt. Hī dum aedificant tamquam beātī, dum praediīs lēctīs, famīliīs māgnīs, convīviīs apparātīs dēlectantur, in tantum aēs aliēnūm inciderunt, ut, sī salvi esse velint, Sulla sit eīs ab īnferīs excītandus; quī etiam nōnnullīs agrestēs, hominis tenuēs atque egentēs, in eam dem illum spem rapīnārum veterum impulērunt. Quōs ego utūsque in eōdem genere praedātorum dīreptōrum-
que pōnō. Sed eōs hōc moneō, dēsinant furere ac prōscripțiōnēs et dictātūrās cōgitāre. Tantus enim illōrum temporum dolor inūstus est cīvitātī ut iam ista nōn modo hominēs, sed nē pecūdēs quidem mihi passūrae esse videantur.

Fourth: Hopeless bankrupts.

10. Quārtum genus est sānē varium et mixtum et turbulentum; quī iam prīdem premuntur, quī numquam ēmergunt, quī partim inertiā, partim male gerendō negōtiō, partim etiam sūmptibus in vetere aere aliēnō vacillant; quī vadimōniis, iūdiciis, prōscripțiōne bonōrum dēfatīgātī, permulti et ex urbe et ex agrīs sē in illa castra cōnferre dicuntur. Hōsce ego nōn tam militēs ācrēs quam infitiā-tōrēs lentōs esse arbitror. Quī hominēs quam prīmum, si stāre nōn possunt, corruant, sed ita ut nōn modo cīvitās, sed nē vicīni quidem proximi sentiant. Nam illud nōn intellegō, quam ob rem, si vīvere honestē nōn possunt, perire tūrpiter velint, aut cūr minōre dolōre peritūrōs sē cum multīs, quam sī sōlī pereant, arbitrentur.
Fifth: Criminals.

Quintum genus est parricidarium, sicariorum, dēnique omnium facinorōsorum. Quōs ego ā Catilinā nōn revoco; nam neque ab eō dīvelli possunt, et pereant sānē in latrocinio, quoniam sunt ita multitū ut eōs carcer capere nōn possit.

Sixth: Catiline’s body-guard of effeminate debauchees.

Postrēmum autem genus est nōn sōlum numerō, vērum etiam genere ipsō atque vitā, quod proprium Catilinae est, dē ēius dilēctū, immō vērō dē complexū ēius ac sinū; quōs pexō capillō, nitidōs, aut imberbēs aut bene barbātōs vidētis, manicātīs et tālāribus tunicīs, vēlīs amīctōs, nōn togīs; quōrum omnis industria vítae et vigilandī labor in antelūcānīs cēnīs exprōmitur. In hīs gregibus omnēs āleātōrēs, omnēs adulterī, omnēs impūrī impudīcīque versantur. Hī puerī tam lepīdī ac dēlicātī nōn sōlum amāre et amāri, neque saltāre et cantāre, sed etiam sīcās vibrāre et spargere venēna didicērunt. Quī nisi exuēnt, nisi pierunt, etiamī Catilīna perierit, scītōte hoc in rē publicā sēmināriō Catilīnārum futūrum. Vērum tamen quid sibi īsti miserī volunt? Num suās sēcum mulierculās sunt in castra ductūrī? Quem ad modum autem illīs carēre poterunt, hīs praeertim iam noctibus? Quō autem pactō illī Appennīnum atque illās pruīnās ac nīvēs perferent? Nisi ideīrcō sē facilius hiemem tolerātūrōs putant, quod nūdī in convīviīs saltāre didicērunt.

The forces of the State contrasted with those of Catiline.

11. Ō bellum māgnō opere pertimēscendum, cum hanc sit habitūrus Catilīna scortōrum cohortem praeōtīriam! Instruite nunc, Quīriteś, contra ēam tam praeclārās Catilīnae cōpiās vestra praesidia vestrōsque exercitūs. Et prīnum gladiātōrī illī cōnfecētō et sauciō cōnsulēs imperā-
töresque veströs oppônite; deinde contrā illam naufra-
gorum elligam ac dēbilitātam manum flōrem tōtius Italiae
ac rōbur ędūcīte. Iam vērō urbēs colōniārum ac mūni-
cipīōrum respondēbunt Catilīnae tumultus silvestribus.
Neque ego cēterās cōpiās, ōrnāmenta, praesidia vestrā
cum illius latrōnis inopiā atque egestāte cōnferre dēbeō.

350 Sed si omissīs hīs rēbus quibus nōs suppeditāmur, eget
ille, senātū, equītibus Rōmānīs, urbe, aerāriō, vectīgāli-
bus, cūntā Italīā, prōvinciīs omnibus, exterīs nātiōnibus,
si hīs rēbus omissīs causās ipsās quae inter sē cōnflīgunt
contendere velīmus, ex eō ipsō quam valdē illī iaceant
intellegere possūmus. Ex hāc enim parte pudor pūgnat,
illīc petulantia; hīnī pudicitia, illīc stuprum; hīnī
fidēs, illīc fraudātiō; hīnī pietās, illīc seclusī; hīnī cōn-
stantīa, illīc fūror; hīnī honestās, illīc turpītūdō; hīnī
continentiā, illīc libīdō; dēnīque aequitās, temperantia,
fortitūdō, prūdentīa, virtūtēs omnēs certant cum iniōqui-
tāte, luxuriā, ignāviā, temperitāte, cum vitīs omnibus;
postrēmō cōpia cum egestāte, bona ratiō cum perdītā,
mēns sāna cum āmentiā, bona dēnīque spēs cum omnium
rērum dēspērātiōne cōnflīgit. In ēius mōdī certāmine ac
proeliō nōnne, si homīnum studia dēficiant, dī ipsī im-
mortālēs cōgant a bīs praeclārissimīs virtūtibus tot et
tanta vitia superāri?

The consul calls for vigilance, and warns traitors of punishment.

12. Quae cum ita sint, Quirītēs, vōs, quem ad modum
iam anteā dīxī, vestrā tēctā vigiliīs cūstōdiāisque dēfendite;
370 mihi, ut urbi sine vestrō mōtū ac sine ūllō tumultū sātis
esse praevidiō, cōnsultum atque prōvisum est. Colōnī
omnēs mūnicīpēsque vestrī certōrēs a mē factī dē hāc
nocturnā excursionē Catilīnae facile urbēs suās finēsque
dēfendent. Gladiātōrēs, quam sibi ille manum certissi-
mam fore putāvit, quamquam animō meliōre sunt quam
pars patriciorum, potestāte tamen nostrā continēbuntur. Q. Metellus, quem ego hoc prōspiciēns in agrum Gallicum Picēnumque praemīsi, aut opprimet hominem aut ēius omnēs mōtūs cōnātūsque prohibēbit. Reliquīs autem dē rebus cōnstituendīs, mātūrandīs, agendīs iam ad senātum referēmus, quem vocātī vidētis.

Nunc illōs qui in urbe remānsērunt, atque adeō quem contra urbis omniumque vestrum in urbe ā Catilīnā relictī sunt, quamquam sunt hostēs, tamen, quia sunt cīvēs, monītōs etiam atque etiam volō. Mea lēnitās adhūc si cui solūtior visa est, hōc exspectāvit, ut id quod latēbat ērumperet. Quod reliquum est, iam nōn possum oblivīscī meam hanc esse patriam, mē hōrum esse cōnsulem, mihi aut cum hīs vivendum aut prō hīs esse moriendum. Nūllus est portūs custōs, nūllus īnsidiātor viāe; si qui exīre volunt, cōnīvēre possum. Quī vērō sē in urbe commōverit, cūlius ego nōn modo factum, sed inceptum āūllum cōnātumve contra patriam dēprehenderō, sentiet in
hac urbe esse cōnsulēs vigilantēs, esse ēgregiōs magistrātūs, esse fortēm senātum, esse arma, esse carcerem, quem vindicem nefāriōrum ac manifestōrum scelerum māiōrēs nostri esse voluērunt.

Order will be restored by the aid of the gods.

13. Atque haec omnia sīc agentur, Quīritēs, ut máximae rēs minimō mōtū, pericula summa nūllō tumultū, bellum intestīnum ac domesticum post hominum memoriam crūdelissimum et máximum mē ūnō togātō duce et imperātore sēdētur. Quod ego sīc administrābō, Quīritēs, ut, sī ūllō modō fieri poterit, nē improbus quidem quisquam in hāc urbe poenam suī sceleris sufferat. Sed sī vis manifestae audāciae, sī impendēns patriae periculum mē necessāriō dē hāc animī lēnitāte dēdūxerit, illud profectō perficiam, quod in tantō et tam ĭnsidiōsō bellō vix optandum vidētur, ut neque bonus quisquam intereat paucōrumque poenā vōs omnēs salvi esse possītis.

Quae quidem ego neque meā prūdentiā neque ĭūmānīs
consilii frētus polliceor vōbis, Quirītēs, sed multīs et nōn 425
dubīs deōrum immortālium significationibus, quibus ego
ducibus in hanc spem sententiamque sum ingressus; quī
iam nōn procul, ut quondam solēbant, ab externō hoste
atque longinquō, sed hīc praesentēs suō nūmine atque
auxiliō sua templā atque urbīs tēcta défendunt. Quōs 430
vōs, Quirītēs, precāri, venerāri, implōrāre débētīs, ut, quam
urbem pulcherrīmam flōrentissimamque esse voluērunt,
hanc omnibus hostium cōpiās terrā marique superātīs à
perditissimōrum cīvīum nefāriō scelere défendant.
M. TULLI CICERONIS

ÖRÄTIÖ IN CATILINAM TERTIA

AD POPULUM

Cicero congratulates the Roman people on their safety.

1. Rem públicam, Quirítēs, vítamque omnium vestrum, bona, fortūnás, coniugēs liberōsque vestrōs, atque hōc domicilium clārissimī imperī, fortūnātissimam pulcher- rimamque urbem, hodiernō dīc deōrum immortālium 5 summō ergā vōs amōre, labōribus, cōnsiliīs, perīculīs mēīs ē flammā atque ferrō ac paene ex fācibus fātī ēreptam et vōbis cōnservātam ac restitūtam vidētis. Et sī nōn minus nōbīs iūcundī atque inlustrés sunt eī diēs quibus cōnservāmur quam illī quibus nāscimur, quod salūtis certa 10 laetitia est, nāscendī incerta condiciō, et quod sīne sēnsū nāscimur, cum voluptāte servāmur, profectō, quoniam illum quī hanc urbem condidit, ad deōs immortālēs bene- volentiā fāmāque sustulimus, esse apud vōs posterōsque vestrōs in honōre dēbēbit is quī eandem hanc urbem con-
ORATIO IN CATILINAM TERTIA

ditam amplificatamque servavit. Nam totī urbi, templis, delubris, tectīs ac moenibus subjecēs prope iam ignēs circumdatōsque restīnximus; idemque gladiōs in rem publicam dēstrictōs rettudimus mūcrōnēsque eōrum ā iugulis vestrīs dēiicimus. Quae quoniam in senātū inlustrā, patēfacta, comperta sunt per mē, vōbis iam expōnam breviter, Quīrītēs, ut et quanta et quam manēfēsta et quā ratioē invēstīgāta et comprehēnsa sint, vōs, qui et ignōrātis et exspectātis, scīre possētis.

Principiō, ut Catilīna paucīs ante diēbus ērūpit ex urbe, cum sceleris sui sociōs, hūiusce nefāriī bellī ācerrimōs ducēs, Rōmae reliquisset, semper vigilāvī et prōvidī, Quīrītēs, quem ad modum in tantīs et tam abscondītīs insidiīs salvī esse possēmus.

How written evidence was secured against the conspirators.

2. Nam tum, cum ex urbe Catilīnam ēiciebam (nōn enim iam vereor hūius verbi invidiam, cum illa magis sit timenda, quod vivus exierit), sed tum, cum illum extremārī volēbam, aut reliquam coniūrātōrum manum simul exitūram aut eōs qui restitissent, infirmōs sine illō ac debilēs fore putābam. Atque ego ut vīdī quōs māximō furōre et seclere esse inflammātōs sciēbam, eōs nōbiscum esse et Rōmae remānsisse, in eo omnēs diēs noctēsque consūmpsi, ut, quid agerent, quid mōlirentur, sentirem ac vidērem, ut, quoniam auribus vestrīs propter incredībilem māgnitudinem sceleris minōrem fidēm faceret orātiō mea, rem ita comprehenderem, ut tum dēmun animīs salūtī vestrae prōvidērētis, cum oculīs maleficium ipsum vidērētis. Itaque, ut comperī lēgātōs Allobrogum bellī Trānsalpīnī et tumultūs Gallicī excitandī causā ā P. Lentulō esse sollicitōs, eōsque in Galliam ad suōs civēs eōdemque itinere cum litterīs mandātīisque ad Catilīnam esse missōs, comi temque ēis adiūactum esse T. Voluturcium, atque huic
esse ad Catilinam datās litterās, facultātem mihi oblātam putāvi, ut, quod erat difficillimum, quodque ego semper optābam ab dis immortālibus, ut tōta rēs nōn sōlum ā mē, sed etiam ā senātū et ā vōbīs manifestō dēprehenderētur. 50

Itaque hesternō dīē L. Flaccum et C. Pompīnīnum praetōrēs, fortissimōs, atque amantissimōs rēs publicae virōs, ad mē vocāvi, rem exposuī, quid fieri placēret ostendi. Illī autem, qui omnia dē rēs publicā praeclāra atque ēgregia sentiērent, sine recūsātiōne ac sine ūllā morā negotiōm suscepérunt, et cum advesperās cereret, occultē ad pontem Mulvium pervēnērunt, atque ibi in proximīs villīs ita bipertītō fuērunt ut Tiberis inter eōs et pōns interesser. Eōdem autem et ipsī sine cūiusquam suspiciōne multōs fortēs virōs ēduxerant, et ego ex praefectūrā Reātīnā complūrēs 55 dēlēctōs adulēscentēs, quōrum operā ūtor adsiduē in rēs publicae praesidiō, cum gladiīs mīseram. Interim tertīā fērē vigiliā exāctā, cum iam pontem Mulvium māgnō comitātū lēgātī Allobrogum ingredī inciperent ūnāque Volturnius, fit in eōs impetus; ēdūcuntur et ab illīs gladiī et ā 65 nostrīs. Rēs praetōrībus erat nōta sōlis, ignōrābātur ā cēterīs.

How the conspirators and the Gallic envoys were brought before the Senate.

3. Tum interventū Pompīnī atque Flacci pūgna quae erat commissa sēdātur. Litterae, quae cumque erant in eō comitātū, integrīs signīs praetōrībus trāduntur; ipsī 70 comprehēnsī ad mē, cum iam dilūcēseret, dēdūcuntur. Atque hōrum omnium scelerum improbissimum māchinātōrem Cimbrum Gabinium statim ad mē nihil dum suspicantem vocāvi; deinde item arcessītus est L. Statilius et post eum C. Cethēgus; tardissimē autem Lentulus 75 vēnit, crēdō quod in litterīs dandīs praeter cōnsuētūdinem proximā nocte vigilārat.
Cum summis et clārissimis hūius civitātis virīs, qui audītā rē frequentēs ad mē māne convēnerant, litterās ā mē prius aperīri quam ad senātum dēferrī placēret, nē, si nihil esset inventum, temerē ā mē tantus tumultus iniec-
tus civitātī vidērētur, negāvī mē esse factūrum, ut dē per-
culō pūblīcō nōn ad cōnsilium pūblīcum rem integram dēferrēm. Etenim, Quīrtēs, si ea quae erant ad mē dēlāta, reperta nōn essent, tamen ego nōn arbitrābar in tantīs rēs pūblīcās periculīs esse mihi nīmiam diligentiam pertimēscendam. Senātum frequentem celerīter, ut vīdis-
tīs, coēgī. Atque interē statim admonītū Allobrogum C. Sulpiciūm praeātōrem, fortēm virum, mīsī, quī ex aedibus Cethēgī, si quid tēlōrum esset, efferret; ex quibus ille māximum sīcārum numerum et gladiōrum extulīt.

The testimony of Volturcius and the Gauls before the Senate.

4. Intrōdūxī Volturciūm sine Gallīs; fidem pūblīcām iussū senātūs dēdī; hortātus sum ut ea quae scīret sine timōre indicāret. Tum ille dīxit, cum vix sē ex māgni timōre recreasset, ā P. Lentulō sē habēre ad Catilīnām mandāta et litterās, ut servōrum praeāsidīō uterētur, ut ad urbem quam prīnum cum exercitū accēderet; id āutem eō cōnsiliō, ut, cum urbem ex omnibus partibus, quem ad modum discriptum distribūtumque erat, incendissent cae-
demque īnfinītām cīvīum fēcissent, praestō esset ille, qui et fugientēs exciperet et sē cum hīs urbānīs ducibus coniungeret.

Intrōductī autem Gallī iūs iūrandum sībi et litterās ab Lentulō, Cethēgō, Statilīō ad suam gentem data esse dixērunt, atque ita sībi ab hīs et ā L. Cassiō esse praescrip-
tum, ut equitātum in Italiam quam prīnum mitterent; pedestres sībi cōpiās nōn dēfutūrās. Lentulum autem sībi cōnfirmāsse ex fātīs Sibyllīnīs haruspicumque responsīs sē esse tertium illum Cornēliōm, ad quem rēgnum hūius urbīs
oratio in catilinam tertia

the cumaean sibyl with the sibylline books

atque imperium pervenire esset necesse; Cinnam ante se et Sullamuisse. Eundemque dixisse fatalem hunc annum esse ad interitum huius urbis atque imperi, qui esset annus decimus post virginum absolutionem, post Capitoli autem incensionem vicissimius. Hanc autem Cethegō cum ceteris controversiamuisse dixerunt, quodii Lentulo et aliis Saturnālibus caedem fieri atque urbem incendi placēret, Cethegō nimium id longum vidērētur.

four conspirators identify their letters and confess their guilt.

5. Ac nē longum sit, Quirītēs, tabellās prōferrī iussimus, quae à quōque dīcēbantur datae. Prīmō ostendimus Cethegō signum; cognōvit. Nōs linum incidimus, lēgi mus. Erat scriptum ipsius manū Allobrogum senātui et populō, sēsē quae eōrum lēgātīs cōnfīrmāset factūrum

1 See note on line 108, p. 42.
esse; őräre ut item illī facerent quae sibi eōrum lēgātī recēpissent. Tum Cethēgus, qui paulō ante aliquid tamen 

dē gladiīs ac sicīs quae apud ipsum erant dēprehēnsa re-
spondisset, dixissetque sē semper bonōrum fērrāmentōrum 

studīōsum fuisse, recitātīs litterīs dēbilitātus atque abiectus 
cōscientiā repente conticuit. Intrōductus est Statilius; 
cognōvit et signum et manum suam. Recitātae sunt 
tabellae in eandem fērē sententiam; cōnfessus est. Tum 
ostendī tabellās Lentulō et quaesīvī cognōsceretne signum. 

Adnuit. 'Est vērō,' inquam, 'nōtum quidem signum, 
imāgō avi tūi, clārissimī viri, quī amāvit ūnicē patriam et 
cīvēs suōs; quae quidem tē ā tantō scelere etiam mūta 
revocāre dēbuit.'

Leguntur eādem ratione ad senātum Allobrogum popu-

lumque litterae. Si quid dē hīs rēbus dīcere vellet, fēcī 
potestātem. Atque illo prīmō quidem negāvit; post 

autem aliquantō, tōtō iam indicīō expositō atque ēditō, 
surrēxit; quaesīvit ā Gallīs quid sibi esset cum eīs, quam 
ob rem domum suam vēnissent, itemque ā Volturciō. 

Quī cum illī brevīter cōstanterque respondissent, per 

quem ad eum quotiēnsque vēnissent, quaecīssentque ab 
eō nihilne sēcūm esset dē fātīs Sibyllīnīs locūtus, tum ille 

subītō scelere dēmēns, quanta cōscientiāe vis esset osten-
dit. Nam cum id posset īnfitiārī, repente praeter opīniōnem 
omnium cōnfessus est. Ita eum nōn modo ingenium 

illud et dicendī exercitātiō, quā semper valuit, sed etiam 

propter vim sceleris manifiēstī atque dēprehēnsī impuden-
tia, quā superābat omnēs, improbitāsque dēfēcit.

Volturcius vērō subītō litterās prōferrī atque aperīrī 
iubet, quās sibi ā Lentulō ad Catilīnam datās esse dīcēbat. 

Atque ibi vehementissīmē perturbātus Lentulus tamen et 
signum et manum suam cognōvit. Erant autem sine 
nōmine, sed ita: 'Quis sim, scīēs ex eō quem ad tē misī. 
Cūrā ut vir sis, et cōgitā quem in locum sis prōgressus.
Vide ecquid tibi iam sit necesse, et cura ut omnium tibi auxilia adiungas, etiam infimorum. Gabinius deinde intruductus, cum primo impudenter respondere coepisset, ad extremum nihil ex eis quae Galli insimulabant negavit.

Ac mihi quidem, Quirites, cum illa certissima visa sunt argumenta atque indicia sceleris, tabellae, signa, manus, denique unus cuiusque confessio; tum multo certiora illa, color, oculi, vultus, taciturnitas. Sic enim obstupuerant, sic terram intuebantur, sic furtim nonnumquam inter se aspiciabant, ut non iam ab aliis indicari, sed indicare se ipsi videreuntur.

The Senate praises the consuls and praetors, decrees custody for the traitors, and a solemn thanksgiving to the gods.

6. Indiciis expositis atque editis, Quirites, senatum consului de summa publica quid fieri placet. Dictae sunt a principibus acerrimae ac fortissimae sententiae, quas senatus sine illa varietate est seciitus. Et quoniam nondum est perscriptum senatus consultum, ex memoria vobis, Quirites, quid senatus censuerit expomam.

Primum mihi gratiae verbis amplissimis aguntur, quod virtute, consiliio, prvidentia mea res publica maximis periculis sit liberata. Deinde L. Flaccus et C. Pompfinus praetor, quod eorum opera fortii fideliique usus essem, merit ac iure laudantur. Atque etiam viri fortii, collaeae meo, laus impartitur, quod eos qui huius coniurationis participes fuissent, a suis et a rei publicae consiliis removisset. Atque ita censuerunt, ut P. Lentulus, cum se praetur abdicasset, in custodiarm trderetur; itemque uti C. Cethegus, L. Statilius, P. Gabinius, qui omnes praesent Erant, in custodiarm tradarentur; atque idem hoc decretum est in L. Cassium, qui sibi procurationem incendendae urbis depo poscerat; in M. Ceparium, cui ad sollicitandos pastores Apuliarm attributam esse erat indicatum; in P. Furium,
qui est ex eis colonis quos Faesulās L. Sulla dēdūxit; in Q. Annium Chilōnem, quī ūnā cum hoc Furiō semper erat in hāc Allobrogum sollicitātiōne versātus; in P. Umbrēnum, libertīnūm hominem, a quō primum Gallōs ad Gabinium perductōs esse cōnstābat. Atque ēā lēnītāte senātus est ūsus, Quirītēs, ut ex tantā coniūrātiōne tantāque hāc multitūdine domesticōrum hostium novem homīnum perditissimōrum poenā rē pūblicā cōnservātā, reliquōrum mentēs sānārī posse arbitrārētur.

Atque etiam supplicātiō dīs immortālibus prō singulāri eōrum merītō meō nōmine dēcrēta est, quod mihi prīnum post hanc urbem conditam togātō contigit, et hīs dēcrēta verbīs est, 'quod urbem incendiis, caede civēs, Italian bellō liberāsse.' Quae supplicātiō si cum cēterīs supplicatiōnibus cōnferātur, hoc interest, quod cēterae bene gestā, haec ūna cōnservātā rē pūblicā cōnstitūtā est. Atque illud quod faciendum prīnum fuit, factum atque trānsāctum est. Nam P. Lentulus, quamquam patefactīs indicīs, confessionibus suīs, iūdicīo senātūs nōn modo praetōris iūs, vērum etiam civīs āmiserat, tamen magistrātū sē abdicāvit, ut, quae religiō C. Mariō, clārrissimō virō, nōn fuerat, quō minus C. Glauciam, dē quō nihil nominātīm erat dēcrētum, praetōrem occideret, eā nōs religiōne in privātō P. Lentulō pūniendō liberārēmur.

The victory of the state could not have been won easily with Catiline in the city.

7. Nunc quoniam, Quirītēs, cōnscelerātissimī periculōsissimīque bellī nefāriōs ducēs captōs iam et comprehēnsōs tenētis, existimāre dēbētis omnēs Catilīnae cōpiās, omnēs spēs atque opēs hīs dépulsīs urbīs periculīs concidisse. Quem quidem ego cum ex urbe pellēbam, hōc prōvidēbam animō, Quirītēs, remotō Catilīnā nōn mihi esse P. Lentuli somnum nec L. Cassī adipēs nec C. Cethēgī
A Roman Sacrifice
(The Temple of Jupiter Capitolinus in the background)
furiōsam temeritātem pertimēscendam. Ille erat ūnus timendus ex istis omnibus, sed tam diū dum urbis moeni-
bus continēbātur. Omnia nōrat, omnium aditūs tenēbat; appelāre, temptāre, sollicitāre poterat, audēbat. Erat ei cōnsilium ad facinus aptum, cōnsiliō autem neque manus neque lingua deerat. Iam ad certās rēs cōnficiendās cer-
tōs hominēs dēlēctōs ac déscriptōs habēbat. Neque vērō, cum aliquid mandārat, cōnfectum putābat; nihil erat quod nōn ipse obīret, occurreret, vigilāret, labōrāret; frīgus, sitim, famem ferre poterat.

Hunc ego hominem tam ācrem, tam audācem, tam parā-
tum, tam callidum, tam in scelere vigilantem, tam in perditīs rēbus diligentem, nisi ex domestīcis ĭnsidiīs in castrēnse latrócinium compulīssem (dīcam id quod sentiō, Quīrītēs), nōn facile hanc tantam mōlem mali ā cervīcis vestris dépulīssem. Nōn ille nōbīs Sāturnālia cōnstituīs-
set, neque tantō ante exitī ac fātī diem rēi pūblīcae dē-
nūntiāvisset, neque commīsisset ut sīgnum, ut litterae suae testēs manifestī sceleris dēprehenderentur. Quae nunc illō absentē sic gesta sunt ut nūllum in pribāta domō fūrtum umquam sit tam palam inventum quam haec tanta in rē pūblīca coniūrātiō manifestō inventa atque dēprehēnsa est. Quodsi Catilīna in urbe ad hanc diem remānsisset, quamquam, quoad fuit, omnibus ēius cōnsiliōs occurrī atque obstiti, tamen, ut levissimē dīcam, dīmicandum nōbīs cum illō fuisset, neque nōs umquam, cum ille in urbe hostis esset, tantūs periculus rem pūblīcam tantā pāce, tantō ōtiō, tantō silentiō līberāssēmus.

The will of the gods was clearly shown.

8. Quamquam haec omnia, Quīrītēs, ita sunt ā mē ad-
mīstrāta, ut deōrum immortālium nūtū atque cōnsiliō et gesta et prōvisa esse videantur. Idque cum coniectūrā cōnsequī possimus, quod vix vidētur hūmānī cōnsili tan-
tārum rērum gubernātiō esse potuisse, tum vērō ita praesentēs hīs temporibus opem et auxilium nōbīs tulērunt, ut eōs paene oculīs vidēre possēmus. Nam ut illa omittam, visās nocturnō tempore ab occidente facēs ārdōrem-que caeli, ut fulminum ictūs, ut terrae mōtūs relinquam, ut omittam cētera, quae tam multa nōbīs cōnsulibus facta sunt, ut haec quae nunc fiunt, canere dī immortālēs vidērentur, hōc certē, quod sum dictūrus, neque praetermittendum neque relinquendum est.

Nam profectō memoria tenētis Cotta et Torquātō cōn-sulibus complūrēs in Capitōliō rēs dē caelō esse percussās, cum et simulācra deōrum dēpulsa sunt et statuae veterum hominum dēiectae et lēgum aera liquefacta et tāctus etiam ille qui hanc urbem condidit, Rōmulus, quem inaurātum in Capitōliō, parvum atque lactantem ūberibus lupīnis inhiāntem, fuisse meministis. Quō quidem tempore cum haruspīcīs ex tōtā Etrūriā convēnissent, caedēs
atque incendia et lægum interitum et bellum cívile ac
domesticum et tótiús urbis atque imperí occāsum adpro-
270pinquáre dīxerunt, nisi dí immortálēs, omní ratiōne plā-
cātī, suō nūmine prope fāta ipsa flexissent.

Itaque illōrum responsīs tum et lūdī per decem diēs
factī sunt, neque rēs ulla quae ad placandōs deōs pertinēret
praetermissa est. Ídemque iussērunt simulācrum Iovis
275facere māius et in excelsō conlocāre et contrā, atque antē
fuerat, ad orientem convertēre; ac sē spērāre dīxerunt, si
illud sīgnum, quod vidētis, sōlis ortum et forum cūriam-
que cōnspiceret, fore ut ea cōnsilia quae clam essent ini-
tra salūtem urbīs atque imperī, inlūstrārentur, ut ā
280senātū populōque Rōmānō perspicī possent. Atque illud
sīgnum conlocandum cōnsulēs illī locāvērunt; sed tanta
fuit operis tardītās, ut neque superiōribus cōnsulibus neque
nōbīs ante hodiernum diem conlocārētur.

A new statue to Jupiter, by whom the magistrates were guided.

9. Hic quis potest esse, Quirītēs, tam āversus ā vērō,
285tam praeceps, tam mente captus, qui neget haec omnia
quae vidēmus, praecipuēque hanc urbem deōrum immor-
tālium nūtū ac potestāte administrāri? Etenim cum
essim ita respōnsum, caedēs, incendia, interitum reī pū-
bleriae comparāri, et ea per cīvēs, quae tum propter māg-
290nitūdinem scelerum nōnnullīs incrēdibilis videbantur, ea
nōn modo cōgitāta ā nefāriīs cīvibus vērum etiam sus-
cepta esse sēnsistis. Illud vērō nōnne ita praesēns est ut
nūtū Iovis Optimī Māximī factum esse videātur, ut,
cum hodiernō diē māne per forum meō iussū et coniūrātī
295et eōrum indicēs in aedem Concordiae dūcerentur, eō
ipsō tempore sīgnum statuerētur? Quō conlocātō atque
ad vōs senātumque conversō, omnia quae erant contrā
salūtem omnium cōgitāta, inlūstrāta et patefacta vidistis.

Quō etiam māiōre sunt istī odiō suppliciōque dignī qui nōn
solum vestris domiciliis atque tectis, sed etiam deorum templis atque delubris sunt funestos ac nefarios ignes inferre conati. Quibus ego si me restitisse dicam, nimium mihi sumam et non sim ferendus. Ille, ille Iuppiter restitit; ille Capitolium, ille haec templa, ille cunctam urbem, ille vos omnès salvos esse voluit. Dis ego immortaliibus ducibus hanc mentem, Quirites, voluntatemque suscepi atque ad haec tanta indicia perveni. Iam vero ab Lentulō ceterisque domesticis hospibus tam dementer tantae res creditae et ignotis et barbaris commissaeque litterae numquam essent profectō, nisi ab dis immortaliibus huic tantae audaciae consilium esset ereptum. Quid vero? Ut homines Galli ex civitate male pacata, quae gens una restat, quae bellum populō Romano facere et posse et non nolle videatur, spem imperī
ac rērum māximārum ultrō sībi ā patrīciīs hominibus 335 oblātam neglegerent vestramque salūtem suīs opibus antepōnerent, id nōn divīnitus esse factum putātis, prae-
sertim quī nōs nōn pūgnandō, sed tacendō superāre
potuerint?

This conspiracy compared with former civil dissensions.

10. Quam ob rem, Quirītēs, quoniam ad omnia pul-
vīnāria supplicātiō décrēta est, celebrātōte illōs diēs cum
coniugibus ac liberīs vestris. Nam multī saepe honōrēs
dis immortālibus iūstī habitū sunt ac dēbitū, sed profectō
iūstīorēs numquam. Ėreptī enim estis ex crudēlissimō ac
miserrimō interītū; sine caede, sine sanguine, sine exer-
citū, sine dimicātiōne, togātī mē ūnō togātō duce et im-
perātōre vicistis. Etenim recordāmini, Quirītēs, omnēs
civilēs dissēnsiōnēs, nōn sōlum eās quās audīstis, sed eās
quās vōsmet ipsī meninistis atque vidīstis. L. Sulla. P.
Sulpicium oppressit; C. Marium, custōdem hūius urbis,
350 multōsque fortēs virōs partim ēīcēit ex cīvitāte, partim
interēmit. Cn. Octāvius cōnsul armīs expulit ex urbe
collēgam; omnis hic locus acervīs corporum et cīvium sanguine redundāvit. Superāvit posteā Cinna cum Mariō; tum vērō clārissimīs virīs interfecīs lūmina cīvitātīs extīncta sunt. Ultus est hūius victòriae crūdēlitātem posteā Sulla; nē dīci quidem opus est quantā dēminūtiōne cīvium et quantā calamitāte reī pūblicae. Dissēnsit M. Lepidus ā clārissimō et fortissimō virō Q. Catulō; attulit nōn tam ipsīus interitus reī pūblicae lūctum quam cēterō-rum.

Atque illae tamen omnēs dissēnsiōnēs erant ēius modī quae nōn ad dēlendam, sed ad commūtandam reṃ pūblicam pertinērent. Nōn illī nūllam esse reṃ pūblicam, sed in eā quae esset sē esse prīncīpēs, neque hanc urbem cōnflagrāre, sed sē in hāc urbe flōrēre voluērunt. Atque illae tamen omnēs dissēnsiōnēs, quārum nūlla exitium reī pūblicae quaeśīvit, ēius modī fuērunt ut nōn reconciliātiōne concordiae, sed interneciōne cīvium diūdīcātæ sint. In hōc autem ūnō post hominum memoriam māximō crū-delissimōque bellō, quāle bellum nūlla umquam barbaria
cum sua gente gessit, quo in bello lex haec fuit a Lentulo, Catilina, Cethego, Cassio constituta, ut omnès qui salva urbe salvi esse pos- sent, in hostium numerō ducerentur, ita mē gessi, Quirītēs, ut salvi omnēs conservārēmini; et, cum hostēs vestī tantum cīvium superfutura putās- sent quantum infinitae caedī restitisset, tantum autem urbis quantum flamma obīre non potuisset, et urbem et cīvēs integrōs incolumēsque servāvi.

Cicero's own reward.

11. Quibus prō tantīs rébus, Quirītēs, nūllum ego à vōbis praemium virtūtis, nūllum īnsignē honorīs, nūllum monumen- tum laudis postulō praeterquam hūius dieī memoriam sempi- ternam. In animēs ego vestīs omnēs triumphōs meōs, om- nia ornāmenta honorīs, monumenta glōriae, laudis īnsignia condī et conlocāri volō. Nihil mē mútum potest délectāre, nihil tacitum, nihil dēnique ēius modī quod etiam minus dignī adsequī possint. Memoriā vestrā, Quirītēs, nostrae
rēs alentur, sermōnibus crēscent, litterārum monumentīs inveterāscent et corrōborābuntur; eandemque diem intel-
legō, quam spērō aeternam fore, prōpāgātam esse et ad salūtem urbis et ad memoriam cōnsulātūs meī, ūnōque tempore in hāc rē pública duōs cīvēs exstitisse, quōrum alter finēs vestrī imperī nōn terrae sed caelī regionibus termīnāret, alter ēiusdēm imperī domicilium sēdēsque servāret.

Cicero's safety depends upon his fellow-citizens. His personal ambition.

12. Sed quoniam eārum rērum quās ego gessī, nōn eadem est fortūna atque condiciō quae illōrum qui externa bella gesserunt, quod mihi cum eīs vivendum est quōs vīcī ac subēgī, illī hostēs aut interfecēs aut oppressōs reli-
quērunt, vestrum est, Quīrītēs, si cēterīs facta sua rēctē prōsunt, mihi mea nē quandō obsint prōvidēre. Mentēs enim hominum audāciissimōrum scelerātæ ac nefāriae nē vōbīs nocēre possent, ego prōvidī; nē mihi noceant ves-
trum est prōvidēre. Quamquam, Quīrītēs, mihi quidem ipsī nihil ab istīs iam nocērī potest. Māgnum enim est in bonīs praesidium, quod mihi in perpetuum comparā-
tum est; māgna in rē públicā dignitās, quae mē semper tacita défendet, māgna vīs cōnscientiāe, quam qui negle-
gunt, cum mē violāre volent, sē ipsī indicābunt.

Est enim in nōbīs is animus, Quīrītēs, ut nōn modo nūllīus audāciāe cēdāmus, sed etiam omnēs improbōs ultrō semper lacessāmus. Quodsi omnis impetus domesticōrum hostium, dépulsus ā vōbīs, sē in mē ūnum converterit, vōbīs erit vīdendum, Quīrītēs, quā condiciōne posthāc eōs esse velētis, quī sē prō salūte vestrā obtulerint invidiae perīculīsque omnibus; mihi quidem ipsī quid est quod iam ad vitae frūctum possit adquirī, cum praesertim neque in honōre vestrō neque in glōriā virtūtis quicquam videam altius quō mihi libeat ascendere?
Illud perficiam profectō, Quirītēs, ut ea quae gessī in consulātū privātus tuear atque ōrnem, ut, si qua est invidia in conservandā rē públicā suscepta, laedat invidōs, mihi valeat ad gloriām. Dēnique īta mē in rē públicā trāctābō, ut meminerim semper quae gesserim, cūremque ut ea virtūte, nōn cāsū gesta esse videantur. Vōs, Quirītēs, quoniam iam est nox, venerātī Iovem illum, custōdem hūius urbīs ac vestrum, in vestra tēcta discēdite; et ea, quamquam iam est periculum dépulsum, tamen aequē ac priōre nocte custōdiis vigiliīisque défendite. Id nē vōbīs diūtius faciendum sit atque ut in perpetuā pāce esse possītis, prōvidēbō.
The consul declares his will to suffer for his country.

1. Videō, patrēs cōnscriptī, in mē omnium vestrum ōra atque oculōs esse conversōs; videō vōs nōn sōlum dē vestrō ac reī pūblicae, vērum etiam, si id dēpulsum sit, dē meō periculō esse sollicitōs. Est mihi iūcunda in malis et grāta in dolōre vestra ergā mē voluntās, sed eam, per 5 deōs immortālēs, dēpōnite atque oblītī salūtis meae dē vōbis ac dē vestrīs liberīs cōgitāte. Mihi si haec condiciō cōnsulātūs data est, ut omnēs acerbitātēs, omnēs dolōrēs cruciātūsque perferrem, feram nōn sōlum fortīter, vērum etiam libenter, dum modo mēs labōribus vōbis populōque Rōmānō dīgnitās salūsque pariātur.

Ego sum ille cōnsul, patrēs cōnscriptī, cui nōn forum, in quō omnis aequitās continētur, nōn campus cōnsulāribus auspiciīs cōnsecrātus, nōn cūria, summum auxilium omnium gentium, nōn domus, commune perfugium, nōn 15 lectus ad quiētem datus, nōn dēnique haec sēdēs honōris umquam vacua mortis periculō atque īnsidiās fuit. Ego multa tacui, multa pertuli, multa concessi, multa meō quōdam dolōre in vestrō timōre sānāvī. Nunc si hunc exitum cōnsulātūs meī dī immortālēs esse voluērunt, ut 20 vōs populumque Rōmānūm ex caede miserrimā, coniugēs liberōsque vestrōs virginēsque Vestālēs ex acerbissimā vexātiōne, templα atque dēlūbra, hanc pulcherrimam
A Corner in a Roman House
(Pompeii)
patriam omnium nostrum ex foedissimā flammā, tōtam Ītiam ex bellō et vāstitāte ēriperem, quaecumque mihi 25 üni prōpōnētur fortūna, subeātur. Etenim sī P. Lentulus suum nōmen inductus ā vātilibus fātāle ad perniciem reī pūblicae fore putāvit, ērur ego nōn laeter meum cōnsulātum ad salūtem populi Rōmānī prope fātālem exstitisse?

The Senate must provide for this crisis, which is the gravest of all.

2. Quārē, patrēs cōnscriptī, cōnsulite vōbīs, prōspicite patriae, cōnservāte vōs, coniugēs, libērōs fortūnāsque vestrās, populi Rōmānī nōmen salūtemque dēfendite; mihi 45 parcerē ac dē mē cōgitāre dēsinite. Nam prīmum dēbeē spērāre omnēs deōs quī huic urbi praeśident, prō eō mihi ac mēreor relātūrōs esse grātiam; deinde, sī quid obtigerit, aequō animō parātōque moriar. Nam neque turpis mors fortī virō potest accidere neque immātūra cōnsulāri nec 50 misera sapienti. Nec tamen ego sum ille ferreus, qui frātrīs cārissimī atque amantissimī praeśentis maerōre nōn
movear, hōrumque omnium lacrimīs ā quibus mē circum-
 sessum vidētis. Neque meam mentem nōn domum saepe
 revocat exanimāta uxor et abiecta metū filia et parvulus
 filius, quem mihi vidētur amplexī rēs pūblica tamquam
 obsidem cōnsulātūs mēi, neque ille qui exspectāns hūius
 exitum dīō stat in cōnspectū mēō, gener. Moveor hīs
 rēbus omnibus, sed in eam partem, utī salvi sint vōbīscum
 ōmnēs, etiamī mē vīs aliqūa oppresserīt, potius quam et
 illī et nōs ūnā rē pūblicae peste pereāmus.

Quārē, patrēs cōnscriptī, incumbite ad salūtem rēi
 pūblicae, circumspicite omnēs procellās quae impendent
 nisi prōvidētis. Nōn Ti. Gracchus, quod iterum tribūnus
 plēbis fierī voluit, nōn C. Gracchus, quod agrāriōs concae-
tāre cōnātus est, nōn L. Sāturnīnus, quod C. Memmiūm
 occīdit, in discrīmen aliqūod atque in vestrēs sevēritātīs
 iūdīcium addūcitur; tenentur eī qui ā urbis incendium,
ad vestram omnium caedem, ad Catilīnām accipiēndum
 Romae restitērunt; tenentur litterae, sīgna, manūs, dēni-
 que ūnius cūliusque cōnfessiō; sollicitantur Allobrogēs,
servītia excitantur, Catilīna arcessitur; id est inītum cōn-
siliun, ut interfēctis omnibus nēmō nē ā deplōrandum
 quidem populī Rōmānī nōmen atque ā lāmentandam
 tantī imperī calamitātem relinquātur.

The prisoners have been condemned, but their punishment must be
decided before nightfall.

3. Haec omnia indicēs dētulērunt, reī cōnfessī sunt,
vōs mutīs iam iūdiciis iūdicāvītis: prīnum quod mihi
grātiās ēgītis singulārihus verbīs, et mēa virtūte atque
diligentia perditōrum hominum consūrātiōnem patefactam
esse dēcrēvītis; deinde quod P. Lentūlum sē abdicāre
praetūrā coēgītis; tum quod eum et cēterōs, dē quibus
iūdicātīs, in custōdiam dandōs cēnsuistis; māximāque
quod mēō nōmine supplicātiōnem dēcrēvītis, quī honōs
togātō habitus ante mē est nēmini; postrēmō hesternō diē praemia légātīs Allobrogum Titōque Volturciō dedistis 85 amplissima. Quae sunt omnia ēius modī, ut eī quī in custōdiam nōminātim datī sunt, sine ūllā dubitātiōne ā vōbīs damnāti esse videantur.

Sed ego īnstituī referre ad vōs, patrēs cōnscripītī, tam-quam integrum, et dē factō quid iūdicētis et dē poenā 90 quid cēnseātīs. Illa praedīcam quae sunt cōnsulis. Ego māgnum in rē pūblicā versāri furōrem et nova quaedam miscēri et concitāri mala iam prīdem vidēbam; sed hanc tantam, tam exitiōsam habēri.coniūrātiōnem ā cīvibus numquam putāvī. Nunc quicquid est, quōcumque vestrae 95 mentēs inclinānt atque sententiae, statuendum vōbis ante noctem est. Quantum facinus ad vōs dēlātum sit vidētis. Huic sī paucōs putātis adfīnēs esse, vehementer errātīs. Lātius opiniōne dissēminātum est hoc malum; mānāvit nōn sōlum per Ŭtalianum vērum etiam trànsadīcit Alpēs, et 100 obscūrē serpēns multās iam prōvinciās occupāvit. Id opprīmi sustentandō aut prōlātandō nūllō pactō potest; quācumque ratiōne placet, celeriter vōbīs vindicandum est.

Silanus proposes death as a punishment; Caesar, life-imprisonment.

4. Videō duās adhūc esse sententiās: ūnam D. Silānī, qui cēnset eōs qui haec dēlēre cōnātī sunt, morte esse 105 multandōs; alteram C. Cæsarīs, qui mortis poenam re-movet, cēterōrum suppliciōrum omnēs acerbitātēs am-pectitur. Uterque et prō suā dignitāte et prō rērum māgnītūdine in summā severitāte versātur. Alter eōs qui nōs omnēs vital prūvāre cōnātī sunt, qui dēlēre im-110 perium, qui populī Rōmānī nōmen extinguēre, pūncetum temporis frūi vital et hoc commūnī spiritū nōn putat oportēre; atque hoc genus poenae saepe in improbōs cīvēs in hāc rē pūblicā esse ūsūrpātum recordātur. Alter intellegit mortem ab dīs immortālibus nōn esse 115
supplici causā cōnstitūtām, sed aut necessitātem nātūrae aut labōrum ac miseriarum quītem esse. Itaque eam sapientēs numquam invītī, fortēs saepe etiam libenter oppetīvērunt. Vincula vērō, et ea sempiterna, certē ad singulārem poenam nefāriī sceleris inventa sunt. Mūnicipiīs dispertīrī iubet. Habēre vidētur ista rēs iniquitātem, sī imperāre velīs; diificultātem, sī rogāre. Dēcernātur tamen, sī placet. Ego enim suspiciam et, ut spērō, reperiam quī id quod salūtis omnium causā statueritis, nōn putent esse suae dīgnitātīs recūsāre. Adiungit gra- vem poenam mūnicipiīs, sī quis eōrum vincula rūperit; horribilēs custōdiās circumdat et dīgnās scelere hominum perditōrum; sancit nē quis eōrum poenam quōs con- demnat aut per senātum aut per populum levāre possit; ēripit etiam spem, quae sōla hominēs in miserīūs cōnsōlārī solet. Bona praetereà publicāri iubet. Vitam sōlam relin- quit nefāriīs hominibus, quam sī ēripuisset, multōs ūnā dolorēs animī atque corporis et omnēs scelerum poenas adēmisset. Itaque ut aliqua in vītā formīdō improbīs esset posita, apud īnferōs ēius modī quaedam illī antiquī supplicia impīs cōnstitūtā esse voluērunt, quod vidēlicet intellegēbant ēīs remōtīs nōn esse mortem ipsam perti- mēscendam.

It would be safer to adopt the proposal of Caesar, the popular leader.

5. Nunc, patrēs conscriptī, ego meā videō quid inter-
sit. Si eritis secūtī sententiam C. Caesaris, quoniam hanc is in rē publicā viam quae populāris habētur secūtus est, fortasse minus erunt, hoc auctōre et cognitōre huīusce sententiae, mihi populārēs impetūs pertimēscendi; sīn illam alteram, nesciō an amplius mihi negoti contrahātur. Sed tamen meōrum periculōrum rationēs utilītās reī publicae vincat. Habēmus enim ā Caesarē, sicut ipsius dīgnitās et māiōrum ēius amplitūdō postulābat, sententiam
tamquam obsidem perpetuae in rem públicam voluntátis.
Intellēctum est quid interesset inter levitātem cōntiōnā-
tōrum et animum vērē populārem, salūtī populī cōnsulen-
tem.

Videō dē istīs quī sē populārēs habērī volunt, abesse
nōn nēminem, nē dē capite vidēlicet cīvium Rōmānōrum
sententiam ferat. Is et nūdius tertius in custōdiam cīvēs
Rōmānōs dedit et supplicatiōnem mihi dēcrēvit et indicēs 155
hesternō dīē māximīs praemiīs adfēcit. Iam hōc nēmini
dubium est, quī reō custōdiam, quaesītōrī grātulatiōnem,
indicē praemium dēcrērit, quid dē tōtā rē et causā iūdi-
cārit. At vērō C. Caesar intellegit lēgem Semprōnīam
esse dē cīvibus Rōmānīs cōnstitūtam; quī autem reī pūb-
licae sit hostis, eum cīvem esse nūllō modō posse; dēni-
que ipsum lātōrem Semprōnīae lēgis iniussū populī poenās
reī pūblicae dēpendisse. Īdem ipsum Lentulum, largī-
tōrem et prōdīgum, nōn putat, cum dē perniciē populī
Rōmānī, exitiō hūius urbīs tam acerbē, tam crūdēlīter 165
cōgitārit, etiam appellārī posse populārem. Itaque homō
mitissimus atque lēnissimus nōn dubitat P. Lentulum
aeternīs tenebris vinculisque mandāre et sancit in posterum
nē quis hūius suppliciō levandō sē iactāre et in perniciē
populī Rōmānī posthāc populāris esse possit. Adiungit 170
etiam pūblicatiōnem bonōrum, ut omnēs animī cruciātūs
et corporis etiam egestās ac mendicitās cōsequātur.

But no punishment can be too severe for crimes so unnatural.

6. Quam ob rem, sīve hōc statueritis, dederitis mihi
comītem ad cōntiōnem populō cárum atque iūcundum;
sīve Silānī sententiam sequī mālueritis, facile mē atque 175
vōs ā crūdēlātās vituperatiōne populō Rōmānō pūrgābō,
atque obtinēbō eam multō lēniōrem fuisse. Quamquam,
patrēs cōnscriptī, quae potest esse in tantī sceleris im-
mānitāte pūniendā crūdēlītās? Ego enim dē meō sēnsū
Nam ita mihi salvā rē públicā vōbīseum perfruī liceat, ut ego, quod in hāc causā vehementior sum, nōn atrōcitāte animī moveor (quīs enim est mē mītior?) sed singulāri quādam hūmānitāte et misericordiā. Videor enim mihi vidēre hanc urbem, lūcem orbīs terrārum atque arcem omnium gentium, subitō ūnō incendiō concidentem; cernō animō sepultā in patriā miserōs atque inspultōs acervōs cīvium; versātur mihi ante oculōs aspectus Četēgī et furor in vestrā caede bacchantīs.

Cum vērō mihi prōposuī rēgnantem Lentulum, sīcut ipse sē ex fātīs spērāsse cōnfessus est, purpurātum esse huic Gabīnium, cum exercītū vēnisse Catilīnam, tum lāmentātiōnem mātrum familiās, tum fugam virginum atque puerōrum ac vexātiōnem virginum Vestālium per-horrēscō; et, quia mihi vehementer haec videntur misera atque miseranda, idcīrcō in eōs quī ea perfecte voluērunt mē sevērum vehementemque praebō. Etenim quaerō sī quis pater familiās, liberīs suis ā servō interfectīs, uxōre occīsā, incēnsā domō, suppliciōm dē servō nōn quam acerbissimum sūmpserit, utrum is clēmēns ac misericors an inhūmānissimus et crūdēlissimus esse videātur. Mihi vērō importūnus ac ferreus, quī nōn dolōre et cruiciātū nocentis suum dolōrem cruiciātumque lēnierit. Sic nōs in hīs homīnibus, quī nōs, quī coniugēs, quī liberōs nostrōs trucidāre voluērunt, quī singulās ūnīs cūiusque nostrum domōs et hoc ūniversum rēi pūblicae domicilium dēlēre cōnāti sunt, quī id ēgērunt, ut gentem Allobrogum in vēstīgiīs hūius urbīs atque in cinere dēflagrātī imperī conlocārent, sī vehementissimi fuerimus, misericordēs habē-bimur; sīn remissiōrēs esse voluerimus, summae nōbīs crūdēlītātīs in patriae cīviumque perniciē fāma subeunda est.

Nisi vērō cuipiam L. Caesar, vir fortissimus et amantissimus rēi pūblicae, crūdēlior nūdius tertius visus est, cum
sorōris suae, fēminae lēctissimae, virum praeuentem et
audientem vītā prīvandum esse dīxit, cum avum suum
iusū cōnsulis interfectum filiumque ēius impūberem,
lēgātum ā patre missum, in carcere necātum esse dīxit.
Quōrum quod simile factum? Quod initum dēlendae reī
publīcae cōnsilium? Largītīonis voluntās tum in rē pūb-
licā versāta est et partium quaedam contentiō. Atque
illō tempore hūius avus Lentuli, vir clārissimus, armātus
Gracchum est persecūtus. Ille etiam grave tum vulnus
accēpit, nē quid dē summā rē pūblicā déminuerētur; hīc
ad ēvertenda reī pūblicae fundāmenta Gallōs aressit,
servitia concitat, Catilīnam vocat, attribuit nōs trucīdand-
dōs Cethēgō et cēterōs cīvēs interficiendōs Gabīnīo, urbem
īnflammandam Cassīō, tōtam Ītaliam vāstandam diripien-
damque Catilīnae. Vereāminī, cēnseō, nē in hōc scelere
tam immānī ac nefandō nimis aliqūid severē statuisse vid-
eāminī; multō magis est verendum nē remissiōne poenae
crūdēlēs in patriam quam nē sevēritāte animadversiōnis
nimis vehementēs in acerbissimōs hostēs fuissē videāmur.

The unanimity of good citizens of all classes.

7. Sed ea quae exaudiō, patrēs cōnscriptī, dissimulāre
non possum. Iaciuntur enim vōcēs, quae perveniunt ad
aurēs mēs, eōrum quī verērī videntur ut habeam satis
praeсидī ad ea quae vōs statueritis hodiernō dīc trānsigenda.
Omnia et prōvisa et parāta et cōnstitūta sunt, patrēs cōn-
scriptī, cum mēa summā cūrā atque diligentiā, tum etiam
multō māiore populī Rōmānī ad summum imperium retinen-
dum et ad communēs fortūnās cōnservandās voluntāte.
Omnēs adsunt omnium ōrdinum hominēs, omnium gener-
um, omnium dēnique aētātum; plēnum est forum, plēna
templa circum forum, plēni omnēs aditus hūius templī ac
locī. Causa est enim post urbem conditam haec inventa
sōla in quā omnēs sentīrent ūnum atque idem, praeter ēōs
qui, cum sibi vidèrent esse pereundum, cum omnibus potius quam sōli perire voluērunt.

Hōsee ego hominēs excipiō et sēcernō libenter, neque in improbōrum cīvium, sed in acerbissimōrum hostium numerō habendōs putō. Cēterī vērō, dī immortālēs! quā frequentiā, quō studiō, quā virtūte ad commūnem salūtem dignitātemque cōnsentiunt! Quid ego hīc equitēs Rōmānōs commenem? quī vōbis ita summam ōrdinis cōnsilique concēdent ut vōbiscum dē amōre reī pūblicae certent; quōs ex multōrum annōrum dissēnsiōne hūius ōrdinis ad societātem concordiamque revocātōs hodiernums diēs vōbiscum atque haec causa coniungit. Quam si conjunctiōinem, in cōnsulātū cōnsīrmātam meō, perpetuam in re pūblicā tenuerimus, cōnsīrmō vōbis nūllum posthāc malum cīvile ac domesticum ad ūllam reī pūblicae partem essē ventūrum. Parī studiō défendendae reī pūblicae convenisse videō tribūnōs aerāriōs, fortissimōs virōs; scribās item ūniversōs, quōs cum cāsū hīc diēs ad aerārium frequēntāset, videō ab exspectātiōne sortis ad salūtem commūnem essē conversōs. Omnis ingenuōrum adest multūtūdō, etiam tenuissimōrum. Quis est enim cui nōn haec templā, aspectus urbīs, possessīō libertātis, lūx dēnique haec ipsa et commūne patriae solum cum sit cārum tum vērō dulce atque iūcundum?

Even freedmen and slaves show their loyalty and good will.

8. Operae pretium est, patrēs cōnscriptī, libertīnōrum hominum studia cognōscere, quī suā virtūte fortūnam hūius cīvitātis cōnsecūtī vērē hanc suam esse patriam iūdicant, quam quīdam hīc nāti, et summō nāti locō, nōn patriam suam sed urbem hostium esse iūdicāvērunt. Sed quid ego hōsee hominēs ōrdinisque commemorō, quōs privātæe fortūnae, quōs commūnis ōres pūblica, quōs dēnique libertās, ea quae dulcissima est, ad salūtem patriae
M. TULLI CICERONIS

defendendam excitavit? Servus est nēmō qui modo tolerābili condicīone sit servitūtis, qui nōn audāciam cīvium perhorrescat, qui nōn haec stāre cupiat, qui nōn quantum audet et quantum potest cōnferat ad commūnem salūtem voluntātis.

Quārē si quem vestrum forte commovet hōc, quod auditorum est, lēnōnem quendam Lentulī concursāre circum tabernās, pretiō spērāre sollicitāri posse animōs egentium atque imperitōrum, est id quidem coeptum atque temptātum, sed nullī sunt inventī tam aut fortūnā miserī aut voluntāte perditī, qui nōn illum ipsum sellae atque operis et quaeōstūs cotidiānī lo cum, qui nōn cubīle ac lectulum suum, qui dēnique nōn cursum hunc ōtiosum vitae suae salvum esse velint. Multō vērō māxima pars eōrum qui in tabernās sunt, immō vērō (id enim potius est dīcendum) genus hoc āniversum amantissimum est ōtī. Etenim omne īnstrumēntum, omnis opera atque quaeōstus frequentiā cīvium sustentātur, alitūr ōtīō; quōrum si quaeōstus occlusūs tabernās minūi solet, quid tandem incōnsīs futūrum fuit?

Quae cum ita sint; patrēs cōnscripīti, vōbīs populi Rōmānī prae sidia nōn dé sunt; vōs nē populō Rōmānō deesse videāmini prō vidēte.

The foundation of the government must never hereafter be shaken.

9. Habetis cōnsulem ex plurīmis periculīs et īnsidiīs atque ex mediā morte nōn ad  vitam suam, sed ad salūtem vestram reservātum. Omnēs ōrdinēs ad cōnservandam rem pūblicam mente, voluntāte, studiō, virtūte, vōce cōnsentiunt. Obsessa facibus et tēlis impiae comitūriōnīs vōbīs supplex manūs tendit patria commūnis; vōbīs sē, vōbīs vitam omnium cīvium, vōbīs arcēm et Capitōlium, vōbīs ārās Penātium, vōbīs illum īgnem Vestae sempiternum, vōbīs omnium deōrum templā atque délibra, vōbīs
mūrōs atque urbīs tēcta commendat. Praeterea dē vestrā 310 vitā, dē coniugum vestrārum atque liberōrum animā, dē fortūnīs omnium, dē sēdibus, dē focīs vestrīs hodiernō diē vōbīs iūdicandum est.

Habetīs ducem memorem vestrī, oblītum suī, quae nōn semper facultās datur; habētīs omnēs ōrdīnēs, omnēs 315 homīnēs, ūniversum populum Rōmānum, id quod in civīlī causā hodiernō diē prīnum vidēmus, ūnum atque idem sentientem. Cōgitāte quantīs laborībus fundātum imperiūm, quantā virtūte stabilitātēm libertātem, quantā deōrum benignitāte auctās exageratāsque fortūnās, ūna nox 320 paene dēlērit. Id nē umquam posthāc nōn modo cōnficī, sed nē cōgitārī quidem possit ā civibus, hodiernō diē prōvidendum est. Atque haec, nōn ut vōs, quī mihi studiō paene praecurrītis, excitārem, locūtus sum, sed ut mea vōx, quae dēbet esse in rē pūblicā prīnceps, officiō 325 functa cōnsulārī vidērētūr.
Whatever may befall the consul, he will never repent of his course.

10. Nunc, antequam ad sententiam redeō, de mē pauca dīcam. Ego, quanta manus est coniūrātōrum, quam vidētis esse permāgnam, tantam mē inimīcōrum multitūdinem suscēpisse videō; sed eam esse iūdicō turpem et īnfīrmam et abiectam. Quodsī alquando alicūius furōre et scelere concitāta manus ista plūs valuerit quam vestra ac reī publicae dignitās, mē tamen meōrum factōrum atque consiliōrum numquam, patrēs conscriptī, paenitēbit. Etenim mors, quam illī fortasse mīnantur, omni-bus est parāta; vitae tam laudem, quantā vōs mē vestrēs dēcrētis honestās, nēmō est adsecūtus. Cēterīs enim bene gestā, mihi ūnī cōnservātā rē pūblicā grātulātiōnem dēcrēvistis.

Sit Scipio clārus ille, cūius consiliō atque virtūte Hannibal in Āfricam redīre atque Itāliā dēcēdere coāctus est; ornētur alter eximiā laude Africānus, quī duās urbēs huic imperiō infēstissimās, Carthagīnem Numantiumque, dēlēvit; habeātur vir egregius Paulus ille, cūius currum rēx potentissimus quondam et nōbilissimus Persēs honestāvit; sit aeternā glōriā Marius, quī bis Italiam obsidiōne et
metū servitūtis liberāvit; antepōnātur omnibus Pompēius, cūius rēs gestae atque virtūtēs īsdem quibus sōlis cursus regiōnibus ac terminis continentur; erit profectō inter hōrum laudēs aliquid loci nostrae glōriae, nisi forte māius est patefacere nōbis prōvinciās quō exīre possīmus, quam cūrāre ut etiam illī qui absunt habeant quō victōrēs rever-tantur.

Quamquam est ūnō locō condiciō melior externae victōriāe quam domesticae, quod hostēs aliēnigenae aut oppressi serviunt aut receptī in amīcitiam beneficiō sē oblīgātōs putant; qui autem ex numerō cīvium, dēmentiā alīquā dēprāvātī, hostēs patriae semel esse coeptērunt, ēōs cum ā permiciē reī pūblicae reppuleris, nec vi coērcēre nec beneficiō plācāre possīs. Quārē mihi cum perditīs cīvibus aeternum bellum susceptum esse videō. Id ego vestrō bonōrumque omnium auxiliō memoriaeque tantōrum periculōrum, quae nōn modo in hōc populo qui servātus est, sed in omnium gentium sermōnibus ac mentibus semper haerēbit, ā mē atque ā meis facile prōpulsārī posse cōnfīdō. Neque ūlla prosectō tanta víis reperiētur, quae coniunctīōnem vestram equitumque Rōmānōrum et tantam conspīrātiōnem bonōrum omnium cōnfringere et labēfactāre possit.

Cicero asks for nothing but the recollection of his consulship, and protection for his son.

11. Quae cum ita sint, prō imperiō, prō exercitū, prō prōvinciā quam neglēxi, prō triumphō cēterīisque laudīs īnsignibus, quae sunt ā mē propter urbis vestraeque salūtis custōdiam repudiāta, prō clientēlis hospitūīisque prō- vincīālibus, quae tamen urbānīs opibus nōn minōre labōre tueor quam comparō, prō hīs igitur omnibus rēbus, prō meis in vōs singularībus studiis, prōque hāc quam perspicitis ad cōnservandam rem pūblicam diligentiā, nihil ā
vōbis nisi hūius temporis totiusque mei cōnsulātūs memoriam postulō; quae dum erit in vestrīs fixa mentibus, tūtissimō mē mūrō saeptum esse arbitrabor. Quod sī meam spem vīs improbōrum fefellerit atque superāverit, commendō vōbis parvum meum filium, cui profectō sātis erit praesidī nōn sōlum ad sālūtem vērum etiam ad dīgnitātem, sī ēius, quī haec omnia suō sōlius periculō cōnservārit, illum filium esse memineritis.

Quāpropter dē summā sālūte vestrā populīque Rōmānī, dē vestrīs coniugibus ac liberīs, dē āris ac focīs, dē fānīs atque templīs, dē totius urbis tēctīs ac sēdibus, dē imperiō ac libertāte, dē sālūte Itāliae, dē unīversā rē pūblicā dēcernīte diligentēr, ut īnstituīstis, ac fortīter. Habetis eum cōnsulem quī et pārēre vestrīs dēcrētīs nōn dubitēt et ea quae statueritis, quoad vīvet, dēfendēre et per sē ipsum praestaēre possit.
Marcus Tullius Cicero
(From the bust in the Uffizi)
Cicero’s first address before the popular assembly.

1. Quamquam mihi semper frequens conspectus vester multō iucundissimus, hīc autem locus ad agendum amplissimus, ad dicendum ornātissimus est visus, Quirītēs, tamen hoc adītū laudis, qui semper optimō cuique maxīmē patuit, nōn mea mē voluntās adhūc, sed vitae meae 5 rationēs ab ineunte aetāte susceptae prohibuērunt. Nam cum antē per aetātem nōndum hūius auctōritātem locī attingere audērem statuerēmque nihil hūc nisi perfectum ingenīō, ūlabōratūm industriā adferē oportēre, omne meum tempus amīcōrum temporibus trānsmittendum putāvī. 10 Íta neque hīc locus vacuus umquam fuit ab eīs qui vestram causam dēfenderent, et meus labor in privātōrum periculīs castē integṛēque versātus ex vestrō iūdiciō fruētum est amplissimum cōnsecūtus. Nam cum propter dilātiōnem comitīōrum ter praetor prīmus centurīs cūntīs renūntiā- 15 tus sum, facile intellēxi, Quirītēs, et quid dē mē iūdicārētis et quid aliīs praescriberētis.

Nunc cum et auctōritātis in mē tantum sit, quantum vōs honōribus mandandīs esse voluīstis, et ad agendum facultātis tantum, quantum homīni vigilantī ex forēnsī 20 ūsū prope cotīdīāna dicendī exercitātiō potuit adferre, certē et si quid auctōritātis in mē est, apud eōs ētār qui eam mihi dedērunt, et si quid in dicendō cōnsequi possum,
eiis ostendam potissimum quī eī quoque reī frūctum suō 25iūdiciō tribuentām esse dūxērunt. Atque illud in primīs mihi laetandum iūre esse videō, quod in hāc īnsolītā mihi ex hōc locō ratione dicendī causa tālis oblāta est in quā ōrātiō deesse nēminī possit. Dicendum est enim dē Cn. Pompeī singulāri ex-imiaque virtūte; hūius autem ōrātiōnis diffi-cilius est exitum quam principium inveniēre. Ita mihi nōn tam cōpia quam modus in dic-endō quaerendō est.

2. Atque ut inde ōrātiō mea proficiscātur unde hæc omnis causa dūcitur, bellum grave et periculōsum vestrīs vectīgālibus ac sociīs 45ā duōbus potentissimīs régibus infertur, Mithridāte et Tigrāne, quōrum alter relictus, alter lacessitus occāsiōnem sibi ad occupandam Asiam oblātam esse arbitrātur. Equitibus Rōmānīs, honestissimīs virīs, adferuntur ex Asiā cotīdiē litterae, quōrum māgnae réṣ aguntur in 50vestrīs vectīgālibus exercendīs occupātāe; qui ad mē, prō necessitūdine quae mihi est cum illō őrdine, causam reī publicae periculaque rérum suārum detulērunt; Bithýniae, quae nunc vestra prōvincia est, vicīs exūstōs
esse complürēs; rēgnum Ariobarzānis, quod fīnitimum est vestrīs vectīgālibus, tōtum esse in hostium potestāte. L. Lūcullum māgnīs rēbus gestīs ab eō belliō discēdere; huic quī successerit nōn satis esse parātum ad tantum bellum administrandum; ūnum ab omnibus sociīs et cīvibus ad id bellum imperātōrem dépōsequī atque expētī, eundem hunc ūnum ab hostibus metui, praetereā nēminem.

Causa quae sit vidētis; nunc quīd agendum sit consīderāte. Prīnum mihi vidētur dē genere bellī, deinde dē māgnitūdine, tum dē imperātōre délīgendō esse dicendum. Genus est enim bellī ēius modī quod māximē vestrōs animōs excitāre atque inflammāre ad persequendī studium dēbeat; in quō agitur populī Rōmānī glōria, quae vōbis ā māioribus cum māgna in omnibus rēbus tum summa in rē militārī trādīta est; agitur salūs sociōrum atque amīcōrum, prō quā multa māiōrēs vestrī māgna et graviō bella gessērunt; aguntur certissima populī Rōmānī vectīgālia et māxima, quibus āmissīs et pācis ōrnāmenta et subsidia bellī requīrētis; aguntur bona multitūrum cīvīrum, quibus est ā vōbis et ipsōrum et reī publicae causā consulendum.

The honor of Rome must be maintained.

3. Et quoniam semper appetentēs glōriae praeter cēt et erās gentēs atque avidī laudis fuistis, dēlenda est vōbis illa macula Mithridāticō bellō superiōre concepta, quae penitus iam īnsēdit ac nimīs inveterāvit in populī Rōmānī nōmine, quod is quī ūnō diē, tōtā in Asiā, tot in cīvitātibus, ūnō nūntiō atque ūnā significātiōne litterārum cīvēs Rōmānōs omnēs necandōs trucidandōsque dēnotāvit, nōn modo adhuc poenam nūllam suō dīgnam scelere suścēpit, sed ab illō tempore annum iam tertium et vīcēsimum rēgnat; et ita rēgnat ut sē nōn Pontī neque Cappadociae latebrīs occultāre velit, sed ēmergere ex patriō rēgnō atque in vestrīs vectīgālibus, hōc est in Asiāe lūce, versāri.
Etenim adhúc ita nostrī cum illō rēge contendērunt imperātōrēs ut ab illō īnsignia victūriae, nōn victūriam re-portārent. Triumphāvit L. Sulla, triumphāvit L. Mūrēna de Mithridāte, duo fortissimī virī et summī imperātōrēs, sed ita triumphārunt ut ille pulsus superātusque rēg-nāret. Vērum tamen illīs imperātōribus laus est tribuenda quod ēgērunt, venia danda quod reliquērunt. propterea quod ab eō bellō Sullam in Ītaliam rēs pūblica, Mūrēnam Sulla revocāvit.

The strength of Mithridates. The services of Pompey and Lucullus.

4. Mithridātēs autem omne reliquum tempus nōn ad oblivionem veteris bellī, sed ad comparātiōnem novī contulit; qui posteā, cum māximās aedificāsset ōrnāssētque classēs exercitusque permāgnōs quibuscumque ex genti-bus potuisset comparāssēt, et sē Bosporānīs, fīnitimīs suīs, bellum inferre simulāret, ūsque in Hispāniam lēgātōs ac litterās mīsit ad eōs ducēs quibuscum tum bellum gerē-bāmūs, ut, cum duōbus in locīs disiūncēssētīs māximē-que diversīs ūnō cōnsilīō ā bīnīs hostium cōpiūs bellum

1 Notice the captives kneeling; the crown and the palm, both em-blematic of victory.
DE IMPERIO POMPEI ORATIO

terra marique gereretur, vōs ancipitī contentiōne districtī 105
dē imperiō dīmicārētis.

Sed tamen alterius partis perīculum, Sertōriānae atque
Hispāniēnsis, quae multō plūs ērīmāmentī ac rōboris habē-
bat, Cn. Pompeī divīnō cōnsiliō ac singulāri virtūte dépul-
sum est; in alterā parte ita rēs ā L. Lūcullō, summō virō, 110
est administrāta, ut initia illa rērum gestārum māgna
atque praeclāra nōn fēlicītāti ēius sed virtūtī, haec autem
extrēma, quae nūper accidērunt, nōn culpae sed fortūnae
tribuenda esse videantur. Sed dē Lūcullō dicam aliō locō,
et ita dicam, Quirītēs, ut neque vēra laus ēī détrācta ōrā-
tiōne meā neque falsa adficta esse videātur; dē vestri
imperi dignitāte atque gloriā, quoniam īs īstōs ēxōrsus
ōrātiōnis meae, vidēte quem vōbis animum suspiciendum
putētis.

The allies of Rome are in danger; they silently appeal for Pompey's
aid.

5. Maiōrēs nostrī saepe mercātōribus aut nāviculāriīs 120
nostrīs iniūriōsius trabōtātīs bella gessērant; vōs, tot mili-
bus cīvium Rōmānōrum ūnō nūntiō atque ūnō tempore
necātīs, quō tandem animō esse dēbētis? Lēgātī quod
erant appellātī superbius, Corinthum patrēs vestrī, tōtius
Gracciae lūmen, exstinctum esse voluērant; vōs eum 125
rēgem inultum esse patiēmini, quī lēgātum populī Rō-
mānī cōnsulārem vinculīs ac verberibus atque omnī sup-
pliiciō excruciātum necāvit? Illī libertātem imminūtām
cīvium Rōmānōrum nōn tulērunt; vōs ēreptam vitam
neglegētis? Iūs lēgātiōnis verbō violātum illī persecūtī 130
sunt; vōs lēgātum omnī suppliiciō interfectum relinquētis?
Vidēte nē, ut illīs pulcherrīmum fuit tantam vōbīs imperī
gloriam trādere, sic vōbīs turpissimum sit id quod accēpis-
tis, tuērī et cōnservāre nōn posse.

Quid? Quod salūs sociōrum summum in perīculum ac 135
discrīmen vocātur, quō tandem animō ferre dēbētis? Rēgnō est expulsus Ariobarzānēs rēx, socius populī Rō-
mānī atque amīcus; imminent duo rēgēs tōtī Asiae nōn sōlum vōbīs inimīcissimī, sed etiam vestrīs sociīs atque 140 amīcis; cīvitātēs autem omnēs cūntā Asia atque Graeciā vestrum auxilium expectāre propter periculī māgnitūdi-
inem cōguntur; imperātōrem ā vōbīs certum dēposcere, cum praesertim vōs alium mīseritis, neque audent neque sē id facere sine summō periculō posse arbitrāntur. Vident 145 et sentiunt hoc idem quod vōs, įnum virum esse in quō summa sint omnia, et eum propter esse, quō etiam carent aegrius; cūius adventū ipsō atque nōmine, tametsī ille ad maritimum bellum vēnerit, tamen impecētūs hostium repressōs esse intellegunt ac retardātōs. Hi vōs, quoniam 150 liberē loquī nōn licet, tacitē rogant ut sē quoque, sīcūt cēterārum prōvinciārum sociōs, dignōs existimētis quōrum salūtem tālī virō commendētis; atque hoc etiam magis, quod cēterōs in prōvinciam ēius modī hominēs cum im-
periō mittīmus, ut etiamī ab hoste dēfendant, tamen 155 ipsōrum adventūs in urbēs sociōrum nōn multum ab hos-
tīlī expūgnātiōne differant. Hunc audiēbant antea, nunc prae sentem vident tantā temperantīā, tantā mānsuē-
tūdine, tantā hūmānitāte, ut eī beātissimī esse videantur, apud quōs ille diūtissimē commorātur.

The revenues of the state are imperiled.

6. Quārē si propter sociōs, nūlā ipsī iniūriā lacesṣitī, māiōrēs nostrī cum Antiochō, cum Philippō, cum Aetōlīs, cum Poenīs bella gessērunt, quantō vōs studiō convenit iniūriīs prōvocātōs sociōrum salūtem ūnā cum imperī vestrī dignitāte dēfendere, praesertim cum dē māximīs 165 vestrīs vectīgālibus agātur? Nam cēterārum prōvinciārum vectīgālia, Quirītēs, tanta sunt ut eīs ad ipsās prōvinciās
tūtandās vix contentī esse possīmus; Asia vērō tam opīma est ac fertilis, ut et übertāte agrōrum et varietāte frūctuolum et māgnitūdine pāstiōnis et multitūdine eārum rērum quae exportentur facile omnibus terrīs antecellat. 170 Itaque haec vōbīs prōvincia, Quīrītēs, si et belli üstitātem et pācis dignitātem retinēre vultis, nōn modo ā calamitāte sed etiam ā metū calamitātīs est défendenda. Nam in cēterīs rēbus cum vēnit calamitās, tum détrimentum accipitur; at in vectīgālibus nōn sōlum adventus malī sed etiam metus ipse adfert calamitātem. Nam cum hostīum cópiae nōn longē absunt, etiamīi irruptīō nūlla facta est, tamen pecuāria relinquitur, agrī cultura déserrit, mercātūrum nāvigātiō conquīēscit. Ita neque ex portū neque ex decumīs neque ex scriptūrā vectīgāl cōnservārī potest; 180 quārē saepe tōtīus annī frūctus ūnō rūmōre periculi atque ūnō belli terrōre āmīttitur.

Quō tandem animō esse existīmātīs aut eōs qui vectīgālia nōbīs pēnsitant, aut eōs qui exercent atque exigunt, cum duo rēgēs cum máximīs cópiīs propter adsīnt, cum 185 ūna excursiō equītātūs perbrevī tempore tōtīus annī vectīgāl auferre possit, cum pūblicānī familiās máximās quās in saltibus habent, quās in agrīs, quās in portūbus atque custōdiās, māgnō periculō sē habēre arbitrentur? Putātisne vōs illīs rēbus fruī posse, nisi eōs qui vōbīs frūctui 190 sunt cōnservārītīs nōn sōlum, ut ante dīxī, calamitāte sed etiam calamitātīs formīdine liberātōs?

The private fortunes of Roman citizens are affected.

7. Ac nē illud quidem vōbīs neglegendum est, quod mihi ego extrēmum prōposueram cum essem dē belli genere dictūrus, quod ad multōrum bona civium Rō-195 mānōrum pertinet; quōrum vōbīs prō vestrā sapientiā, Quīrītēs, habenda est ratiō diligenter. Nam et pūblicānī,
M. TULLI CICERONIS

hominēs honestissimi atque ērnātissimi, suās ratīōnēs et cōpiās in illam prōvinciam contulērunt, quōrum ipsōrum per sē rēs et fortūnae vōbīs cūrae esse dēbent. Etenim si vectīgālia nervōs esse rei publicae semper dūximus, eum certē ērdīnum qui exercet illa fīrmāmentum cēterōrum ērdīnum rēctē esse dīcemus.

Deinde ex cēterīs ērdīnibus hominēs gnāvī atque in-205 dustriī partim ipsī in Asiā negotiāntur, quibus vōs absen-
tibus cōnsulere dēbētis, partim eōrum in eā prōvinciā pecūniās māgnās conlocātās habent. Est igitur hūmāni-
tātīs vestrae māgnōm numerum eōrum cīvīum calamītātē prohibēre, sapientiāe vidēre multōrum cīvīum calamītā-
tem a rē publicā séiūncetam esse nōn posse. Etenim prī-
mum illud parvī rēfert, nōs ēpublicānīs omīssīs vectīgālia posteā victōriā recuperāre; neque enim ēsdem redimendī facultās erit propter calamītātem neque aliīs voluntās propter timōrem.

Deinde, quod nōs eadem Asia atque ēdem iste Mithri-
dātēs initiō belli Asiāticī docuit, id quidem certē calami-
tāte doctī memoria retinēre dēbēmus. Nam tum, cum in Asiā rēs māgnās permulti āmīserant, scimus Rōmāe solu-
tiōne impeditā fidem concidisse. Nōn enim possunt ēnā 215 in cīvitāte multī rem ac fortūnās āmittere, ut nōn plūrēs sēcum in eandem trahant calamītātem. Ā quō periculō prohibēte rem pūblicam, et mihi crēdite, id quod ipsī 220 vidētis: haec fidēs atque haec ratiō pecūniārum quae Rōmāe, quae in forō versātur, implicāta est cum illīs pecūniās Asiāticīs et cōhaeret; ruere illa nōn possunt, ut haec nōn ēodem labefacta mōtū concidant. Quārē vidēte, num dubitandum vōbīs sit omnī studiō ad id bellum in-
cumbere, in quō glōria nōminis vestrī, salūs sociōrum, vectīgālia māxima, fortūnae plūrīmōrum cīvīum coniūncetae 230 cum rē publicā dēfendantur.
Lucullus must be praised for his great achievements.

8. Quoniam dē genere bellī dixī, nunc dē māgnitūdine paucā dīcam. Potest enim hōc dīci, bellī genus esse ita necessārium ut sit gerendum, nōn esse ita māgnum ut sit pertimēscendum. In quō māximē labōrandum est nē forte ea vōbīs, quae diligēntissimē prōvidenda sunt, con-235 temnenda esse videantur. Atque ut omnēs intellegant mē L. Lūcullō tantum impertiūre laudis, quantum fortī virō et sapientī homīni et māgnō imperātōri dēbeātur, dicō ņius adventū māximās Mithridātī copiās omnibus rēbus ōrnātās atque īnstrūctās fuisse, urbemque Asiae clārissimam nōbīsque amīcissimam, Çyziecnōrum, obsessam esse ab ipsō rēge māximā multitūdine et oppūgnātam vehementissimē, quam L. Lūcullus virtūte, assiduitāte, cōnsiliō, summīs obsidiōnis periculīs liberāvit; ab ēodem imperātōre classem māgnam et ōrnātam, quae ducibus Sertōriānīs ad Ītaliām studiō īnflammāta raperētur, supe- ṛtām esse atque dēpressam; māgnās hostiūm praetereā copiās multīs proeliīs esse dēlētās, patefactumque nostrīs legiōnibus esse Pontum, quī antea populō Rōmānō ex omnī aditū clausus fuisset; Šināpēn atque Amīsum, qui-245 bus in oppidīs erant domicilia rēgis, omnibus rēbus ōrnā- tās ac īnfertās, cēterāsque urbēs Pontī et Cappadociae permultās ūnō aditū adventūque esse captās; rēgem spoliātum rēgnō patriō atque avītō ad aliōs sē rēgēs atque ad aliās gentēs supplicem contulisse; atque haec omnia salvis populi Rōmānī sociīs atque integrīs vectīgālibus esse gesta. Satis opinor haec esse laudīs, atque ita, Quīrītēs, ut hōc vōs intellegātis, ā nūllō istōrum quī huic obtres- tant lēgī atque causae, L. Lūcullum similiter ex hōc locō esse laudātum.
The escape of Mithridates, the rising of many eastern nations, the retreat of Lucullus, and the defeat of part of his army.


Hunc in illō timōre et fugā Tigrānēs, rēx Armeniōs, excēpit diffidentemque rēbus suīs cōnfirmāvit et adflīctum ērēxit perditumque recreāvit. Cūius in rēgnōm postēquam L. Lūcullus cum exercītū vēnit, plūrēs etiam gentēs contrā imperātōrem nostrum concitātae sunt. Erat enim metus iniectus eīs nātiōnibus quās numquam popūlus Rōmānus neque lacessendās bellō neque temptandās putāvit; erat etiam alia gravēs atque vehemēns opīniō quae animōs gentium barbarārum pervāserat, fānī locum plētissimī et religiōsissimī diripiendi causā in eās ērās nostrum esse exercītum adductum. Ita nātiōnēs multae atque māgnae novō quōdam terrōre ac metū concitābantur. Noster autem exercitus, tametsī urbem ex Tigrānīs rēgnō cēperat et proeliīs ūsus erat secundīs, tamen nimiā longinquitāte locōrum ac désideriō suōrum commovēbātur.
Hic iam plura non dicam; fuit enim illud extrêmum, ut ex eis locis a militibus nostris reditus magis mātūrus quam processiō longior quaererētur. Mithridātēs autem et suam manum iam cōnfīrmārat, et eōrum qui sē ex 295 ipsīus rēgnō collēgerant et māgnīs adventīciīs auxiliīs multōrum rēgum et nātiōnum iuβābātur. Nam hoc fērē sīc fierē solēre accēpimus, ut rēgum adflīctae fortūnae facile multōrum opēs adlīciānt ad misericordiam, máxi-mēque eōrum qui aut rēgēs sunt aut vīvunt in rēgnō, ut 300 eīs nōmen rēgāle māgnūm et sæcūntēs esse videātur. Itaque tantum victus efficere potuit quantum incolumis numquam est ausus optāre. Nam cum sē in rēgnum suum recēpisset, nōn fuit eō contentus quod eī praeter spem acciderat, ut illam, posteāquam pulsus erat, terram 305 umquam attingeret, sed in exercitum nostrum clārum atque victōrem impetum fēcit.

Sinite hoc locō, Quīritēs, sīcūt poētāe solent qui rēs Rōmānās scribunt, praetereīre mē nostram calamitātem, quae tanta fuit ut eam ad aurēs imperātōris nōn ex proelīo nūntius, sed ex sermōne rūmor adferret. Hic in illō ipsō malō gravissimāque bellī offensio ne L. Lūcullus, qui tamen aliquā ex parte eīs incommodīs medēri fortasse potuisset, vestrō iussū coāctus, quod imperī diūturnitāti modum statuendum vetere exemplō putāvīstis, partem 315 militīrum quī iam stipendiīs cōnfectī erant dīmīsit, partem M’. Glabriōnī trādidit.

Multa praetereō cōnsultō, sed ea vōs coniectūrā perspicite, quantum illud bellum factum putētis, quod coniungant rēgēs potentissimī, renovent agitātae nātiōnēs, 320 suscipiant integrae gentēs, novus imperātor noster accipiat vetere exercitū pulso.
In Pompey are the four qualifications of a good general. First: knowledge of warfare.

10. Satis mihi multa verba fēcisse videor quārē esset hōc bellum genere ipsō necessārium, māgnitūdine periculōsum; restat ut dē imperātōre ad id bellum dēligendō ac tantīs rēbus praeficiendō dicendum esse videātur. 325 Utinam, Quīrītēs, virōrum fortium atque innocentium cōpiam tantam habērētis ut haec vōbīs dēliberātiō difficilis esset, quemnam potissimum tantīs rēbus ac tantō bēlō praeficiendum putārētis! Nunc vērō cum sit ūnus Cn. Pompēius qui nōn modo eōrum hominum qui nunc sunt glōriam, sed etiam antiquitātis memoriam virtūte superārit, quae rēs est quae cūiusquam animum in hāc causā dubium facere possit? Ego enim sic existimō, in summō imperātōre quattuor hās rēs inesse oportēre, scientiam reī militāris, virtūtem, auctōritātem, fēlicitātem. 330 Quis igitur hōc homine scientiōrum quārum aut fuit aut esse débuit? qui e lūdō atque pueritiaē disciplīnīs bellō māximō atque ācerrimīs hostibus ad patris exercitum atque in militiae disciplīnam profectus est; qui extrēmā pueritiā miles in exercitū fuit summi imperātōris, ineunte 340 adulēscentiā māximi ipse exercitūs imperātor; qui saepius cum hoste cōnflixit quam quisquam cum inimīcō concertāvit, plūra bella gessit quam cēterī lēgērunt, plūres prōvinciās cōnfēcit quam aliī concupīvērunt; cūius adulēscen- cia ad scientiam reī militāris nōn aliēnīs praecceptīs, 345 sed suīs imperiīs, nōn offēsionibus bellī, sed victōriīs, nōn stipendiīs, sed triumphīs est crūdīta. Quod dēnique genus esse bellī potest in quō illum nōn exercuerit fortūna reī publicae? Civile, Àfricānum, Trānsalpīnum, His- pāniēnse mixtum ex civitātibus atque ex bellicōsissimīs nātiōnibus, servile, nāvāle bellum, varia et diversa genera et bellōrum et hostium nōn sōlum gesta ab hōc ūnō sed
etiam confecta nūllam rem esse dēclārant in ūsū posītam militāri, quae hūius virī scientiam fugere possit.

Second qualification: ability. Pompey's is attested by many nations.

11. Iam vērō virtūtī Cn. Pompēī quae potest ōrātiō pār invenīri? Quid est quod quisquam aut illō dīgnum aut vōbīs novum aut eiuquam inaudītum possit adferre? Neque enim illae sunt sōlae virtūtēs imperātōriæ quae vulgō existimantur, labor in negōtiīs, fortītūdō in perīculīs, industria in agendō, celeritās in cōnsiciendō, cōnsilium in prōvidendō; quae tanta sunt in hōc ūnō quanta in omnibus reliquis imperātōribus, quōs aut vīdimus aut audīvimus, nōn fuērunt.

Testis est Ītalia, quam ille ipse victor L. Sulla hūius virtūte et subsidiō cōnfessus est liberātam. Testis est Sicilia, quam multīs undique cīnctam perīculīs nōn terrōre bellī sed cōnsili celeritāte explicāvit. Testis est Āfrica, quae māgnīs oppressa hostium cōpiūs eōrum ipsōrum sanguine redundāvit. Testis est Gallia, per quam legiōniceans nostrīs iter in Hispāniam Gallōrum internecīōne patefactum est. Testis est Hispānīa, quae saepissimē plurīmōs hostēs ab hōc superātōs prōstrātōsque cōnspevit. Testis est iterum et saepius Ītalia, quae, cum servīlī bellō taetrō perīculōsōque premerētur, ab hōc auxilium absente expetīvit; quod bellum exspectātiōne ēius attenuā tum atque immīnūtum est, adventū sublātum ac seputum. Testēs nunc vērō iam omnēs sunt ērae atque omnēs exterae gentēs ac nātiōnēs, dēnique maria omnia cum ūniversa, tum in singulīs ōris omnēs sinūs atque portūs.

Quis enim tōtō mari locus per hōs annōs aut tam firmum habuit praesidium ut tūtus esset, aut tam fuit abditus ut latēret? Quis nāvigāvit qui nōn sē aut mortis aut servitūtīs perīculō committeret, cum aut hieme aut refertō praedōnūm mari nāvigāret? Hōc tantum bellum, tam
turpe, tam vetus, tam lâtē divīsum atque dispersum, quis 385
umquam arbitrarētur aut ab omnibus imperātōribus ūnō
annō aut omnibus annīs ab ūnō imperātōre cōnīcī posse?
Quam prōvinciam tenuistis a prædōnibus liberam per
hōsce annōs? Quod vectīgal vōbīs tūtum fuit? Quem
socium dēfendistis? Cui præsidiō classibus vestrīs fuistis? 390
Quam multās existimātis īnsulās esse ōsērtās, quam
multās aut metū relictās aut a prædōnibus captās urbēs
esse sociōrum?

The long struggle with the pirates was soon ended by Pompey.

quondam, fuit proprium populi Rōmānī longē a domō 395
bellāre et prōpūgnāculīs imperī sociōrum fortūnās, nōn
sua tēcta dēfendere. Sociīs ego nostrīs mare per hōs
annōs clausum fuīsse dīcam, cum exercitūs vestrī num-
quam ā Brundisiō nisi hiemē summā trānsmiserint? Quī
ad vōs ab exterīs nātīōnibus venīrent, captōs querar, cum 400
lēgātī populi Rōmānī redēmptī sint? Mercātōribus tūtum
mare nōn fuīsse dīcam, cum duodecim secūres in prae-
dōnum potestātem pervēnerint? Cnidum aut Colophō-
nem aut Samum, nōbilissimās urbēs, innumeraūbilēsque
aliās captās esse commemorōrem, cum vestrōs portūs, atque 405
eōs portūs quibus vitam ac spīritum dūcitis, in prae-
dōnum fuīsse potestāte sciātis? An vērō ignōrātīs portum Cāiētae
celberrimum ac plēnissimum nāvium īnspectante prae-
tōre ā prædōnibus esse dīreptum; ex Mīsēnō autem ēius
ipsīōs liberōs, qui cum prædōnibus anteā ībi bellum 410
gesserat, ā prædōnibus esse sublātōs? Nam quid ego
Ōstiēnse incommodum atque illam lābem atque ignō-
miniam reī publicae querar, cum prope īnspectantibus
vōbīs classis ea cui cōnsul populi Rōmānī praepositus
esset, ā prædōnibus capta atque oppressa est? Prō di 415
immōrtālēs! tantamne ūnīus hominis incrēdibilis ac
dīvīna virtūs tam brevī tempore lūcem adferre reī pūb-
licae potuit, ut vōs quī modo ante ōstium Tiberīnum
classem hostium vidēbātis, eī nunc nūllam intrā Ōceanī
ōstium praedōnum nāvem esse audiātis?

Atque haec quā celeritāte gesta sint quamquam vidōtis,
tamen ā mē in dīcendō praetereunda nōn sunt. Quīs
enim umquam aut obeundī negōtī aut cōnsequentī quaes-
tūs studiō tam brevī tempore tot loca adīre, tantōs cursūs
cōñficere potuit, quam celerīter Cn. Pompeīō duce tantī
bellī impetus nāvīgāvit? Quī nōndum tempestīvō ad
nāvīgandum marī Sicilīam adīt, Afrīcam explōrāvit, in
Sardinīam cum classe vēnit, atque haec tria frūmentāria
subsīdia reī pūblicae firmīssimīs praeсидīīs classibusque
mūnīvit. Inde cum sē in Ītatiam recēpisset, duābus His-
pāniīs et Gallīā Trānsalpīnā praeсидīīs ac nāvibus cōñfir-
mātā, missīs item in ōram Īlyricī marīs et in Achāiām
omnemque Graecīam nāvibus, Ītatiae duo maria māxīmīs
classibus firmīssimīisque praeсидīīs adōrnāvit; ipse autem
ut Brundisiō profectus est, ūndēquīnquāgēsimō diē tōtām
ad imperium popūlī Rōmānī Ciliciam adiūnxit; omnēs
quī ubīque praedōnēs fuērunt, partim captī interfectīque
sunt, partim ūnīs hūius sē imperiō ac potestātī dē.didērunt.
Īdem Crētēnsibus, cum ad eum ūsque in Pamphylīam
lēgātōs dēprecātōrēsque mīsissent, spēm dēditionīs nōn
adēmit obsidēsque imperāvit. Ita tantum bellum, tam
diūturnum, tam longē lātēque dispersum, quō bellō omnēs
gentēs ac nātīōnēs premēbantur, Cn. Pompeīus extrēmā
hieme appara vit, ineunte vēre suspēpit, mediā aestāte
cōñfēcit.

Pompey’s moral qualities. His scrupulous honesty.

13. Est haec dīvīna atque incrēdibilis virtūs imperā-
tōris. Quid? Cētera quās paulō ante commemorāre
coeperam, quantae atque quam multae sunt? Nōn enim
bellandi virtūs sōlum in summō ac perfectō imperātōre quaeOnly the virtue is sufficient in the highest degree and perfect leader, quae ergo est, sed multae sunt artēs eximiae hūius administrae comitēsque virtūtis. Ac primum quantā inno-centiā dēbent esse imperātōrēs, quantā deinde in omnibus rēbus temperantia, quantā fidē, quantā facilitātē, quantō ingeniō, quantō hūmānītāte! Quae breviter quālia sint in Cn. Pompēiiō cōnsiderēmus. Summa enim omnia sunt, Quirītēs, sed ea magis ex aliōrum contentiōne quam ipsa per sēsē cognōsci atque intellegē possunt. Quem enim imperātōrem possumus ụllō in numerō putāre cūius in exercitū centuriātūs vēneant atque vēnie-rint? Quid hunc hominem māgnūm aut amplum dē rē pūblicā cōgitāre, qui pecūniam ex aerāriō dēprōmtam ad bellum administrandum aut propter cupiditātem prō-vinciae magistrātibus dīvīserit aut propter avāritiam Rōmae in quaeātū relīquerit? Vestra admirumurātiō facit, Quirītēs, ut agnōscere videāmini quī haec fēcerint; ego autem nōminō nēminem; quārē īrāscē mihi nēmō poterit, nisi quī ante dē sē voluerit cōnfiterī. Itaque propter hanc avāritiam imperātōrūm quantās calamitātēs, quōcumque ventum sit, nostrī exercitūs ferant, quis ignōrat? Itinera quae per hōscē annōs in Italīa per agrōs atque oppida cīvium Rōmānōrum nostrī imperātōrēs fēcerint, recordā-mīnī; tum facilius statuētis quid apud exterās nātiōnēs fierī existimētis. Utrum plurēs arbitrāminī per hōscē annōs mūlitum vestrōrum armīs hostium urbēs an hiber-nīs sociōrum cīvitātēs esse délētās? Neque enim potest exercitum is continēre imperātor qui sē ipse nōn continet, neque sevērus esse in iūdicandō qui aliōs in sē sevērōs esse iūdicēs nōn vult. Hic mīrāmur hunc hominem tantum excellere cēterīs, cūius legiōnēs sīc in Asiam pervēnerint ut nōnmodo manus tanti exercitūs sed nē vēstigium quidem cuquam pācātō nocuisse dīcātur? Iam vērō quem ad modum
militēs hibernent, cotidiē sermōnēs ac litterae perferuntur; nōn modo ut sūmptum faciat in militem nēminī viv adfer-
tur, sed nē cupiēntī quidem cuīquam permittitur. Hiemis enim, nōn avāritiae perfugium māiōrēs nostrī in sociōrum
atque amīcorum tēctīs esse voluērunt.

**His self-control, good faith, and kindness.**

14. Age vērō, cēterīs in rēbus quā sit temperantīā, consīderātē. Unde illam tantam celeritātem et tam in-
crēdibīlem currum inventum putātis? Nōn enim illum eximīa vis rēmīgum aut ars inaudīta quaedam gubernandī
aut ventī aliquī novī tam celeriter in ultīmās terrās pertulērunt, sed eae rēs quae cēterōs remorārī solent nōn
retardārunt; nōn avāritia ab īnstitūtō currū ad praedam aliquam dēvocāvit, nōn libīdō ad voluptātem, nōn amoeni-
tās ad dēlectātiōnem, nōn nōbilitās urbīs ad cognitionem, nōn dēnique labor ipse ad quiētem; postrēmō signa et
tabulās cēteraque ōrnāmenta Graecōrum oppidōrum, quae

cēterī tollenda esse arbitrantur, ea sībi ille nē visenda
quidem existimāvit.

Itaque omnēs nunc in eīs locīs Cn. Pompeium sīcūt
aliquum nōn ex hāc urbe missum, sed dē caelō dēlāpsum
intuentur. Nunc dēnique incipiunt crēdere fuisse hominēs
Rōmānōs hāc quondam continentīā, quod iam nātiōnibus
extēris incrēdibīle ac falsō memoriāe prōditum vidēbātur. Nunc imperī vestrī splendor illīs gentibus lūcem adferre
coept. Nunc intellegunt nōn sine causā māiōrēs suōs
tum, cum ea temperantīā magistrātūs habēbāmus, servīre
populō Rōmānō quam imperāre aliīs māluisse. Iam vērō
ita facilēs aditūs ad eum privātōrum, ita liberae querī-
mōniae dē aliōrum iniūriīs esse dicuntur, ut is, qui dig-
nitāte principibus excellit, facilitāte īnĭmīs pār esse
videātur.

Iam quantum cōnsiliō, quantum dīcēndī gravitātē et
515 cópiā valeat, in quō ipsō inest quaedam dignitās imperā-
tūria, vōs, Quiritēs, hoc ipsō ex locō saepe cognōvistis. Fidem vērō ēius quantum inter sociōs existimārī putātis, quam hostēs omnēs omnium generum sāncitissimam iūdi-
cūrint? Hūmānitāte iam tantā est ut difficile dictū sit utrum hostēs magis virtūtem ēius pūgnantēs timuerint an mānsuētūdinem victī dilēxerint. Et quisquam dubitābit quīn huic hōc tantum bellum trānsmittendum sit, quī ad omnia nostrae memoriae bella cōnsicienta dīvinō quōdam cōnsiliō nātus esse videātur?

Third qualification of a general: personal influence.

525 15. Et quoniam auctōritās quoque in bellīs adminis-
trandīs multum atque in imperīo militārī valet, certē nēmini dubium est quīn eā rē īdem ille imperātor plūrimum possit. Vehementer autem pertinēre ad bella adminis-
tranda' quid hostēs, quid sociī dē imperātōribus nostrīs existiment, quis ignōrat, cum sciāmus homiūnēs in tantīs rēbus ut aut contemnānt aut mutuānt aut ōderint aut ament opīniōne nōn minus et fāmā quam aliqüā ratiōne certā commovērī? Quod igitur nōmen umquam in orbe terrārum clārius fuit? Cuius rēs gestae parsēs? Dē quō hominē vōs, id quod māximē faciēt auctōritātem, tanta et tam praeclāra iūdicia fēcistis? An vērō īllum ūsquam esse ōram tam désertam putātis quō nōn illius dīē fāmā pervāserit, cum ūniversus populus Rōmānus, refertō forō complētīsque omnibus templīs, ex quibus hic locus cōn-
spici potest, ūnum sībi ad cōmmūne omnium gentium bellum Cn. Pompēium imperātōrem dēpoposcit?

Itaque, ut plūra nōn dicam neque aliōrūm exemplīs cōnfirmem quantum auctōritās valeat in bellō, ab eōdem Cn. Pompēiiō omnium rērum ēgregiārum exempla sūman-
tūr; quī quō dīē ā vōbis maritimō bellō praepositus est imperātor, tanta repente vīlītās annōnae ex summā inopiā
VIEW OF ROME AS IT LOOKS TO-DAY
Ruins of Sublician Bridge in foreground
et caritate rei frumentariae consecuta est unus hominis spe ac nomine, quantam vix ex summâ ubertate agrorum diuturna pac efficere potuisset.

Iam accepta in Pontō calamitate ex eo proelio de quo vós paulo ante invitus admonui, cum socii pertimuisserant, hostium opes animique crevissent, satis firmum praesidium prōvincia non habēret, amīsissetis Asiam, Quirītēs, nisi ad ipsum discrīmen ēius temporis divīnitūs Cn. Pompeium ad eās regionēs fortūna populī Rōmānī attulisset. Hūius adventus et Mithridatēm insolitā inflammātum victoriā continuīt et Tigrānem māgnīs cōpiīs mīnītantēm Asiae retardāvit. Et quisquām dubitābit quid virtūte perfecturus sit, quī tantum auctōritāte perfēcerit, aut quam facile imperīo atque exercitū sociōs et vectīgālia cōnservātūrus sit, qui ipsō nomine ac rūmōre dēfenderit?

Fourth qualification of a general: good fortune.

16. Age vērō illa rés quantam déclārat ēiusdem hominis apud hostēs populī Rōmānī
auctūritātem, quod ex locīs tam longinquīs tamque diversīs tam brevī tempore omnēs sē ūnī dēdiderunt! Quod Crētēnsium lēgātī, cum in eōrum īnsula noster imperātor exercitusque esset, ad Cn. Pompēium in ultimās prope terrās vēnērunt, eīque sē omnēs Crētēnsium civitātēs dēdere velle dīxērunt! Quid? Īdem iste Mithridātēs nōnne ad eundem Cn. Pompēium lēgātum ūsque in Hispāniam mīsit? Eum quem Pompēius lēgātum semper iūdicāvit, ei quibus erat molestum ad eum potissimum esse missum, speculātōrem quam lēgātum iūdicārī māluērunt. Potestis igitur iam cōnstituere, Quirītēs, hanc auctūritātem, multīs posteā 605 rēbus gestīs māgnīsque vestīs iūdiciīs amplificātam, quantum apud illōs rēgēs, quantum apud exterās nātiōnēs vali-tūram esse existimētis.

Reliquum est ut dē fēlicitātē, quam praestāre dē sē ipsō nēmō potest, meminisse et commemorāre dē alterō 610 possessum, sīcūt aequum est hominēs dē potestāte deōrum,
timide et paucâ dîcâmus. Ego enim sîc existîmô, Máxîmô, Márcellô, Scîpiônî, Mariô, et cêterîs mágnîs imperâtôribus nôn sôlum propter virtûtem sed etiam propter fortûnam 615 saepius imperia mandâtâ atque exercîtûs esse commissôs.

Fuit enim profectô quibusdam summîs virîs quaedam ad amplitûdinem et ad glôriam et ad rês mágnâs bene gérêndâs dîvînîtus adînêta fortûna. Dé hûius autem homînis fêlicîtâte, dê quô nunc agîmus, hác ûtar moderâtîône 620 dicêndî, nôn ut in illîus potestâtê fortûnam posîtam esse dîcam, sed ut praeterita memînisse, reliqua spêrâre videâmur, nê aut invîsa dîs immortâlîbus ôrâtîô nostra aut ingrâta esse videâtur.

Itaque nôn sum praedicâtûrus quantâs ille rês domî 625 militiae, terrâ marîque quantâque fêlicîtâte gesserît, ut eîus semper voluntâtîbus nôn modo civês adsênserint, sociî obtemperârînt, hostês oboedîerînt, sed etiam ventî tempestâtësque obsecundârînt. Hôc brevissimê dîcam, nêminem umquam tam impudentem fuisse, quî ab dîs immortâlîbus tot et tantâs rês tacitus audêret optâre, quot et quantâs di immortâlês ad Cn. Pompêium dêtulêrunt. Quod ut illî proprium ac perpetuum sit, Quîrîtês, cum communîs salûtis atque imperî tum ipsîus homînis causâ, sìcûtî facîtis, velle et optâre dèbêtis.

635 Quærê cum et bellum sit ita necessârium ut neglegî nôn possît, ita mágnum ut accûrâtissimê sit administraîndum, et cum eî imperâtôrem praeficere possitîs, in quô sit eximia bella scientia, singularîs virtûs, clûrissîma auctôritâtis, ëgregia fortûna, dubitâtis, Quîrîtês, quîn hôc 640 tantum bonî, quod vôbîs ab dîs immortâlîbus oblâtum et datum est, in rem püblicam cônservandam atque amplifícândam cônferâtis?
Pompey's advantage of being near the enemy. The objections of Catulus and Hortensius.

17. Quodsí Rómae Cn. Pompéius privátus esset hoc tempore, tamen ad tantum bellum is erat déligendus atque mittendus; nunc cum ad ceterásummás útilitátes haec quoque opportúnitátes adiungátur, ut in eis ipsís locís adsit, ut habeat exercitum, ut ab eis quí habént accipere statim possit, quid exspectámus? Aut cùr nón ducibus dis immortálibus eídem, cui cetera summadum salúte reí públícae commissa sunt, hoc quoque bellum régium committámus?

At enim vir clárissimus, amantissimus reí públícae, vestris beneficiís amplissimís adfectus, Q. Catulus, itémque summís órnamentís honóris, fortúnae, virtútis, ingení praeditus, Q. Horténsius, ab hác ratione dissentíunt. Quórum ego auctóritátem apud vós multís locís plurínum valuísse et valére oportére cónfiteor; sed in hác causá, tametsí cognóscétis auctóritátes contráriás virórüm fortissimórum et clárissimórum, tamen omissís auctóritátiibus ipsá ré ac ratione exquirere possumus vériatém, atque hoc facélius, quod ea omnia quae á mé adhúc dicta sunt, idem istí véra esse concédunt, et necessárium bellum esse et mágnnum et in únó Cn. Pompéió summa esse omnia.
Quid igitur ait Hortënsius? Si ūni omnia tribuenda sint, dignissimum esse Pompëium, sed ad ūnum tamen omnia dëferrę nōn oportēre. Obsolēvit iam ista őrātiō, rē multō magis quam verbīs refūtāta. Nam tū īdem, Q. Hortënsi, multa prō tuā summā cōpiā ac singulāri facultāte dicendī et in senātū contrā virum fortem, A. Gabīnium, graviter őrnātēque dixistī, cum is dē ūnō imperātōre contrā praedōnēs cōnstituendō lēgēm prōmul-gāsset, et ex hōc ipsō locō permulta item contrā eam lēgēm verba fēcistī. Quid? Tum, per deōs immortālēs, sī plūs apūd populum Rōmānum auctōritās tuaquam ipsīs populī Rōmānī salūs et vēra causa valuisset, hōdiē hanc glōriam atque hōc orbīs terrae imperium tenērēmus? An tībi tum imperium hōc esse vidēbātur, cum populī Rōmānī lēgātī, quaeestōrēs praetōrēsque capiēbantur, cum ex omnibus prōvinciīs commeātū et prīvātō et pūblico prohibēbāmur, cum ita clausa nōbīs erant marīa omnia ut neque prīvātam rem trānsmarīnam neque pūblicam iam obīre possēmus?

The law of Gabinius restored Roman naval supremacy.

18. Quae civitās anteā umquam fuit,—nōn dīcō Athēniēnsium, quae satis lātē quondam mare tenuisse dicitur; nōn Carthāginiēnsium, quī permultum classe ac maritimīs rēbus valuērunt; nōn Rhodiōrum, quōrum ūsque ad nostram memoriam disciplīna nāvālis et glōria remānsit,—quae civitās, inquam, anteā tam tenuīs, quae tam parva īnsula fuit quae nōn portūs suōs et agrōs et aliquam partem regiōnis atque ōrae maritimae per sē ipsa dēfenderet? At hercule aliquot annōs continuōs ante lēgēm Gabīnīam ille populus Rōmānus, cūius ūsque ad nostram memoriam nōmen invictum in nāvālibus pūgnīs permānserit, māgnā ac multō máximā parte nōn modo utiōtātis, sed dignitātīs atque imperī caruit. Nōs quōrum
maiorēs Antiochum rēgem classe Persemque superārunt omnibusque nāvālibus pūgnīs Carthāgīniēnsēs, hominēs in maritimīs ēbus exercitātissimōs parātissimōsque, vicē-runt, eī nūllō in locō iam praedōnibus parēs esse poterā-710mus; nōs quī anteā nōn modo Ītaliam tūtam habēbāmus, sed omnēs sociōs in ultimīs ēris auctōritāte nostrī imperī salvōs praestāre poterāmus, tum, cum īnsula Dēlos, tam procul ā nōbis in Aegaeō marī posita, quō omnēs undique cum mercibus atque oneribus commeābant, referta dīvitiās,715parva, sine mūrō, nihil timēbat, idem nōn modo prō-vinciēs atque ēris Ītaliae maritimīs ac portubus nostrīs, sed etiam Appiā iam Viā carēbāmus; et eīs temporibus nōn pudēbat magistrātūs populī Rōmānī in hunc ipsum locum ēscendere, cum eum nōbīs māiorēs nostrī exuviīs 720nauticīs et classium spoliīs ornātum reliquissent!

The question of appointing Gabinius as Pompey’s lieutenant.

19. Bonō tē animō tum, Q. Hortēnṣī, populus Rōmānus et cēterōs quī erant in eādem sententīā dicēre existimāvit ea quae sentiēbātis; sed tamen in salūte commūnī idem populus Rōmānus dolorī suō māluit quam auctōritātī 725vestrae obtemperāre. Itaque ūna lēx, ūnus vir, ūnus annus nōn modo nōs illā miseriā ac turpītūdine liberāvit, sed etiam effēcit ūt aliquandō vērē vidērēmur omnibus gentibus ac nātiōnibus terrā marīque imperāre.

Quō mihi etiam indignius vidētur obtrectātum esse 730adhuc—Gabīniō dicam anne Pompēiō an utrīque, id quod est vērius?—nē lēgārētur A. Gabīnius Cn. Pompēiō expetentī ac postulantī. Utrum ille, qui postulat ad tantum bellum lēgātum quem velit, idōneus nōn est qui impetret, cum cēterī ad expīlandōs sociōs dīripiendāsque 735prōvinciās quōs voluērunt lēgātōs ēdūxerint; an ipse, cūius lēge salūs ac dignitās populō Rōmānō atque omnibus gentibus cōnstitūta est, expers esse dēbet glōriāe ēius im-
perātōris atque ēius exercitūs qui cōnsiliō ipsīus ac periculō est cōnstitūtus?

An C. Falcidius, Q. Metellus, Q. Cælius Latīniēnsis, Cn. Lentulus, quōs omnēs honōris causā nōminō, cum tribūni plēbī fuissent, annō proximō lēgātī esse potuērunt; in ūnō Gabīniō sunt tam diligentēs, quī ĭn ĕōc bellō quod lēge Gabīniā geritur, ĭn ĕōc imperātōre atque exercitū, quem per vōs ipse cōnstituit, etiam praecipuō ĕūre esse dēbēret? Dē quō lēgandō cōnsulēs spērō ad senātum relātūrōs. Quī sī dubitābunt aut gravābuntur, ego mē profiteor relātūrum; neque mē impedīt cūiusquām inimi-cum ēdictum quō minus vōbis frētus vestrum iūs beneficiumque dēfendam, neque praeter intercessiōnem quicquāquam audiam, dē quā, ĭt ē arbitror, īstī īpsī quī minēntur etiam atque ētiam quid līceat cōnsiderābunt. Meā quidem sententiā, Quīrītēs, ūnus A. Gabīniō bellī marītīmi rērumque gestārum Cn. Pompēiō sociō ascrībitur, prop-terēā quod alter ūnī illud bellum susciendiūm vestris sufrāgiīs dētulit, alter dēlātum susceptūmque cōnfēcit.

A reply to the objections of Catulus.

20. Reliquum est ut dē Q. Catulī auctōritāte et sententiā dicendum esse videātur. Quī cum ex vōbis quaere-ret, sī ĭn ūnō Cn. Pompēiō omnia pōnerētis, sī quid ēō factum esset, ĭn quō spēm essētis habitūrī, cēpit māgnum suae virtūtis frūctum ac dignitātis, cum omnēs ūnā prope vōce īn ēō ipsī vōs spēm habitūrōs esse dīxīstis. Etenim tālis est vir, ut nūlla rēs tanta sit ac tam difficilis, quam ille nōn et cōnsiliō regere et integritāte tuērī et virtūte cōnficere possit. Sed ĭn ĕōc ēō spēm ab eō vehementissimē dissentiō, quod, quō minus certa est hominum ac minus diūturna vīta, ĕōc magis rēs pública, dum per deōs immortālēs licet, fruī dēbet summī vīrī vītā atque virtūte.

At enim nē quid novī fiat contrā exempla atque instituted
770 māiorum. Nōn dīcam hōc locō māiorēs nostrōs semper in pāce cônsuētūdīnī, in bellō utīlītātī pāruisse, semper ad novōs cāsūs temporum novōrum cônsiliōrum ratiōnēs accommodāsse; nōn dīcam duo bella māxīma, Pūnicum atque Hispāniēnse, ab ūnō imperātōre esse cōnfecta, 775 duāsque urbēs potentissimās, quae huic imperiō māximē mīnitābantur, Karthāginem atque Numantiam, ab eōdēm Scīpiōne esse dēlētās; nōn commemorābō nūper ita vōbis patribusque vestrīs esse vīsum, ut in ūnō C. Mariō spēs imperī pōnerētur, ut Ĭdem cum Iugurthā, Ĭdem cum Cim-
780 brīs, Ĭdem cum Teutonīs bellum administrāret. In ipsō Cn. Pompeiō in quō novī cōnstituí nihil vult Q. Catulus, quam multa sint nova summā Q. Catulī voluntātē cōn-
stitūtā recordāmini.

New precedents already established in the career of Pompey.

21. Quid tam novum quam adulēscentulum privātum 785 exercitum difficīlī reī publicae tempore cōnficere? Cōn-
790 atque Afrīcam bellumque in ea prōvinciā administrandum? Fuit in ĵis prōvinciēs singulārī innocentiā, gravitātē, vir-
tūte; bellum in Afrīcā māximum cōnfēcit, victōrem exer-
citum dēportāvit.

Quid vērō tam inaudītum quam equītēm Rōmānum 795 triumphāre? At eam quoque rem popūlus Rōmānus nōn modo vīdit, sed omnīum etiam studiō vísendam et concele-
brandam putāvit. Quid tam inūsitātūm quam ut, cum duo cōnsulēs clārissimī fortīssimīque essent, equēs Rō-
mānus ad bellum māximum formīdolōsissimumque prō
800 cōnsule·mitterētur? Missus est. Quō quidem tempore, cum esset nōn nēmō in senātū qui dīceret nōn oportēre
mittit hominem privatum pro cōnside, L. Philippus dixisse dicitur nōn sē illum suā sententiā pro cōnside sed pro cōnsulibus mittere. Tanta in eō rei publicae bene gerendae spēs constitutēbatur ut duōrum cōnsulum mūnus ūnus adulescentis virtūtī committere tōr.

Quid tam singulāre quam ut ex senātūs cōnsultō légibus solūtus cōnsul ante fieret quam ūllum alium magistrātum per légēs capere licuisset? Quid tam incredibīle quam ut iterum eques Rōmānus ex senātūs cōnsultō triumphēret? Quae in omnibus hominibus nova post hominem memoriam constitūta sunt, ea tam multa nōn sunt quam haec quae in hōc ūnō homine vidēmus. Atque haec tot exempla, tanta ac tam nova, profecta sunt in eundem hominem ā Q. Catulī atque ā cēterōrum ēiusdem dignitātīs amplissi- mōrum hominum auctōritātē.

Hortensius and Catulus should therefore withdraw their objections. Pompey especially fitted for the war in Asia.

22. Quārē videant nē sit perinīquum et nōn ferendum, illōrum auctōritātem dē Cn. Pompēi dignitātē a vōbīs comprobātām semper esse, vestrum ab illis dē eōdem homine iūdicium populīque Rōmānī auctōritātem impro- bārī, praesertim cum iam suō iūre populus Rōmānus in hōc homine suam auctōritātem vel contrā omnēs quī dissentient possit dēfendere, propterē quod ūdem istīs reclāmantibus vōs ūnum illum ex omnibus dēlēgistis quem bellō praedōnum praepōnerētis. Hēc si vōs temerē fēcis et rei publicae parum cōnsuluis, rēctē īstī studia vestra suīs cōnsiliis regere cōnantur. Sin autem vōs plūs tum in rē publicā vídistis, vōs ēis repūgnantibus per vōs- met ipsōs dignitātem huic imperiō, salūtem orbī terrārum attulistis, aliquandō īstī princīpes et sībi et cēterīs populi Romānī ūniversī auctōritātī paērendum esse fācantur.

Atque in hoc bellō Asiāticō et rēgiō nōn sōlum militāris
illa virtūs, quae est in Cn. Pompēiō singularīs, sed aliae quoque virtūtēs animī māgnae et multae requiūruntur. Diificile est in Asiā, Ciliciā, Syriā, rēgnīsque interiōrum nātiōnum ita versārī nostrum imperātōrem ut nihil aliud nisi dē hoste ac dē laude cōgitet. Deinde, etiamī qui sunt pudōre ac temperantīa moderātiōrēs, tamen eōs esse tālēs propter multītūdinem cupidōrum homīnūm nēmō arbitrātur. Diificile est dictū, Quirītēs, quantō in odio sīmus apud exterās nātiōnēs propter eōrum quōs ad eās per hōs annōs cum imperiō misīmus, libīdinēs et iniūriās. Quod enim fānum putātis in illīs terrīs nostrīs magistrā- tibus religiōsum, quam cīvitātem sānctam, quam domum satis clausam ac mūnītam fuīsse? Urbēs iam locuplētēs et cōpiōsae requiūruntur, quibus causa bellī propter dirip- iendi cupidītātem īnferātur.

Libenter haec cōram cum Q. Catulō et Q. Hortēnsiō, summīs et clārissimīs virīs, disputārem; nōvērunt enim sociōrum vulnera, vident eōrum calamiūtātēs, querimōniās audiunt. Prō sociōs vōs contra hostēs exercitum mittere putātis, an hostium simulātiōne contra sociōs atque amīcōs? Quae cīvitās est in Asiā quae nōn modo imperātōris aut lēgātī, sed ūnīs tribūnī militum animōs ac spiritūs capere possit?

The bill is supported by many eminent men.

23. Quārē, etiamī quem habētis qui conlātīs sīgnīs exercitūs rēgiōs superāre posse videātur, tamen nisi erit īdem qui sē ā pecūnīā sociōrum, qui ab eōrum coniugibus ac liberīs, qui ab ōrnāmentīs fānōrum atque oppidōrum, qui ab aurō gazāque rēgiā manūs, oculōs, animīnum cohibēre possit, nōn erit idōneus qui ad bellum Asiāticum rēgium-que mittātur. Ecquam putātis cīvitātem pācātam fuīsse quae locuplēs sit, ecquam esse locuplētem quae istīs pācāta esse videātur? Ora maritima, Quirītēs, Cn. Pompēium
nōn sōlum propter rēi mīlitāris glōrium, sed etiam propter 865
aanimī continentiam requīsīvit. Vidēbat enim imperā-
tōrēs locuplētārī quotannī pecūniā pūblicā praeter paucōs,
neque eōs quicquām aliud adsequī classium nōmine, nisi
ut dētrīmentīs accipiendīs mālōre adfīcī turpitūdine vidē-
rēmur. Nunc quā cupiditātē hominēs īn prōvinciās et 870
quibus iactūrīs, quibus condiciōnibus proficiēscantur, ignō-
rant vidēlicet īstī quī ād ūnum dēferenda omnia esse nōn
arbitrantur. Quasi vērō Čn. Pompēium nōn ċum suīs
virtūtibus, tum etiam aliēnīs vitīis māgnum esse videā-
mus. Quārē nōlīte dubitāre quīm huīnī crēdātīs omnia, 875
quī inter tot annōs ūnus inventus sit quem sociī īn urbēs
suās cum exercitū vēnisse gaudeant.
Quodsi auctōritātibus ĉane causam, Quīrītēs, cōnfir-
mendam putātīs, est vōbīs auctor ĉur bēllōrum omnium
māximārumque rērūm perītissimus, P. Servīlius, cūius 880
tantae rēs gestae terrā marīque exstītērunt ut, cum dē
bellō dēlīberētīs, auctor vōbīs gravior esse nēmō dēbeat;
est Č. Ĉūriō, summīs vestrīs beneficiēs māximīsque rēbus
gestīs, summō ingeniō et prūdentīa praeditūs; est Čn.
Lentulus, in quō omnēs prō amplissimīs vestrīs honōribus 885
summum cōnsilium, summam gravitātem esse cognōvīstīs;
est Č. Cassius, integritātē, virtūtē, cōnstantiā singulārī.
Quārē vidēte ĉōrum auctōritātibus, illōrum ōrātiōnī quī
dissentiunt respondēre posse videāmur.

Cicero encourages Manilius and pledges his support.

24. Quae cum ita sint, Č. Mānīliī, prīnum istam tuam 890
et lēgēm et voluntātem et sententiam laudō vehemen-
tissimēque comprobō; deinde tē hortor ut auctōre populō
Rōmānō maneās in sententīā nēve cūiusquam vim aut
minās pertīmēscās. Prīnum in tē satis esse animī per-
severantiaēque arbitrōr; deinde, cum tantam multitūdīnem 895
cum tantō studiō adesse videāmus, quantam īterum nunc
in eōdem homine praeficiendō vidēmus, quid est quod aut
dē rē aut dē perſfiendiō facultāte dubitēmus?
Ego autem quicquid est in mē studī, consiliī, labōris,
ingeni, quicquid hoc beneſcio populi Rōmānī atque ġāc
potestāte praetōriā, quicquid auctorītāte, fidē, constantiā
possum, id omne ad hāc rem conſiſciendum tibi et populō
Rōmānō polliceor ac dēferō; testorque omnes deōs, et
eōs māximē quī huic locō templōque praesident, quī
omnium mentēs eōrum quī ad rem publicam adeunt
māximē perspiciunt, mē hoc neque rogātū facere cūius-
quam, neque quō Cn. Pompeī grātiam mihi per hāc causam
conciiliāri putem, neque quō mihi ex cūiusquam ampli-
tūdine aut praesidia periculūs aut adiūmenta honōribus
quaeram; prōpterē quod pericula facile, ut hominem
praestāre oportet, innocentiā tēctī repellēmus, honōrem
autem neque ab unō neque ex hōc locō, sed eādem illā
nostrā labōriōsissimā ratiōne vitae, sī vestra voluntās feret,
cōsequēmur.
Quam ob rem quicquid in hāc causā mihi suscepsum est,
Quirītēs, id ego omne mē rei publicae causā suscepisse
cōnfirmō; tantumque abest ut aliquam mihi bonam
grātiam quaesīsse videar, ut multās mē etiam simulētēs
partim obsēurās, partim apertās intellegam mihi nōn neces-
sāriās, vōbīs nōn inūtilēs suscepisse. Sed ego mē hōc
honōre praeditum, tantīs vestīs beneficiīs adfectum
statuī, Quirītēs, vestram voluntātem et rei publicae digni-
tātem et salūtem prōvinciārum atque sociōrum meis omni-
bus commodīs et ratiōnibus praeferre oportēre.
Marcus Tullius Cicero
(From the bust in the Capitoline Museum)
M. TULLI CICERONIS
PRÓ A. LICINIÓ ARCHIĀ POĒTĀ
ÖRĀTIŌ AD IŪDICĖS.

Cicero’s own indebtedness to Archias.

1. Si quid est in mē ingeni, iūdicēs, quod sentiō quam sit exiguum, aut sī qua exercitātiō dicendi, in quā mē non īnfitior mediocriter esse versātum, aut sī hūiūsce rēi ratiō aliqua ab optimārum artium studīs ac disciplīnā profecta, ā quā ego nūllum cōnfiteor aetātis meae tempus abhorruisse, eārum rērum omnium vel in prīmīs hīc A. Licinius frūctum ā mē repetere prope suō iūre dēbet. Nam quoad longissimē potest mēns mea respicere spatium praeterti temporis et pueritiae memoriam recordāri ulti-
10mam, inde ūsque repetēns hunc videō mihi prīcipem et

110
ad suscipiendam et ad ingrediendam rationem hōrum studiōrum exstītisse. Quodsī haece vōx hūius hortātū praeeceptīisque cōnfōrmāta nōnnūllīs aliquando salūtī fuit, ā quō id accēpimus quō cēterīs opitulāri et aliōs servāre possēmus, huic profectō ipsī, quantum est situm in nōbīs, 15 et opem et salūtem ferre dēbēmus.

Ac nē quis ā nōbīs hōc ita dīcī forte mīrētur, quod alia quaedam in hōc facultās sit ingenī neque haece dīcendi ratio aut disciplīna, nē nōs quidem huic ūnī studiō penitus umquam dēditī fuimus. Etenim omnēs artēs quae ad 20 hūmānitātem pertinent habent quoddam commūne vinculum et quasi cognātiōne quādam inter sē continentur.

Cicero begs indulgence for his unusual plea.

2. Sed nē cui vestrum mīrum esse videātur mē in quaestīōne lēgītimā et in iūdiciō pūblīcō, cum rēs agātur apud praeṭōrem populi Rōmānī, lēctissimum virum, et 25 apud sevērissimōs iūdīcēs, tantō conventū hominum ac frequentiā, hōc ūtī genere dīcendī, quod nōn modo ā cōnsuētūdine iūdiciōrum, vērum etiam ā forēnsī sermōne abhorreat, quaeśō ā vōbīs ut in hāc causā mihi dētis hanc veniam, accommodātam huic reō, vōbīs, quem ad modum 30 spērō, nōn molestam, ut mē prō summō poētā atque ērudītissimō homine dīcentem, hōc concursū hominum litterātissimōrum, hāc vestrā hūmānitāte, hōc dēnique praetōre exercenti iūdiciōm, patiāmini dē studiīs hūmāniti-tātīs ac litterārum paulō loquitū libērīus, et in ēius modī 35 personā, quae propter ōtium ac studium minimē in iūdiciīs periculīsque trāctāta est, ūtī prope novō quōdam et in ūsītātō genere dīcendī. Quod si mihi ā vōbīs tribuī conce-diēque sentiam, perficiam profectō ut hunc A. Licinium nōn modo nōn sēgregandum, cum sit cīvis, ā numerō cīvīum, 40 vērum etiam si nōn esset, putētis ascīscendum fuisses.
Archias in his youth won fame in the East. Coming to Italy, he was welcomed by men of high rank.

42 3. Nam ut primum ex pueris excessit Archias, atque ab eis artibus quibus aetās puerīlis ad hūmānitātem in-śormāri solet sē ad scribendi studium contulit, primum Antiochiae (nam iber nātus est locō nō-obili), celebri quon- dam urbe et cōpiōsā atque ėruditissimīs hominibus liberālis- simīisque studiīs adfluēntī, celerīter antecellere omnibus ingenī gloriā coēpit. Post in cēterīs Asiae partibus cūntāque Graeciā sīc ēius adventūs celebrē-bantur ut fāmam ingenī exspectātiō hominis, exspectā- tiōnēm ipsīus adventus admirā-tiōque superāret. Erat Itālia tum plēna Graecārum artium ac disciplī- nārum, studiaque haece et in Latīō vehementius tum

72 colēbantur quam nunc ēsdem in oppidīs, et hīc Rōmae
propter tranquillitatem rei publicae non neglegabantur. Itaque hunc et Tarentini et Locrenses et Regini et Neapolitani civitae ceterisque praemiis donarunt, et omnes qui aliquid de ingeniis poterant iudicare cognitione atque hospitio dignum existimabant.

Hac tantâ celebritate fâmae cum esset iam absentibus nôtus, Rómam vénit Mariō cōnsule et Catulō. Nactus est primum cōnsulēs eōs quōrum alter rēs ad scribendum máximās, alter cum rēs gestās tum etiam studium atque aurēs adhibère posset. Statim Lūcullī, cum praetextātus etiam tum Archiās esset, eum domum suam recēpérunt. Et erat hoc nōn sōlum ingenī ac litterārum, vērum etiam nātūrae atque virtūtis, ut domus quae hūius adulēscentiae prīma fāvit, eadem esset familiārissima senectūtī. Erat temporibus illīs iūcundus Q. Metellō illī Numidicō et ēius Piō fīliō, audiēbātur a M. Aemiliō, vivēbat cum Q. Catulō et patre et fīliō, a L. Crassō colēbātur; Lūcullōs vērō et Drūsum et Octāviōs et Catōnem et tōtam Hortēnsiorum domum dēvinctam cōnsuētūdine cum tenēret, adficiēbātur summō honōre, quod eum nōn sōlum colēbant quī aliquid percipere atque audīre studēbant, vērum etiam sī quī forte simulābant.

Archias has fulfilled the conditions of Roman citizenship

4. Interim satīs longō intervāllō, cum esset cum M. Lūcullō in Siciliam profectus et cum ex eā prōvinciā cum eōdem Lūcullō dēcederet, vēnit Hēraclīam. Quae cum esset cīvitās aquissimō iūre ac foedere, ascribī sē in eam cīvitātem voluit, idque, cum ipse per sē dīgnum putārētur, tum auctoritāte et grātiā Lūcullī ab Hēracliēnsibus im-petrāvit. Data est cīvitās Silvānī lēge et Carbōnis: Sī qui foederātīs cīvitātibus ascripĭ fuissent; sī tum, cum lēx ferēbātur, in Ŭtaliā domicilium habuissent; et sī sexāgintā dīēbus apud praetōrem essent pro-
Cum hic domicilium Rōmae multōs iam annōs habēret, professus est apud praetōrem Q. Metellum, familiārissīmum suum.

Si nihil aliud nisi dē cīvitāte ac lēge dīcimus, nihil dīcō amplius; causa dīcta est. Quid enim hōrum īnfīrmāri, Grattī, potest? Hēraclīae cēs eum asācrīptum negābis? Adest vir summa auctōritāte et religiōne et fidē, M. Lūcullus, qui sē nōn opīnārī sed sēcēre, nōn audīvisse sed vīdisse, nōn interfuisse sed ēgisse dīcit. Adsunt Hēraclīēnsēs lēgātī, nōbilissīmi homīnēs; hūius iūdicē causā cum mandātūs et cum pūblicō testimōniō vēnērunt, quī hunc ascrīptum Hēraclīēnsem dīcunt. Hīc tū tabulās dēsiderās Hēraclīēnsium pūblicās, quās Itālicō bellō incēnsō tabulāriō interīsse scīmus omnēs. Est ridiculum ad ea quae habēmus nihil dīcere, quaerere quae habēre nōn possumus; et dē hominum memoriā tacēre, litterārum memoriam flāgitāre; et, cum habēās amplissimi virī religiōnem, integerrimi mūnicīpi iūs iūrandum fidemque, ea quae dēprāvārī nūllo modō possunt repudiāre, tabulās, quās īdem dīcis solēre corrumpī, dēsiderāre. An domi-
cilia Rōmae nōn habuit is quī tot annīs ante cīvitātem datam sēdem omnium rērum ac fortūnārum suārum Rōmae conlocāvit? An nōn est professus? Immō vērō eīs tabu-
līs professus quae sōlae ex illā professione collēgiōque praetōrum obtinent pūblicārum tabulārum auctōritātem.

The records involved are trustworthy.
commōtum esse dixerit. Hīs igitur in tabulis nūllam litūram in nōmine A. Licinī vidētis.

Quae cum ita sint, quid est quod dē ēius cīvitāte dubiotētis, praesertim cum aliīs quoque in cīvitātibus fuerit ascriptus? Etenim cum mediocribus multīs et aut nūllā aut humilī aliqua arte praeditīs grātuitō cīvitātem in Graecīa hominēs impertiēbant, Rēginōs crēdō aut Locrēnsēs aut Neāpolitānōs aut Tarentīnōs, quod scaenicīs artificibus largīri solēbant, id huic summā ingeni praeditō gloriā nōluisse! Quid? Cum cēterī nōn modo post cīvitātem datam, sed etiam post lēgem Pāpiām aliquō modo in eōrum municipiōrum tabulis inrepsērunt; hic quī nē utitur quidem illīs in quibus est scripūtus, quod semper sē Hēracliēnse esse voluit, rēiciētur?

Cēnsūs nostrōs requīris. Scilicet; est enim obscurum proximīs cēnsōribus hunc cum clārissimō imperatōre L. Lūcullō apud exercitum fuisse; superiōribus, cum eōdem quaestōre fuisse in Asiā; prīmīs, Iūliō et Crassō, nūllam populi partem esse cēnsam. Sed, quoniam cēnsus nōn iūs cīvitātis cōnfirmat ac tantum modo indicat eum quī sit census ita sē iam tum gessisse prō cīve, eīs temporibus, quem tū crīmināris nē ipsīs quidem iūdiciō in cīvium Rōmānōrum iūre esse versātum, et testāmentum saepe fēcit nostrīs légibus et adīt hērēditātēs cīvium Rōmānōrum et in beneficiīs ad aerarium delātus est à L. Lūcullō praō cōnsule. Quaere argūmenta, si quae potes; numquam enim hīc neque suō neque amīcōrum iūdiciō revincētur.

The study of literature relaxes as well as cultivates. It preserves the examples of the past.

6. Quaerēs ā nōbis, Grāttī, cūr tantō opere hōc homine dēlectēmur. Quīa suppeditat nōbis ubi et animus ex hōc forēnsī strepitū reficiātur et aurēs conviciō défessae con-
quiēscant. An tū existimās aut suppetere nōbīs possum quod cotidiē dīcāmus in tantā varietāte rērum, nisi animōs nostrōs doctrīnā excolāmus, aut ferre animōs tantam posse 170 contentiōnem, nisi eōs doctrīna eādem relaxēmus? Ego vērō fateor mē hīs studiīs esse dēditum. Cēterōs pudeat, si quī ita sē litterīs abdīdērunt ut nihil possint ex eīs neque ad commūnem adferre frūctum neque in aspectum lūcemque prōferre; mē autem quīd pudeat, quī tot annōs ita vīvō, iūdicēs, ut ā nūllius umquam mē tempore aut com- modō aut ōtium meum abstrāxerit aut voluptās āvocārit aut dēnique somnus retroārit?

Quārē quis tandem mē reprehendat, aut quis mīhi iūre suscēnseat, sī quantum cēterīs ad suās rēs obeundās, 180 quantum ad fēstōs diēs lūdōrum celebrandōs, quantum ad aliās voluptātēs et ad ipsam requiēm animī et corporīs concēditur temporum, quantum aliī tribuunt tempestīvīs convīviīs, quantum dēnique alveolō, quantum pilae, tantum mīhi egomet ad haec studia recolenda sūmpserō? 185 Atque hoc eō mīhi concēdendum est magis, quod ex hīs studiīs haec quoque crēscit ōrātiō et facultās, quae, quantacumque in mē est, numquam amīcōrum perīculīs dēfuit. Quae sī cui levior vidētur, illa quidem certē, quae summa sunt, ex quō fonte hauriam sentiō. Nam nisi multōrum 190 praeceptīs multīisque litterīs mīhi ab adulēscentiā suāsissem nihil esse in vitā māgnō opere expetendum nisi laudem atque honestātem, in cā autem persequendā omnēs cruciātūs corporīs, omnia pericula mortis atque exsilī parvi esse dūcenda, numquam mē prō salūte vestrā in tot ac 195 tantās dimīcātiōnēs atque in hōs prōflīgātōrum homiīnīm cotīdiānōs impetūs obiēcīssen. Sed plēnī omnēs sunt libri, plēnae sapientiūm vocēs, plēna exemplōrum vetustās; quae iacērent in tenebris omnia nisi litterārum lūmen accēderet. Quam multās nōbīs imāginēs, nōn sōlum ad 200 intuendum, vērum etiam ad imitandum, fortissimōrum
virorum expressās scriptōrēs et Graeci et Latīni reliquērunt! Quās ego mihi semper in administrandā rē públicā prō-pōnēns animum et mentem meam ipsā cōgitātiōne homi-num excellentium cōnfōrmābam.

Nature and culture unite to produce the greatest men.

7. Quaeret quispiam: 'Quid? Illī ipsī summī virī quōrum virtūtēs litterīs prōditae sunt, istāne doctrinā quam tū effers laudibus ērudītī fuērunt?' Difficile est hoc dē omnibus cōnfīrmāre, sed tamen est certum quid respondeam. Ego multōs hominēs excellenti animō ac virtūte fuisse sine doctrinā et nātūrae ipsīs habitū prope dīvīnō per sē ipsōs et moderātōs et gravēs exstītissēs fāteor; etiam illud adiungō, saepeius ad laudem atque virtūtem nātūram sine doctrinā quam sine nātūrā valuisse doctrinam. Atque īdem ego hoc contendō, cum ad nātūram eximiam et inlustrem accesserit ratiō quaedam cōnfōrmātiōque doctrināe, tum illud nesciō quid praeclārum ac singulāre solēre existere. Ex hoc esse hunc numerō, quem patrēs nostrī vidērunt, dīvinum hominem Africānum; ex hoc C. Laelium, L. Fūrium, moderātissimōs hominēs et con-tinentissimōs; ex hoc fortissimum virum et illīs temporī-bus doctissimum, M. Catōnem illum senem; qui profectō sī nihil ad perciendiam colendamque virtūtem litterīs adiuvārentur, numquam sē ad eārūm studium contulissent. Quodsi nōn hic tantus frūctus ostenderētur, et sī ex his studiis délectātiō sōla peterētur, tamen, ut opīnor, hanc animī remissiōnem hūmānissimam ac liberālissimam iūdi-caretis. Nam cētera neque temporum sunt neque actū-tum omniūm neque locōrum; at haec studia adulēscēntiam alunt, senectūtem oblectant, secundās rēs črnan, adversēs perfugium ac sōlāciōm praeuent, délectant domī, nōn im-pediunt forīs, pernoctant nōbīscum, peregrīnantur, rūsticantur.
All true artists deserve our admiration. Poets have been called sacred.

8. Quodsi ipsi haec neque attingere neque sensū nostrō
gustāre possēmus, tamen ea mirāri debērēmus etiam cum
235 in aliis vidērēmus. Quis nostrum tam animō agrestī ac
dūrō fuit ut Rōsci morte nūper non commovērētur? Quī
cum essēt senex mortuus, tamen propter excellentem
artem ac venustātem vidēbātur omnīō morī non debuisse.
Ergō ille corporis mōtū tantum amorēm sibi conciliārat ā
240 nōbīs omnibus; nōs animōrum incrēdibilēs mōtūs celeri-
tātemque ingeniōrum neglegēmus? Quotiēns ego hunc
Archiam vīdī, iūdīcēs (ūtar enim vestrā benignitāte,
quoniam mē in hōc novō genere dīcendī tam diligentēr
attentītis), quotiēns ego hunc vīdī, cum litteram scripsisset
nullam, māgnum numerum optimōrum versuum de eīs ipsīs rēbus quae tum agerentur dīcere ex tempore; quotiēns revocātum eandem rem dīcere commūtātīs verbīs atque sententiīs! Quae vērō accūrātē cōgitātēque scripsiisset, ea sīc vīdī probārī ut ad veterum scriptōrum laudem

Ennius
(From the bust on the Scipio Tomb)
Orpheus, Eurydice, and Hermes

260 perveniret. Hunc ego non diligam, non admirer, non omnī ratiōne defendendum putem?

Atque sic a summīs hominibus erudītissīmisque accēpimus, cēterārum rērum studia ex doctrīnā et praeceptīs et arte cōnstāre; poētam nātūrā ipsā valēre et mentis vīribus excitāri et quasi divīnō quōdam spiritū inflāri. Quārē suō iūre noster ille Ennius ‘sāncṭōs’ appellat poētās, quod

1 See note on lines 260–262. p. 121.
quasi deōrum aliquō dōnō atque mūnere commendātī nōbīs esse videantur. Sit igitur, iūdīcēs, sāntum apud vōs, hūmānissimōs hominēs, hoc poētae nōmen, quod nūlla umquam barbaria violāvit. Saxa et sōlitūdinēs vōcī respondent, bēstiae saepe immānēs cantū flectuntur atque cōnsistunt; nōs īnstitūtī rēbus optimīs nōn poētārum vōce moveāmur? Homērum Colophōnīī cīvem esse dīcunt suum, Chīi suum vindicant, Salamīnīī repetunt, Smyrnāēī vērō suum esse cōnfīrmant itaque etiam dēlūbrum ēius in oppidō dēdicāvērunt; permulti alī praetereā pūgnant inter sē atque contendunt.

Archias should be honored for celebrating the glories of the Roman people.


Mithridāticum vērō bellum, māgnum atque difficile et in multā varietāte terrā marīque versātum, tōtum ab hoc expressum est; quī libri nōn modo L. Lūcullum, fortissīmum et clārissimum virum, vērum etiam populi Rōmānī nōmen inlūstrant. Populus enim Rōmānus aperuit Lū-
cullō imperante Pontum, et regiis quondam opibus et ipsā
nātūrā et regiōne vāllātum; populi Rōmānī exercitus
eōdem duce nōn māximā manū innumerābilēs Arme-
niōrum cōpiās fūdit; populi Rōmānī laus est urbem
amicissimam Cyzicēnōrum ēiusdem cōnsiliō ex omnī impetū
rēgiō atque tōtius bellī ōre ac faucibus ēreptām esse atque
servātam; nostra semper ferētur et praeedicābitur L. Lū-
cullō dimicante, cum interfecēs ducibus dépressa hostium
classis est, incrēdibilis apud Tenedum pūgna illa nāvālis;
nostra sunt tropaea, nostra monumenta, nostri triumphī.
Quae quōrum ingeniis efferuntur, ab eis populi Rōmānī
fāma celebrātur. Ĉārus fuit Āfricānō superiōrī noster
Ennius, itaque etiam in sepulcrō Scipīōnum putātur is
esse cōnstititus ex marmore; cūius laudibus certē nōn
sōlum ipse qui laudātur, sed etiam populi Rōmānī nōmen
ornātur. In caelum hūius proavus Catō tollitur; māgnus
honōs populi Rōmānī rēbus adiungitur. Omnēs dēnique
illi Māximī, Mārcellī, Fulvīī nōn sine commūni omnium nostrum laude decorantur.

The great leaders of history have longed to be remembered in verse.

10. Ergō illum qui haec fēcerat, Rudīnum hominem, mājōrés nostri in civitātem recēpērunt; nōs hunc Hēracleīensem multīs civitātibus expētitum, in hāc autem lēgibus cōnstitūtum dē nostrā civitāte ēiciēmus?

Nam si quis minōrem glōriae fructum putat ex Graecīs versibus percipi quam ex Latīnis, vehemens errat, propterēā quod Graeca leguntur in omnibus fērē gentibus, Latīna suīs finibus exiguīs sānē continentur. Quārē si rēs eae quās gessimus orbīs terrae regiōnibus dēfiniuntur, cupere dēbēmus, quō manuum nostrārum tēla pervēnerint, eōdem glōriam fāmamque penetrāre; quod cum ipsīs populiūs dē quōrum rēbus scribitur, haec ampla sunt, tum eīs certē, quī dē vītā glōriae causā dīmicant, hoc māximum et periculōrum incitāmentum est et labōrum. Quam multōs scriptōrēs rērum suārum māgnus ille Alexander sēcum habuīsse dicitur! Atque is tamen, cum in Sīgō ad Achillīs tumulum adstītisset: ‘Ō fortūnāte,’ inquit,
TULLI CICERONIS

‘adulēscens, quī tuae virtūtis Homērum praecōnem in-
vēneris!’ Et vērē. Nam nisi Ilias illa exstitisset, idem
tumulus quī corpus eius contēxerat nōmen etiam obruisset.

340 Quid? Noster hic Māgnus, quī cum virtūte fortūnam
adaequāvit, nōnne Theophanem Mytilēnaeum, scriptōrem
rērum suārum, in cōntiōne militum cīvitāte dōnāvit; et
nostri illī fortēs viri, sed rūstici ac militēs, dulcēdine quā-
dam glōriae commōtī, quasi participēs eiusdem laudis,
345 māgnō illud clāmōre approbāvērunt?

Itaque, crēdō, sī cīvis Rōmānus Archiās lēgibus nōn
esse, ut ab aliquō imperātōre cīvitāte dōnāretur perficere
nōn potuit. Sulla cum Hispānōs et Gallōs dōnāret, crēdō,
hunc petentem repudiāsset; quem nōs in cōntiōne vidimus,
350 cum eī libellum malus poēta dē populō subiēcisset, quod
epigramma in eum fēcisset tantum modo alternīs versibus
longiusculis, statim ex eīs rēbus quās tum vēndēbat iūbēre
ei praemium tribuī, sed eā condicio, nē quid postea
scriberet. Quī sēdulītātem malī poētae dūxerit aliquō
tamen praemiō dignam, hūius ingenium et virtūtem in
scribendō et cōpiam nōn expetissent? Quid? A Q.
Metellō Piō, familiārissimō suō, quī cīvitāte multōs dōnā-
vit, neque per sē neque per Lūcullōs impetrāvissent? Quī
praesertim usque eō dē suīs rēbus scribī cuperet ut etiam
360 Cordubae nātis poetīs, pingue quiddam sonantibus atque
peregrīnum, tamen aurēs suās dēderet.

The desire for praise and fame is common to all.

11. Neque enim est hōc dissimulandum, quod obscūrārī
nōn potest, sed praebōs ferendum; trahimur omnēs
studio laudis, et optimus quisque maxime glōriā dūcitur.
365 Ipsī illī philosophī, etiam in eīs libellīs quōs dē contem-
nendā glōriā scribunt, nōmen suum inscribunt; in eō ipsō,
in quō praedicātiōnem nōbilitātemque dēspiciunt, praed-
cārī dē sē ac nōminārī volunt. Decimus quidem
Brūtus, summus vir et imperātor, Accī, amīcissimī suī, carminibus templōrum ac monumentōrum aditus exor- 370
nāvit suōrum.IAM vērō ille qui cum Aetōlis Enniō comite bellāvit, Fulvius, nōn dubitāvit Mārtis manubiās Mūsīs cōnsecrāre. Quārē in quā urbe imperātōrēs prope armātī poētārum nōmen et Mūsārum dēlūbra coluērunt, in ea nōn dēbent togātī iūdīces ā Mūsā- rum honōre et ā poētārum salūte abhorrēre.

Atque ut id libentius faciātis, iam mē vōbīs, iūdīces, indicābō et dē meō quōdam amōre glōriae, nimis ācī fortasse vērum tamen honēstō, vōbīs cōnfitēbor. Nam quās rēs nōs in cōnsulātū nostrō vōbīscum simul prō salūte hūius urbīs atque iūmērī et prō vītā cīvīum prō- que universā rē pūblicā gessimus, attigit hīc versibūs atque incohāvit. Quibus audītīs, quod mihi māgna rēs et iūcunda vīsa est, hunc ad perficiendum adhortātus sum. Nūllum enim virtūs aliam mercōdem labōrum perīculō- 395 rumque désidērat praeter hanc laudis et glōriae; quā quidem dētrāctā, iūdīces, quid est quod in hōc tam exiguō vītae curriculō et tam brevī tantīs nōs in labōribus exer- ceāmus? Certē si nihil animus praesentīret in posterum, et si quibus regionibus vītae spatium circumscriptum est, 400 eīsdem omnēs cōgitātiōnēs termināret suās, nec tantīs sē labōribus frangeret neque tot cūris vigiliisque angerētur
nec totiēns dē ipsā vītā dīmicāret. Nunc īnsidet quaē-
dam in optimō quōque vīrtūs, quae noctēs ac diēs animum
405 glōriae stimulīs concitat, atque admonet nōn cum vītāe
tempore esse dīmitten-
dam commemorātiōnem
nōminis nostri, sed cum
omnī posteritāte adae-
quandam.

Literature a lasting monu-
ment. Archias must be re-
cieved and protected as a
citizen.

12. An vērō tam parvī
animī videāmur esse
omnēs, qui īn rē pūblicā
atque īn hīs vītæ pericu-
līs labōribusque versā-
mur, ut cum ūisque ad
extrēmum spatium nūl-
lum tranquillum atque
ōtiōsum spīritum dūxe-
rimus, nōbīscum simul
morītūra omnia arbitrē-
mur? An statuās et
imāginēs, nōn animōrum
simulācra sed corporum,
studīōsē multī summi
hominēs reliquērunt; cōn-
siliōrum reliquere ac virtūtum nostrārum effigiem
nōnne multō mālle dēbēmus, summīs ingeniīs expressam
et politam? Ego vērō omnia quae gerēbam iam tum in
480 gerendō spargere mē ac dissipināre arbitrābar in orbis

Thalia, the Muse of Comedy
terrae memoriam sempiternam. Haece vērō sīve ā meō sēnsū post mortem āfutūra est sīve, ut sapientissimī hominēs putāvērunt, ad aliquam animi meī partem pertinēbit, nunc quidem certē cōgitātiōne quādam spēque dēlector.

Quārē cōnservāte, iūdicēs, hominem pudōre eō, quem amicōrum vidētis comprobāri cum dīgnitāte tum etiam vetustāte; ingeniō autem tantō quantum id convenit existimāri, quod summōrum hominum ingeniīs expetītum esse videātis; causā vērō ēius modī quae beneficiō lēgis, auctōritāte mūnicipī, testimōniō Lūcullī, tabulis Metelli comprobētur. Quae cum ita sint, petimus ā vōbīs, iūdicēs, si qua nōn modo hūmāna vērum etiam dīvīna in tantīs ingeniīs commendātiō dēbet esse, ut eum quī vōs, quī vestrōs imperātōrēs, quī populi Rōmānī rēs gestās semper ērnāvit, quī etiam hīs recentibus nostrīs vestrīsque domesticīs perīculīs aeternum sē testimōniō laudis datūrum esse profitētur, estque ex eō numerō quī semper apud omnēs sāncī sunt habitī itaque dictī, sic in vestrām accipiātīs fidēm, ut hūmānitāte vestrā levātus potius quam acerbītāte violātus esse videātur.

Quae dē causā prō meā cōnsuētūdīne breviter simplici-terque dīxi, iūdicēs, ea cōnfidō probāta esse omnībus; quae ā forēnsi aliēna iūdiiciāliquē cōnsuētūdīne et dē hominis ingeniō et commūnĭter dē ipsō studiō locūtus sum, ea, iūdicēs, ā vōbīs spērō esse in bonam partem accepta; ab eō quī iūdiciōm exercet, certō scīō.
C. JULIUS CAESAR

(From a bust in the Museo Nazionale, Naples)
SELECTIONS FOR SIGHT READING

M. TULLI CICERONIS

PRō M. MĀRECELLŌ ŌRĀTIŌ

Marcus Claudius Marcellus was a distinguished advocate, consul in 51 B.C., and leader of the senatorial party. He was a bitter enemy of Caesar, even proposing the latter’s recall from his province. After the battle of Pharsalus (48 B.C.) and the defeat of Pompey, he retired to the island of Lesbos, and engaged in the study of philosophy. He disdained to seek the conqueror’s pardon, though appealed to by Cicero to do so. In 46 B.C. pardon was granted him through the efforts of a relative, Gaius Marcellus, whose entreaty as he threw himself at the feet of Caesar was seconded by the whole Senate. When Caesar generously offered to grant the request, and put the question to a formal vote of the Senate, Cicero in his turn delivered the panegyric, known as “The Oratio for Marcellus.” Marcellus, however, did not live to return to Rome, for on his way he was assassinated at the harbor of Athens by one of his own party. The Athenians honored him with burial in their own Academy.

Cicero’s silence is broken by Caesar’s clemency.

1. Diūturnī silentī,1 patrēs cōnscriptī, quō eram2 hīs temporibīs ūsus nōn timōre3 alicuō, sed partīm dolōre, partīm verēcundīā, finēm hodiernus diēs attulit īdemque initium, quae vellem quaeque sentīrem, meō prīstīnō mōre dicendī. Tantam enim mānsuētūdinem, tam iūnīs-5 tātam inaudītamque clēmentiam, tantum in summā po-
estāte rērum omnium modum,4 tam dēnique incrēdībilem

1. Cicero had not spoken in the Senate since 52 B.C. 2 eram usus, we should expect the pres. perf. 3 timore, etc., abl. of cause. 4 moderation.
sapientiam ac paene divinam tacitus praeterire nullō modo possum. M. enim Mārcellō vōbīs, patrēs cōn-
scripī, reique publicae reddītō nōn illius sōlum, sed etiam
meam vōcem et auctōritātem et vōbīs et rei publicae cō-
servātam ac restitūtam putō.

Dolēbam enim, patrēs cōnscriptī, et vehementer angē-
bar virum tālem, cum in eādem causā in quā ego fuisset,
nōn in eādem esse fortūnā; nec mihi persuādēre poteram,
nec fās esse dūcēbam, versāri mē in nostrō vetere
curriculō, illō aemulō atque imitātōre studiōrum
ac labōrum meōrum quasi quōdam sociō a mē et
comite distrāctō. Ergō et mihi meae pristinae vitae
cōnsūctūdinem, C. Caesar, interclūsum aperuīstī, et hīs
omnibus ad bene dē omni rē publicā spērandum quasi
sīgnum aliqüod sustulīstī. Intellēctum est enim mihi
quidem in mūltīs et māximē in mē ipsō, sed paulō ante
omnibus, cum M. Mārcellum senātuī reique publicae
concessīsti commemorātīs praeṣertim offēnsiōnibus, té
auctōritātem hūius ōrdinis dignitātemque rei publicae tuīs
vel dolōribus vel suspiciōnibus anteferre.

Ille quidem frūctum omnis ante āctaē vítae hodiērō
diē māximum cēpit, cum summō cōnsēnsū senātūs, tum
iūdiciō tuō gravissimō et māximō. Ex quō profectō
intellegis, quanta in datō beneficiō sit laus, cum in acceptō
sit tanta glōria. Est vērō fortūnātus ille; cūius ex salūte
nōn minor paene ad omnēs, quam ad ipsum ventūra sit,
laeitia pervēnerit; quod quidem eī meriētō atque optimō
iūre contigīt. Quis enim est illō aut nōbilitāte aut pro-
bītāte aut optimārum artium studiō aut innocentiā aut
ullō laudis genere praestantior?

5 abl. abs. w. reddītō. 6 though. 7 routine. 8 rival. 9 imitātor. 10 these senators. 11 standard, a military term. 12 in the case of. 13 contrasted w. mihi. 14 Marcellus. 15 ante actae, past. 16 The Senate unanimously requested the pardon of Marcellus. 17 most significant. 18 honesty.
Caesar's pardoning of Marcellus excels even the glory of his military achievements.

2. Nūllius 1 tantum flūmen 2 est ingenī, nūllius dīcendī aut scribendi tanta vis, tanta cōpia, quae nōn dicam exōrnāre, 3 sed ēnārrāre, C. Caesar, rēs tuās gestās possit. 40 Tamen adfirmō, 4 et hoc pāce 5 dīcam tuā, nūllam in hīs 6 esse laudem amplīorem quam eam, quam hodiernō dīc consēcūtus es. Soleō saepe ante oculōs pōnere idque 7 libenter crēbris ēsūrpāre 8 sermōnibus, omnēs 9 nostrōrum imperātōrum, omnēs exterārum gentium potentissimōrum-45 que populōrum, omnēs clārissimōrum rēgum rēs gestās cum tuās 10 nec contentiōnum māgnitūdine nec numerō proeliōrum nec varietāte regiōnum nec celeritāte confirmīdīdīne bellōrum posse cōnferri; nec vērō disiūnctissimās terrās citius passibus cūiusquam 50 potuisse peragrāri, 11 quam tuās nōn dicam cursibus, sed victōriīs lūstrātae 12 sunt.

Quae quidem ego nisi ita māgna esse fātear, ut ea vix cūiusquam mēns aut cōgitātiō capere 13 possit, āmēns 14 sim; sed tamen sunt alia māiōra. Nam bellicās laudēs 55 solent quīdam extenuāre 15 verbīs eāsque dētrahere ducibus, commūnicāre 16 cum multitās, nē propriāe sint imperātōrum. Et certē in armīs militūm virtūs, locōrum opportūnitās, auxilia sociōrum, classēs, commeātūs multum iuvant; maximam vērō partem quasi suō iūre Fortūna 60 sibi vindicat 17 et, quicquid prōsperō 18 gestum est, id paene omnē ductī suum.

At vērō hūius glōriāe, 19 C. Caesar, quam es paulō ante adeptus, socium habēs nēminem; tōtum hōc, quantum-

2. 1 of no one. 2 stream. 3 extol. 4 assert. 5 permission. 6 sc. rebus gestis. 7 the fact, stated in the following clause. 8 speak of. 9 w. res gestas. 10 sc. rebus, modifying conferri (be compared). 11 have been traversed. 12 visited. 13 compass. 14 senseless. 15 belittle. 16 share. 17 claims. 18 successfully. 19 derived from the pardon of Marcellus.
cumque est, quod certē maximum est, tōtum est, inquam, tuis. Nihil sibi ex istā laude centuriō, nihil praefectus nihil cohors, nihil turma dēcerpit; quīn etiam illa ipsī rerum hūmānārum domina. Fortūna, in istius societatem gloriae sē nōn offert; tibi cēdit, tuam esse tōtam et propriam fatētur. Numquam enim temeritās cum sapientiā commiscētur, neque ad cōnsilium cāsus admittitur.

Caesar, the conqueror of nations.

3. Domuisti gentēs immānītāte barbarās, multitūdine innumerābilēs, locīs infinitās, omni cōpiārum genere abundantēs; sed tamen ea vicist, quae et nātūram et condiciōnem, ut vincē possent, habēbant. Nūlla est enim tanta vis, quae nōn ferrō et viribus debilitāri frangīque possit. Animum vincere, irācundiam cohibēre, victorīae temperāre, adversārium nōbilitāte, ingeniō, virtūte praestantem nōn modo extollere iacentem, sed etiam amplificare eius pristinam dīgnitātem, haec qui facit, nōn ego eum cum summīs virīs comparō, sed simillimum deō iūdicō.

Itaque, C. Caesar, bellicae tuae laudēs celebrābuntur illae quidem nōn sōlum nostrīs, sed paene omnium gentium litterīs atque linguis, nec īlla umquam actās dē tuīs laudibus conticēscet; sed tamen ēius modī rēs nesciō quō modō, etiam cum leguntur, obstrepī clāmōre militum videntur et tubārum sonō. At vērō cum aliquid clēmente, mānsuētē, iūstē, moderātē, sapienter factum, in irācundiā praeertim, quae est inimīca cōnsiliō, et in victorīā, quae nātūra insolēns et superba est, audīmus aut legimus, quō studiō incendimur nōn modo in gestīs

---

20 troop. 21 claims a share. 22 mistress. 23 thrust. 24 united.
3. subdued. 2 ferocity. 3 rich. 4 anger. 5 be moderate (in the time of). 6 adversary. 7 raise. 8 will be silent. 9 be overwhelmed. 10 sound, with humanity. 12 in a time of. 13 real.
rebus, sed etiam in fictis,\textsuperscript{14} ut eōs saepe, quōs numquam vidimus, diligāmus! Tē vērō, quem praeuentem\textsuperscript{15} intue-mur, cūius mentem sēnsūsque et ōs cernimus, ut, quicquid\textsuperscript{95} belli\textsuperscript{16} fortūnā reliquum\textsuperscript{17} reī publicae fēcerit, id esse salvum velīs, quibus laudibus efferēmus, quibus studiīs prósequēmur, quā benevolentīā complexēmur!\textsuperscript{18} Parie-tēs mēdius fidius,\textsuperscript{19} ut mihi vidētur, hūius cūriae tībi grātiās agere gestiunt,\textsuperscript{20} quod brevī tempore futūra sit illa\textsuperscript{100} auctōritās\textsuperscript{21} in hīs māiōrum suōrum et suīs sēdibus.

Caesar, the conqueror of himself.

4. Equidem\textsuperscript{1} cum C.\textsuperscript{2} Mārcellī, virī optimī et com-memorābīlī\textsuperscript{3} pietāte praeditū, lacrimās modo vōbīsecum vidērem, omnium Mārcellōrum meum pectus\textsuperscript{4} memoria obfūdid,\textsuperscript{5} quibus tū etiam mortuīs M. Mārcellō cōnservātō\textsuperscript{105} dignitātem suam reddidistī\textsuperscript{6} nōbilissimamque familiam iam ad paucōs redāctam\textsuperscript{7} paene ab interitū vindicāsti. Hunc tū igitur diem tuīs māximīs et innumerābilibus grātulātiōnibus iūre antepōnēs. Haec enim rēs ūnīs est propria C. Caesaris; cēterae duce tē gestae māgnae\textsuperscript{110} illae quidem, sed tamen multō māgnōque comitātū. Hūius autem reī tū īdem\textsuperscript{8} es et dux et comes; quae quidem tanta est,\textsuperscript{9} ut tropaeīs et monumentīs tuīs adlā-tūra finem sit aetās (nihil est enim opere et manū factum, quod nōn aliquandō cōnficiat et cōnsumat vetustās);\textsuperscript{115} at haec tua iūstitia et lēnitās animī flōrēscit cotīdiē magis, ita ut, quantum tuīs operibus diūturnitās dētrahet, tanta adferat laudibus.

Et cēterōs quidem omnēs victōrēs bellōrum cīvīlium iam

\textsuperscript{14} imaginary. \textsuperscript{15} present. \textsuperscript{16} w. fortuna. \textsuperscript{17} reliquum fecerit = relique-rit. \textsuperscript{18} honor. \textsuperscript{19} medius fidius (sc. iuvet), I declare. \textsuperscript{20} are eager. \textsuperscript{21} i.e. that influential man, Marcellus.

1 for my own part. 2 brother or cousin of Marcus. 3 memorable. 4 breast, heart. 5 filled. 6 have restored. 7 reduced. 8 at once. 9 tanta est ut (anacoluthon), is so great that while . . . at, yet.
120 ante aequitāte et misericordiā vincēs; hodiērō vērō diē tē ipsum vincisti. Vereor ut hoc, quod dīcam, perinde intellegī possit audītum, atque ipse cōgitāns sentiō: ipsam victoriam vincisse vidēris, cum ea, quae illa erat adepta, victis remīsisti. Nam cum ipsius victorīae condiciōne omnēs victī occidissēmus, clēmentiae tuae iūdiciō conservāti sumus. Recte igitur ēnus invictus es, ā quō etiam ipsius victorīae condiciō visque dévicta est.

Caesar's love of peace shown by the pardon of Marcellus.

5. Atque hōc C. Caesāris iūdiciōm, patrēs cōnscripti, quam lātē pateat, attendite. Omnēs enim, quī ad illa arma fātō sumus nesciō quō reī pūblīcae miserō funestōque compulsī, etsi aliquā culpā tēnēmūr errōris hūmānī, scelere certē liberāti sumus. Nam, cum M. Mārellum dēprecantibus vōbis reī pūblīcae cōnservāvit, mé et mihi et item reī pūblīcae nūllō dēprecante, reliquōs amplissimōs

10 perinde atque, exactly as.
5. 1 fatal. 2 are guilty of some fault.
virōs et sibi ipsōs et patriae reddidit, quōrum et frequen-
tiam et dignitātem hoc ipsō in consessū vidētis. Nōn
ille hostēs indūxit in cūrium, sed iūdicāvit ā plērisque ignōrātiōne potius et falsō atque ināni metū quam cupiditāte aut crūdēlitāte bellum esse susceptum.

Quō quidem in bellō semper dē pāce audiendum putāvī, semperque dolui nōn modo pācem, sed etiam ōrātiōnem cīvium pācem flāgitantium repudiāri. Neque enim ego illa nec ūlla umquam secūtus sum arma cīvilia, semperque mea cōnsilia pācis et togae socia, nōn bellī atque armō-
rum fuērunt. Hominem sum secūtus privātō officiō, nōn públicō; tantumque apud mē grāti animī fidēlis memoria valuit, ut nūlā nōn modo cupiditāte, sed nē spē quidem prūdēns et sciēns tamquam ad interitum ruerem voluntārium.

Quod quidem meum cōnsilium minimē obscūrum fuit. Nam et in hoc ōrdine integra rē multa dē pāce dīxi et in ipsō bellō eadem etiam cum capitis meī periculō sēnsī. Ex quō nēmō iam erit tam iniūstus exīstīmātor rērum, qui dubitet, quae Caesāris dē bellō voluntās fuerit, cum pācis auctōrēs cōnservandōs statim cēnserīt, cēterīs fuerit ērātior. Atque id minus mīrum fortasse tum, cum esset incertus exitus et anceps fortūna bellī; qui vērō victor pācis auctōrēs diligīt, is profectō dēclārat sē māluisse nōn dīmīcāre quam vincere.

Let Caesar continue to exhibit his generosity.

6. Atque hūius quidem reī M. Márcellō sum testis. Nostī enim sēnsūs ut in pāce semper, sic tum etiam in bellō congruēbant. Quotīēns ego eum et quantō cum...
M. TULLI CICERONIS

dolore vidi cum insolentiam certorum hominum, tum etiam ipsius victoriae ferocitatem extimescendem! Quo gratior tua liberalitas, C. Caesar, nobis, qui illa vidiimus, debet esse. Non enim iam causae sunt inter se, sed victoriae comparandae. Vidiimus tuam victoriam proeliorum exitu terminatam, gladium vagnam vacuum in urbe non vidiimus. Quos amisisimus cives, eos Martis vis perculit, non ira victoriae, ut dubitare debeat nemo, quin multos, si fieri posset, C. Caesar ab inferis excitaret, quoniam ex eadem acie conservat, quos potest. Alterius vero partis nihil amplius dicam quam, id quod omnem verebamur, nimis iracundam futuram esse victoriam.

Quidam enim non modo armatis, sed interdum etiam otiosis minabantur; nec quid quisque sensisset, sed ubi fuisset, cogitandum esse dicerant; ut mihi quidem videantur di immortales, etiamsi poenae a populo Romano ob aliquod delictum expetiverunt, qui civile bellum tantum et tam luctuosum excitaverunt, vel placati iam vel satiati aliquando omnem spem salutis ad clementiam victoris et sapientiam contulisse.

Quare gaude tuo isto tam excellenti bono, et fruere cum fortuna et gloria tum etiam natura et moribus tuis, ex quo quidem maximus est fructus iucunditasque sapienti. Cetera cum tua recordabere, etsi persaepe virtuti, tamen plerumque felicitati tuae gratulabere; de nobis, quos in re publica tecom simul esse voluisti, quotiens cogitabis, totiens de maximis tuis beneficiis, totiens de incriminibilibus liberaltate, totiens de singulari sapientia tua cogitabis; quae non modo summa bona, sed nimium audobo vel sola dicere. Tantus est enim splendor in laude verae, tanta in magnitudine animi et consili dig-

2 presumption. 3 dreading. 4 vagina vacuum: unsheathed. 5 of Mars. 6 wrath (after). 7 angry. 8 offense. 9 when they. 10 sorrowful. 11 satisfied. 12 disposition. 13 pleasure. 14 generally. 15 certainly.
nitas, ut haec a Virtute donata, cetera a Fortuna commodata esse videantur. Noli igitur in conservandis bonis viris defectigari, non cupiditatem praesertim aliquae aut pravitate lapsis, sed opinione officii stulta fortasse, certe non improba, et specie quadam rei publicae. Non enim tua ullo culpa est, si tè aliqual timuerunt; contraque summa laus, quod minimè timendum fuisse senserunt.

The safety of Caesar is the safety of all.

7. Nunc venio ad gravissimam querellam et atrociissimam suspicionem tuam, quae non tibi ipsi magis quam cum omnibus civibus, tum maximè nobis, qui a te censervati sumus, pròvidenda est; quam et si sperò falsam esse, tamen numquam extenuabò. Tua enim cautio nostra cautio est, ut, si in alterutro peccandum sit, malim videri nimis timidus quam prudens. Sed quisnam est iste tam demens? De tuisne—tametsì qui magis sunt tui, quam quibus tua saltem inspérantibus reddidisti?—an ex hoc numerò, quì ùnà tècum fuérunt? Non est crédibilis tantus inullo furor, ut, quò duce omnia summa sit adeptus, hùius vitam non antepònat suae. An, si nihil tui cogitant sceleris, cavendum est, nè quid inimici? Quí? Omnès enim, qui fuërunterut aut suà pertinacià vitam amísèrunt aut tua misericordia retínuè runt, ut aut nullì supersint dè inimicìs aut, quì fuërunt, sint amicissimi.

Sed tamen cum in animis hominum tantae latebrae sint et tantì recessus, augeamus sane suspicionem tuam; simul enim augèbimus diligentiam. Nam quis est omnium

16 lent. 17 become weary. 18 from depravity. 19 when they have erred.
7. 1 complaint. 2 omit in translating. 3 but. 4 make light of. 5 caution for you. 6 in one way or the other. 7 err. 8 some one of. 9 your friends.
10 obstinacy, shown by their continuing opposition after the battle of Pharsalus. 11 dark corners.
tam ignārus \(^5\) rērum, tam rudis \(^6\) in rē pūblicā, tam nihil umquam nec dē suā nec dē commūnī salūte cōgitāns, quī nōn intellegat tuā salūte continērī suam et ex ūnīs tua vitā pendēre omnium? Equidem \(^7\) dē tē diēs noctēsque, ut dēbeō, cōgitāns cāsūs dumtaxat hūmānōs et incertōs ēventūs valētūdīnis et nātūrāe commūnīs fragilitātem extimēscō dolēoque, cum rēs pūblica immortālis esse dēbeat, eam in ūnīs mortālis animā cōnsistere. Si vērō ad hūmānōs cāsūs incertōsque mōtūs valētūdīnis sceleris etiam accēdit insula rūmque consensio, quum deum, si cupiat, posse opitulāri rē pūblicae crēdāmus?

Caesar is not to consider his life's work ended.

8. Omnia sunt excitanda \(^1\) tibi, C. Caesar, ūnī, quae iacēre sentīs belli ipsīs impetū, quod necesse fuit, perculsa atque prōstrāta; cōnstituenda iūdicia, revocanda fidēs, comprimendae libīdīnēs, prōpāganda subolēs; \(^2\) omnia, quae dilāpsa iam difluxērunt, severīs lēgibus vincienda \(^3\) sunt. Nōn fuit recūsandum \(^4\) in tantō cīvīlī bellō, tantō animōrūm ārdōre et armōrūm, quīn quassāta rēs pūblica, quīcumque belli ēventus fuisset, multa perderet et ōrnamēnta dignitātīs et praevidia stabilitātīs suae, multaque uterque dux faceret armātus, quae īdem togātus fierī prohibuisset.

Quae quidem tibi nunc omnia belli vulnera sānanda sunt, quibus praeter tē medērī nēmā potest.

Itaque illam tuam praeclārīssimam et sapientissimam vocem invitus audīvi: 'Satis diū vel nātūrāe vīxi vel glōrīae.' Satis, si ita vis, fortasse nātūrāe, addō etiam, si placet, glōrīae; at, quod māximum est, patriae certē parum. Quārē omitte istam, quaesō, doctōrum homi-
num\textsuperscript{8} in contemnendā morte prūdentiam \textsuperscript{9}; nōli nostrō perīculō esse sapiēns. Saepe enim vēnit ad aurēs meās tē\textsuperscript{250} idem istud nimis crebrō \textsuperscript{10} dicere, tibi satis tē víxisse. Crēdō; sed tum id audīrem, si tibi sōli vīverēs aut si tibi etiam sōli nātus essēs. Omnium salūtem cīvium cūntamque rem pūblicam rēs tuae gestae complexae sunt; tantum abes ā perfectionē māximōrum operum, ut fun-

\textsuperscript{255} dāmenta nōndum, quae cōgitās, iēceris.\textsuperscript{11} Hic\textsuperscript{12} tū modum \textsuperscript{13} vitae tuae nōn salūte reī pūblicae, sed aequītāte \textsuperscript{14} animī dēfiniēs? Quid, si istud \textsuperscript{15} nē glōriae tuae quidem satis est? Ĉūius tē esse avidissimum, quamvīs \textsuperscript{16} sīs sapiēns, nōn negābis.

'Parumne igitur,' inquiēs, 'māgna\textsuperscript{17} reliinquēmus?' Immō vērō aliūs quamvīs multīs satis, tibi ūnī parum. Quicquid est enim, quamvīs amplum sit, id est parum tum, cum est aliquīd amplius. Quodśi rērum tuārum immor-

\textsuperscript{265} tālium, C. Caesar, hīc exitus futūrus fuit, ut dēvictīs 18 adsersāriīs rem pūblicam in ēō statū reliquerēs, in quō nunc est, vidē, quaeśō, nē tua divīna virtūs admirātiōnis plūs sit habitūra quam glōriae, sīquidem glōria\textsuperscript{19} est inlūstris ac pervagāta\textsuperscript{20} māgnōrum vel in 21 suōs cīvēs vel in patriam vel in omne genus hominum fāma meritōrum.

\textsuperscript{260} Let Caesar win undying fame by reēstablishing the State.

9. Hace igitur tibi reliqua pars est, hīc restat āctus,\textsuperscript{1} in hōc ēlāborandum est, ut rem pūblicam cōnstituās, eāque \textsuperscript{2} tū in prīmīs summā tranquillitāte et otiō perfruāre; tum tē, si volēs, cum et patriae, quod dēbēs, solveris et

\textsuperscript{8} i.e. the philosophers. \textsuperscript{9} wisdom. \textsuperscript{10} frequently. \textsuperscript{11} laid. \textsuperscript{12} under these circumstances. \textsuperscript{13} duration. \textsuperscript{14} aequitāte animī: resignation (willingness to die). \textsuperscript{15} that sentiment "satis diu," etc. \textsuperscript{16} although, however. \textsuperscript{17} pa-

\textsuperscript{20} rum magna: achievements too small. \textsuperscript{18} de + vinco. \textsuperscript{19} Order: glōria est fāma magnōrum meritorum. \textsuperscript{20} widespread. \textsuperscript{21} toward.

9. \textsuperscript{1} act; Caesar has a part to play. \textsuperscript{2} sc. re publica.
nātūram ipsam explēveris 3 satietāte vivendi, satis diū vīxisse dīcitō.4 Quid enim est omnīnō 5 hōc ipsum "diū,” in quō est aliqūid extrēmum? Quod cum vēnit, omnis voluptās praeterīta prō nihilō est, quia posteā nūlla est futūra. Quamquam iste tuus animus numquam hīs angustiīs, quās nātūra nōbīs ad vivendum dedit, contentus fuit; semper immorālītātis amōre flagrāvit. Nec vērō haec tua vīta dūcenda 6 est, quae corpore et spīritū continētur; illa, inquam, illa vīta est tua, quae vigēbit 7 memoriā saeculōrum omnium, quam posterītās alet, quam ipsa aeternitās semper tuēbitur. Huic tū īnserviās,8 huic tē ostentēs oportet; quae quidem, quae mīrētur, iam prīdem multa habet; nunc etiam, quae laudēt, exspectat. 

Obstupēscēnt 9 posterī certē imperia, prōvinciās, Rhēnum, Ōceanum, Nilum, pūgnās innumerābilēs, increūdibilēs victōriās, monumenta, mūnēra,10 triumphōs audientēs et legentēs tuōs. Sed nisi haec urbs stabilitāta tuīs cōnsilīlis et īnstitūtīs erit, vagābitur 11 modo tuum nōmen longē atque lātē; sēdem stabilem et domicilium certum nōn habēbit. Erit inter eōs etiam, qui nāsentur, sīcūt inter nōs fuit, māgna dissēnsiō, cum aliī laudibus ad caelum rēs tuās gestās efferent, aliī fortasse aliqūid reōuīreント, idque vel māximum, nisi belli civīlis incendium salūte patriae restīnxeris, ut illud 12 fātī fuisset videātur, hōc 13 cōnsilī. Servī 14 igitur eīs etiam iūdiciēbus, qui multīs post saeculīs de tē iūdicābunt, et quidem haud scīō an incorruptiūs 15 quam nōs; nam et sine amōre et sine cupiditātē et rūrsus sine odiō et sine invidiā iūdicābant. Id 16 autem etiamī tum ad tē, ut quīdam putant, nōn pertinēbit, nunc certē

3 expleveris . . . vivendi: shall have satisfied with a full life. 4 imperative. 5 quid . . . omnino: for what is the meaning, anyway, of, etc. 6 to be considered. 7 will flourish. 8 be subservient. 9 will stand amazed. 10 games, the public shows given when he was a magistrate. 11 will be talked about. 12 i.e. bellum civile. 13 i.e. salus. 14 imperative, give heed to. 15 more honestly. 16 i.e. the judgment of posterity.
pertinet esse tē tālem, ut tuās laudēs obscūrātūra nūlla umquam sit oblīviō.

The war being ended, all will unite to protect the conqueror.

10. Diversae voluntātēs cīvium fuērunt distrāctaeque sententiae. Nōn enim cōnsiliis sōlum et studiis, sed armīs etiam et castrīs dissipēbāmus; erat enim obscūritās quae-dam, erat certāmen inter clārissimōs duēs; multī dubitā-bant, quid optimum esset, multī, quid sibi expediret, multī, quid decēret, nōnnūllī etiam, quid licēret. Per-functa rēs pūblica est hōc miserō fātālique bellō; vīcit is, quī nōn fortūnā inflammāret odium suum, sed bonitāte lēnīret, nec quī omnēs, quibus īrātus esset, eōsdem exsiliō aut morte dīgnōs iūdicāret. Arma ab aliīs posita, ab aliīs ērepta sunt. Ingrātus est iniūstusque cīvis, qui armōrum perīculō liberātus animum tamen retinet armātum, ut etiam ille melior sit quī in aciē cecidit, qui in causā animam profūdit. Quae enim pertinācia quibusdam quīlibet. 320

Sed iam omnis frācta dissēnsiō est armīs, extinstecta aequitāte victōris; restat, ut omnēs ūnum velint, qui modo habent aliudum nōn sōlum sapientiae, sed etiam sānitātis. Nisi tē, C. Caesar, salvō et in istā sententiā, quā cum anteā, tum hodī vel māximē ūsus es, manente, salvī esse non possimus. Quārē omnēs tē, quī haec salva esse volumem, et hortāmur et obscurāmus, ut vitae tuae et salūtī cōnsulās; omnēsque tibi (ut prō aliīs etiam loquar, quod de mē ipse sentiō), quoniam subesse aliquid putās, quod cavendum sit, nōn modo excubiās et custōdiās, sed etiam laterum nostrōrum oppositūs et corporum pollicēmur.

10. 1 were at variance. 2 was expedient. 3 was becoming. 4 has finished. 5 by some. 6 from others. 7 fell. 8 obstinacy. 9 good sense. 10 entreat. 11 w. pollicemur. 12 (to be) concealed. 13 must be avoided. 14 protection.
Caesar’s crowning kindness.

11. Sed ut, unde est órsa,\(^1\) in eódem terminétur órātiō, máximās tibi omnēs grātiās agimus, C. Caesar, māiōrēs etiam habēmus. Nam omnēs idem sentiunt, quod ex omnium precibus et lacrimās sentīre potuisti. Sed quia nōn est omnibus stantibus\(^2\) necesse dīcere, ā mē certē dīcī volunt, cui necesse est quōdam modō; et, quod fierī decet,\(^3\) M. Mārcellō ā tē huic ordinī populōque Rōmānō et reī publicaeredditō, fierī id intellegō. Nam laetārī omnēs nōn dē únius sōlum, sed dē commūnī salūte sentiō. Quod autem summae benevolentiae est,\(^4\) quae mea ergā illum omnibus semper nōta fuit, ut vix C. Mārcellō, optimō et amantissimō frātrī, praeter eum quidem cēderem nēminī, cum id sollicitūdine,\(^5\) cūrā, labōre tamdiū praestiterim, quamdiū est dē illius salūte dubitātum, certē hoc tempore māgnīs cūris, molestiās,\(^6\) dolōribus liberātus praestāre dēbeō. Itaque, C. Caesar, sīc tibi grātiās agō ut, omnibus mē rēbus\(^7\) ā tē nōn cōnservātō sōlum sed etiam ὁρνάτο, tamen ad tua in mē ūnum innumerābilia merita,\(^8\) quod fierī iam posse nōn arbitrābar, máximus\(^9\) hoc tuō factō cumulus accesserit.

11.\(^1\) began. \(^2\) stantibus dicere: to stand and speak. Cicero was a personal friend of Marcellus. \(^3\) quod decet: which is proper, w. antecedent id, explained by laetāri omnes. \(^4\) quod...est: as for that which is the duty of the deepest affection. \(^5\) anxiety. \(^6\) distress. \(^7\) abl. of specification. \(^8\) benefits. \(^9\) maximus cumulus: crowning favor.
M. Tullī Cicerōnis

EPISTULAE SELECTAE

1. To Pompey in Asia.


S. T. E. Q. V. B. E. Ex litteris tuīs, quās pūblicē misisti, cēpi ūnā cum omnibus incrēdibilem voluptātem;

1. See Introduction, 11. 2 Written at Rome, 62 B.C., after Pompey’s dispatches to the Romans announcing his victory over Mithridates.

3 M. F. = Marci filius. S. D. = salutem dicit (greets, sends greeting).
4 The initials stand for si tu exercitusque valetis, bene est. 5 officially.
tantam enim spem οτί ἔστω, quantum ego semper omnibus tē ὑπὸ frētus pollicēbar. Sed hoc scītō, tuōs veterēs hostēs, novōs amīcōs vehementer litteris perculsōs atque ex māgnā spē dēturbātōs iacēre.

Ad mē autem litterās quās mīsīstī, quamquam exiguam significātiōnem tuae ergā mē voluntātis habēbant, tamen mihi scītō iūcundās fuisse; nūlā enim rē tam laetāri soleō quam meōrum officiōrum cōnscientiā, quibus si quandō nōn mūtūe respondētur, apud mē plūs offici residēre faciillēm patiō. Illud nōn dubītō, quīn, si tē mea summa ergā tē studia parum mihi adiūnxerint, rēs pūblica nōs inter nōs conciliātūra coniunctūraque sit.

15 Ac, nē ignōrēs, quid ego in tuīs litterīs dēsiderārīm, scribām apertē, sīcūt et mea nātūra et nostra amīcitia postulat. Rēs eās gessī, quārum aliquam in tuīs litterīs et nostrae necessitūdīnis et reī pūblicae causā grātulātiōnem exspectāvī; quam ego abs tē praetermīssam esse arbitror, quod verērēre, nē cūius animum offenderēs. Sed scītō ea, quae nōs prō salūte patriae gessimus, orbis terrae iūdiciō ac testimōniō comprobārī; quae, cum vēneris, tantō consiliō tantāque animī māgnitūdine ā mē gesta esse cognōscēs, ut tībi, multō māióri quam Afrīcānus fuit, mē, nōn multō minōrem quam Lælium, facile et in rē pūblica et in amīcitia adiūnctum esse patiāre.

(Ad Fam. V. 7.)

6 of peace. 7 disappointed. 8 services. 9 non . . . respondetur: no return is made. 10 apud me: in my favor. 11 the balance. 12 zeal. 13 missed. 14 I.e. the suppression of Catiline’s conspiracy, to which he expected Pompey to refer. 15 Africanus and Lælius were ideal friends.

2. 1 salutem dicit. Cicero was writing in his villa near Antium, Apr. 59 B.C., to his intimate friend, T. Pomponius Atticus. 2 look you (115, b). = servos; indir. disc. w. vb. implied in nuntius. 4 without. 5 sent. historia dignum: of importance.
Et scitō Cūriōnem adulēscentem vēnisse ad mē salūtātum. Valdē ēius sermó dē Públiō cum tuīs litterīs congruēbat; ipse vērō mirandum in modum “rēgēs ōdisse superbōs.” Peraequē narrābat incēsām esse iuventūtem neque ferre haec posse. Bene habēmus nōs, sī in hīs spēs est; opinor, aliud agāmus. Ego mē dō historiae. Quamquam licet mē Saufeium putēs esse, nihil mē est inertius.


(Ad Att. II. 8.)

3. To Atticus, in Epirus.

Cicerō Atticō Sal.

Numquam ante arbitrō tē epistulam meam lēgisse, nisi meā manū scriptam. Ex eō colligere poteris, quantā
occupātiōne 3 distinear. 4 Nam, cum vacuī temporis nihil habērem et cum recreandae vōculae 5 causā necesse esset 5 mihi ambulāre, haec dictāvī ambulāns.

(Ad Att. II. 23.)

4. To Quintus Cicero, at Ephesus.¹

Praetereā Aesōpī ² tragoedī, nostri familiāris, Licinius servus, tibi nōtus, aufūgit. Is Athēnīs apud Patrōnem ³ Epicūrēum prō liberō fuit. Inde in Asiam vēnit. Postea Platō quīdam Sardiānus, ⁴ Epicūrēus, quī Athēnīs solet esse multum ⁵ et quī tum Athēnīs fuerat, cum Licinius eō ⁵

³ business. ⁴ am engaged. ⁵ my weak voice.

¹ A paragraph about a runaway slave, from a letter by Cicero at Rome, Nov., 59 b.c., to his brother, then governor of the province of Asia. ² of Aesopus, a Roman tragedian. ³ Patron, the Epicurean. ⁴ of Sardis. ⁵ much (of the time).
vēnisset, cum eum fugitivum esse posteā ex Aesōpi litterīs cognōsset, hominem comprehendit et in custōdiam Ephesī trādidit, sed in pūblicam nōn satis ex litterīs ēius intellegere potuimus. Tū, quōquō modo est, quoniam Ephesī est, hominem investigēs velim summāque diligentia vel tēcum dēducās. Nōli spectāre quantī homō est; parvī enim pretī est, quī iam nihilī est; sed tantō dolōre Aesōpus est affectus propter servī scelus et audāciām ut nihil grātius facere possīs, quam si illum per tē recuperārit.⁹

(Ad Q. Frat. I. 2.)

⁶ but (whether). ⁷ sc. custodiam. ⁸ a grain-mill, sometimes worked by slaves. ⁹ recover.
5. To his Wife and Family, in Rome.¹

*Tullius S. D. Terentiae et Tulliolae et Cicerōnī Suīs.*

Nōli putāre mē ad quemquam longīōrēs epistulās scribere, nisi sī quis ad mē plūra scripsit, cui putō rescribī

5. ¹Written at Thessalonica, Oct., 58 B.C., during Cicero's exile.
oportère; nec enim habeō, quod scribam, nec hoc tempore quidquam difficilius fació. Ad tē vērō et ad nostram Tulliōlam non queō sine plurīmis lacrimīs scribere; vos enim videō esse miserrīmās, quās ego beātissīmās semper esse voluī idque praestāre ēbūi et, nisi tam tīmidī fuissēmus, praestītīsem.

Pisōnem nostrum meritō ēius amō plurīrum; eum, ut potuī, per litterās cohortātus sum gratiāisque ēgī, ut ēbui. In novīs tribūnīs pl. intellegō spem tē habēre; id erit firmum, si Pompēī voluntās erit, sed Crassum tamen metuō. Ā tē quidem omnia fierī fortissīmē et amantissīmē videō, nec mīror, sed maerō cāsum ēiusmodī, ut tantīs tuīs miserīs meae miseriae subleventur. Nam ad mē P. Valerius, homō officīosus, scripsit, id quod ego máximō cum flētū légī, quemadmodum ā Vestae ad tabulam Valeriam ducta essēs. Hem, mea lūx, mcum désideriūm, unde omnēs opem petere solēbant! tē nunc, mea Terentia, sīc vexārī, sīc iacēre in lacrimīs et sordibus, idque fierī meā culpā, qui cēterōs servāvī, ut nōs perīrēmus!

Quod dē domō scribis, hoc est dē ārea, ego vērō tum dēnique mihi vidēbor restitūtus, si illa nōbīs erit restitūta. Vērum haec nōn sunt in nostrā manū; illud doleō, quae impēnsā facienda est, in ēius partem ēbì miseram et dēspoliātam venīre. Quod si cōnācitur negotiōnum, omnia consequēmur; sīn eadem nōs fortūna premet, etiamne reliquiās tuās misera prōiciēs? Obsecró tē, mea vita, quod ad sūmptum attinet, sine aliōs, quī possunt, si modo volunt, sustinēre, et valetūdinem istam īnfīrman, si

2 little Tullia. 3 I am able. 4 to have secured. 5 Tullia's husband for plebis. 7 a safe thing (to depend on). 8 are relieved. 9 obliging 10 sc. templo. 11 the office of Valerius, probably a bank. 12 alas. 13 love. 14 mourning. 15 de area: about its site, Cicero's house had been destroyed when he was banished. 16 quae impēnsa: the expense which. 17 in ēius partem venire: share. 18 i. e., his recall from banishment. 19 what you have left. 20 quod . . . attinet: as to the expense (of my support). 21 imperative.
A Roman Woman Sacrificing
mē amās, nōli vexāre. Nam mihi ante oculōs diēs noctēsque versāris; omnēs labōrēs tē excipere videō; timeō, ut sustineās. Sed videō in tē esse omnia 22; quāre, ut id, quod spērās et quod agis, cōsequāmur, servī vale-35 tūdīnī.

Ego, ad quos scribām, nesciō, nisi ad eōs, quī ad mē scribunt, aut ad eōs, dē quibus ad mē vōs alicuīd scribitis. Longius, quoniam ita vōbis placet, nōn discēdam; sed velim quam saeppissimē litterās mittātis, praeertim si 40 quid est fīrmius, quod spērēmus. Valēte, mea désideria, valēte.

(Ad Fam. XIV. 2.)

6. To Caesar, in Gaul 1

Cicero Caesari Imp. 2 S. D.

Vidē quam mihi persuāserim tē mē esse alterum 3 nōn modo in eīs rēbus, quae ad mē ipsum, sed etiam in eīs, quae ad meōs pertinent. C. Trebatium cōgitāram, quōcumque exīrem, mēcum dūcere, ut eum meīs omnibus studiīs, 5 beneficiīs quam ōrnātissīmum domum redūcerem. Sed posteā quam et Pompēi commorātiō diūturnīor erat, quam putāram, et mea quaedam tībi nōn ignōta dubitātiō aut impedīre profectionem meam vidēbātur aut certē tardāre, vidē quid mihi sūmpserīm. Coepī velle ea 10 Trebatium exspectāre ā tē, quae spērāssēt ā mē, neque mehercule minus eī prōlixē 4 dē tuā voluntātē prōmīsi, quam eram solitus dē meā pollicērī. Cāsus 5 vērō mirī- 22 all (our hopes).

6. Part of a letter from Rome, Apr., 54 B.C., recommending Tre-23 all (our hopes).

6. Part of a letter from Rome, Apr., 54 B.C., recommending Tre-23 all (our hopes).

6. Part of a letter from Rome, Apr., 54 B.C., recommending Tre-23 all (our hopes).

6. Part of a letter from Rome, Apr., 54 B.C., recommending Tre-23 all (our hopes).

6. Part of a letter from Rome, Apr., 54 B.C., recommending Tre-
bātiō cum Balbō nostrō loquerer accurātius domī meae, litterae mihi dantur ā tē, quibus in extrēmis scriptum erat: "Mescinium Rufum, quem mihi commendās, vel régem Galliae faciam, vel hunc Leptae dēlēgā, si vis. Tū ad mē alium mitte, quem čornem." Sustulimus manūs et ego et Balbus; tanta fuit opportūnitās, ut illud nesciō quōd nōn fortuītum, sed divīnum vidērētur. Mittō igitur ad tē Trebātium atque ita mittō, ut initiō mē spōnte, post autem invītātū tuō mittendum dūxerim. Hunc, mī Caesar, sic velim omnī tuā cōmitātē 13 complectāre, ut omnia, quae per mē possīs addūcī ut in meōs cōnferre velīs, in ūnum hunc cōnferās.

(Ad Fam. VII. 5.)

7. To Trebatius Testa, in Gaul.1

Cicerō Trebātiō.

Ego tē commendāre nōn dēsistō; sed, quid prōficiam, ex tē scīre cupidō. Spem māximam habeō in Balbō, ad quem dē tē diligēntissimē et saepissimē scribō. Illud soleō mīrārī, nōn mē totiēns accipere tuās litterās, quotiēns ā Quintō mīhi frātre adferuntur.

In Britannīā nihil esse audiō neque aurī neque argentī. Id si ita est, essēdum aliqvis capiās, suādeō, et ad nōs quam prīmum recurrās. Sin autem sine Britannīā tamen adsequī, quod volumus, possūmus, perfice, ut sīs in familiāribus Caesaris. Multum tē in eō frātere adiuvābit meus, multum Balbus, sed, mihi crēde, tuus pudor et labor plūrimum. Imperātōrem liberālissimum, aetātem oppor-

8 with unusual earnestness. 9 intrust. 10 lifted in surprise. 11 accidental. 12 believed. 13 kindness.

7. 1 From Rome, May, 54 B.C. Trebatius was with Caesar, to gain military experience. 2 a war-chariot, neut. 3 Balbus was thirty-five.
tūnissimam, commendātiōnem certē singulārem habēs, ut tibi ūnum timendum sit, nē ipse tibi dēfuisse videāre.

(Ad Fam. VII. 7.)

8. To Tiro, at Patrae.¹

_Tullius et Cicerō S. D. Tirōnī Suō._

Septimum iam diem Corecyræ tenēbāmur; Quintus autem pater et filius ² Būthrotī.³ Sollicitī erāmus dē tuā valētūdine mīrum in modum, nec mīrābāmur nihil ā tē litterārum; eīs enim ventīs istim ⁴ nāvigātur, qui si essent, nōs Corecyræ nōn sedērēmus. Cūrā igitur tē et cōnfīrmā et, cum commodē et per valētūdinem et per annī tempus nāvigāre poteris, ad nōs amantissimōs tūi venī. Nēmō nōs amat, qui tē nōn diligat; cārus omnibus exspectātusque venīēs. Cūrā ut valeās. Etiam atque ētiam, Tīrō noster, valē.

(Ad Fam. XVI. 7.)

9. To L. Papirius Paetus.¹

_Cicerō Paetō._

Herī ² vēnī in Cūmānum,³ crās ad tē fortasse. Sed cum certum sciám, faciám tē paulō ante certiōrem. Etsi ⁴ M. Caepārius, cum mihi in silvā Gallīnāriā ⁵ obviam vē-nisset ⁶ quaesīssemque, quid agerēs, dīxit tē in lectō esse, quod ex pedibus lāborārēs. Tūlī scīlicet molestē, ut dēbui, sed tamen cōnstituī ad tē venīre, ut et vidērem tē et vīserēm et cēnārem etiam; nōn enim arbitrōr coquum ⁷

8. ¹ From Cicero and his son Tullius to Tiro, his secretary; written at Corecyra, Nov. 17, 50 B.C. ² The younger Quintus, son of Cicero’s brother. ³ at Buthrotum. ⁴ thence, from Patrae.

9. ¹ Written at Cumae, Nov. 19, 46 B.C. Paetus was a friend living near Naples. ² yesterday. ³ my Cumaean estate. ⁴ and I shall come although. ⁵ a wood in Campania, near Cumae. ⁶ obviam venisset: had met. ⁷ the cook.
etiam tē arthriticum habēre. Expectā igitur hospitem cum minimē edācem, tum inimīcum cēnīs sūmntuōsis.

(Ad Fam. IX. 23.)

10. To C. Cassius Longinus, in Syria.

_Cicerō Cassiō Sal._

Vellem Ídibus Mārtiōs mē ad cēnam invitāssēs; reliquiārum nihil fuisset. Nunc mē reliquiae vestrae exercent, et quidem praeter cēterōs mē. Quamquam egregiōs cōnsulēs habēmus, sed turpissimōs cōnsulārēs; senātum fortem, sed infimō 3 quemque honōre fortissimum. Populō vērō nihil fortius, nihil melius, Italiāque universā; nihil autem foedius Philippō et Pīsone légātīs, nihil flagitiōsius; quī cum essent missī, ut Antonīō ex senātūs sententiā 4 certās rēs nūntiārent, cum ille eārum rērum nūlli pāruisset, utrō ab illō ad nōs intolerābilīa postulāta rettulērunt. Itaque ad nōs concurrītur, factīque iam in rē salutāri 7 populārēs sumus.

Sed tū quid agerēs, quid actūrus, ubi dēnique essēs, nesciēbam. Fāma nūntiābat tē esse in Syriā; auctor erat nēmō. Dē Brūtō, quō 9 propius est, eō fīrmīōra videntur esse quae nūntiāntur. Dolābella 10 valdē vituperābātur 11 ab hominibus nōn insulsīs, 12 quod tībi tam cito succēderet, cum tū vixdum xxx. diēs in Syriā fuissēs; itaque cōn-

8 attacked with gout. 9 greedy. In joking with Paetus, Cicero always pretended to be a great eater.

10. 1 Written at Rome, Feb. 2, 43 B.C. Cassius, the leading conspirator against Caesar, was governor of Syria, 44-42 B.C. 2 fragments, leavings, i.e., Anthony would also have been killed. The cena was the assassination of Caesar, which Cicero applauded. 3 infimō . . . honore: the lowest in rank. 4 in accordance with the vote. 5 on his part. 6 i.e., my house is thronged. 7 in re salutari: though supporting a sound constitutional measure. 8 trans. the impf., agerēs, essēs . . . erat by the pres. (180). 9 as. 10 Dolabella, who was to succeed Cassius, scarcely allowed him the legal month’s grace to leave the province. 11 was criticised. 12 non insulsīs: of wit.
stabat eum recipi in Syriam non oportere. Summa laus et
tua et Brūtī est, quod exercitum praeter spem existimā-
minī comparāsse. Scriberem plūra, si rem causamque
nossem; nunc quae scribō, scribō ex opinioniōne hominum
atque fāmā. Tuās litterās avidē exspectō. Valē.

(Ad Fam. XII. 4.)
M. TULLI CICERONIS
CATO MAIOR DE SENECTUTE LIBER

AD T. POMPONIUM ATTICUM

Cicero’s essay “De Senectute” is a treatise in praise of old age, so charmingly written that Montaigne said of it, that “it made one long to grow old.” It is cast in the form of a dialogue, in which Marcus Cato the Elder, in his eighty-fourth year, converses with two young companions, Scipio Africanus and Gaius Laelius. Cicero says, “I introduced Cato, the old man, speaking, because no personage seemed better fitted to talk concerning old age, than he who had been an old man a very long time, and in old age itself had flourished beyond others.”

Old age not burdensome to Cato.

2. Scipio. Saepe numero 1 admirari soleo cum hoc C. Laelio cum ceterarum rerum tuam excellentem, M. Catō, perfectamque sapientiam, tum vel maximē, quod

2. 1 very often.
numquam tibi senectūtem gravem esse senserim, quae plērisque senibus sic odiōsa est, ut onus sē Aetnā gravius dicant sustinēre.

_Catō._ Rem haud sānē difficilem, Scipió et Laelī, admirārī vidēmini. Quibus enim nihil est in ipsīs opis ad bene beātēque vivendum, eīs omnis actās gravis est; quī autem omnia bona à sē ipsī petunt, eīs nihil malum potest vidēri, quod nātūrae necessitas adferat. Quō in genere est in prīmīs senectūs; quam ut adipiscantur omnēs optant, eandem accūsant adeptī; tanta est stultitiae atque perversitās. Obrepere aiunt eam citius quam putassent. Prīnum quis coēgit eōs falsum putāre? Quī enim citius adulēscentiae senectūs quam pueritiae adulēscentia obrēpit? Deinde quī minus gravis esset eīs senectūs, si octingentēsimum annum aegerent quam si octōgēsimum? Praeterita enim aetās quamvis longa, cum effluxisset, nūllā cōnsōlātiōne permulcēre possent stultam senectūtem. Quōcīrō si sapientiam meam admirārī solētis (quae utinam digna esset opīniōne vestrā nostrōque cognōmine!), in hoc sumus sapientēs, quod nātūram optimam ducem tamquam deum sequimur eīque pāremus; quā quā nōn vērī simile est, cum cēterae partēs aetātis bene discriptae sint, extrēmum āctum tamquam ab inerti poētā esse neglēctum. Sed tamen nesse fuit esse aliquid extrēmum, et tamquam in arborum bācis terraeque frūctibus, mātūritāte tempestīvā quasi viētum et cadūcum, quod ferendum est molliter sapientī. Quid est enim aliud Gigantum modō bellāre cum dīs nisi nātūrae repūgnāre?

_Laelius._ Atquī, Catō, grātissimum nōbis, ut etiam

---

2 burdensome. 3 of folly. 4 inconsistency. 5 comes on. 6 how? 7 has streamed by. 8 soothe. 9 my surname "Sapiens." 10 composed. _actum_: act.
Cf. Shakespeare’s Seven Ages of Man. 11 end. 12 in the case of the fruits.
13 a time of bending. 14 a time of falling. 15 patiently. 16 of giants. 17 and yet.
pro Seipione pollicear, feceris, si, quoniam speramus, volumus quidem certe senes fieri, multo ante a tê didi cerimus, quibus facillimen ratioñibus ingravescentem aetatem ferre possimus.

Cato. Faciam vero, Laeli, praesertim si utrique vestrum, ut dicas, gratum futurum est.

Laelius. Volumus sane, nisi molestum est, Cato, quam longam aliquam viam confeceris, quam nobis quoque ingrediendum sit, istuc, quod pervenisti, videre quâle sit.

He consents to discourse on the enjoyments of old age.

3. Cato. Faciam, ut potero, Laeli. Saepe enim interfuï querellas 1 aequalium 2 meorum (parès autem vetere pröverbiô cum paribus facillimen congregantur), quae C. Salínâtor, quae Sp. Albinus, hominês consularês, nostrî fere aequales, deplorâre solèbant, tum quod voluptatibus carërent, sine quibus vitam nullam putàrent, tum quod spernerentur 3 ab eis, a quibus essent colî soliti. Qui mihi non id vidèbantur accusäre, quod esset accusandum. Nam si id culpà senectûtis accideret, eadem mihi ûsû venirent 5 reliquisque omnibus maioribus nâtû, quorum ego multorum cognòvi senectûtem sine querêla, qui sê et libidinem vinculis laxâtōs 6 esse non molestè ferrent, nec ë suis despicerentur. Sed omnium istius modi querélârum in móribus est culpa, non in aetâte. Moderâti 7 enim et nec difficilès nec inhûmâni senès tolerâbilem senectûtem agunt; importunitàs 9 autem et inhûmânitâs omni aetâti molesta est.

Laelius. Est, ut dicas, Cato; sed fortasse dixerit

18 istuc quo quale sit: what is the character of that stage at which.

3. ¹ have been conversant with the complaints. ² contemporaries. ³ were despised. ⁴ to be respected. ⁵ usu venirent: would happen. ⁶ set free. ⁷ temperate. ⁸ morose. ⁹ rudeness.
quispiam tibi propter opēs et cōpiās et dignitātem tuam tolerābiliōrem senectūtem vidērī, id autem nōn posse multis contingere.

Catō. Est istud quidem, Laelī, aliquid, sed nēquāquam in istō sunt omnia. Ut Themistoclēs fertur Seriphio cuidam in iūrgiō respondisse, cum ille dīxisset nōn eum suā, sed patriae glorīa splendōrem adsecūtum: "Nec hercule," inquit, "si ego Seriphius essem, nec tū si Athēniēnsis, clārus umquam fuisses."

Quod eōdem modo dē senectūte dīci potest. Nec enim in summā inopiā levis esse senectūs potest, nē sapienti quidem, nec īnsipiēnti etiam in summā cōpiā nōn gravis. Aptissima omnīnō sunt, Scīpiō et Laelī, arma senectūtis artēs exercitātionēsque virtūtum, quae in omni aetāte cultae, cum diū multumque vīxeris, mīrificōs efferunt frōctūs, nōn sōlum quia numquam dēserunt nē extrēmō quidem tempore aetātis (quamquam id quidem máximum est), vērum etiam quia cōnscientia bene āctae vitae multōrumque bene factōrum recordātiō iūcundissima est.

10 by no means. 11 a Seriphian. 12 a dispute. 13 eminence. 14 fittest. 15 wondrous. 16 recollection.
The topics of his theme.

5. Etenim, cum complector animō, quattuor reperió causās, cūr senectūs misera videātur: ūnam, quod ā vocet ā rébus gerendīs; alteram, quod corpus faciat īnfirmius; tertiam, quod priēt ferē omnibus voluptātibus; quārtam, quod haud procul ābsit ā morte. Ėārum, si placet, causā-rum quanta quamque sit iūsta ūna quaeque, videāmus.

Youth and age.

6. "Ā rébus gerendīs\(^1\) senectūs abstrahit." Quibus?\(^2\) An ēis, quae iuventūte geruntur et víribus? Nūllaene igitur rēs sunt senīlēs,\(^2\) quae vel \(^3\) īnfirmīs corporibus animō tamen administrentur ? Nihil ergō agēbat Q. Máximus, nihil L. Paulus, pater tuus, socer\(^4\) optimī virī, fili meī? Cēterī senēs, Fabricii, Curiī, Coruncānīi, cum rem pū-\(^5\) blicam consiliō et auctoritāte défendēbant, nihil agēbant ? Ad Appī Claudī\(^5\) senectūtem accēdēbat etiam, ut caecus\(^6\) esset; tamen īs, cum sententia senātūs inclināret ad pācem cum Pyrrhō foedusque faciendum, nōn dubitāvit dicere illa, quae versibus persecūtus\(^7\) est Ennius :

Quō\(^8\) vōbīs mentēs, rēctae quae stāre solēbant Antehāc, dēmentēs sēsē flexēre viāi? eēteraque gravissimē\(^9\); nōtum\(^10\) enim vobīs carmen est; et tamen ipsīus Appī exstat črātīō.\(^11\) Atque haec ille ēgit septimō decimō annō post alterum cōnsulātum, cūm inter\(^11\) duōs cōnsulātūs annī decem interfuissent cōnsorque ante

6. 1 a rebus gerendis, from our activities. 2 activities for old men. 3 even. 4 father-in-law. 5 Appius Claudius, censor 312 B.C., consul 307 B.C. He commenced the Appian Way and completed the Appian Aqueduct. From him Roman jurisprudence, oratory, grammar, and Latin prose date their beginning. 6 blind. 7 expressed. 8 quo, w. viai (archaic gen. of via)—quem in locum: "On what wild course have wits, once true, but witless now, misguided you?" 9 in the most dignified style. 10 hence there is no reason for quoting further from Ennius. 11 the speech against peace w. Pyrrhus.
superiorem consulatum fuisset; ex quo intellegitur Pyrrhi bellō grandem\textsuperscript{12} sānē fuisse; et tamen\textsuperscript{13} sīc a patribus accēpimus.

Nihil igitur adferunt,\textsuperscript{14} qui in rē gerendā versāri\textsuperscript{120} senectūtem negant, similēsque\textsuperscript{15} sunt, ut sī qui gubernātōrem\textsuperscript{16} in nāvigandō nihil agere dicant, cum aliī mālōs\textsuperscript{17} scandant,\textsuperscript{18} aliī per forōs\textsuperscript{19} cursent, aliī sentīnam exhauriant, ille autem clāvum\textsuperscript{20} tenēns quiētus sedeat in puppi, nōn faciat ea, quae iuvenēs, at vērō multō māiōra et mēliōra\textsuperscript{125} faciat. Nōn viribus aut velōcitāte aut celeritāte corporum rēs māgnae geruntur, sed cōnsiliō, auctōritāte, sententiā; quibus nōn modo nōn orbāri,\textsuperscript{21} sed\textsuperscript{22} etiam augērī senectūs solet. Nisi forte ego vōbīs, quī et mīles et tribūnus et lēgātus et cōnsul versātus sum in variō genere bellōrum, cessāre\textsuperscript{23} nunc videor, cum bella nōn gerō. At senātūi quae sint gerenda praescribō, et quō modō; Karthāginī male iam diū cōgitantī bellum multō ante\textsuperscript{24} dēnuntiō; dē quā verērī nōn\textsuperscript{140} dēsinam, quam illam excīsam\textsuperscript{25} esse cognōverō.

\textsuperscript{12} aged, sc. eum as subj. of fuisse. \textsuperscript{13} i.e., although old, he exhibited such ability and energy. \textsuperscript{14} say nothing to the point. \textsuperscript{15} similēsque... qui: and are like those who. \textsuperscript{16} pilot. \textsuperscript{17} masts. \textsuperscript{18} climb. \textsuperscript{19} gangways. \textsuperscript{20} rudder. \textsuperscript{21} to be deprived (of). \textsuperscript{22} repeat quibus, by which. \textsuperscript{23} to be inactive. \textsuperscript{24} i.e., before it is declared by the state. \textsuperscript{25} destroyed. It was Cato who used to end all his speeches in the Senate with censeo delendam esse Karthaginem.
The wisdom of old age.

10. Vidētisne, ut 1 apud 2 Hōmērum saepe sīmē Nēstor dē virtūtibus suīs praedicet? Tertiam iam enim aetātem 3 hominum vidēbat, nec erat ei verendum, nē vēra praedī-145 cāns dē sē nimis vidērētur aut īnsolēns aut loquāx. Ete-nim, ut ait Hōmērus, "ex ēius linguā melle 4 dulcior flūēbat orātiō," quam ad suāvitātem 5 nūllīs egēbat corporis virībus. Et tamen dux ille Graeciae nusquam 6 optat, ut Aiācīs 7 similēs habēat de-cem, sed ut Nesto-ris; quod si sībī acciderit, nōn dubi-tat, quīn brevī 8 sit Trōia peritūra.

The pleasure of agriculture in old age.

17. Multās ad rēs perūtilēs Xeno-phontīs libri sunt; quōs legite, quaesō, studiōsē, ut facitis. Quam cōpiōsē ab eō agrī cultūrā laudā-tūr in eō librō, quī est dē tuendā rē166 familiāri, 1 qui Oeconomicus inscribitur! Atque ut in-tellegātis nihil eī tam rēgāle vidēri quam studium agrī colendī, Sōcratēs in eō librō loquitur cum Critobūlō

---

10. 1 how. 2 in. 3 generation. 4 honey. 5 sweetness. 6 nowhere. 7 Ajax.
17. 1 on the management of one's property.
Cyrum minorem, Persarum regem, praestantem ingenio atque imperi gloriam, cum Lysander Lacedaemonius, vir summae virtutis, vennisset ad eum Sardis eique dona a sociis attulisset, et ceteris in rebus cœm in erga Lysandrum atque humannum fuisse et ei quendam consaepsum agrum diligenter consitum ostendisse. Cum autem admiraretur Lysander et proceritates arborum et dërectos in quincuncem ordinês et humum subjactam atque puram et suavitatem odorum, qui adflarentur ex floribus, tum eum dixisse mirari se non modo diligentiam, sed etiam sollertiam eius, a quo essent illa dimensa atque discripta; et Cyrum respondisse: "Atqui ego ista sum omnia dimensus; mei sunt ordinés, mea discriptio, multae etiam istarum arborum mea manu sunt satae." Tum Lysandrum intu-
entem purpuram cius et nitorem\textsuperscript{14} corporis ornatumque\textsuperscript{15} Persicum multō aurō multīisque gemmis\textsuperscript{16} dixisse: "Rite\textsuperscript{17} vērō tē, Cyre, beatum ferunt, quoniam virtūtī tuae fortūna coniuncta est."

**Spartan respect for old age.**

18. Lysandrum Lacedaemonium, cūius modo fēcī men-
tiōnem, dicere āiunt solitum Lacedaemonem\textsuperscript{1} esse ho-
nestissimum domicilium senectūtis; nusquam enim tan-
tum\textsuperscript{2} tribuitur aetātī, nusquam est senectūs honōrātior. Quīn etiam memoriae proditum est, cum Athēnīs lūdīs
quīdam in theātrum grandis\textsuperscript{3} natū vēnisset, māgnō cōn-
sessū\textsuperscript{4} locum nusquam eī datum ā suīs cīvibus; cum au-
tem ad Lacedaemonīs accessisset, quī, lēgātī cum essent, certō in locō cōnsēderant, cōnsurrēxisse\textsuperscript{5} omnēs illī
dicuntur et senem sessum\textsuperscript{6} recēpisse. Quibus cum ā cūncētō cōnssessū
plausus\textsuperscript{7} esset multiplex datus, dixisse ex eīs quendam
Athēniēnsēs scīre, quae rēcta essent, sed facere nōlle. 215

**The harvest time of life.**

19. Hōrae quidem cēdunt et diēs et mēnsēs et annī, nec praeteritum tempus umquam revertitur, nec, quid sequā-
tur, scūrī potest; quod cuique temporis ad vivendum da-
tur, eō dēbet esse contentus. Neque enim histriōnī,\textsuperscript{1} ut
placeat, peragenda fābula\textsuperscript{2} est, modo,\textsuperscript{3} in quōcumque
fuerit actū, probētur, neque sapientī ûsque ad "Plaudite"\textsuperscript{4}
veniendum est. Breve enim tempus aetātīs satis longum
est ad bene honestēque vivendum; sīn prōcesserit lon-
gius,\textsuperscript{5} nōn magis dolendum est, quam agricolaes dolent

\textsuperscript{14} splendor. \textsuperscript{15} attire. \textsuperscript{16} jewels. \textsuperscript{17} rightly.

18. \textsuperscript{1} Sparta. \textsuperscript{2} so much respect. \textsuperscript{3} grandis natū: elderly. \textsuperscript{4} assembly.
\textsuperscript{5} to have risen up. \textsuperscript{6} to a seat. \textsuperscript{7} plausus multiplex: rounds of applause.

19. \textsuperscript{1} actor, dative. \textsuperscript{2} the play. \textsuperscript{3} if only. \textsuperscript{4} "applaud" the word with
which the chief actor closed the play. \textsuperscript{5} sc. aetate.
praeteritā vērnī temporis suāvitāte aestātem autumnumque vēnisse. Vēr enim tamquam adulēscentiam significat ostenditque frūctūs futūrōs, reliqua autem temporā demetendīs frūctibus et percipiendīs accommodāta sunt. Frūctus autem senectūtis est, ut saepe dixī, ante partōrum bonōrum memoria et cōpia.

The soul is immortal.

22. Apud Xenophontem autem moriēns Cyōrus māior haec dicit: "Nōlite arbitrāri, ō mihi càrissimī filii, mē, cum ā vōbīs discesserō, nusquam aut nūllum fore. Nec enim, dum eram vōbīscum, animum meum vidēbātīs, sed eum esse in hōc corpore ex eīs rēbus, quās gerēbam, intellectūbātīs. Eundem igitur esse crēditōte, etīamsī nūllum vidēbitīs. Nec vērō clārōrum virōrum post mortem honōrēs permanērent, si nihil eōrum ipsōrum animī efficercerent, quō diātius memoriam sui tenērēmus. Mihi quidem numquam persuādērī potuit animōs, dum in corporibus essent mortālibus, vīvere, cum excessissent ex eīs, ēmōrī; nec vērō tum animum esse insipientem, cum ex insipientī corpore ēvāsisset; sed cum omnī admīxtīone corporis liberātūs pūrus et integer esse coeipisset, tum esse sapientem. Atque etiam cum hominis nātūra morte dissolvitur, cēterārum rērum perspicuum est quō quaeque discēdat; abeunt enim illūc omnia, unde orta sunt; animus autem sōlus, nec cum adest nec cum discēdit, apparet. Iam vērō vidētīs nihil esse mortī tam simile quam somnum. Atquī dormientium animī máximē déclārant divinitātem suam; multa enim, cum remissī et liberī sunt, futūra prōspiciunt. Ex quō intellegitur, quālēs futūrī sint, cum sē plānē corporis vinculīs relaxāverint.

*of spring. 7 reaping. 8 gathering.

22. 1 in. 2 you must believe. 3 without consciousness. 4 connection (with). 5 clear; rerum limits quaeque. 6 to the place. 7 released. 8 entirely.
Quārē, si haec ita sunt, sic mē colitōte," ⁹ inquit, "ut deum; sīn ūnā est interitūrus animus cum corpore, vōs tamen deōs verentēs, quī hanc omnem pulchritūdinem tuentur et regunt, memoriam nostri piē inviolātēque servābitis."

"You must reverence. ⁹ beautiful (world). ¹¹ affectionately and sacredly."
Sallust (C. Sallustius Crispus, 86–35 B.C.) was tribune of the people in 52; was expelled from the Senate in 50, being an opponent of Cicero, and Pompey, but restored later by Caesar; was praetor in 46, and governor of Numidia. After Caesar’s assassination he wrote Bellum Catilinae and Bellum Iugurthinum. In the former he gives an account of the conspiracy of Catiline and the moral condition of the times. The speeches of Caesar and Cato before the Senate, concerning the punishment of the conspirators, are of special interest (chapters 51, 52).

The character of Catiline.

5. L. Catilina, nōbili genere nāitus, fuit māgnā vi et animī et corporis sed ingeniō malō prāvōque.1 Huic ab adulēscentiā bella intestīna, caedēs, rapīnae, discordia cīvilis, grāta fuēre 2; ibique 3 iuventūtem suam exercuit. 5 Corpus patiēns inediae,4 algōris,5 vigiliae, suprā quam cuīquam crēdibile est. Animus audāx, subdolus,6 varius, cūius reī libet simulātor ac dissimulātor; 7 aliēni 8 adpetēns, suī profūsus, ardēns in cupiditātibus; satis ēloquen-tiae, sapientiae parum. Vāstus 9 animus immoderāta, 10 incrēdibilia, nimis alta semper cupiēbat. Hunc post dominātiōnem L. Sullae libīdō máxima invāserat reī publicae capiendae; neque id quibus modīs adsequerētur, dum sibi rēgnum parāret, quicquām pēnsī 10 habēbat. Agitābātur magis magisque in diēs animus ferōx inopiā reī 15 familiāris et cōnscientiā scelerum; quae utraque eīs

5. 1 depraved. 2 = ‘uerunt. 3 and in these. 4 hunger. 5 cold. 6 subtle. 7 pretending and dissembling anything you please (libet). 8 other men’s property. 9 insatiable. 10 scruple.
artibus auxerat, quās suprā memorāvī. Incitābant prae-
terea corruptī civitātis mōrēs, quōs pessima ac diversa inter sē mala, lūxuria atque avāritia, vexābant.

Virtues of the Ancient Romans.

Rēs ipsa hortārī vidētur, quoniam dē mōribus cīvi-
tātīs tempus admonuīt, suprā repetere ac paucīs in stītūta māiōrum domī militiaeque; quō modo rem pūblicam habuerint quantumque reliquierint; ut, paulātim immū-
tāta ex pulcherrimā atque optimā, pessima ac flagitiō-
sissima facta sit, disserere.

6. Urbem Rōmam, sicutī ego accēpī, condiderē 2 atque habuēre initiō Trōiānī, quī Aenēā duce profugi sēdibus incertīs vagābantur; cumque eis Aboriginēs, genus hominum agreste, sine lēgibus, sine imperiō, liberum atque solūtum. Hī postquam in ūna moenia convēnēre, disparī genere, dissimili lingua, alīī aliō mōre viventēs, incredibile memorātū est quam facile coaluerint. Sed postquam rēs eōrum, cīvisibus, mōribus, agrīs aucta, satis prōspera satisque pollēns vidēbātur, sicutī plēraque mortālium habentur, invidia ex opulentīā orta est. Igitur rēgēs populīque fīnitimī bellō temptāre; paucī ex amīcis auxiliō esse, nam cēterī metū perculsi ab ā periculis aberant. At Rōmānī domī militiaeque intentī fēstināre parāre, alius alium hortārī, hostibus obviam īre, libertātem, patriam, parentēsque armīs tegere. Post ubi percula virtūte prōpulserant, sociis atque amīcis auxilia portābant, magisque dandis quam accipiendīs beneficiās amīcitiās parābant. Imperium lēgitimum, nōmen imperī rēgium habēbant. Dēlēctī, quibus corpus annīs īnfirmum, in-

11 contending. 12 w. disserere (l. 24), to describe.
6. 1 understand. 2 condiderunt. 3 as exiles. 4 savage. 5 uncontrolled. 6 city. 7 united. 8 powerful. 9 sicuti... habentur: as is generally the case in human affairs. 10 historical inf. 11 intenti fēstināre: with alertness made haste. 12 met. 13 regulated by laws. 14 monarchy.
genium sapientiā validum erat, rei publicae cónsultābant; eī vel aetāte vel cūrae similitūdine patrēs appellābantur. Post ubi rēgium imperium, quod initīō cōnservandae libertātis atque augendae rei publicae fuerat, in superfītiam dominātiōnemque sē convertit, immītātō mōre annua imperia bīnōsoleque imperātōrēs sibi fēcēre; eō modō minimē posse putābant per licentiam însolēscere ani-
mum hūmānum.

7. Sed eā tempestāte coepēre sē quisque magis ex-tollere magisque ingenium in prōmptū habēre. Nam rēgibus bonī quam mali suspiciōrēs sunt, semperque eīs aliēna virtūs formīdolōsa est. Sed cīvitās, incrēdi-
bile memorātū est, adeptā libertāte quantum brevī crēverit; tanta cupidō glōriae incesserat. Iam prīmum iuventūs, simul labōris āc bellī patiēns erat, in castrīs per úsum militiam discēbat, magisque in decōris armīs et militāribus equīs quam in scortīs atque convīviis libīdīnem habēbant. Igitur tālibus virīs nōn labor īnsolitus, nōn locus ūllus asper aut arduus erat, nōn armātus hostis formīdolōsus; virtūs omnia domuerat. Sed glōriae maximum certāmen inter ipsōs erat: sē quisque hostem ferīre, mūrum ascendere, conspicī dum tāle facinus faceret, pro-
perābat. Eās divitiās, eam bonam fāmam māgnamque nōbiltātem putābant. Laudis avidī, pecūniae liberales erant; glōriam ingentem, divitiās honestās volēbant. Memorāre possem, quibus in locīs māximās hostium cópiās populus Rōmānus parvā manū fūderit, quās urbēs nātūrā mūnitās pūgnandō cēperit, nī ea rēs longius nōs ab in-
ceptō traheret.

8. Sed profectō fortūna in omni rē dominātur; ea rēs

15 similarity. 16 sc. causa. 17 grow overbearing.
7. 1 period. 2 to seek distinction. 3 in promptu habere: show. 4 the meritorious. 5 the undeserving. 6 secured. 7 sc. tempore. 8 able to bear. 9 fine. 10 difficult. 11 inaccessible. 12 to wound. 13 moderate. 14 but that.
cunctas ex libidine magis quam ex verò celebrat obscūratque. Atheniēnium res gestae, sicuti ego aestimō, satis amplae magnificaeque fuère, vērum aliquantō minōres tamen quam fāmā feruntur. Sed quia prōvēnēre ibi scriptōrum māgnā ingenia, per terrārum orbem Atheniēnium facta prō maximis celebrantur. Ita eōrum, qui ea fēcēre, virtūs tanta habētur, quantum ea verbīs potuēre extollere praeclāra ingenia. Atheniensium res gestae, sicuti ego aestimo, satis amplae magnaeque fuit, verum aliquid minor quam fāma feruntur. Sed quia provenere ibi scriptorum magnā ingenia, per terrarum orbem Atheniensium facta pro maximis celebrantur. Ita eorum, qui ea fecerunt, virtus tanta habetur, quantum ea verbis potuere extollere praeclera ingenia. At populo Romānō numquam ea cópia fuit, quia prūdentissimus quisque maximē negotiosus erat; ingenium nēmō sine corpore exercēbat; optimus quisque facere quam dicere, sua ab aliis bene facta laudāri quam ipse aliōrum nārrāre mālēbat.

9. Igitur domī militiaeque bonī mōrès colēbantur; concordia maxima, minima avāritia erat; iūs bonumque apud ēōs nōn lēgibus magis quam naturā valēbat. Íūrgia, discordiās, simultātēs cum hostibus exercēbat; civēs cum cīvibus dē virtūte certābant. In suppliciīs deōrum māgnificī, domī parcī, in amīcōs fidēlēs erant. Duābus hīs artibus, audāciā in bellō, ubi pāx ēvēnerat, aequitāte, sēque remque pūblicam cūrābant. Quārum rērum ego maxima documenta haec habeō, quod in bellō saepius vindicātum est in ēōs, qui contra imperium in hostem pūgnāverant, quīque tardius, revocāti, proeliō excesse-rant, quam quī signa relinquere aut pulsi locō cēdere ausī erant; in pāce vērō quod beneficiis quam metū imperium agitābant, et acceptā iniūriā ignōscere quam persequi mālēbant.

Caesar’s speech in the Senate Dec. 5, 63 B.C.

Caesar, ubi ad eum ventum est, rogātus sententiam ā cōnsule hūiusce modī verba locūtus est:

8. 1 she (ea) makes famous. 2 flourished. 3 most talented.
9. 1 strife. 2 the worship. 3 frugal. 4 punishment was inflicted. 5 when commanded to retreat. 6 sc. in eos. 7 managed.
51 (a). "Omnès hominès, patrès cönscripti, qui de rebus dubiús cónsultant, ab odio, amicitia, ira, atque misericordiâ vacuós esse decet. Haud facilis animus verum prōvidet, ubi illa officiunt, neque quisquâ aoom- nium libidinî simul et ûsuâ paruit. Ubi intenderis ingenium, valet: si libidō possidet, ea dominâtur, animus nihil valet. Mâgna mihi cōpia est memorândi, patrès cönscripti, qui régès atque populî ira aut misericordiâ impulsî male cŏnsuluerunt. Sed ea mālō dicere, quae māiôres nostri contra libidinem animî suî rēcte atque ôrdine fēcēre. Bellō Macedonicō, quod cum rēge Persē gessimus, Rhodiōrum civitās māgna atque māgnifica, quae populî Rōmānī opibus crēverat, infīda atque adversa nōbīs fuit. Sed postquam bellō cŏnfectō dē Rhodiīs cŏnsultum est, māiôres nostri, nē quis dīvitiārum magis quam iniūriae causā bellum inceptum diceret, impūnītōs eōs dimisēre. Item bellīs Pūnicīs omnibus, cum saepe Carthāginiēnsēs et in pāce et per indūtiās multa nefāria facinora fēcissent, numquam ipsī per occāsīōnem tālia fēcēre; magis quid sē dǐgnum foret, quam quid in illōs iūre fierī possēt, quaerēbant. Hōc item vōbīs prōvidēnum est, patrès cŏnscriptī, nē plūs apud vōs valeat P. Lentulī et cēterōrum seclus quam vestra dignitās, neu magis irae vestrae quam fāmae cŏnsulātīs. Nam sī dīgna poena prō factīs eōrum reperitur, novum cŏnsilium adprobō; sīn māgnitūdō sceleris omnium ingenia exsuperat, his utendum cēnsēō, quae légibus comparāta sunt.

51 (b). Plērique eōrum, qui ante mē sententiās dixērunt, compositē atque māgnificē ēāsum reī pūblīcae miserāti

51 (a). 1 not. 2 obstruct the view. 3 interest. 4 freely exert. 5 holds possession. 6 i.e., I could easily mention. 7 properly. 8 hostile. 9 left. 10 when opportunity offered. 11 = esse. 12 i.e., of putting citizens to death in violation of law. 13 imaginations.

51 (b). 1 in studied and impressive language.
sunt. Quae bellī saevitiae 2 esset, quae victīs acciderent, 
enumerāvēre; rapī virginēs puerōs; dīvelli liberōs 
a parentum complexū; mātrēs familiārum patī quae vic-
tūribus conlibuissent; 3 fāna atque domōs spoliāri; cae-
dem, incendia fierī; postrēmō armīs, cadāveribus, 4 cruōre, 5 
atque lūctū omnia complērī. Sed, per deōs immortālēs, 
quō 6 illa ōrātiō pertinuit? An utī vōs înflēstōs conjurā-
tiōni faceret? Scilicet, quem rēs tanta et tam atrōx nōn 
permōvit, eum ōrātiō accendet. 7 Nōn ita est, neque 140 
cuiquam mortālium iniūriāe suae parvae videntur; multi 
eās gravius aequō 8 habuēre. Sed alia alīs licentia est, 
patrēs cōnscripīti. Quī dēmissi 9 in obscurō vītām habent, 
sī quid iracundiā dēliquēre, 10 paucī sciunt; fāma atque 
fortūna eōrum parēs sunt; quī māgnō imperiō praediti 145 
in excelsō 11 aetātem agunt, eōrum facta cūnti mortālēs 
nōvēre. Ita in máximā fortūnā minima licentia est; 
neque studēre 12 neque ōdisse, sed minimē ōrāci decet; 
quae apud alīōs iracundiā dicitur, ea in imperiō 13 superbia 
atque crūdēlitās appellātūr. Equidem ego sīc existīmō, 150 
patrēs cōnscripīti, omnēs cruciātūs minōrēs quam facinora 
illōrum esse. Sed plērique mortālēs postrēma meminēre 
et in hominibus impiōs sceleris eōrum oblītī dē poenā 
disserunt, 14 sī ea paulō saevior fuit.

51 (c). D. Sīlanum, virum fortēm atque strēnnum, certō 155 
sciō quae dixerit, studiō 1 reī publicae dīxisse, neque illum 
in tantā rē grātiam aut inimīcitiās exercēre; eōs mōrēs 
eamque modestiam 2 virī cognōvi. Vērum sententia 
ēius mihi nōn crūdēlis (quid enim in tālēs hominēs crūdēle 
 fierī potest?), sed aliēna sō rē publicā nostrā vidētur. 160 
Nam prefectō aut metus aut iniūria 3 tē subēgit, Sīlāne,

2 barbarity. 3 should please. 4 corpses. 5 blood. 6 to what end. 7 will 
inflame. 8 than was right. 9 sunk. 10 have done wrong. 11 in an exalted 
station. 12 to show favor. 13 in the powerful. 14 talk.

51 (c). 1 from zeal for. 2 moderation. 3 the nature of the crime.
cōnsulem dēsignātum, genus poenae novum dēcernere. Dē timōre supervacāneum 4 est disserere, cum praeceptim diligentiā clārissimī virī, cōnsulis, tanta praesidia sint in armīs. Dē poenā possum equidem dicere, id quod rēs habet,5 in lūctū atque miserīs mortem aerumnārum 6 requiem, nōn cruciātum esse; eam cūncta mortālium mala dissolvere; ultrā neque cūrae neque gaudīō locum esse. Sed, per deōs immortālēs, quam ob rem in sententiam nōn addidisti, utī prius verberibus in eōs animadverterētur? An quia lex Porcia 7 vetat? At aliae légēs item condemnātīs cīvibus nōn animam ēripī, sed exsilium permittī iubent. An quia gravius est verberāri quam necāri? Quid autem acerbum aut nimis grave est in hominēs tantī facinorīs convictōs? Sin quia levius est, quī 8 convenīt 9 in minōre negotiō légem timēre,10 cum eam in māiōre neglegeris?

51 (d). At enim quis reprehendet quod in parricīdās reī públicae dēcrētum erit? Tempus,1 diēs,2 fortūna, cūlius 180 libīdō 3 gentibus moderātur.4 Illīs meritō accidet, quicquid ēvēnerit; cēterum 5 vōs, patrēs cōnscripτī, quid in aliōs statuātīs, cōnsiderāτe. Omnia mala exempla 6 ex rēbus bonīs orta sunt. Sed ubi imperium ad ignārōs 7 ēius aut minus bonōs pervenit, novum illud exemplum 185 ab dignīs 8 et idōneīs ad indignōs et nōn idōneōs trānsfertur. Lacedaemonīi, dévictīs Athēniēnsibus, trīgintā virōs imposuēre,9 quī rem públicam eōrum tractārent. Eī primō cœpēre pessimum quemque et omnibus invīsūm indemnātum necāre; ea populus laetārī 10 et meritō

---

4 needless. 5 id ... habet: what is the truth. 6 from hardship. 7 the Porcian Law ordained that no one should bind, scourge, or kill a Roman. 8 how. 9 is it consistent. 10 observe.

51 (d). 1 sc. reprehendet. 2 the course of events. 3 caprice. 4 sways, w. dat. 5 but. 6 i.e., examples of severe punishment. 7 into the hands of the ignorant. 8 sc. poena. 9 appointed. 10 hist. inf.
dicere fieri. Post ubi paulatim licentia crevit, iuxta\textsuperscript{11} bonös et malös libidinosë\textsuperscript{12} interficere, ceterös metù terrère; ita cīvitās servitūte oppressa stulta\textsuperscript{13} laetitia\textsuperscript{e} gravēs poenas dedit. Nostrā memoria victor Sulla cum Damasippum\textsuperscript{14} et aliös eius modī, qui malō rei publicae crēverant, iugulāri iussit, quis nōn factum ēius laudābat?\textsuperscript{195}

Hominēs seclēstōs\textsuperscript{15} et factiōsōs, qui sēditionibus rem publicam exagitāverant, meritō necātōs aiēbant. Sed ea rēs māgnae initium clādis fuit. Nam utī\textsuperscript{16} quīisque domum aut villam, postrēmō\textsuperscript{17} vās\textsuperscript{18} aut vestīmentum alicuius concupīverat, dabat operam, ut is in prōscriptōrum numerō esset. Ita illī, quibus Damasippī mors laetitiae fuerat, paulō post ipsī trahēbantur, neque prius finis iugulandī fuit, quam Sulla omnēs suōs divisīs explēvit.\textsuperscript{19}

Atque ego haec nōn in M. Tulliō neque hīs temporibus vereor, sed in māgnā cīvitāte multa et varia ingenia sunt.\textsuperscript{205}

Potest aliō tempore, aliō cōnsule, cui item exercitus in manū sit, falsum alicquid prō vērō crēdi;\textsuperscript{20} ubi hoc exemplō per senātūs dēcrētum cōnsul gladium ēduxerit, quis illī finem statuet aut quis moderābitur?

51\textsuperscript{ (e)}. Māiōrēs nostri, patrēs cōnscriptī, neque cōnsili\textsuperscript{210} neque audāciae umquam eguēre; neque illīs superfīa obstābat, quō minus aliēna īnstitūta, si modo probā\textsuperscript{1} erant, imitārentur. Arma atque tēla militāria ab Sam-nītibus, īnsignia magistrātuum ab Tuscis plēraque sumpserunt. Postrēmō quod ubiquē apud sociōs aut hostēs\textsuperscript{215} idōneum vidēbātur, cum summō studiō domī exsequēbantur;\textsuperscript{2} imitāri quam invidēre\textsuperscript{3} bonīs mālēbant. Sed eōdem illō tempore Graeciēs mōrem imitātī verberibus animadvertēbant in civēs, dē condemnātīs summum\textsuperscript{4}

\textsuperscript{11} without discrimination. \textsuperscript{12} at their pleasure. \textsuperscript{13} imprudent. \textsuperscript{14} before Sulla's victory Damasippus had put to death some of the senators. \textsuperscript{15} wicked. \textsuperscript{16} when. \textsuperscript{17} or even. \textsuperscript{18} plate. \textsuperscript{19} satisfied. \textsuperscript{20} may be credited. \textsuperscript{51 (e).} \textsuperscript{1} worthy of regard. \textsuperscript{2} adopted. \textsuperscript{3} envy. \textsuperscript{4} i.e., death.
supplicium sūmēbant. Postquam rēs publica adolēvit et multitūdine cīvium factiōnēs valuēre, circumvenīri innocentēs, alia hūiusce modī fieri coeptēre; tum lēx Porcia aliaeque lēgēs parātae sunt, quibus lēgibus exsilium damnātīs permissum est. Hanc ego causam, patrēs conscriπtī, quō minus novum cōnsilium capiāmus, in prīmīs māgnam putō. Profectō virtūs atque sapientia māior illīs fuit, quī ex parvīs opibus tantum imperium fēcēre, quam in nōbīs, quī ea bene parta vix retinēmus.

Placet igitur eōs dīmittī et augēri exercitum Catilīnae? Minimē. Sed ita cēnseo, pūblicandās eōrum pecūniās, ipsōs in vinculis habendōs per mūnicipia, quae māximē opibus valent; neu quis dē eis postea ad senātum referat nēve cum populō agat; quī aliter fēcerit, senātum existimāre eum contrā rem pūblicam et salūtem omnium facē turum."

The Execution of the Conspirators.

55. Postquam, ut dīxi, senātus in Catōnis sententiam discessit, cōnsul optimum factū ratus noctem quae īnstābat antecapere, nē quid eō spatiō novārētur, trium-virōs quae supplicium postulābat parāre iubet. Ipse praesidiis dispositīs Lentulum in carcerem dēducit; idem fit cēterīs per praetōrēs. Est in carcerē locus, quod Tulliānum appellātur, ubi paululum ascenderis ad laevam, circīter duodecim pedēs humī dēpressus; eum mūniunt undique parietēs atque īnsuper camera lapideis fornicibus iūncta; sed incultū, tenebrīs, odōre, foeda atque terribilis ēius faciēs est. In eum locum postquam

5 grew. 6 to be involved. 7 acquired.
55. 1 thinking. 2 to anticipate. 3 ne quid novaretur: that no new developments might arise. 4 the three officers in charge of executions. 5 the city prison. See Introd. 43. 6 See cuts on pp. 32 and 231. 7 a little. 8 to the left. 9 humi depressus: sunk in the ground. 10 above. 11 camera . . . iuncta, a chamber formed of stone arches. 12 neglect. 13 condition.
dēmissus est Lentulus, vindiciēs rērum capitālium, qui-
bus praeceptum erat, laqueō gulum frēgēre. Ita ille
patricius ex gente clārissimā Cornēliōrum, qui cōnsulāre
imperium Rōmae habuerat, dīgnum mōribus factīisque
suīs exitium vitae invēnit. De Cethēgō, Statiliō, Gabīniō,
Caepāriō, eōdem modō supplicium sūmptum est.

14 punishers. 15 with a noose. 16 neck. 17 character.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abbr.</td>
<td>abbreviated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abs.</td>
<td>absolute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj.</td>
<td>adjective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adv.</td>
<td>adverb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>App.</td>
<td>Appendix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appos.</td>
<td>apposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ar.</td>
<td>Archias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cf. (confer)</td>
<td>compare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comp.</td>
<td>comparative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conj.</td>
<td>conjunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cons.</td>
<td>consonant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>def.</td>
<td>defective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dem.</td>
<td>demonstrative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dep.</td>
<td>deponent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dir. disc.</td>
<td>direct discourse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dist.</td>
<td>distributive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ff.</td>
<td>following</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freq.</td>
<td>frequentative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td>future perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i.e. (id est)</td>
<td>that is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impers.</td>
<td>impersonal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impf.</td>
<td>imperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indecl.</td>
<td>indeclinable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indef.</td>
<td>indefinite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indic.</td>
<td>indicative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interj.</td>
<td>interjection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interrog.</td>
<td>interrogative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intr.</td>
<td>intransitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introd.</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irr.</td>
<td>irregular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l.</td>
<td>line</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lit.</td>
<td>literally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>loc.</td>
<td>locative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num.</td>
<td>numeral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obj.</td>
<td>object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P.</td>
<td>Pompey's Command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p.</td>
<td>page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part.</td>
<td>participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass.</td>
<td>passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perf.</td>
<td>perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plup.</td>
<td>pluperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss.</td>
<td>possessive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pred.</td>
<td>predicate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prep.</td>
<td>preposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pron.</td>
<td>pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel.</td>
<td>relative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sc. (scilicet)</td>
<td>supply</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj.</td>
<td>subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subjv.</td>
<td>subjunctive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sup.</td>
<td>superlative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tr.</td>
<td>transitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trans.</td>
<td>translate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>w.</td>
<td>with</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
NOTES

References to Latin Grammars are indicated as follows: A., Allen and Greenough's New; B., Bennett's; Bur., Burton's; G., Gildersleeve and Lodge's; H., Harkness's Complete; HB., Hale and Buck's. References without a preceding initial are made to the Grammatical Appendix of this book.

FIRST ORATION AGAINST CATILINE

INTRODUCTORY NOTE

1. Catiline. — Lucius Sergius Catiline, who was born about 108 B.C., belonged to a patrician family that had fallen into poverty. According to Cicero and the historian Sallust, he was a man of remarkable powers of body and mind, but a reckless debauchee whose strong influence was perverted. He appears first in history in connection with the proscriptions of Sulla. His own hands were stained, it is said, with the blood of his wife, his son, and his brother-in-law. Catiline was praetor in 68 B.C. and governor of the province of Africa in 67. Returning to Rome, he was prevented from standing for the consulship in 66 by threats of prosecution for extortion in his province. He then formed a plot to kill the consuls-elect, Cotta and Torquatus, on January 1, 65 B.C., and to make himself and Autronius consuls in their place. This so-called first conspiracy was discovered and failed, and on a second attempt, February 5, was frustrated because Catiline gave the signal too soon.

2. The Conspiracy. — In 65 and 64 B.C., Catiline again sought the consulship but failed, Cicero and Antonius being elected for 63. Maddened by his fourth failure at the election, in July 63, he planned his insurrection, known as "The Conspiracy of Catiline." The plot included the murder of Cicero, the massacre of enemies, the burning of the city, and the seizing of the government. The city was filled with dangerous classes, men who had lost their fortunes acquired during the civil wars, and discontented veterans.
of Sulla. These Catiline would stir to revolution by hope of "new tablets," being emboldened himself by the silent approval of many men of rank. Recruits for his army were to be drawn from the colonies in Italy and Gaul. "The wild shepherds, the brigands of the hills, the slaves and gladiators were all to play their part." Cicero was fully informed of the details by the mistress of one of the conspirators. When he disclosed the conspiracy to the Senate on October 21, that body virtually declared martial law by its decree "Let the consuls see to it that the state suffer no harm." On October 27, Manlius raised the standard of the rebel forces at Faesulae, in Etruria. The next day Cicero foiled the projected murder of the Optimates. On November 1 the rebels attempted to seize the fortress of Praeneste near Rome, but were successfully resisted by the inhabitants, upon Cicero's warning. Then occurred the meeting of the conspirators in the house of Laeca on the night of November 6, when two men volunteered to murder Cicero. But the consul learned of the design in time to take precaution.

3. The First Oration. — On the 8th of November, 63 B.C., the Senate met for safety in the temple of Jupiter Stator, on the Palatine Hill, surrounded by a special guard of knights. Catiline
boldly took his place among the other senators, conscious in all probability of the purpose of the meeting. It was then that Cicero delivered the oration which is one of the world’s masterpieces of eloquence, The First Oration against Catiline.


OUTLINE

I. Propositio —
   a. Catiline’s audacity, Ch. 1.
   b. Catiline deserving of punishment, Ch. 2.

II. Narratio —
The movements and plans of the conspirators, Ch. 3, 4.

III. Hortatio —
Catiline exhorted to leave the city, Ch. 5–10.

IV. Peroratio —
Reasons for allowing Catiline to go unpunished, Ch. 11–13.

Chapter 1

1. abutere: fut. ind. In the second sing. pass., Cicero regularly uses the ending -ris only in the pres. indic., -re in other tenses; HB. 151. Catilina: case, 96.\(^1\) patientia: case, 147.\(^2\)


3. audacia: sc. tua. Nihilne: not at all, stronger than nonne. For the case of nihil see 129.\(^3\) For the repetition of nihil in the following phrases, “anaphora,” see 235. The sentence may be rendered in the passive: are you not alarmed at all by the night guard?

4. Palati: the Palatine Hill, one of the seven hills on which Rome was built. It was famous for its temples, for the residences of prominent men, including Cicero, and later for the palaces of the emperors. Hence our words “palatial,” “palace.” The conspirators would attempt to seize this part of the city.
Looking toward the Palatine Hill from the Forum

5. bonorum: *i.e.* good citizens. They had probably assembled outside the Temple of Jupiter Stator, in which the Senate had met for safety (hic . . . locus, I. 6). The Senate house was the Curia Hostilia (Introd. 43), but a session might be held in any temple for special reasons.

6. horum: *i.e.* the senators.

7. moverunt: *alarmed, disturbed.* Patere: note the order of words; 233, a. non: used for nonne.

8. Constrictam . . . teneri: *is held in check,* as might be said of a wild beast.


10. egeris, fueris, etc.: subjunctives in indirect questions, depending on ignorare; 202. quid consili: *what plan;* consili: gen. of the whole; 103.
11. quem . . . arbitraris: what man of us do you think is not aware? nostrum: for the form of this gen., see 162, b.¹
12. tempora: acc. of exclamation; 130.² haec: the conspiracy. consul: Cicero.
13. hic: Catiline.
14. fit . . . particeps: takes part in the public deliberations. consili: case, 104.³
15. oculis: i.e., as he glances about; abl. of means.
16. fortes: ironical. satis facere videmur (se. nobis): we think we are doing our duty (lit., seem to ourselves, etc.).
17. istius: of that scoundrel. vitemus: subjunctive in indir. disc., depending on videmur (we think).
18. te duci oportebat: you ought to have been led. For the pres. inf. translated as if perf., see 209, b.¹ iussu consulis: the Senate had given the consuls special authority by its decree of Oct. 21. See Introductory Note, p. 182.
19. conferri: w. oportebat, ought to have been fought. See note on l. 18.
20. An: this particle ordinarily connects the members of a double question, with the meaning or. Here, as in early Latin, it is used somewhat like -ne, or nonne, but putting strong emphasis on the preceding statement; 89, b.⁵ Trans. did not a most honorable man . . . kill . . .; (and) shall we endure (perferemus, l. 24) . . .?
21. Scipio, Gracchum: Tiberius Gracchus, a tribune of the people in 133 B.C., had aroused the opposition of the wealthy by reviving the law limiting the amount of land to be held by an individual. Though he was a patriot and reformer, he was not always legal in his methods. He was put to death by a mob of his opponents led by P. Scipio Nasica. The latter is called a private citizen (privatus, l. 22) because the high priest was not classed as a magistrate.
24. Nam . . . quod: for I pass over that precedent as too
ancient, that. The plural illa may imply other similar prece-
dents in the mind of the speaker.

25. Maelium: M. Maelius, a rich plebeian, in the famine of
439 B.C. obtained grain for the sufferers. Charged by the
patricians with seeking favor in order to make himself king, he
was summoned before the dictator Cincinnatus, but refusing to
obey the summons was slain by Ahala, the master of horse.

26. Fuit, fuit: the figure of anaphora; 235. ista: such.

29. senatus consultum: the decree of Oct. 21. in te: against
you.

30. rei publicae: dat. w. deest; trans. the republic does not
lack. huius ordinis: i.e. the Senate.

Chapter 2

32. Decrevit: "A Roman citizen had the right to appeal to
the people in a case of life or death, but the Senate found means
of suspending this right, when it wished to get rid of an enemy,
by establishing a special commission or by passing a senatus
consultum ultimum."—Abbott. quondam: in 121 B.C. ut . . .
videret, ne . . . caperet, object clauses; 205, a.1

34. intercessit: between the passing of the decree and the
execution.

35. C. Gracchus: a more able statesman than his brother
Tiberius (l. 21). As tribune in 123 and 122 B.C., he accom-
plished many reforms in the interest of the people. His in-
fluence, however, was undermined by the Senate, whose su-
premacy he had attacked. Defeated for the tribuneship of 121,
he met the fate of his brother in the insurrection which followed.
patre, etc.: abl. of description. The father of Gracchus had
been censor, twice consul, and twice honored with a triumph.
His mother Cornelia, famed for her "jewels," was the daughter
of Cornelius Scipio (avo), the conqueror of Hannibal.

36. Note the emphatic position of occisus est, and of decrevit,
interfectus est above; 233, a. Fulvius: it is said that three
thousand of the followers of Gracchus perished after him.

37. Mario, Valerio: datives. Marius, the conqueror of the
Cimbri and Teutones, was consul for the sixth time in 100 B.C.
As leader of the democracy, he was to some extent in sympathy with Saturninus and Servilius (l. 39), but because of their unscrupulous action, ending in the murder of their rival Memmius, he was compelled to carry out the Senate’s decree against them.

38. res publica: the safety of the republic. Num... remorata est? in the case of... was death delayed...?
(Lit., did death delay them?)

40. mors ac poena: omit ac; poena explains mors. rei publicae: 98. vicesimum: Cicero uses round numbers. From Oct. 21, when the decree was passed, to Nov. 8 was eighteen days.

41. aciem: edge, as of a sword.

43. tabulis: i.e. the public records. vagina: the metaphor of a sword is continued.

44. ex: according to. te... convenit: you should have been put to death (lit., it was fitting, etc.).

47. patres conscripti: conscript fathers, a phrase used in addressing the senators in a body. The expression was probably patres et conscripti at first, patres referring to the original senators, who were patricians, conscripti to the plebeians who were enrolled and admitted later. (Introd. 28.)

49. inertiae: for the case, see 105.2

50. Etruria faucibus: at Faesulae (modern Fiesole), about three miles from Florence. "It is a position of great natural strength, commanding a wide view of the valley of the Arno"
and the Tuscan plain. To the northwest lie the passes (fauces) by which the great roads crossed the Apennines. — Nicol.

52. imperatorem ducemque: Catiline.

55. comprehendi: w. iussero. Trans. iussero as if pres Latin is more exact than English in its use of tenses, and therefore uses the fut. perf. here.

56. credo . . . dicat: the sentence is ironical. Cicero means that he fears the charge of slowness rather than of severity in his treatment of the conspirators. Trans. I shall have to fear, I suppose, that all good citizens will not say my action was too tardy, rather than that any one should say it was too severe. non: modifies dicant (to be supplied w. omnes boni), but not dicat.

59. certa de causa: for a definite reason, stated in the next sentence. ut faciam: to do.

61. tui: for the gen. w. similis, see 119, a.1 qui . . . fateatur: as not to admit; rel. clause of result; 192, a.2

62. qui . . . audeat: a clause of description; 192.3

63. multis et firmis: English omits the connective.

64. commovere te: to raise a hand against.

65. sentientem: though you do not perceive; 223.4

Chapter 3

67. quod . . . exspectes: a descriptive clause; 192.5

69. domus: the house of Laeca; see 1. 98. parietibus: paries, wall of a house; moenia, walls of a city; murus, the general word for wall.

70. omnia: nom.; note the position.

71. caedis: for the case, see 108.6

72. luce: note the emphatic position; 233, a.

73. licet recognoscas: you may recall (lit., it is permitted that you recall). The subjunctive verb here has a substantive force, subject of licet; 205, d, note.7 ante . . . Nov.: = Oct. 21; see 248.8

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bur.</th>
<th>A.</th>
<th>B.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>H.</th>
<th>HB.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>410</td>
<td>385</td>
<td>204</td>
<td>359</td>
<td>435</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>798</td>
<td>537</td>
<td>284</td>
<td>631</td>
<td>591</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>798</td>
<td>535</td>
<td>283</td>
<td>631</td>
<td>591</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>991</td>
<td>496</td>
<td>337</td>
<td>667</td>
<td>638</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>798</td>
<td>535</td>
<td>283</td>
<td>631</td>
<td>591</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>438</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>206</td>
<td>376</td>
<td>454</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>828</td>
<td>565</td>
<td>295, 6</td>
<td>607</td>
<td>564, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>604</td>
<td>631</td>
<td>371</td>
<td>App.</td>
<td>754</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
FIRST ORATION AGAINST CATILINE 189

75. dicere: used for dixisse. futurus esset: indirect discourse.
78. Num . . . fefellit . . . res: was I mistaken either (lit., not only) in the fact or (verum).
81. idem: also, w. ego. contulisse: appointed.
82. in: the object is the phrase ante . . . Nov.
83. conservandi: singular for plural, because of the apparently singular form sui. Trans. for the purpose of saving themselves.
84. cum . . . profugerunt: the indicative in a clause of date, not of description; 195.¹
88. nostrâ (= nostri, gen. pl.) caede: with the slaughter of us; 164, b.
89. cum . . . dicebas: see note on l. 84. Quid: again. Praeneste: an ancient town, twenty miles southeast of Rome.
92. agis, moliris, cogitas: note the climax; 239.

Chapter 4

95. noctem superiorem: night before last, i.e. Nov. 6.
96. iam: note the difference in the meanings of iam in the Vocab.
97. priore: = superiore.
98. inter falcarios: among (i.e. into the street or quarters of) the scythe makers.
99. eodem: adv. eius amentiae: in the same madness.
103. Ubinam gentium? where in the world? gen. of the whole; 6.¹
103.²
106. hoc consilio: i.e. the Roman Senate, noted for its dignity. nostro omnium: of all of us; we should expect nostrum, gen. pl. of nos; see note on l. 88.
107. qui . . . cogitent: a descriptive clause, 192.³ de huius urbis: w. exitio.
109. sententiam rogo: it was the custom for the presiding officer of the Senate to call upon the members, in order of rank, to express their views upon the question before them. “The senator might express verbal agreement, or simply nod or raise his hand, or he might rise and make a speech.”

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bur.</th>
<th>A.</th>
<th>B.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>H.</th>
<th>HB.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 — 857</td>
<td>545</td>
<td>288</td>
<td>580</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>550</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 — 412</td>
<td>346</td>
<td>201</td>
<td>367</td>
<td>441</td>
<td>346</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 — 798</td>
<td>535</td>
<td>283</td>
<td>631</td>
<td>591</td>
<td>521</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
115. distribuisti partes: *i.e.* assigned to different conspirators divisions in which they were to carry out the plans of Catiline.

116. quo: *where.* quemque: *i.e.* each one of the conspirators.

118. quos relinqueres: may be a purpose clause, *men (whom) to leave;* or an indirect deliberative question, *whom you would leave (direct, whom shall we leave?).*

121. confirmasti: = confirmavisti.

124. paulum: *w. morae,* a gen. of the whole.

127. equites: *knights,* members of the equestrian order. qui . . . liberarent: a clause of purpose.

129. in meo lectulo: *in my very bed.*

133. salutatum: supine. This refers to an early morning call or greeting which prominent Romans received from their clients.

venissent: causal and temporal.

134. id temporis: *at that time;* id is an adverbial acc., temporis a gen. of the whole.

Chapter 5

136. Quae . . . sint: causal, *since these things are so.*

137. Egredere: imperative.

138. Nimium diu desiderant: *has too long been missing;* 173, c.¹ castra: the camp referred to in l. 49.

139. Educ: used for *educe.* si minus: *if not.*

141. dum modo: *if only,* introducing a clause of proviso; 199.² me atque te: the Latin order is the reverse of the English.

142. feram, patiar, sinam: synonyms, used for emphasis.

144. Magna: *w. gratia,* l. 145. habenda est: *is due.* atque: *and especially.* huic: the orator pointed to the statue of the god in whose temple the Senate was assembled.

145. Iovi Statori: the flight of the Romans from their enemies, the Sabines, in the time of Romulus, was said to have been stayed by Jupiter. Hence the epithet stator, *stayer.*

147. saepius: *too often.*

148. in: *in the case of.* homine: *i.e.* Catiline. periclitanda: passive in meaning; 220, a.
149. 

**consuli designato**: Roman officers were elected in July, usually, and entered upon their duties the following January. During the intervening half year they were **designati, elect**.

151. **Cum voluisti**: temporal, w. indic.; 195, *b.*

**proximis comitias**: abl. of time when, *at the last election*; not held until Oct. 28 (63 B.C.), owing to political disturbances. For Roman elections see Introd. 25.

151. **campo**: the Campus Martius, a plain in Rome along the Tiber, dedicated to Mars, where the general assembly of the people (*comitia centuriata*) was held.

152. **competitores**: Decimus Silanus, Lucius Murena, and Servilius Sulpicius. The first two were elected.

153. **nullo tumultu . . . concitato**: *without causing any public disturbance*. Cicero might have called upon the forces of the state for aid.

155. **petisti**: *aimed at*.

157. **Nunc iam**: *now actually*.

160. **id quod est primum**: namely to put Catiline to death. **huius imperi proprium**: *in accordance with this authority*. Cicero refers to the special power conferred on him by the Senate. For the gen., see 119, *b.*

162. **ad**: *as regards*.

165. **quod te iam dudum hortor**: *as (lit., which) I have long been urging upon you*. For the tense of **hortor**, see note on l. 138.

166. **tuorum comitum**: a defining gen., *consisting of your followers*. **sentina**: *dregs*; primarily, the bilge water of a ship; 243. If Catiline should go from the city, his associates would follow.

167. **me imperante**: abl. abs.

168. **quod faciebas**: *which you were preparing to do, i.e. to leave the city*. For this force of the *impf.*, see 174, *b.*

**Exire . . . hostem**: note the word order.

## Chapter 6

171. **Quid est**: *what is there?*

172. **possit, metuat, oderit**: subjunctives in descriptive clauses.
174. oderit: the perf. tense of this def. vb. has the force of the present. nota inusta: runaway slaves were branded on the forehead as a punishment. domesticae: referring to domestic or family scandal; privatarm rerum: of private life, in a broader sense.

176. haeret in fama: clings to your name. Quae libido . . . afuit: from what lust have your eyes ever been free?

178. Cui adulescentulo: w. praetulisti, before what young man? quem inretisses: a descriptive clause, meaning a young man such as you had ensnared.

179. ad audaciam: i.e. for some daring deed.

180. praetulisti: as a slave by night carried a torch before his master to light the way, so Catiline guided the youth into crime.


182. alio scelere: the murder of his son in addition to the implied murder of his first wife.

183. cumulasti: = cumulavisti. praetermitto: the orator, by pretending to omit, really emphasizes the statement. This figure of rhetoric is called praeteritio, a passing over.

184. tanti facinoris immanitas: a crime so enormous.

185. non vindicata esse: to have been left unpunished.

186. omnes: to be taken w. ruinias in the main clause, utter ruin.

187. proximis Idibus: Nov. 13. Debts were due on the Kalends and Ides of each month.

190. summam rem publicam: the highest welfare of the state.

193. cum: causal. horum: the senators.

194. Lepidus and Tullus were consuls in 66 B.C. On Dec. 31 of that year Catiline had planned to kill the new consuls, Cotta and Torquatus, who were to take office the following day.

195. comitio: see Vocab. cum telo: armed.

196. paravisse: repeat te as subj. sceleri ac furori: w. obtitisse; trans. passively, and that your criminal frenzy was checked.

198. fortunam: fortunately for the state the first conspiracy of Catiline had failed, because the signal was given too soon. illa: the following. omitto: see note on l. 183.

199. neque . . . postea: your later crimes are indeed neither unknown nor few in number. non multa: few; the figure litotes; 242.
200. designatum: sc. consulem.
201. petitiones: thrusts, as made by gladiators.
203. declinatione et corpore: hendiadys; 240.
205. tibi: dat. of reference w. manibus, from your hands.
206. Quae . . . nescio quod: I know not by what ceremonies, etc. . . . because.
207. initiata: it was customary for assassins to consecrate their weapons to some deity.

Chapter 7

209. Nunc vero: the orator here begins a calmer appeal, based on Catiline's present life.
211. debo: sc. permutus esse. nulla: not at all.
213. hoc: this (lack of greeting). post: within.
214. vocis contumeliam: the reproach of speech.
216. Quid . . . putas: again, with what feelings do you think you ought to bear the fact that, etc.? The two quod-clauses are subjects of ferendum (esse); 204.1 ista: those near you.

Subsellium

subsellia: the low seats of the senators, distinguished from the sella curulis, the official chair of the consul.
217. consulares: Catiline's place was with the other ex-praetors next to the exconsuls (consulares). tibi: dat. of agent, used w. a compound tense; 116.2
218. fuerunt: have been, used for sunt to denote what is no longer true.
221. si . . . metuerent: if my slaves feared me, not if they should fear; a condition contrary to fact; 198, a.3 The subject servi is more emphatic by its position.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bur.</th>
<th>A.</th>
<th>B.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>H.</th>
<th>HB.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 — 822</td>
<td>572</td>
<td>299</td>
<td>525</td>
<td>588</td>
<td>552</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 — 480</td>
<td>374</td>
<td>189</td>
<td>354</td>
<td>431</td>
<td>373</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
223. putarem: *I should think*, the conclusion of the conditional sentence.¹ meis civibus: dat. of agent; 116.²
carere me (subj.) aspectu: *to withdraw from the sight* (lit., *to be without the sight*); 149.³
226. Tu: emphatic position.
odissent: expresses the same time as *timerent*; see Vocab. neque: *and not*.
patria: *our country*.
huius: *of her*. Note the absence of interrogative words here and in lines 214 and 223; 88, c.⁴
tibi uni: *in the case of you alone*; dat. of reference; 115.⁵
neces: Catiline took part in the proscriptions of Sulla, in 82 B.C. vexatio: referring to Catiline's misgovernment of Africa during his prætorship in that province in 67 B.C.
quæsiones: *the law courts*; Introd. 41. In 65 B.C. Catiline had been tried for his extortion in Africa, but by bribery secured an acquittal.
me totam: *that I, the whole state, in contrast w. unum te. quicquid increpuerit: at every sound* (lit., *whatever makes a noise*).
245. a ... abhorreat: *is not connected with*; subj. because the clause is descriptive.
mihi: *from me*; dat. of separation; 113.⁶

Chapter 8

249. si ... loquatur: *a condition less probable, should speak*; 198, c.⁷
251. Quid ... dedisti? What of the fact that of your own accord (ipse) you put yourself in custody? Catiline had been
accused of inciting to riot (de vi). A citizen who was to be tried for a crime against the state might place himself under the protection (custodia libera) of some man of rank who became responsible for his appearance at court. Note that such protection was refused Catiline by an ex-consul, by the consul Cicero, and by a praetor.

252. ad: = apud, at the house of.
254. domi meae: locative, at my house; 154.
255. tulisses: had received. isdem parietibus: in the same house walls; loc. abl. moenibus (l. 257): by the same city walls; abl. of means.
256. qui . . . essem: since I was; a causal rel. clause; 192, c.1
259. optimum: said w. irony. M. Metellum: a friend of Catiline, of whom little is known. videlicet: of course, ironical.
262. quam longe videtur: how far does it seem that he, etc. (lit., does he seem)?
263. dignum custodia; 150.2 iudicarit: perf. subj.
264. emori, abire: i.e. suicide or exile.
265. suppliciis: abl. of separation.
268. Refer ad senatum: se. rem, lay the matter before the Senate; a technical expression. The Senate, however, had no power to banish a citizen.
270. id quod abhorret: an act which is foreign to.
271. faciam ut intellegas: I will make you understand.
273. hanc vocem: this word, i.e. exsilium.
274. attendis, animadvertis: synonyms.
276. auctoritatem loquentium, etc.: the expressed command of those whose silent desire.
277. si . . . intulisset: a condition contrary to fact; 198, b.3
278. Sestio: a friend of Cicero who was now quaestor. Marcello: Marcellus became consul in 51 B.C. Cicero delivered an oration Pro Sestio, in 56 B.C. and another Pro Marcello in 46 B.C.
279. hoc in templo: a temple was a place of special safety.
280. vim et manus: violent hands; what figure of speech?
281. quiescunt: are silent; tacent: say nothing. Note the climax in this passage.
282. hi (i.e. the senators), equites, cives: the orator includes all classes of citizens, as arrayed against Catiline.

286. studia: sympathies, feelings. voces: shouts, raised by the crowd, when the conspirator entered the temple, or during the speech.

287. iam diu, iam pridem: see note on l. 138 and l. 165.

289. prosequantur: it was the custom for citizens going into exile to be escorted to the city gate by their friends.

Chapter 9

291. Quamquam: and yet, a common meaning in transitions. The clauses Te ut . . . frangat, etc. are exclamatory questions, and may be explained as subjects of potestne fieri (can it be?) to be understood. Note the emphatic position of the pronouns. Trans. You be subdued by anything! You ever reform!

293. Utinam . . . duint: a wish expressing possibility. O that the gods may give; 188.

294. duint: an old form of do, = det.

295. animum induxeris: you determine (lit., bring your mind to). The tense is fut. perf., which is to be translated by the pres. after si.

296. nobis: indirect obj. of impendeat. si minus: if not.

297. recenti memoria: abl. of cause. at: at least. impendeat: indir. question w. quanta.

298. est tanti: it is worth while (lit., of such value); 110. dum modo: if only, introducing a clause of proviso; 199. privata: i.e. confined to myself.

300. commoveare: for the ending, see note on l. 1. temporibus: to the needs; cf. "hour of need."

301. est postulandum: the ut-clauses preceding are the subject. is: such a man.

303. ratio: reason.

305. vis: from volo.

306. feram, si feceris: for the form of condition see 198, c.
307. *istius*: this pronoun expressing contempt is used in reference to Catiline twelve times in this oration.

309. *mavis*: from *malo*.

311. *latrocinio*: in *brigandage*. *a me*: modifies *eiectus* and *invitatus*.

312. *ad alienos*: sc. *isse*.

314. *quid ... invitem?* *why should I invite?* A deliberative question; 201.¹ *a quo ... sciam*: a descriptive clause; 192.²


316. *cui*: dat. of agent. *cum Manlio diem*: Oct. 27; see l. 76.

317. *a quo*: *i.e.* Catiline; modifies *esse praemissam*. *aquilam illam*: a standard which, according to Catiline, had been in the army of Marius in the war with the Cimbri. It was regarded
with reverence, and kept in a sacred place or shrine (sacrarium) to bring good fortune to the cause of Catiline.

320. Tu ut . . . possis: the same construction as in l. 291.

Chapter 10

323. tandem aliquando: at last (lit., some time at length).
iam pridem rapiebat: has long been hurrying; 174, c.¹
325. haec res: i.e. joining Manlius in rebellion against the country.
326. peperit: from pario. voluntas: desire.
327. Nunquam non modo: not only . . . never.
329. ex perditis atque derelictis conflatam: composed of men morally ruined, and deserted. ab fortuna: modifying derelictis. The abl. of agent is used instead of the abl. of means, because fortuna is personified.
331. Hic: here, i.e. in company with such men. perfruere: note the ending of the second person singular. gaudiis: abl. of cause.
334. Ad . . . studium: for the pursuit of a life like this.
meditati sunt: were designed. The deponent verb is here passive in meaning. feruntur: see Vocab.
335. iacere: in appos. w. labores (practices). ad . . . stuprum: to watch for some intrigue.
338. bonis otiosorum: for the property (goods) of peaceable men. ubi ostentes: an opportunity to display (lit., where you may display); rel. clause of purpose; ubi = locum in quo.
339. patientiam: Catiline, according to the historians, was a man of great physical strength and endurance. His character is here depicted in darkest colors.
340. Tantum: so much, explained by the following ut-clauses, which are appositive clauses of result.
341. a consulatu reppuli: kept from, etc. Catiline had been a candidate for the consulship in the election of 63 B.C. His defeat was brought about by Cicero. exsul, consul: a play upon words.

---

Bur. A. B. G. H. HB.
1 — 753 471 260 234 535 483
Chapter 11

345. Nunc, patres conscripti: the peroration or conclusion (chapters 11–13) is thought by critics to have been added or at least revised by Cicero when he wrote the oration later for publication. It seems too elaborate to have been delivered as here given.

346. detester ac deprecer: I may avert by protest and entreaty.

347. dicam: future. quae is relative not interrogative. penitus: adv., but may be rendered inmost, w. animus.

350. loquatur: should speak. The conclusion of this condition is implied in the first sentence of chapter 12: His . . . voci-bus . . . respondebo.

351. Tune: = tu + ne, to be taken w. patiere, l. 355. hostem: pred. acc.; 122, a.1

354. servorum: eight years before this time the slaves under Spartacus had defeated several Roman armies and even threatened the city itself.

355. emissus, immissus: another play upon words (lit., let out, let into), driven out, let free against; cf. l. 341.

357. duci, rapi, mactari: a pass. inf. may be used w. impero instead of the regular ut and the subj.

358. mactari: note the meanings of this word, as given in the larger dictionaries: 1. to honor the gods; 2. to honor a man; 3. to present a man with anything good; 4. to present a man with an evil, hence to punish.

359. persaepe: this is an exaggeration. In chapter 1, Cicero mentions only one instance of a private citizen, that of P. Scipio, which was exceptional.

360. leges: the Valerian law of 509 B.C., the Porcian law of 198 B.C., and the Sempronian law of 122 B.C., provided that no Roman citizen should be scourged or put to death without the consent of the people, and that voluntary exile might be substituted for these penalties.

362. qui a . . . defecerunt: who have been traitors to.

363. invidiam posteritatis: it was the odium resulting from Cicero's prosecution of the conspirators that led to his banishment in 58 B.C.
364. praeclaram gratiam: ironical, fine gratitude.
365. hominem . . . cognitum: Cicero was a novus homo, i.e. he was the first of his family to hold the higher offices; see Introd. 3. nulla commendatione: abl. of description. tam mature: Cicero held all his offices at the earliest legal age; see Introd. 32.
366. omnes honorum gradus: what were they? See Introd. 32.
369. severitatis: arising from severity; poss. gen.

Chapter 12

374. His ego, etc.: see note on l. 350.
375. hoc idem: i.e. that Catiline should be put to death. mentibus: sentiments.
376. hoc: explained by Catilinam . . . multari. optimum factu: the best thing to do; 229.1 si iudicarem, dedissem: Cicero uses the impf. iudicarem rather than the plup., because he is still of the same opinion. Trans. if I judged (not if I should judge); 198.2
378. gladiatori: used as a word of reproach.
379. Saturnini, etc.: these names recall the incidents mentioned in chapter 2.
380. superiorum: men of former times.
382. verendum . . . erat: I had no need to fear. quid: w. invidiae, gen. of the whole. parricida: cf. patria, quae communis est parens, l. 232. The abl. abs. w. interfecto has the force of a condition.
383. mihi redundaret: should overwhelm me, as a wave (unda).
384. hoc animo fui ut putarem: I have been disposed to consider (lit., been of such a mind that I considered). The ut-clause expresses result.
385. gloriam, non invidiam: pred. acc., as glory, not unpopularity.
387. qui videant: subjv. in a descriptive clause. ea quae imminent: we might expect a subjv. by attraction, but the indic. is used when the relative clause forms a circumlocution

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Burr.</th>
<th>A.</th>
<th>B.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>H.</th>
<th>HB.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1-1017</td>
<td>510</td>
<td>340</td>
<td>436</td>
<td>635</td>
<td>619</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-919</td>
<td>517</td>
<td>304</td>
<td>597</td>
<td>579</td>
<td>581</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
that may be expressed by a single word. Here ea quae imminent is equivalent to pericula.¹

388. qui aluerunt: while this clause is descriptive, it is not closely attached to the antecedent (nonnulli). and hence does not take the subjv.²

389. non credendo: by not believing that there was a conspiracy.

392. regie: after the expulsion of the Tarquins, a word suggesting king was odious to Roman ears.

393. intendit: sc. ire. pervenerit: perf. subjv. in indir. discourse, used for a direct fut. perf.; 216, b.³

395. Hoc uno interfeccto: conditional, as in l. 382. uno = solo.

397. reprimi, comprimi: repress (or check), suppress.

Chapter 13

403. diu versamur: we have long been living, i.e. since the time of Catiline’s first conspiracy, 65 b.c. nescio quo pacto: somehow (lit., I know not in what way). nescio quo is used as a compound indef. pron.

404. maturitas erupit: the full development has burst (upon).

406. latrocinio: concretely, a band of brigands.

408. inclusum penitus: deep hidden.

409. Ut, sic (l. 412): introducing clauses of comparison. Ut saepe: as it often happens that.

410. cum: when. aestu febrique: by the heat of fever. What figure?

413. relevatus: concessive. reliquis vivis: conditional abl. abs.

415. secedant: let them begone; subjv. of command; 187, b.⁴

416. quod: rel. pron., having as antecedent the clause muro . . . secernantur.

418. circumstare tribunal: for the purpose of intimidating the court. The tribunal was a raised platform on which the praetor’s
chair (sella curulis) was placed. praetoris urbani: see Introd.

34. cum gladiis: with swords (in their hands); abl. of accom-

panyment.

419. curiam: Introd. 29. malleolos: fire darts, shaped like

hammers having the end covered w. lighted pitch or tow.

420. sit inscriptum: let it be written once for all. The perfect
tense is here used w. more positiveness than the present; HB.
490.

427. Hisce ominibus: with these words of warning. cum
salute: to the safety. These ablatives denote attendant circum-
stance; 140.

430. Iuppiter: the orator addresses his final words to the
deity whose statue was before him.

431. qui: whose worship. haec urbs: sc. constituta est. The
temple to Jupiter vowed by Romulus was not built till 294 B.C.

432. Statorem: protector; cf. chapter 5, l. 145.

436. foedere: abl. of means. inter se: together.

437. vivos mortuosque: the Romans, as a nation, believed in

a future existence.
SECOND ORATION AGAINST CATILINE

INTRODUCTORY NOTE

At the conclusion of Cicero's oration against him, Catiline replied in his own defense, but upon speaking abusively of the consul, was interrupted by the senators, who called him "traitor" and "assassin." (See Sallust, Ch. 31). That night he left the city, pretending to go to Marseilles into exile, but in reality to join his army in Etruria, and assume the insignia of a consul.

The Rostra (restored)

The Second Oration was delivered the following day (Nov. 9, 63 B.C.) from the rostra before the people in the Forum, to acquaint them officially of the facts, and to justify his own course.

OUTLINE

I. Exordium — Catiline's departure, Ch. 1.
II. Narratio —
   1. Cicero's defense against the charge of
      (a) Too great leniency, Ch. 2–5;
      (b) Too great severity, Ch. 6, 7.
   2. The forces of Catiline, Ch. 8–10.
3. The forces of the republic, Ch. 11.

III. Peroratio — The consul’s vigilance and the protection of the gods.

Chapter 1

1. Tandem aliquando: an emphatic expression, now at last. Quirites: fellow citizens. This word, of uncertain origin, was applied to the Romans as civilians; Romani, as warriors and rulers.

3. ferro flammaque: we say with fire and sword.

4. eiecimus, etc.: an anticlimax. Note the climax and asyndeton in the next sentence, Abiit, etc. See 237 and 239. ipsum: of his own accord.

5. verbis: with words of farewell, used in irony. For the same thought see Oration I, line 289.

6. Nulla iam: see Vocab. for iam w. negatives.

7. moenibus ipsis: dat. of ind. obj., against the city, i.e. the walled city.

9. inter versabitur: will play about. sica illa: the famous dagger, referred to in Oration I, l. 205.

10. campo, foro, curia: “the three chief centers of Roman public life.”

11. domesticos parietes: Cicero may have had in mind the attempt on his own life. loco motus est: he was forced from his position, i.e. vantage ground, as a wrestler or gladiator.

13. bellum iustum: a regular war, i.e. with an open enemy, not with insidious conspirators.

16. Quod: causal. vero: but. cruentum: red with blood, used as a pred. adj.

17. ei: dat. of reference, 115, a.

20. Iacet prostratus: as a defeated gladiator.

23. e suis faucibus: the figure of animal of prey.

24. evomuerit, proiecerit: subjv. in a quoted causal clause;

Chapter 2

26. quales ... oportebat: as all ought to have been; see note on Cat. I, l. 18. If the citizens had all desired the arrest of Catiline, the consul’s task would have been easier.
26. qui ... accuset: a clause of description. *in hoc ipso*: in this very thing, i.e. the fact of Catiline's departure.

30. Interfectum esse: the perf. tense is here used for emphasis instead of the pres.; HB. 490.

31. adfectum: we should expect this word to precede interfectum, as it does in thought.

32. mos maiorum: see Cat. I. 1. 362. huius imperi: of this authority, vested in the consul.

33. res publica: the public welfare.

34. qui ... crederent: a clause of description. deferrem. subjv., by attraction.

35. defenderent: se. eum. si iudicarem: if I judged; a condition contrary to fact.

33. periculo: at the risk. cum: causal. ne ... probata: as the matter had not even then been made clear to all of you.

40. multassem: should punish; a subjv. in indir. disc. for multavero.

41. huc: to this point. ut ... possitis: a clause of result.

43. Quem hostem: to preserve the emphasis, trans. as for this enemy. quam ... putem: indir. question, depending on intellegatis, how much I think he should be feared.

44. licet intellegatis: you may know (lit., it is permitted that you know). intellegatis (without ut) is the subject of licet. hinc: explained by the following clause.

45. quod exierit: subjv. as if quoted from another person. parum comitatus: with so small an escort..

46. Utinam eduxisset; 188.¹

47. Tongilium, etc.: friends of Catiline. mihi: an ethical dat. not easily translated. I see, bless me, thank Heaven, are suggested equivalents; 115, b.² in praetexta: see Vocab.

50. quanto aere alieno: how much in debt (lit., of how great debt); abl. of description.

**Chapter 3**

54. Metellus: the praetor mentioned in Cat., I, l. 257. habuit: has made. his copiis: w. prae, l. 52.
55. magno opere: greatly. ex senibus: referring to the veterans of Sulla; the abl. denotes material, 134, a.1
56. ex agresti luxuria: abstract for the concrete, of luxurious countrymen, a phrase nearly repeated in ex . . . decoctoribus.
57. vadimonia: these men in debt were under bail to appear at court. quam: rather than.
58. quibus si: = et si eis. aciem: the battle array.
59. edictum praetoris: at the beginning of his year of office, the praetor or judge issued a statement of the principles he would follow in his administration. These of course would concern the bankrupts.
61. unguentis, purpura: the use of these was a sign of degeneration in the eyes of the sterner Romans.
62. mallem: a potential subjv., I should prefer; 189.2 Here it takes the place of utinam before eduxisset, to express a wish; cf. l. 46., suos milites: pred. acc., as his soldiers.
66. quid cogitent: indir. question, object of scire.
68. cui sit . . . attributa: Catiline had assigned the various parts of Italy to his lieutenants.
70. has . . . insidias: the execution in the city of these plots of murder and of fire.
71. superioris noctis: Nov. 6, when the meeting was held at Laeca’s house.
73. Ne: surely, or, I assure you.

Chapter 4

76. Quod: what, explained by the noun clause ut . . . videre-tis, that you should see.
78. nisi si: unless. quis: any one. Catilinae similes: men like Catilina (cf. “the likes of”). Catilinae is in the gen. case, like tui in Cat., I, l. 61.
81. concedam: fut. exeant: let them begone. ne patiantur; 187, b.3 desiderio sui: with longing for them.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bur.</th>
<th>A.</th>
<th>B.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>H.</th>
<th>HB.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 — 539</td>
<td>403</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>396</td>
<td>467</td>
<td>406</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 — 776</td>
<td>447</td>
<td>280</td>
<td>257</td>
<td>556</td>
<td>519</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 — 768</td>
<td>439</td>
<td>275</td>
<td>263</td>
<td>559</td>
<td>501</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SECOND ORATION AGAINST CATILINE 207

82. miserum: in misery. Aurelia via: abl. of the route taken; 146. This road extended from Rome along the coast to Pisa. Another road would have been more direct to the camp of Manlius, but Catiline was pretending to go to another place; see l. 215.

83. ad vesperam: by evening.

85. O rem publicam: cf. O tempora, Cat., I, l. 12. sentinam urbis, exhausto: the figure of the ship of state. Catiline is compared to the "bilge water" of the ship.

88. quod ... conceperit: a descriptive clause.

89. tota Italia: the loc. abl. may omit in when tota modifies the noun.

97. Iam vero: and again.

98. alios: some; aliorum (l. 99), of others.

99. serviebat: ministered to. Repeat qui as the subject.

aliis, aliis: to some, to others.

100. impellendo: 227, d.2

CHAPTER 5

116. eius studia . . . ratione: his varied activities in a different sphere of life.

GLADIATORS
(From a Pompeian tomb relief)

117. ludo gladiatorio: gladiators were trained in schools in Rome, Capua, and other places. They were slaves, originally captives taken in war.
118. audacior: bolder, than the rest; so levior (l. 119). fateatur: subjv. in a descriptive clause.

119. nemo in scaena: actors as well as gladiators were slaves as a rule, their art being considered unworthy of Romans.

121. exercitatione: abl. of means. adsuefactus frigore . . .

122. perferendis: trained to endure cold (lit., in enduring); abl. of specification. Cicero spoke of Catiline’s powers of endurance in Cat., I, l. 339. fortis: pred. adj. w. praedicabatur.

123. cum: concessive. industriae subsidia: the aids of industry.

126. O nos beatos: for the acc., cf. l. 85.

129. libidines, audaciae: used concretely, deeds of passion, acts of boldness.

131. res: money. fides: credit.

133. quae erat (sc. eis): which they had. in abundantia: in their (time of) prosperity.

134. comissiones solum: if they aimed only at revelry, they would be tolerable, but they mingle their revelry with plans of murder and fire.

136. hoc: explained by insidiari. quis possit: who would be able? potential subjv. in a rhetorical question; 201.1

138. mihi: ethical dat., implying sarcasm or disgust, which we may express by the tone of the voice; or trans. bless me.

accubantes: it was the Roman custom to recline at table.

143. Quibus: = sed eis: dat. w. impendere; 112, b.2

144. improbitati: dat. w. debitam.

146. sanare: sc. eos as obj. sustulerit: fut. perf.

147. breve nescio: = quoddam breve; cf. Cat. I, l. 403.

150. externa: matters abroad. unius virtute: i.e. of Pompey, who had suppressed the Mediterranean pirates, and conquered eastern nations. terra marique: loc. abl.

151. pacata: settled. intus, intus: anaphora; 235.3

154. Huic bello: dat. w. ducem; 118.4

156. quacumque ratione: se. potero. quae resecanda erunt:

Bur.  A.  B.  G.  H.  HB.
---  ---  ---  ---  ---  ---
| 771 | 268 | 277 | 259 | 557 | 519 |
| 456 | 367 | 187 | 346 | 426 | 362 |
| 1070 | --- | 350 | --- | 666 | 632 |
| 461 | 366 | --- | --- | 436 | 363 |
whatever will have to be cut away, a figure derived from surgery or from pruning.

Chapter 6

160. etiam: still. sunt qui: there are some who.
161. Quod si: now if . . . this. verbo: i.e. by a mere word
163. videlicet: used in irony.
165. paruit, ivit: note the frequent occurrence of asyndeton;

Chapter 7

190. condicionem miseram: grievous task.
192. consiliis meis: by my counsels. Note the asyndeton in this line.
193. pertimuerit: becomes alarmed. The conditional clause si . . . converterit includes five verbs in the fut. perf.; the conclusion begins w. non ille (l. 196).
196. non ille: w. dicetur (l. 199), he will not be said. spoliatus, obstupefactus, perterritus, depulsus: sc. esse w. each and connect w. dicetur. armis: of the arms; separation.
199. eiectus: w. esse. vi et minis: with threats of violence; hendiadys.
203. Est ... tanti: it is worth while for me; 110.
204. dum modo: introducing a clause of proviso; 199.
a: from.

205. Dicatur: let him be said.
210. triduo: time within which.
211. ne ... sit: in appos. w. illud. invidiosum: a cause (source) of unpopularity. quod emiserim: that I let him go. The subjv. is used because the orator is quoting his enemies. The quod-clause is subj. of sit.
213. profectus sit: he has gone away (of his own will).
214. idem quid dicerent: what would the same men say?
Quamquam: and yet.
216. verentur: the associates of Catiline feared that he had gone to Massilia, and hence had given up the war. tam misericors: these men preferred to have him lead the army, even to certain death, than be safe in exile.
217. qui ... malit: a descriptive clause of result.
218. Ille: w. mallet: he would prefer.
222. vivis nobis: abl. abs., leaving us alive; but nobis may here refer to Cicero alone. optemus: hortatory; 187.

Chapter 8

225. quod: as (lit., which), referring to murus interest; cf. Cat., I, l. 141.
226. dissimulant: conceal their sentiments, in contrast w. fatetur (l. 225).
229. sanare sibi ipsos: to cure them for their own sakes (lit., for themselves). placare: reconcile to.
230. neque: = et non.
232. generibus: classes.
233. singulis: to each of the classes. quam: any, sc. medicinam adferre.

235. est: consists. eorum: pred. gen. in aere alieno: concessive, though in debt.
236. quaram: = sed earum. dissolvi: reflexive, to free themselves.

238. voluntas: intention.

239. Tu...sis et dubites: a potential rhetorical question implying a negative answer, is it possible that you are...and (yet) hesitate? Tu: used without reference to a particular person. agris, etc.: abl. of means.

240. familia: slaves, not family.

241. fidem: credit.

244. tabulas novas: debtors were sometimes relieved by a law providing for new accounts (lit., new tablets), the creditors receiving only a part of their due. Catiline proposed to cancel debts entirely.

245. meo beneficio: thanks to me (lit. by my kindness).

247. Quod si: = et si id.

248. cum usuris: against the interest on their debts.

249. fructibus: with the profits. locpletioribus his uteremur: we should find them richer. It would be wiser, he says, to sell part of their property and pay the creditors.

250. minime: least of all the classes.

252. permanebunt: sc. in sententia; cling to their opinions.

Chapter 9


256. honores: i.e. offices.

257. Quibus...videtur: to these it seems necessary to give this warning. hoc: explained by me vigilare, etc. (1. 260).

259. reliquis omnibus: ind. obj. of praecipiendum est, which is to be supplied. ut desperent: expressing purpose.

261. animos: courage.

265. praeentes: in person, used w. deos. sint: w. adepti: this perf. subjv. stands for a fut. perf. ind. of dir. disc.

267. quae: referring to cinere et sanguine.

270. gladiatori: i.e. to some man like Spartacus, who for two years (73-71 B.C.) headed a band of gladiators and slaves against the Roman forces. sit necesse: it would be necessary.

271. aetate adfectum (adj.): feeling the effects of age, advanced in years.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bur.</th>
<th>A.</th>
<th>B.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>H.</th>
<th>HB.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 — 771</td>
<td>444</td>
<td>277</td>
<td>466</td>
<td>559</td>
<td>503</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
277. quas Sulla constituit: Sulla gave land to 120,000 of his men, after the civil war with Marius. He planted one colony in Faesulae, where Catiline's army was now encamped.

278. universas: as a whole. civium: pred. gen. esse: consist.

284. sumptuosius: render the comparative ending by too.

292. salvi: solvent, freed from debt.

293. sit excitandus: would have to be summoned. Sulla died in 78 B.C.

295. agrestes: countrymen, the neighbors of the farming veterans.

296. rapinarum veterum: such as they had in their soldier days.

298. eos hoc moneo: I give them this advice; 121. desinant: let them cease. This is the medicina (l. 233) for the third class of revolutionists. proscriptiones, dictaturas: recalling the days of the civil war in which these men had served.

300. ista non modo, etc.: non is understood after modo, but it is simpler to connect ne (not) w. passurae. Trans. not only men but even beasts seem to me to be unwilling to endure such things.

Chapter 10

303. sane: utterly; in l. 318, by all means.

304. premuntur: have been overwhelmed.

305. emergunt: rise, i.e. from their sea of debt. male gerendo negotio: by badly managing their affairs.

307. vadimoniiis, iudiciis, proscriptione: the three legal steps in a case against debtors: 1. the giving of a bail bond to appear at court; 2. the trial; 3. the confiscation or sale of the property to pay the claim of the creditor.

310. quam primum: as soon as possible.

311. corruant: subjv. expressing command.

312. Connect ne (not) w. sentiant; cf. l. 301.

318. pereant: expressing command.

319. carcer: the state prison was built in the time of the kings and still exists, covered by a small church. It was used for
executions, or for detention until the time of trial, imprisonment as a punishment of citizens being practically unknown. See cuts, pp. 32 and 231, and description, pp. 178, 179.

321. *genere:* character. *quod ... est:* one that is Catiline’s own. *Catilinae:* gen. case; 119, b.1

322. *de complexu ... sinu:* composed of his bosom friends.

323. *pexo:* i.e. elaborately dressed. *capillo:* abl. of description. *imberbes:* because of their youth. *bene barbatos:* with well-trimmed beards, a mark of affectation, since it was not the custom for Romans to wear beards at this time.

324. *manicatis tunicis:* the tunic was the main garment of the Romans, worn with or without the toga. Ordinarily it had very short sleeves and reached only to the knees. *velis non togis:* these dandies wore togas (the outer garment or robe) so large that they were compared to sails.

325. *quorum ... expromitur:* trans. actively, who spend all the energy of their lives and wakeful nights (lit., labor of keeping awake).

331. *scitote:* know; a fut. imperative used for the pres., which is lacking for this verb. *hoc:* sing. to agree w. *seminarium.* We should say these men.

333. *isti miseri:* such wretches.

**Chapter 11**


340. *cohortem praetoriam:* a general’s bodyguard.

341. *Instruite nunc contra:* here begins a notable passage of rhetorical comparison.

343. *gladiatori:* Cicero again selects this word to express his contempt of Catiline.

345. *florem:* i.e. the best or finest part.

347. *tumulis silvestribus:* these hillsides around Faesulalae were all that Catiline yet possessed.

350. *eget:* w. *quibus;* 149.

351. *equitibus:* knights, not cavalry.

354. *quam ... iaceant:* how powerless they are (lit., how prostrate they lie).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bur.</th>
<th>A.</th>
<th>B.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>H.</th>
<th>HR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>410</td>
<td>385</td>
<td>204</td>
<td>359</td>
<td>435</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>528</td>
<td>409</td>
<td>214</td>
<td>405</td>
<td>458</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>425</td>
<td>439</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

358. *honestas*: honor.

359. *aequitas*, etc.: the four cardinal virtues, according to Plato were justice, self-control, courage, wisdom.

362. *bona ratio cum perdita*: sound (political) principle against corrupt.

363. *omnia rerum desperatione*: utter despair.

**Chapter 12**


369. *antea*: the speech, as written, contains no earlier use of these words (defendite, etc.).


371. *Coloni*: Roman citizens who became colonists of other parts of Italy.

372. *municipes*: inhabitants of free towns who gained the right of Roman citizenship.

374. *quam*: for agreement w. *manum* see 167, b.²


376. *patriciorum*: some of Catiline’s leading associates were patricians.

377. *hoc*: *i.e.* the present state of affairs.

381. *quem vocari videtis*: officers were probably summoning senators to a meeting, as Cicero spoke.

386. *hoc exspectavit*: has had this object.

387. *Quod reliquum est*: as for the future.

389. *mihi vivendum*: that I must live; 225, a.³


391. *Qui vero*: but he who.

396. *carcerem*: the state prison; see note on l. 319.

399. *voluerunt*: intended.
Chapter 13

403. res: sc. sedentur, shall be brought to an end.

408. togato: the toga was the garb of peace, distinguished from the paludamentum, or military cloak. The phrase therefore implies that there would be no real warfare.

410. Quod: = et id.

417. patriae: ind. obj. of impendens.

422. optandum: to be hoped for.

424. mea prudentia fretus: relying on my prudence; 150.1

425. et: omit. non dubiis: unmistakable.

426. quibus ducibus: under whose leadership; abl. abs.

431. quam urbem hanc: trans. hanc urbem quam. In the Latin order the rel. clause precedes, for emphasis.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bur.</th>
<th>A.</th>
<th>B.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>H.</th>
<th>HB.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>576</td>
<td>431</td>
<td>218</td>
<td>401</td>
<td>476</td>
<td>432</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTRODUCTORY NOTE

The Senate promptly declared Catiline an enemy of the state and offered amnesty to all his followers who would lay down their arms. To Cicero was assigned the guarding of the city, and to his colleague, Antonius, the command of the army. The documentary evidence needed against the conspirators was supplied by the Allobroges who had come to Rome to secure aid for their financial difficulties. Their patron at Rome was Q. Fabius Sanga. To him they reported the overtures made to them by the conspirators, and he in turn informed Cicero. By design they were to feign enthusiasm and require written statements from the leaders. On the night following December 2, they left Rome with Volturcius, and were arrested on the Mulvian Bridge two miles north of the city. The Gauls and the leading conspirators were brought before the Senate, which hastily convened in the Temple of Concord. The meeting was prolonged till the dusk of evening, when Cicero gave an account of it to the people who were awaiting the news outside the temple. This was the Third Oration against Catiline (December 3, 63 B.C.).

OUTLINE

I. Exordium — The exposure of the conspiracy, Ch. 1.

II. Narratio —
1. The arrest of the Allobroges, Ch. 2, 3.
2. The testimony of Volturcius and the Gauls before the Senate, Ch. 4, 5.
3. The action of the Senate, Ch. 6.
4. Success due to the absence of Catiline, and to divine aid, Ch. 7–9.

III. Peroratio — The people exhorted to express their gratitude and to fulfill their duties as citizens, Ch. 10–12.

216
Chapter 1

1. Rem publicam . . . videtis: this long sentence illustrates the “period” in Latin rhetoric; 234.¹ We may translate the objects first, then introduce the verb and the participles. vitam: we should say lives.

3. domicilium: urbem is an appositive.

4. deorum: subjective gen. w. amore; 98.²

7. non minus iucundi: the figure of litotes; 242.

9. salutis . . . condicio: the joy of safety is certain, (while) our lot at birth is uncertain; i.e. whether we are destined to good fortune or not. censu: consciousness.

11. profecto: w. debebit. illum: i.e. Romulus.

13. benevolentia famaque: with our loyalty and regard for his fame. sustulimus: exalted. The Romans deified their heroes and leaders. As a deity Romulus was called Quirínus.

14. debebit: i.e (Cicero) will deserve.

15. urbi, etc.: dat. w. subjectos, circumdatos.

20. comperta: logically should precede inlustrata. exponam: I will tell (the facts).


22. investigata, comprehensa: investigated, detected (lit., tracked, caught).

23. exspectatis: are waiting to hear.

24. ut: ever since.

26. cum reliquisset: having left.

Chapter 2

29. cum eiciebam: indicative because the clause is merely temporal, and not descriptive; 195, b.³

30. illa: sc. invidia.

31. quod exierit: subjv., quoting what men will say; 196, a.⁴

33. restitissent: what form would the direct discourse require? 216, b.⁵
putabam: *I was thinking*; the time denoted is the same as that of eiciebam and volebam; cf. putavi, l. 48.

in eo: explained by the noun clause ut . . . sentirem ac viderem, *in the effort to know and see.*

auribus: ind. obj. w. minorem fidem faceret: *found too little credence in your ears.*

facet: subjv. by attraction. oratio mea: *my words.*

ut . . . comprehenderem: stating the purpose of viderem.

Allobrogum: this Gallic tribe had been conquered by the Romans in 121 b.c. Their envoys had come to Rome to complain of the provincial government.

Lentulo: one of the praetors who was allied with Catiline.

eodem itinere: *i.e. through Etruria,* where Catiline had his headquarters.

Volturcium: he was sent along as an agent of the conspirators.

praetores: there were eight praetors in the city. Though they were primarily legal officers, judges, they had also the power to command troops (*imperium*).

amantissimos rei publicae (gen.): *most patriotic.*

qui . . . omnia sentirent: who entertained all sentiments, a descriptive causal clause.

pontem Mulvium: across the Tiber, about two miles north of the city, now called *Ponte Molle.*

praefectura Reatina: a provincial town governed by an officer (*praefectus*) sent from Rome, and having Cicero as a patron (*patronus*). Introd. 21.

erat commissa: *had begun.* litterae: *letters;* the pl. may mean either letter or letters.

integris signis: *with seals unbroken.* ipsi: the Allobroges and Volturcius.

Gabinium: this man had brought about the conference of the Allobroges and the conspirators.

credo: ironical, *I suppose.* Lentulus was known for his sluggishness as well as his wickedness. in litteris dandis: *in writing the letter.* This letter, however, was very short; see chapter 5, l. 155.
78. viris placeret: it seemed best to the men. The subject of placeret is the infinitive clause litteras . . . aperiri . . . deferri.

80. prius-quam: here takes the infin. déférri because of aperiri.

81. tumultus injectus (esse) civitati: English inverts this construction, the state was thrown into panic.

82. nógavi . . . deferrem: I said that I would not fail to lay before the public council (the Senate) the case as a whole which concerned the public peril (lit. would not act so as not to refer, etc.).

87. frequentem: full.

89. qui efferet: purpose.

90. si quid . . . esset: any weapons there might be. esset: subjv. by attraction.

**Chapter 4**

92. fidem publicam: a promise of pardon in the name of the state, because of his turning state’s evidence.

93. quae sciret: subjv. by attraction.

96. litteras: a letter. ut uteretur: advising him to employ.

98. ut . . . esset ille: a noun clause explaining consilio.

100. caedem infinitam: the plan was to kill the senators and as many other citizens as possible.

103. litteras: letters.

105. sibi praescriptum . . . mitterent: that they had been directed to send.

108. ex fatis Sibyllinis: according to the Sibylline prophecies. The tradition was that the Cumaean prophetess, Sibyl, had sold to King Tarquin her books of prophecy, written in Greek hexameters. These books were destroyed in the Capitol fire, in 83 B.C., but were replaced by others. haruspicum: the soothsayers foretold the future and interpreted the divine will chiefly by inspecting the entrails of animals slain in sacrifice.

109. Cornelium: his full name was P. Cornelius Lentulus Sura.

110. esset necesse: it was ordained. Cinna: L. Cornelius Cinna, the successor of Marius as leader of the popular party.

111. Sulla: L. Cornelius Sulla, the dictator and rival of Marius. fatalem: ordained by fate.

113. virginum absolutionem: six Vestal Virgins guarded the sacred perpetual fire in the Temple of Vesta. If a Vestal broke her vows, she was to be buried alive. Nothing is known of the acquittal referred to.
114. *Capitoli incensionem*: the Capitol, or Temple of Jupiter, was burned in 83 B.C.


116. *Saturnalibus*: on the *Saturnalia*, a festival of merriment and good will in honor of Saturn, beginning Dec. 17. Revolutionists select holidays as the time for executing their plots.

**Chapter 5**

118. *ne longum sit*: not to be tedious. *tabellas*: short letters were written on tablets (*tabellae*) made of two or more thin boards fastened together. The inner surfaces were hollowed out and the depressions filled with wax, so as to leave a raised rim, resembling our slates. Writing was done upon the wax by means of a pointed instrument (*stilus*). The letter was bound with a thread (*linum*), and sealed on the knot with wax (*cera*).

119. *datae*: written; sc. esse.

120. *signum*: the seal made on the knot with a signet ring.

121. *Erat scriptum*: the subj. is the inf. clause following.

123. *orare*: the subj. is *sese* (Cethegus). *sibi recepissent*: had undertaken for him, i.e. had promised him (Cethegus).

124. *qui*: = *cum is*, although he; 192, b.¹

125. *apud ipsum*: at his house.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bur.</th>
<th>A.</th>
<th>B.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>H.</th>
<th>HB.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>808</td>
<td>535</td>
<td>283</td>
<td>634</td>
<td>593</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
recitatis litteris: by the reading of the letters. abiectus conscientia: conscience-smitten.

manum: handwriting.
in eandem sententiam: to the same purport.
avi tui: P. Cornelius Lentulus, consul 162 B.C.
revocare debuit: ought to have recalled.
eadem ratione: of the same character; abl. of description.
si vellet: subjv. in implied indir. disc.
exposito atque edito: given and taken down (recorded).
quid sibi esset: what he had to do (lit., what there was to him).
fatis Sibyllinis: cf. l. 108.
subito: adv.
posset initiari: might have denied.
eum: obj. of defecit (l. 150).
litteras: the letter.
Erant: it was. sine nomine: the customary greeting was omitted, as well as the name of the writer.
quem in locum: to what position, in the plot.
infirmorum: of the lowest, referring to the slaves.
cum ... tum: not only ... but also.

Chapter 6

Indiciis ... editis: cf. l. 139. The evidence was recorded by the clerks of the Senate.
de summa re publica: for the highest welfare of the state.
fieri placeret: should be done (lit., was pleasing to be done).
principibus: i.e. the leading men of the Senate, including ex-consuls and consuls elect. See Introd. 30.
sine ulla varietate: without any dissenting voice, unanimously.
sit liberata: subjv. in a quoted reason.
forti fidelique: may best be taken as pred. adj. Trans. I had found (usus essem) their service brave and loyal.
collegae meo: C. Antonius, the other consul. He was in sympathy with Catiline, but was made neutral by the promise of the province of Macedonia, for his proconsulship.
abdicasset: see Vocab. A Roman magistrate could not be brought to trial until he resigned his office. in custodi:

PAG.

184. *hoc decretum est*: *this decree was passed* (lit., *this was decreed*). L. Cassium: a senator mentioned in l. 105.

187. Apulia: a district used chiefly for grazing; cf. *Cat.* II, l. 68. indicatum: *proved*.

188. *deduxit*: "*deducere* is the technical word for leading forth or conducting a colony to a place. The Roman *colonia* marched out in military style, *sub vexillo*."—Nicol.

190. *versatus*: *engaged*.

192. *ea . . . ut*: *such . . . that*.

194. novem hominum: of this number Lentulus, Cethegus, Statilius, and Gabinius were already under arrest; Ceparius fled from Rome when the conspiracy was discovered, but was arrested later; the rest escaped punishment by flight.

197. *supplicatio*: a solemn thanksgiving to the gods for victory, declared by the Senate. The student will recall the instances mentioned in Caesar’s *Gallic War*.

199. *togato*: *i.e.* in a civil capacity.

202. *hoc interest*: *there is this difference* (lit., *differs this*). *hoc*: acc. used adverbially.¹ The indicative (interest) is used because the difference exists whether the comparison (conferatur) should be made or not.

203. *gesta*: *sc.* re publica.

204. *quod primum fuit*: the resignation of Lentulus mentioned in the next sentence.


208-211. Order: *ut in privato P. Lentulo puniendo liberare-mur ea religione, quae . . . fuerat* (*which had not prevented*...
Marius), quo minus . . . occideret (from killing Glaucia) de quo . . . decretum.

208. quae Mario (dat. of possessor) fuerat: lit., which had not been to Marius.

209. Glauciam: praetor in 100 B.C. He was allied with Saturninus, the tribune, in opposing the senatorial party. See note on Cat. I, l. 37.

Chapter 7

216. cum pellebam: indic. because the clause merely defines the time of the main verb; 195, b.1

218. somnum, adipes, temeritatem: the characteristics of the men were well known to Cicero's audience. "This Cassius had not a lean and hungry look." —Nicol.

220. tam diu dum: (only) as long as.

221. norat: = noverat, he knew (lit., had learned). omnium aditus: access to everybody; objective gen.

223. consilium: ability, shrewdness.

224. Iam: moreover.

226. mandarat: = mandaverat. The indicative w. cum here denotes repeated action, whenever, etc.; 195, c.2 neque consectum putabat: i.e. he did not assume that his command was obeyed.

227. quod: the acc. is required only by obiret; occurreret takes the dat. vigilaret, laboraret: watch for, toil for. frigus, etc. : cf. Cat. I, l. 339.

231. domesticis: i.e. within the city.

234. Non ille . . . constituisset: he (emphatic) would not have fixed upon the Saturnalia (but upon an earlier date). constituisset, denuntiavisset, commisisset are subjunctives of "ideal certainty" (Hale), or potential subjunctives, denoting action contingent upon the condition implied. si in urbe remansisset: 189.3

235. tanto ante: so long in advance.

236. neque commisisset: nor have permitted (made the mistake of allowing).

243. ut levissime dicam: to say the least.
244. dimicandum fuisset: we should have had to fight. The past indie. is more common than the subjv. (fuisset) in a periphrastic conclusion; 198, note 2.
246. tanta pace, etc.: abl. of attendant circumstance.

CHAPTER 8

247. Quamquam: and yet.
249. Id consequi: to reach that conclusion. cum: not only.
250. quod: because. vix humani consili esse potuisse: could scarcely have been within the power of human wisdom. consili: pred. gen.; 111.
251. ita praesentes: so clearly present.
254. ab occidente: in the west, the unlucky quarter of the heavens. faces: meteors.
255. fulminum iactus: flashes of lightning, terrae motus: earthquakes.
256. nobis consulibus: in our consulship.
260. Cotta et Tóruqato consulibus: the year was 65 B.C.
261. de caelo percussas: struck by lightning.
262. depulsa: overthrown, from their pedestals.
263. legum aera: the laws were engraved on bronze tablets.
264. quem . . . meministis: which you recollect was in the Capitol, gilded, small, and suckling, clinging to the breast of a wolf. A bronze group of Romulus and Remus with the wolf-nurse, now in the Capitoline museum, is marked as if by lightning and is thought to be the statue to which Cicero refers.
266. Quo tempore cum: when at this time.
267. haruspices: Etruria was noted for its soothsayers. See note on l. 108.
270. omni ratione: by every possible means.
271. prope fata ipsa: even the gods were subject to fate and could not change it.
272. responsis: abl. of accordance. Iudi: public games were celebrated as religious rites. They included chariot racing and gladiatorial combats.
275. in excelso: on a high situation. contra atque...

fuerat: opposite to its former position.

277. illud signum: that statue, just finished.

281. conlocandum locaverunt: gave the contract for setting up.

282. superioribus consulibus: in the preceding consulships.

283. nobis: sc. consulibus.

Chapter 9

284. Hic: in this matter. aversus a: obstinate against.

285. mente captus: deprived of reason (lit., captured in mind).

qui ... neget: as to say that ... not; a descriptive clause of result.

288. esset responsum: by the soothsayers.

289. rei publicae: dat., for, etc. et ea: and that too.

292. Illud ... est: was not this fact so opportune (praesens)?

Illud is explained by the second ut-clause following (ut ... statueretur), the first ut-clause expressing result.

293. Optimi Maximi: best (and) mightiest.

294. per forum in aedem: the conspirators were taken from Cicero’s house on the Palatine Hill, and hence would have to be led through the Forum to reach the temple on the Capitoline Hill.

299. Quo: wherefore. odio digni: for construction see 150.¹

302. Quibus si: = et si eis. restitisse: from resisto. si dicam: if I should say; 198, c, 2.²
303. non ferendus: unbearable. ille, ille Iuppiter: he, yonder Jupiter, said with a gesture toward the new statue.

314. suscepi: I have cherished.
322. creditae: entrusted.
324. commissae: given over.
327. nisi . . . eruptum: unless prudence had been taken from this great audacity, i.e. from these bold men. audaciae: dat. of separation, 113.1

331. Quid vero: sc. dicam.

334. patriciis hominibus: Catiline, Cethegus, Lentulus, etc.
336. id: explained by the preceding noun clause ut homines . . . anteponenter. praesertim qui: especially since they.

Chapter 10

339. pulvinaria: altars, more exactly cushioned couches on which the images of the gods were laid before the altars. Food and wine were set before the images in the feast called lectisternium.

340. celebratote: imperative fut., second pers. plur.
342. iusti: connect w. ac debiti, just and deserved. habiti sunt: have been paid.

345. me uno togato: cf. Cat., II, 1. 408.
347. civiles dissensiones: the instances of civil strife cited by Cicero in ll. 348–360 occurred during the war between the democratic party under Marius and the aristocratic party under Sulla, 88–77 b.c.

348. Sulla . . . Suspicium: P. Sulpicius Rufus, tribune of the plebs in 88 b.c., proposed a law transferring the command against Mithridates from Sulla to Marius. Sulla marched upon Rome and drove out his enemies. Sulpicius was killed; Marius escaped to Africa.

349. Marium custodem: so called because he saved Rome from the Cimbri and Teutones in 102 b.c.

351. Octavius . . . collegam: in 87 b.c. the consuls were Cn. Octavius, a partisan of Sulla, and L. Cornelius Cinna, leader of the democratic party in the absence of Marius. Cinna proposed to enlarge the franchise privileges of the Italians and began an
agitation in favor of his party. In the riots that followed 10,000 are said to have perished. Octavius was victorious, and Cinna fled from Rome.


353. redundavit: was filled, w. acervis; ran, w. sanguine; an instance ofzeugma; 247.1 Cinna cum Mario: these leaders returned to the city at the head of a large army and took vengeance upon their enemies.

354. clarissimis viris: including Octavius the consul, Antonius the orator, Scaevola the highpriest. Marius died a few days after the victory and Cinna returned to power.

356. Sulla: having finished the war with Mithridates, 83 B.C., Sulla entered Rome and placed 5000 names upon his proscription lists, remaining dictator till his death, 78 B.C. ne . . . opus est: it is quite needless to say.

358. Lepidus, Catulo: consuls 78 B.C. The former, a Marian, attempted to overthrow Sulla’s constitution, but was driven from the city by his colleague.

359. rei publicae: dat. w. attulit.

367. quaesivit: aimed at.

369. uno maximo: without exception (lit., alone) the greatest.

370. quale bellum: a war such as.

371. quo in bello: a war in which.

372. constituta: laid down. ut omnes . . . ducerentur: that all should be classed as enemies, etc., a noun clause explaining lex haec salva urbe: abl. abs.

379. tantum civium: only so many citizens.

382. restitisset: had survived. The subjv. depends on putassent, and would be fut. perf. in dir. disc.

Chapter 11

388. pro: in return for. rebus: services.

397. In animis: note the emphatic position.

399. condi et conlocari: to be stored and treasured. Nihil mutum: as a statue.

401. nostrae res: my deeds.

402. litterarum monumentis: in the records of literature.
403. eandem diem intellego propagatam esse: I feel sure that the same time has been granted. Cicero means that his consulship will be remembered as long as the city stands.

406. quorum alter: i.e. Pompey, who had conquered Mithridates.

408. terminaret: limited; the subjv. depends on intellego. alter: i.e. Cicero himself.

Chapter 12

410. quae illorum: as (in the case) of those men.
411. mihi ... illi: contrasted emphatically.
413. vestrum est: it is your duty. The subj. of est is providere (l. 417). si ceteris ... prosunt: if others deservedly profit by their acts. ceteris: ind. obj.
414. Mentes: designs.
417. mihi nihil noceri potest: no harm can be done to me (lit., in no way can harm be done to me). nihil is an adverbial acc. For the passive noceri see 112; note 2.
419. quod: rel. mihi: for me.
421. tacita: concessive, though silent. conscientiae: i.e. the conviction that Cicero had saved the state. quam qui neglegunt: = et ei qui neglegunt eam.
423. is animus: such spirit.
424. nullius: used as gen. of nemo. audaciae: dat.
426. in me unum: within five years Cicero was forced to go into exile because of his part in punishing the conspirators.
427. qua condicione: in what position, i.e. what is to be their lot.
429. mihi ipsi: as for myself; dat. w. adquiri.
430. ad vitae fructum: to life's enjoyment.
431. quicquam altius: Cicero now held the highest office in the state.

56 434. ut privatus ... ornem: that as a private citizen I will uphold and dignify.
435. laedat, valeat: supply a connective. ut mihi valeat ad gloriam: that it may redound to my glory.
437. gesserim: subjv. by attraction.
440. vestrum: unusual form of the objective gen.
441. aeque: see Vocab.
FOURTH ORATION AGAINST CATILINE

INTRODUCTORY NOTE

1. The penalty.—On December 4, the Senate voted rewards to the Allobroges and Volturnius, and heard further evidence. Finally, on December 5, this body met in the Temple of Concord at the foot of the Capitoline Hill, to consider the question of punishment for the prisoners. Silanus advocated the death penalty; Caesar, life imprisonment and the confiscation of their property. Then the consul, as the presiding officer, reviewed the two opinions in his Fourth Oration against Catiline. He was followed by M. Porcius Cato, the young tribune-elect, who in a speech of great vigor declared that the conspirators were criminals who deserved death. The Senate had been strongly impressed by
the proposal of Caesar, but, after hearing Cato, decided for immediate execution.

2. The execution. — Without delay, the five prisoners were taken to the state's prison, known as the Tullianum, where in the lower dungeon, death was inflicted by strangling. (See Introd. 43.) On his way across the Forum Cicero announced to the populace "Vixerunt," "they have lived." Although the law provided that Roman citizens should not be put to death without appeal to the people, Cicero attempted to justify the Senate's course on the plea that such men were not to be treated as citizens.

3. The fate of Catiline. — Early in 62 B.C. the rebel forces, attempting to escape into Cisalpine Gaul, were annihilated near Faesulae, between two divisions of the Roman army. Of Catiline, who led them, the historian Florus wrote, Catilīna longē a suis inter hostium cadavera repertus est, pulcherrimā morte, sī prō patriā sīc concidisset.
OUTLINE

I. Exordium — The welfare of the state alone to be consulted, Ch. 1, 2.

II. Narratio — The two propositions for punishment, Ch. 3–5.

III. Propositio et Confirmatio — The relative merits of these propositions, Ch. 6–9.

IV. Peroratio — The Senate’s duty to the state and to the consul, Ch. 10, 11.

Chapter 1

1. in me: toward me. 

2. vestrum: poss. gen. of vos.

3. vestro: sc. periculo. depulsum sit: implied indir. disc. for depulsum erit.

4. iucunda: pleasing. grata: welcome.

7. si . . . data est: i.e. if the consulship has been given to me on these terms.

9. feram: fut.

13. aequitas continetur: justice is centered. The reference is to the law courts or basilicas, located around the Forum. campus consecratus: the consuls were elected by the Comitia Centuriata, which met in the Campus Martius. But no election could take place until the auspices were favorable.

14. auxilium . . . gentium: the Senate, meeting usually in the Curia, determined the policy of the Roman government toward foreign nations.

16. lectus: cf. Cat. I. l. 129. haec sedes: the sella curulis, or curule chair, a symbol of authority for a consul, censor, praetor, curule aedile, dictator, or magister equitum. It was shaped like a camp chair, without a back, resting on ivory legs.

19. meo quodam dolore: with some pain on my own part; abl. of attendant circumstance. in vestro timore: i.e. while you were afraid.

20. ut . . . eriperem, a noun clause explaining hunc exitum.


27. subeatur: let it be endured; 187, b. fatale: cf. Cat., III, l. 111.

---

Bur. | A. | B. | G. | H. | HB.
--- | --- | --- | --- | --- | ---
4 — 768 | 439 | 275 | 263 | 559 | 501
34. *cur non laeter:* why should I not rejoice? A deliberative question; 201.1

Chapter 2

47. *praesident:* watch over. *pro eo ac mereor:* in such measure as I deserve.

48. *gratiam:* see Vocab. *si quid obtigerit* (fut. perf.): if anything happens, put mildly for *if I shall be killed.*

50. *consulari:* death could not be untimely for a man who had held the highest office.

51. *sapienti:* Roman philosophy taught that one should endure with calmness whatever fate might befall him.

52. *fratris:* Quintus Tullius Cicero, the praetor elect. In 54 B.C. he served as a legatus with Caesar’s army in Gaul; Caes, B. G., Bk. V, 38–52. *praesentis:* now present.

53. *horum:* his friends among the senators.

54. *Neque ... revocat:* and often my thoughts are recalled homeward by, etc. *neque non:* = *et.*

55. *uxor:* Terentia. *filia:* Tullia. *parvulus filius:* Marcus, now only two years old. Cicero in his letters gives evidence of his affection for his family.

57. *obsidem:* the thought of his son’s name and welfare would strengthen Cicero’s purpose. If he failed while performing his duty, the state would protect his heir.

58. *gener:* C. Calpurnius Piso, Tullia’s husband. He was not a senator, and therefore stood with the other spectators at the entrance of the temple.

59. *in eam partem uti:* to the end (or purpose) that.

61. *una peste:* in one common destruction.

62. *incumbite, circumspice:* lit., bend to the oars, look out for. These words with nautical meaning suggest the ship of state.

64. *Non Ti. Gracchus ... adducitur:* (it is) not Tiberius Gracchus ... (who) is brought.

69. *vestram omnium:* = omnium vestrum.

72. *servitia:* = servi, abstract for the concrete.
Chapter 3

76. indices: the witnesses. rei: from reus.
77. iudiciis: the official measures explained in the following statement.
82. dandos: sc. esse.
83. qui honos: an honor which.
85. praemia: Sallust says that the Senate had offered to any slave who should give information, freedom and 100,000 sesterces; to a freeman, impunity and 200,000 sesterces.
87. nominatim: the names are given by Sallust, Cat., 47, 4.
90. tamquam integrum: as an open question.
91. praedicam: will say first. sunt consulis: belong to the consul (to say); pred. gen. of possession.
92. nova . . . mala: that certain strange evils were brewing and stirring.
94. haberi: was being made.
96. ante noctem: to be valid, a decree of the Senate must be passed before sunset.
97. delatum sit: has been reported.
99. Latius opinione: more widely than is supposed.
100. transcendit Alpes: this refers to the Allobroges.
101. provincias: Catiline expected aid from Spain, and from Mauretania in northern Africa.
102. sustentando aut prolatando: by forbearance or delay.

Chapter 4

104. sententias: the motions offered, or opinions expressed by the senators, when called upon by the presiding officer; cf. Cat. I. 1. 109. D. Silani: being consul elect he was entitled to speak first; see Introd. 30.
105. haec: these things, i.e. this city.
106. C. Caesaris: Gaius Julius Caesar, leader of the popular party. He had been quaestor and aedile and was now praetor elect for 62 B.C.
108. ampléctitur: (but) includes; asyndeton. pro: in accordance with. rerum: the crisis.
109. versatur: is in favor of, advocates. Alter: i.e. Silanus; subj. of putat.
111. punctum: acc. of duration.
112. vita: abl. w. frui; 147.1
115. Alter: i.e. Caesar. intellegit: recognizes the fact that.
116. necessitatem: a necessity, when resulting from natural causes. laborum (obj. gen.) quietem (l. 117): a rest from toils, when self-inflicted. This was the teaching of the Epicurean philosophers regarding death.

118. inviti: used adverbially, unwillingly.

119. Vincula et ea sempiterna: imprisonment and that too for life. In this argument it must be remembered that Cicero himself favored the death penalty. Life imprisonment, as he shows, would be more severe than death, but it was not legal as a penalty, and besides there were no prisons for the purpose.

120. iubet: i.e. he proposes to order them (sc. eos). Habere: to involve. ista res: that proposition. inquitatem: it would be unfair to the towns to impose the burden of responsibility for the prisoners. difficultatem (l. 122): a refusal to take them would embarrass the towns in their relations with Rome.

121. si velis: if you (i.e. any one) wish; the indef. second person sing. requires the subjv. in subordinate clauses.2 Decernatur: let it be decreed.

122. reperiam: se. eos.

123. esse suae dignitatis: (it) is consistent with their honor; pred. poss. gen. recusare: the obj. is id.

124. eorum: w. vincula. ruperit: subjv. in implied ind. disc., representing a fut. perf.

125. apud inferos: contrasted with in vita. eius modi: modifying supplicia. illi antiqui voluerunt: the ancient (writers) held, or maintained.

126. his remotis: abl. abs. expressing condition.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bur.</th>
<th>A.</th>
<th>B.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>H.</th>
<th>HB.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 — 572</td>
<td>410</td>
<td>218</td>
<td>407</td>
<td>477</td>
<td>429</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 — 912</td>
<td>518,a</td>
<td>302,2</td>
<td>595</td>
<td>388,3</td>
<td>504,2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 5

139. mea quid intersit: what is for my interest; i.e. to advocate Cicero’s plan. For the abl. meā see 107.¹
141. hanc viam: that course, politically. Caesar was leader of the popular party at this time. popularis: popular, democratic. This word, occurring six times in this chapter, passes into the meanings devoted to the people’s interest, and agreeable to the people.
142. hoc auctore: abl. abs.
143. populares: of the people. pertimescendi: w. erunt.
144. alteram: sc. eritis secuti. nescio an: possibly, or I am inclined to think (lit., I do not know whether). contrahatur: subjv. in an indir. question.
145. rationes: considerations.
146. vincat: outweigh; subjv. of command.
147. maiorum amplitudo: in the Aeneid the gens to which Caesar belonged is traced to Iulus, grandson of Venus.
149. Intellectum est quid interested: it was seen (when Caesar spoke) what a difference there is. levitatem: “irresponsible utterances.” — Nicol.
152. de istis: eorum.
153. non neminem: one or more. Cicero may have had in mind particularly the tribune elect, Q. Metellus Nepos, who with his veto a few weeks later prevented Cicero from addressing the people on the ground that the consul’s execution of the conspirators was illegal. de capite: regarding the life, or civil rights. The power to condemn a citizen to death did not belong to the Senate, but to the people in the Comitia Centuriata.
154. sententiam ferat: cast a vote. Is: singular in form, referring to non neminem.
155. mihi: in my honor.
156. Order: Iam . . . dubium est, quid, . . . iudicarit, qui . . . decrerit (= decreverit).
157. quaesitori: the investigator, i.e. Cicero.
158. re et causa: the fact (of the conspiracy) and the case (i.e. the legal question).
159. legem Semproniam: the law of C. Sempronius Gracchus reaffirming the right of Roman citizens to appeal to the people
before they could be punished with death. But enemies of their country cannot be protected by this law (l. 161).

162. latorem: if Gracchus himself was not saved by his law, how can these men be saved by it?

163. rei publicae: dat. of ind. obj.

164. largitorem et prodigum: concessive, however lavish a giver.

166. popularem: a friend of the people. homo mitissimus: referring to Caesar.

169. se iactare: to make himself conspicuous. in pernicie: while ruining.

Chapter 6

173. sive hoc statueritis: i.e. if you pass Caesar's motion.

174. comitem ad contionem: a companion for the assembly. After the meeting of the Senate the consul would be expected to call an informal assembly of the people (contio), and announce the Senate’s decision, as he did in delivering the third oration. It was the custom for the man who proposed the bill to stand with the consul, as he thus addressed the people. populo: w. carum atque iucundum.

176. populo Romano: in the eyes of the Roman people; dat. of reference.

178. quae: w. crudelitas. tanti sceleris immanitate: a crime of such enormity (lit., the enormity of so great a crime).

179. de meo sensu: by my own feelings.

180. ita mihi liceat: so may I be permitted.

181. ut non moveor: as I am not actuated.

186. animo: abl. of means.

187. versatur, etc.: there rises before my eyes. mihi: dat. of reference.

189. proposui: I have pictured.

190. ex fatis: in accordance with the fates; cf. Cat. III, l. 111. purpuratum huic (dat. of reference): his prime minister (lit., clad in purple), suggesting the court of an oriental king.

192. familias: an old form of the gen. sing.

199. de sumpserit: inflict upon (lit., take from). utrum . . . videatur: depending on quaero (l. 196).

201. qui . . . lenierit: a descriptive causal clause.

206. id egerunt: have aimed at this. ut ... conlocarent: in appos. w. id.

210. fama: in the sense of infamia.

212. L. Caesar: consul 64 B.C., a distant relative of C. Caesar. His sister Julia was the wife of Lentulus.

214. virum: husband. praesentem: who was present.

215. dixit: for mood see 195, b. avum: M. Fulvius Flaccus, the grandfather of L. Caesar. He was a partisan of C. Gracchus, and was killed with him; see Cat. I, 1. 36 and note.

216. filium: in the revolution led by Gracchus, the son of Fulvius, eighteen years old, was sent to compromise with the government. He was thrown into prison by the consul Opimius and put to death.

218. Quorum ... factum: what deed of theirs was like this (crime of the conspiracy)?

219. Largitionis voluntas: the spirit of lavish giving, referring to the giving of grain and land at low rates to the people. partium: of political parties.

223. hic: i.e. this our Lentulus, contrasted w. ille.

228. Vereamini: you should fear, said with irony. The subjv. here expresses obligation.

Chapter 7

233. exaudio: overhear; said of the sentiments expressed by the senators in an undertone.

235. ut: what is the meaning after vereri? 205, b. 1

237. Omnia et provisa, etc.: hence there is no cause for fear.

238. cum ... tum etiam: not only ... but also.

239. multo maiore: w. voluntate.

241. generum: classes.

243. huius templi: i.e. the Temple of Concord.

244. inventa: known.

252. Quid commemorem: why should I mention? A question of deliberation; 201. 2

253. summam ordinis consilique: preëminence in rank and counsel. ita ut: only to. de: in.
255. **ex dissensione huius ordinis**: *after a quarrel with this order.* The quarrel between the Senate and the equites arose over the question who should be the jurors in the courts of justice. This right originally held by the senators alone was transferred to the equites by C. Gracchus. Sulla restored the right to the senators. By the Aurelian law in 70 B.C., the jury was divided between the senators, the equites, and the tribunes of the treasury.

262. **tribunos aerarios**: their duties are not clearly defined, but were first connected with raising and disbursing the war tax. At this time they constituted an order in the state. **scribas**: on Dec. 5, the date of this oration, the clerks were customarily assigned by lot (sors) to the quaestors, to serve in the provinces. Cicero says that they had come away from the treasury because they were more interested in the fate of the conspirators than in their own fortune.

263. **quos** = **eos**, them. **cum**: conj. **aerarium**: the treasury was in the Temple of Saturn, near the Temple of Concord.

265. **ingenuorum**: of free-born men, opposed to libertini, freedmen.

266. **non** = w. **cum** (l. 268), *not only.*

**Chapter 8**

270. **libertinorum hominum**: their freedom was gained either by purchase with their own savings, or as a gift from the master in recognition of their merit.

273. **quidam**: members of the conspiracy. **loco**: abl. of source or origin; 134.1

278. **nemo**: adj., *no.* **qui modo sit**: *providing he be; 199.2*

281. **quantum**: w. **voluntatis.**

283. **hoc quod audítum est**: *this rumor, explained by lenonem imperitorum.*

283. **tabernas**: *the shops of*
A Baker's Shop

(This cut from a Pompeian wall painting shows the typical corner counter (see plan on p. 238); the loaves of bread on the counter; the clerk, the customers, and the little slave reaching up to take the purchase.)

tradesmen and artisans, especially those along the north and south sides of the Forum. pretio: by money.

288. voluntate perditi: corrupt in purpose. qui non velint: as not to wish; subjv. of description. sellae: i.e. the workmen's bench.

291. salvum: preserved.
293. genus: class.
294. omne instrumentum: their whole stock in trade.
295. frequentia sustentatur, alitur otio: "chiastic" order;
238. quorum si: = et si eorum.
296. futurum fuit: would have happened; a conclusion contrary to fact, the condition being implied in incensis (tabernis). For the form see 198, note 2.

Chapter 9

302. media: the midst of.
306. supplex: as a suppliant.
307. arcem et Capitolium: "the Capitoline Hill had two summits. the arx or ancient citadel, and the height crowned by the Temple of Jupiter."

308. aras Penatium: sc. publicorum. The state had its Penates as well as each family. The national Penates were worshiped on the Palatine, and were fabled to have come from ancient Troy. illum ignem: ever burning in the temple of Vesta.

314. vestri: the form regularly used for the objective gen. pl.
318. quantis . . . imperium: with how great labor the government (was) founded.
320. una . . . delerit: (and) how one night almost destroyed (all). Literally, of course, imperium, libertatem, fortunas are obj. of delerit. una nox: the night of the meeting at Laeca’s house, or perhaps of the arrest of the Allobroges at the Mulvian Bridge.
325. officio: 147.
326. functa: sc. esse.

Chapter 10

327. ad sententiam (sc. rogandam): to asking your opinions, as Cicero had begun to do; cf. l. 96.
328. quanta: as great as; correlative w. tantam.
334. Quodsi . . . concitata: a forecast of the exile into which Cicero was driven a few years later.
339. me meorum factorum paenitebit: 106.
343. quam illi minitantur: with which they threaten (me).
345. vitae: during life (lit., of life).
347. honestastis: = honestavistis.
350. bene gesta: sc. re publica; abl. abs. denoting cause.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bur.</th>
<th>A.</th>
<th>B.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>H.</th>
<th>HB.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>923</td>
<td>517, d</td>
<td>304, 3</td>
<td>597, R.</td>
<td>582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>444</td>
<td>354</td>
<td>209</td>
<td>377</td>
<td>457</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
352. Sit, ornetur, etc.: 187, b. Scipio: the elder Scipio, who was the victorious leader in the Second Punic War.

353. Italia: we should expect ex.

354. alter Africanus: P. Cornelius Scipio Aemilianus Africanus Minor, son of Aemilius Paulus, but adopted into the Scipio family; hence his name. He captured Carthage in 146 B.C. and Numantia in 133, thus ending the wars with Carthage and Spain.

356. Paulus: father of the younger Scipio just mentioned. The Macedonian king Perses was defeated by him at Pydna in 168 B.C.

358. bis liberavit: by his victory over the Teutons in 102 B.C., and over the Cimbri in 101.

360. res gestae: exploits, deeds. solis cursus: sc. continetur.

363. quo: = ad quas.

364. quo: a country to which (lit., whither).


368. oppressi serviunt: (when) conquered become our slaves.

371. cum reppuleris: when you have driven.

372. possis: you can (w. the force of potes). Both verbs are in the subjv. because of the indef. second person. mihi: dat. of agent.

377. a me: abl. of separation.

380. conspiracyem: not conspiracy; see Vocab.

Chapter 11

382. pro imperio: in place of the military command. The rich province of Macedonia had fallen by lot to Cicero for his proconsulship, but he had conceded it to his colleague Antonius, to secure the latter's neutrality.

385. clientelis: clientships. A province or provincial town might appoint an ex-governor or other influential person to be its representative (patronus) at Rome. The provincials were then his clients (clientes). hospitiis: ties of friendship, formed by two citizens of different states, by which they were bound to protect and aid each other; or a community might honor an individual by making him their hospes.
386. *urbanis opibus*: by my influence in the city.

387. *pro (meis studiis)*: in return for.

391. *quae dum*: for as long as this (memory).

396. *suo solius periculo*: with risk to himself alone. What would solo mean?

405. *praestare*: be responsible for (stand good for).

Read Introductory Note, p. 229.
THE MANILIAN LAW

INTRODUCTORY NOTE

1. Mithridates. — One of Rome's most formidable foes was Mithridates the Great, king of Pontus, a country south of the Black Sea. As early as 90 B.C. he had extended his power over a large part of Asia Minor. Allying himself with Tigranes, king of Armenia, he overran the Roman province of Asia, i.e. Phrygia, Mysia, Caria, and Lydia. In 88 B.C., by his edict, 80,000 Italians on the Asiatic Coast were cruelly murdered. His next step was to invade Greece. At this time Sulla, the Roman general, was sent against him, who within four years reëstablished the Roman power, causing the king to give up his conquests, surrender 80 war vessels, and pay a heavy fine. This was the First Mithridatic War (88–84 B.C.). The Second Mithridatic War (83–82 B.C.) was of little importance, though resulting in the defeat of Murena, whom Sulla had left in command.

2. The Third Mithridatic War (74–63 B.C.). — For eight years the king increased his forces and strengthened his cause. In 74 he renewed hostilities by invading Bithynia. The Romans were led in succession by Lucullus, Glabrio, and Pompey. Lucullus, who was an able general, conquered both Mithridates and Tigranes taking the greater part of Pontus and the Armenian capital. But this conquest was left incomplete by the mutiny of his soldiers and his recall, secured by his enemies at Rome (74–67 B.C.). Taking advantage of this situation, the king succeeded in recovering all his lost territory, while the incompetent Glabrio, who succeeded Lucullus, remained inactive (67–66 B.C.). It was then that the Romans turned to Pompey.

3. Pompey (Gnaeus Pompeius) was preëminently a soldier. Born in 106 B.C., he was, at the age of 17, a subordinate to his father in the Social War. He had distinguished himself in Italy under Sulla, in Africa against the Marians who had fled there, in Gaul, in Spain against Sertorius, and, on his return from Spain,
against Spartacus and the slaves. In 70 he was made consul, though under legal age, and not having been praetor or quaestor. The bill of the tribune A. Gabinius, in 67 B.C., gave him supreme command for three years over all the Mediterranean and its coasts for ten miles inland. It was in the exercise of this command that Pompey won his greatest fame, by promptly clearing the Mediterranean of the pirates who had been a menace to commerce for many years.

4. The Manilian Law. — With the popularity naturally resulting from this career, Pompey was logically the man for the war with Mithridates. The tax-farming Equites and all classes except the conservative Optimates demanded him. C. Manilius the tribune nominated him early in 66 B.C., in the bill known as the Manilian Law. The Optimates, represented by Catulus and Hortensius, opposed the law on the ground that it bestowed too much power on an individual. Cicero, who was serving as praetor, was the chief advocate of the bill. The speech which he then delivered was his first from the Rostra to the popular assembly. It is noted as a model for "clearness of statement, beauty of diction, and regularity of construction." But it has been criticised because it treats the questions of public policy but superficially, conjuring with facts rather than weighing arguments.

5. End of the War. — The bill was passed by the Comitia, and Pompey, who was still in Cilicia, hastened to encounter Mithridates. Within three years (66–63 B.C.), the king was completely vanquished, and perished in the Crimea, to which he had fled.


OUTLINE

I. Exordium — Reason for the speech, Ch. 1.
II. Narratio et Partitio — The statement of the case, Ch. 2.
III. Confirmatio —
   1. The character of the war, Ch. 2 (par. 3)-7.
   2. The greatness of the war, Ch. 8, 9.
   3. The choice of a commander. Pompey's qualifications:
      a. Military knowledge, Ch. 10;
      b. Ability (his soldierly and other virtues), Ch. 11-14;
c. Prestige, Ch. 15, 16 (par. 1);
d. Good fortune; nearness to the scene of the war, Ch. 16 (par. 2)-17 (par. 1).

IV. Refutatio — The objections of Hortensius, Catulus, and others, Ch. 17 (par. 2)-23.

V. Peroratio — Appeal to Manlius and to the citizens, Ch. 24.

Chapter 1

1. frequens conspectus vester: the sight of your crowded assembly.

2. hic locus: i.e. the rostra in the Forum. The right of addressing the people on a question of legislation (ius agendi) belonged only to a magistrate (hence amplissimus, most dignified), though he might delegate the privilege to a private citizen (hence ornatissimus, most honorable.

4. aditu laudis: pathway to fame. optimo cuique: to all the best men.


7. per aetatem: a citizen under forty years could not be praetor, and hence had not the ius agendi. See Introd. 32.
8. perfectum: refers to the thought in an address; elaboratum to its form; "nothing save the finished product of talent and painstaking industry."—Nicol.

10. temporibus: the necessities. periculis (l. 12) legal dangers, trials.

13. caste integreque: the Cincian law (204 B.C.) made it illegal for advocates to receive fees. Cicero here implies his own innocence.

14. dilationem: the election for the eight praetors, which was held in the Comitia Centuriata, was declared void on two occasions in 67 B.C. possibly because of some political disturbance. On each occasion Cicero had been elected first and unanimously before the postponement (dilationem) occurred.

19. honoribus mandandis: by conferring honors (offices).

20. ex forensi usu: i.e. from practice in the courts.

24. ei rei: for this ability, i.e. in dicendo. quoque: as well as for other qualifications.

26. laetandum esse: is a cause for rejoicing (lit., w. pass. force, must be rejoiced over).

39. copia: abundance of material. modus: proper limit.

Chapter 2

43. ducitur: is derived, originates.

46. alter relictus: Mithridates, after being defeated by Lucullus, had been allowed to escape. alter lacescitus: Tigranes had been provoked to warfare by the demand to surrender Mithridates, his father-in-law, who had taken refuge with him.

47. Asiam: the Roman province consisting of Phrygia, Mysia, Caria, and Lydia.

48. Equitibus: the members of the equestrian order, because of their wealth, were the financiers of Rome.

49. magnae res aguntur: capital is at stake.

51. necessitudine: Cicero himself came from an equestrian family.

52. detulerunt: the obj. of this verb extends to neminem (l. 60).
53. *vestra provincia*: Bithynia had been bequeathed to the Romans by Nicomedes III. in 74 B.C. *quaer...est*: parenthetical, and not affected by the indir. disc.

54. *regnum Ariobarzanis*: Cappadocia, bordering on Pontus.

56. *magnis rebus gestis*: concessive.

57. *qui successerit*: the successor of Lucullus was Glabrio, who was incompetent for the task. *esse paratum*: sc. *eum* as subj.


64. *quod* (= *ut id*) . . . *debeat*: a descriptive clause of result.

65. *persequendi*: sc. *belli*: *of prosecuting it*, *i.e.* following it up to the end.

71. *pacis ornamenta, subsidia belli*: chiasmus; 238. 1

73. *a vobis*: abl. instead of dat. of agent, to avoid confusion with *quibus* which is dat. of ind. obj.

**Chapter 3**

77. *illa macula*: explained by *quod* (l. 79) . . . *regnat* (l. 84), etc. *bello superiore*: the First Mithridatic War, 88–83 B.C.

78. *insedit*: from *insido*.

80. *una significati&... litterarum*: *by one stroke of the pen*, as we should say. Mithridates commanded that all Italians in his dominions be put to death. Eighty thousand are said to have perished.

85. *latebris*: abl. of means, but trans. *in the hiding places*.

86. *versari*: *to flaunt himself*.

88. *insignia victoriae*: *i.e.* the triumphal procession in Rome, granted by the Senate on the return of the victorious army.

89. *Sulla’s triumph was celebrated in 83 B.C.*, Murena’s in 81.

93. *quod*: sc. *propter id*: *for what they did*, etc.

94. *res publica*: the political situation, caused by the renewed supremacy of the Marian faction, while Sulla was absent. To meet this, Sulla returned to Rome, leaving his lieutenant Murena in command.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bur.</th>
<th>A.</th>
<th>B.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>H.</th>
<th>HB.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1–1067</td>
<td>598</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>682</td>
<td>666</td>
<td>628</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 4

98. qui: subj. of misit; trans. w. postea cum, afterward, when he.

99. classes exercitusque: for an account of his new forces and equipment, read Plutarch’s Lucullus.

100. potuisset: subjv. by attraction.

102. ac litteras: we should say with despatches. eos duces: i.e. Sertorius and his associates, who succeeded Marius in Spain. Sertorius, who was a very able leader, agreed to send the king Roman military instructors in exchange for a fleet.

103. disiunctissimis . . . diversis: Pontus and Spain, widely separated and most remote (in opposite directions) from Rome.

104. binis: used for duobus.¹

106. de imperio: for the supremacy.

107. alterius partis: from one quarter.

110. in altera parte: in the East. res: affairs.

111. initia . . . gestarum: his exploits at the beginning.


115. vera: deserved. ei: dat. of separation.

Chapter 5

120. Maiores . . . gesserunt: the statement refers to campaigns against the Illyrian pirates, in 229 B.C.

121. iniuriosius: the force of the comp. is somewhat, rather: so in superbius, l. 124; see 160.² tot milibus: see note, l. 80.

124. appellati superbius: Sparta desired to withdraw from the Achaean League and appealed to Rome for help. Commissioners were sent to Greece to settle the difficulty (148 B.C.), but they were insulted in the assembly at Corinth, prevented from speaking, and, as some say, imprisoned. Cicero states the offense mildly for the sake of argument.

125. extinctum: agreeing in gender w. lumen; Corinthus is feminine.

126. legatum consularem: M. Aquillius, who had been consul with Marius in 101 B.C. He was sent in 90 B.C. to restore the

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bur.</th>
<th>A.</th>
<th>B.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>H.</th>
<th>HB.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1—218</td>
<td>137</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>164</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2—642</td>
<td>291</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>297</td>
<td>498</td>
<td>241</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
kings of Cappadocia and Bithynia to their thrones, from which Mithridates had driven them. But, urging Nicomedes to invade Pontus and leading an army himself against that country, he forfeited his rights as an ambassador, and justly so in the eyes of Mithridates.

128. libertatem imminutam: the infringement of the liberty. Notice this use of the participle instead of a noun w. a limiting gen.; cf. ante urbec conditam.

131. relinquetis: leave unpunished.

135. Quod: the fact that. vocatur: is brought.

138. duo reges: see l. 45.

143. alium: Glabrio.

146. omnia: all qualifications. propter: adv. quo: for which reason. carent: sc. eo and see 149.1

148. maritimum bellum: i.e. the war w. the pirates. venerit: subjv. due to indir. disc.

151. quorum salutem commendetis: to have you intrust their safety; 192, c.2

152. hoc (abl.) etiam magis: and that too all the more.

154. cum imperio: with full authority. ut: denoting result.

Chapter 6

161. Antiocho: the Roman people fought with Antiochus, king of Syria, on behalf of Pergamus and Rhodes, 192 b.c. Antiochus was aided by the Aetolian League (cum Aetolis). The war with Philip V, of Macedonia, was undertaken for the Athenians; the three Punic wars, for allies in Sicily, Spain, and Africa. But the protection of allies in all these wars was merely a pretext for conquest.

165. de vectigalibus agatur: = vectigalia agantur.

166. tanta: (only) so great, scarcely enough to pay the troops.

166. eis contenti: see 150.3

171. belli utilitatem: the advantage gained by war, derived from the resulting revenues.

173. in: in the case of.
178. pecuaria . . . conquiescit: "The English prefers the concrete, the ranches are deserted, the fields left untilled, the trading vessels lie idle."—Nicol.

179. ex portu: duties on imports and exports, collected at the harbors. decumis: tithes ("tenths"), the tax on farm products. scriptura: a tax on cattle grazing in the public lands, according to the number listed (scribere).

181. fructus: income.

184. exercent: men "farmed" the taxes, i.e., took the contract for collecting them. The contract was awarded to the highest bidder, who paid the stated amount annually into the treasury, keeping as his profit any additional amount collected. The revenue farmers, or publicans, were of the equestrian order, the wealthy class. In the case of large provinces the revenues were farmed by great stock companies, which kept their headquarters at Rome.

187. familias: bands of helpers, chiefly slaves.

189. custodiis: the watchtowers, where officials guarded against smuggling.

190. fructui: a source of income; 114.1

Chapter 7

193. ne illud quidem: that too must not, etc.

194. extremum: as the last topic; see ll. 62-74.

195. quod . . . pertinet: an appos. clause explaining illud, the fact that, etc.

197. ratio: regard, consideration. et: omit. The correlative is deinde, l. 204.

198. rationes et copias: interests and resources.

199. ipsorum per se: on their own account.

201. eum ordinem: the equestrian order; see note, l. 184.

205. partim, partim: some, others.

207. humanitatis, sapientiae: see 111.2

210. a re publica: = a calamitate rei publicae.

211. parvi refert: it matters little; see 107.3 publicanis omis-sis: i.e. if we leave them to their fate.
THE MANILIAN LAW 251

212. redimendi: of contracting for (them); sc. vectigalia.
216. belli Asiatici: the First Mithridatic War. id: antecedent of quod, l. 215.
218. res: fortunes. amiserant: see 195 b.¹
220. ut non trahant: without drawing (lit., so as not to draw).
223. ratio pecuniarum: financial system.
224. in foro: the center of the banks. Rome at this time was the greatest commercial city. implicata est et cohaeret: is closely involved.
226. ut non labefacta concidant: without causing to totter and fall.

Chapter 8

232. belli genus: = bellum genere, the war in its nature.
234. maxime laborandum est (mihi): I must take special care.
235. vobis contemnenda: unworthy of your attention.
239. Mithridati: an alternate form of the gen.
241. Cyzicenorum: an appos. Cyzicum would seem better here. The city was important and prosperous, situated on an island in the Propontis opposite Byzantium (Constantinople). It is noted to-day for its extensive ruins.
244. periculis: abl. of separation.
245. ducibus Sertorianis: abl. abs., under Sertorian leaders. The fleet of 50 ships with 10,000 men was sent to Italy by Mithridates and Sertorius (recall their alliance. note, l. 102). It was destroyed by the ships of Lucullus near Lemnos 73 b.c.
246. raperetur: was being hurried.
249. legionibus: dat.
253. uno aditu: by his mere approach. This applies only to permultas. It took Lucullus nearly two years to complete the reduction of Pontus and its fortresses.
254. alios reges: especially to his son and son-in-law, the kings of Bosporus and Armenia.
256. integris vectigalibus: Lucullus completed his work without drawing upon their allies or their resources.
257. ita: sc. dicta, so expressed.
259. huic legi: i.e. legi Maniliae. hoc loco: the Rostra; cf. 1. 2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bur.</th>
<th>A.</th>
<th>B.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>H.</th>
<th>HB.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 — 857</td>
<td>545</td>
<td>288</td>
<td>580</td>
<td>601</td>
<td>550</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 9

262. reliquum: what remains of; w. bellum.

265. Medea: daughter of the king of Colchis. According to the story she helped Jason, leader of the Argonauts, to win the Golden Fleece and then fled with him to Greece, taking her brother Absyrtus with her. Colchis was north of Pontus and not in fact part of it (eodem Ponto).

267. eorum collectio dispersa: the collecting of the scattered remains.

269. vim auri, etc.: the Roman soldiers who pursued the fleeing Mithridates were attracted by some bags of gold that had burst, and they let the king escape. For the story see Plutarch's Lucullus, sec. 17.

270. pulcherrimarum rerum: works of art.

272. omnem: note the emphatic position.

274. illum: the father of Medea.

277. diffidentem rebus suis: while despairing of his fortunes; for the dat. see 112, b.1 adflictum . . . recreavit "raised him up from his abasement and put new life into his ruined fortunes."—Nicol.

283. gravis . . . opinio: a deep-seated and strong conviction, which was quite natural.

288. urbem: Tigranocerta.

289. usus erat: had fought. secundis: successful.

290. suorum: of their friends. commovebatur: there was a mutiny of the army.

291. illud extremum: the result.

294. eorum: modifies auxiliis, coördinate w. multorum regum.


298. multorum opes: many men of resources, who are moved to pity.

301. incolumis: i.e. in the days of his power.

303. eo: explained by the ut-clause following.

307. poetae: probably Naevius, who wrote of the First Punic War, and Ennius, who wrote the annals of Rome, both in verse.

308. nostram calamitatem: the Romans under a lieutenant of Lucullus were almost annihilated at Zela, 67 B.C.
310. *ex sermone rumor*: rumor in conversation.


314. *modum*: a limit. *vetere*: i.e. of the ancestors.

318. *factum*: sc. *esse*; has become.

319. *coniungant*: unite in waging.

**Chapter 10**

322. *quare*: to show why. *esset*: this tense is required by sequence after *fecisse*; trans. by the pres.

324. *restat* ... *videatur*: in addition it seems necessary to speak.

327. *ut* ... *esset*: i.e. it would be difficult to decide.

331. *antiquitatis memoriam*: put illogically for the glory of the men recorded in the past. Cicero's statement of course was made for effect, and must be properly discounted.


338. *patris*: Cn. Pompeius Strabo, who commanded the army of the Senate in the Social War, 89 B.C. Pompey was then seventeen years old (*extrema pueritia*).

339. *extrema*: 159.¹

340. *summi imperatoris*: the father just mentioned.

341. *ipse imperator*: at the age of twenty-three Pompey raised three legions to aid Sulla on his return from the East. With these he won several victories over detachments of the Marian army, and was saluted "imperator" by his commander.

342. *hoste, inimico*: what is the difference in meaning?

347. *stipendiis*: campaigns, years of service. *triumphis*: one over Africa in 81 B.C., and another over Spain ten years later.

349. Civil, etc.: during the civil war between Marius and Sulla, Pompey conducted a victorious campaign in Sicily; in Africa he conquered the Marian forces and their ally, King Hiarbas of Numidia; in Transalpine Gaul, he drove back the mountain tribes, who attempted to prevent his march to Spain; in Spain he fought against Sertorius, whose army was composed (mixtum) of Romans, Spaniards, and Orientals.

---

¹ — 646  293  241  291  497  244
351. servile: the war against Spartacus and the slaves, navale: against the pirates. diversa: in different localities.
353. in usu . . . militari: within the range of military experience.

Chapter 11

355. virtuti: ability; the word is here used in a comprehensive sense, including soldierly and personal virtues; see I. 335.

359. labor in negotiis: activity in routine. labor . . . consilium: briefly, these five virtues are energy, courage, diligence promptness, prudence. Pompey’s special virtues are mentioned in chapter 13.

361. tanta quanta non fuerunt: greater . . . than (lit., as great as they were not).

364. Italia, Sulla: during the Civil War, Pompey was Sulla’s ablest general; see note, I. 341. For his services in Sicily, Africa, and Gaul, see note, I. 349.

366. non terrore belli: on Pompey’s arrival one of the democratic leaders in Sicily evacuated the island without resistance.

368. eorum ipsorum: of those very enemies.

369. testis, testis, testis: what figure is this? legionibus: dat.

371. Hispania, saepissime: Pompey, however, accomplished but little in Spain until the death of Sertorius in 72 B.C., and on one occasion was saved from defeat only by the arrival of his colleague Metellus.

373. servili bello: Crassus had practically ended this war, before Pompey on his way back from Spain met and easily destroyed a remnant of the army of Spartacus, who were trying to escape into Gaul. But Pompey claimed the honors of the bellum servile. taetro: disgraceful, because the enemy were slaves and gladiators. periculoso: because the slaves had defeated four Roman armies in succession.

374. absente: Pompey was in Spain.

375. quod: = et id. attenuatum . . . est: trans. by the part., having wasted and dwindled away.

378. cum universa: not only in their whole extent.

382. servitutis: the pirates often sold their captives into slavery.
383. **hieme**: men might risk the storms of winter, in order to escape the pirates who would then be inactive. **referto**: governs either the gen. or abl.; 104.1

385. **vetus**: piracy in the Mediterranean had begun many years before Pompey was appointed commander (67 B.C.). **divisum**: extended. **quis . . . arbitraretur**: who would ever have thought? 201.2

**Chapter 12**

395. **proprium**: characteristic, “the peculiar pride;” 119, b.3

396. **propugnaculis**: *i.e.* the army and navy.

398. **dicam**: *am I to say*; subjv.; see 201,4 and cf. **commemorem**, l. 405. Note the omission of an interrogative word.

399. **Brundisio**: a famous seaport, which still has some commercial importance. It was the terminus of the Appian Way and the starting point for Greece and the East. For the use of the prep. see 133, b.5 **hieme summa**: in midwinter; cf. note on l. 383. **transmiserint**: intr., see Vocab.

401. **legati**: it is not known who these envoys were.

402. **duodecim secures**: by metonymy for “two praetors,” who were attended outside the city by six lictors each. As a symbol of authority each lictor carried an ax in a bundle of rods (fasces). Plutarch mentions the incident in his *Life of Pompey*, sec. 24.

406. **quibus . . . ducitis**: owing to the decline of Italian farming and the increase in the population of Rome, it was necessary to obtain foreign supplies. The ports to which Cicero refers were sources of grain.

408. **inspectante praetore**: *under the eyes of a praetor*. His name is unknown.

410. **liberos**: a rhetorical exaggeration. According to Plutarch, a daughter of Marcus Antonius was captured by the

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bur.</th>
<th>A.</th>
<th>B.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>H.</th>
<th>HB.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>429</td>
<td>349</td>
<td>204</td>
<td>374</td>
<td>453</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>771</td>
<td>444</td>
<td>277</td>
<td>265</td>
<td>642</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>410</td>
<td>385, c</td>
<td>204, 2</td>
<td>359</td>
<td>435, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>771</td>
<td>444</td>
<td>277</td>
<td>265</td>
<td>642</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>530</td>
<td>428</td>
<td>229, 2</td>
<td>391</td>
<td>462, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
pirates and ransomed for a large sum. Antonius, who had fought against them in 102 B.C., was the grandfather of the triumvir.

412. Ostiense: Ostia was the port of Rome, sixteen miles away, at the mouth of the Tiber. The pirates had burned the Roman fleet in the harbor and plundered the town.

413. cum: at the time when; hence followed by the indic.; cf. transmiserint (l. 399), where the subjv. is due to the involved idea of cause.

414. ea cui: = ea ut ei, a fleet such that a consul, etc. The subjv. clause is descriptive.

416. unius hominis: Pompey.

419. ei: the same persons, emphasizing vos. Oceani ostium: i.e. the Straits of Gibraltar.

422. a me: stronger than the usual dat. of agent.

425. celeriter: omit. tanti . . . navigavit: "the storm of so great a war swept the sea. The impetus was Pompey's fleet of 500 war galleys."—D'Ooge.

426. nondum tempestivo: navigation on the Mediterranean was suspended from November till March.

428. frumentaria subsidia: granaries.

430. duabus Hispaniis: two provinces, citerior and ulterior, divided by the river Ebro.

433. omnemque Graeciam: and in fact all Greece. Achaia was the southern part, the Peloponnesus. duo maria: the Adriatic and the Tuscan.

435. ut: from the time when.

436. Ciliciam: the stronghold of the pirates.

439. Cretensibus: dat. of separation w. ademit. The Cretans had been almost subdued by Metellus, but sent envoys to Pompey, hoping for more favorable terms from him. usque in Pamphyliam: not far from Crete; the great distance implied would be from Rome.

Chapter 13

446. haec: i.e. bellandi virtus, as given in chapters 11 and 12.

447. Quid: transitional, but further. Ceterae: sc. virtutes, distinguished from military ability.

450. artes: qualities.

451. innocentia: Pompey's integrity, scrupulous honesty in money matters, is set forth in the rest of the chapter.
454. Quae: these qualities.
455. Summa: of the highest order.
456. ex aliorum contentione: from a comparison with (the qualities of) others. ipsa per sese: by themselves.
458. ullo in numero: of any standing, of any account.
459. centuriatus: centurions were selected from the ranks by the commander-in-chief because of good service. veneant: from veneo.
460. Quid magnum aut amplum: obj. of cogitare; se. possimus putare: what great or noble thoughts ... can we suppose that this man has?
462. provinciae: sc. retinendae. The governor bribed men of influence (magistratibus) to secure for him a longer term of office.
463. propter avaritiam: Caesar speaks of the avarice of generals in B.G., I, chap. 40.
464. Romae: loc. facit ... videamini: makes it evident that you recognize; 205, c.¹
467. ante: beforehand. voluerit: fut. perf.
469. ventum sit: they have come; impers., see 172, b;² subjv. by attraction.
470. per hosce annos: during the time of the Social and the Servile wars.
472. quid ... existimetis: the question, being deliberative, would also be in the subjv. in dir. disc. Utrum ... an: a double question; 89.³
474. hibernis: the allies maintained the Roman army in winter quarters unless they were released from the burden by a money payment.
477. in iudicando: sc. alios. The governor of a province was judge as well as general.
479. Hic: under these circumstances. ceteris: excellere governs the dat.
480. non modo manus: the second non is omitted; trans. not only no hand in so great an army.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bur.</th>
<th>A.</th>
<th>B.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>H.</th>
<th>HB.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1—</td>
<td>542</td>
<td>568</td>
<td>297</td>
<td>553</td>
<td>566</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2—</td>
<td>346</td>
<td>208</td>
<td>138</td>
<td>208</td>
<td>302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3—</td>
<td>372</td>
<td>335</td>
<td>162</td>
<td>458</td>
<td>380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>521, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>201, c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>234</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
482. *quem ad modum hibernent*: *i.e.* how the soldiers conduct themselves.

484. *ut . . . in militem*: to incur expense for the soldiers (lit., for the soldiery). *nemini vis adfertur*: no one is compelled (lit., force is brought upon no one).

485. *hiemis . . . perfugium*: a shelter from winter (objective), not for avarice (subjective).

Pompey's integrity then is established because: (1) he is not bribed in selecting centurions; (2) he does not misappropriate war funds; (3) he does not allow the allies to be oppressed.

**Chapter 14**

488. *Age*: this imperative is used as an interj. in transitions, and hence is not pl. *temperantia*: self-control; abl. of description.

490. *cursum inventum*: se. esse; progress was made possible.

491. *eximia vis*: extraordinary force (crew). War galleys were propelled with great speed by trained bands of rowers.

494. *instituto cursu*: *i.e.* the course set before him.

495. *amoenitas*: se. locorum; the charm of beautiful scenery did not lure him to the enjoyment of it.

497. *signa, tabulas, ornamenta*: statues, paintings, works of art. Rome was full of art treasures of conquered peoples.

503. *fuisse*: really were.

504. *quod*: a fact that.

507. *maiores suos (their)*: subj. of *maluisse*. *habebamus*:

195, b.¹

510. *privatorum*: Pompey was ready to receive private citizens who sought to interview him. *liberae*: freely allowed.

516. *hoc loco*: the Rostra, from which Pompey had spoken. He was not a trained orator, however.

517. *Fidem*: good faith.

518. *omnium generum*: to be taken w. *hostes. iudicarint*: subjv. in a causal clause.

519. *humanitate*: on Pompey's kindness see Mommsen, Vol. IV, p. 114. *dictu*: see 229, b.²

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bur.</th>
<th>A.</th>
<th>B.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>H.</th>
<th>HB.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>857</td>
<td>545</td>
<td>288</td>
<td>580</td>
<td>601</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1017</td>
<td>510</td>
<td>340</td>
<td>436</td>
<td>635</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 15

525. Auctoritas: personal influence, prestige; cf. l. 335.
Cicero has already spoken of knowledge (chapter 10), and ability (chapters 11–14).

527. Plurimum possit: is preëminent.
528. Vehementer... ad... quis ignorant: who does not know that it has very much to do with, etc.
531. Ut contemnant: to despise; construe w. commoveri.
532. Opinione et fama: by common opinion and report.
533. Ratione certa: well-founded reason. Commoveri: are influenced.

536. Iudicia fecistis: as shown in the conferring of offices and commands. Pompey was consul in 70 B.C. An... putatis: 89, b.
537. Quo: = ut eo, that to it. Illius diei: the day when Pompey was put in charge of the war against the pirates, 67 B.C.
544. Omnium... egregiarum: of all excellence. Sumantur: independent subjv. of command; 187, b.²
545. Qui quo die: on the day that he.
546. Vilitas: prices fell because the pirates no longer interfered w. commerce. Ex: after; in 550 (ex eo), as the result of.
548. Ex... agrorum: conditional, = si ubertas agrorum summa fuisset.
553. Provincia: Asia. The force of cum extends to haberet.
554. Ad ipsum discrimen: at the critical moment.
559. Inflammatum: flushed (with).
572. Ipso nomine ac rumore: by the mere mention of his name. The people said, “The very name of Pompey has terminated the war.” — Plutarch.

Chapter 16

574. Age vero: well then; cf. note, l. 488. Illa res: that fact, explained by the quod-clauses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bur.</th>
<th>A.</th>
<th>B.</th>
<th>G</th>
<th>H.</th>
<th>HB.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>368</td>
<td>335</td>
<td>457</td>
<td>380</td>
<td>236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>768</td>
<td>439</td>
<td>275</td>
<td>560</td>
<td>501</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
cum: concessive. noster imperator: a commander of ours, i.e. Quintus Metellus.
ultimas terras: Pamphylia.
eum: subj. of iudicari.
i . . . missum: those to whom it was annoying (Pompey’s rivals) that he (the envoy) was sent to him (Pompey) rather than to any one else. The incident is not fully understood. We know that Mithridates was negotiating with Sertorius (1. 102), against whom Pompey and Metellus were fighting. It has been suggested that “Pompey caught a spy of the king in his camp and was led by his vanity to believe that Mithridates was making overtures to him.” Pompey’s rivals considered this a slight to Metellus, who outranked him.
multis . . . gestis: by many later achievements. iudiciis: cf. note, l. 536.
praestare de: guarantée for.
meminisse: asyndeton, but which, etc.
eaquum est: sc. dicere.
Maximo: Q. Fabius Maximus, who defended Rome against Hannibal by his policy of delay.
Marcello: M. Claudius Marcellus, a brilliant general, the conqueror of Syracuse, 212 B.C. Scipioni: either Scipio Africanus the Elder, conqueror of Hannibal, or more probably Scipio Aemilianus the Younger, who destroyed Carthage in 146 B.C.
Fuit: w. adiuncta, has been granted. quaedam: as it were.
fortuna: emphatic by position.
videamur: it may be seen that we.
non sum praedicaturus: one of many instances of praeteritio, the figure by which the orator emphasizes what he pretends to omit.
militiae: loc., and in the field (of battle). ut: how.
volutatibus: ind. obj. w. four following verbs.
Quod ut: = et ut id.
sicuti facitis: just as you do (wish).
dubitatis quin conferatis: do you hesitate to devote? dubito, hesitate, usually takes an infinitive to complete it, but may take quin w. a subjv., when a negative is implied, as here.
644. *erat deligendus*: would deserve to be chosen. Why indic.? See 198, note 2.¹

646. ut . . . *adsit*, etc.: appositive clauses explaining oppor-
tunitas.

648. *ab eis*: *i.e.* Lucullus and Glabrio; see chapter 9. acci-
pere: sc. exercitus.

649. *quid exspectamus*: why do we hesitate?

650. *cetera*: sc. bella.

651. *regium*: against the kings Mithridates and Tigranes.

652. committamus: deliberative, should we commit.

657. *At enim*: but indeed, introducing an objection to the argument just given.

659. *beneficiis*: referring to the offices of state.


664. *Hortensius*: a famous orator and rival of Cicero. He was an ex-consul (hence *honoris*), and a man of great wealth and fortune).

666. *locis*: occasions.

670. *re ac ratione*: hendiadys, by a consideration of the facts.


678. *Hortensi*: the regular voc. ending for nouns in -ius. *pro*: in accordance with.

680. Gabinium: the tribune who proposed the law giving Pompey command against the pirates, 67 B.C. *graviter ornate-
que*: with weight and eloquence, referring to the thought and the expression of it.

681. *promulgasset*: a proposed law had to be announced at least seventeen days before it was voted on.

685. *vera causa*: real interests.

689. *commeatu*: from intercourse; abl. of separation. *ex omnibus provinciis*: with all the provinces, modifying *commeatu* (lit., a going back and forth from all the provinces).
Chapter 18

694. Atheniensium, etc.: the naval supremacy of Athens over the Aegean began with the Persian wars in the fifth century B.C. Carthage held the Mediterranean for years before the First Punic War. Rhodes became a maritime power after the death of Alexander, and had assisted Rome with her fleet.

696. rebus: resources.
700. regionis: of its territory; modified by maritimae.
702. ante lege Gabiniam: see note l. 680.
703. invictum: Cicero omits notable exceptions, however.
704. permanserit: subj. in a relative clause of concession; 192, b. ac: and indeed. parte: abl. w. caruit; 149.2

706. Antiochum: the war with Antiochus III, of Syria (192-189 B.C.) included two naval battles disastrous to the king. Persem: the last king of Macedonia. After his defeat at Pydna in 168 B.C., he surrendered to the Roman admiral on the island of Samothrace without a naval battle.

"The final supremacy of Rome upon the sea was all the more remarkable because the Romans were not naturally a nation of sailors. The wars with Carthage compelled them to build and equip fleets and learn how to use them successfully against the best seamen in the world." — D'Ooge.

709. ei: we, repeating nos, l. 705. pares: a match (for).

712. Delos: after the fall of Corinth the Romans made this sacred island an important commercial center.

715. idem: referring to nos.

717. Appia Via: the famous road from Rome to Brundisium, built as far as Capua by Appius Claudius, 300 B.C. carebamus: were losing control of, because of the pirates.
719. *exuviis ornatum*: the Rostra took its name from the "beaks" or prows, of captured vessels, with which it was adorned.

**Chapter 19**

721. *Bono animo*: with good motives, modifying *dicere*; emphatic by position.

723. *ea quae sentiebatis*: *i.e.* your sentiments in regard to the Gabinian law. *in salute*: in (a matter affecting) the safety.

724. *dolori*: feelings, of indignation against the pirates.

725. *una lex*: the law of Gabinius; cf. note, l. 680. *unus vir*: Pompey. *unus annus*: 67 B.C.

729. *indignius obtrectatum esse*: objection has been made the more undeservedly.

730. *dicam*: deliberative, shall I say?

731. *ne legaretur Gabinius*: that Gabinius might not be appointed lieutenant. Lieutenants in the provinces were chosen by the Senate, who might consult the preference of the governor. Pompey desired to have Gabinius as his

---

*A Rostral Column* (Showing the beaks of ships, similar probably to those on the Rostra)
lieutenant for this war. But legally no man nor any of his relatives could be appointed to an office created under his own statute. This applied to Gabinius, for the proposed law of Manilius only added to the imperium that was conferred by the Gabinian law.

732. Utrum idoneus . . . impetret: does he not deserve to obtain? utrum, an (l. 735) introduce a double direct question; see 89.1

733. quem velit: descriptive (a lieutenant) whom he wishes. qui impetret: 192, c.2

734. cum: translate when, but the clause is concessive.

738. periculo: at his peril. The proposer of a law was treated as if responsible for its results. Even at the time when the bill was passed Gabinius narrowly escaped death at the hands of the senators who opposed it.


741. honoris causa: with respect. From the use of this phrase it is inferred that the men were still living. cum: although.

742. plebi: a gen. used for plebis w. tribunus.

743. in: in the case of. diligentes: scrupulous. Cicero implies that the opposition to Gabinius was due to his having been tribune the preceding year; but the true reason was his author-

ship of the law bearing his name; cf. notes on ll. 680 and 731.

744. in (hoc imperatore): under.

746. De: the question of.

748. inimicum edictum: Cicero as praetor might bring a matter before the Senate for consideration, unless forbidden by a higher magistrate. quo minus defendam: from defending; 205, e.3

750. intercessionem: the tribunes had the right to veto the action of any magistrate.

751. minantur: i.e. to exercise the power of veto.

752. quid liceat: the will of the people would have to be re-

spected.

"In fact Gabinius did serve with Pompey under the new commission, and took advantage of the position to amass a fortune." — Kelsey.
Chapter 20

758. cum quae reret: at the time of his address before the assembly (contio).

759. omnia: all your dependence. si quid factum esset: if anything should happen to him (lit., should have been done with him).

760. in quo: interrogative.

762. in eo ipso: i.e. in Catulus.

766. quo minus, hoc magis: the less, the more; abl. of degree of difference.

769. At enim: introducing the objection of Catulus. ne quid: let nothing.


771. consuetudini, utilitati paruisse: followed custom, consulted expediency.

772. novorum consiliorum rationes: new measures.

773. Punicum: the Third Punic War.

774. uno imperatore: Scipio Aemilianus the Younger. Precedent was violated in his case, for he was chosen consul before he had been praetor, and later was re-elected consul when it was illegal to hold that office twice.

777. nuper: over forty years before.

778. esse visum: it seemed best. Marius was elected consul several times in succession, owing to the stress of the Cimbrian War, though the law then required a lapse of ten years.

781. novi nihil: nothing new.

782. summa voluntate: with the full approval.

Chapter 21

784. adulescentulum: cf. l. 341, and note.

785. conficere: should raise.

786. ductu suo: under his own leadership; cf. suis imperiis, l. 346.

788. senatorio gradu: the age required for admission to the Senate was thirty; Pompey was twenty-four when he was sent to Sicily by Sulla.

789. permitti: should be intrusted.

790. bellum administrandum: the management of the war (lit., the war to be managed).

794. equitem triumphare: only men of consular or praetorian
rank were entitled to triumph. This special privilege was conferred on Pompey by the Senate; cf. l. 347 and note.

796. studio: with enthusiasm.
798. duo consules: Lepidus and Brutus declined their right to take the command against Sertorius.

801. non nemo: = nonnulli.
804. se mittere: i.e. that he voted to send.
807. legibus solutus: the legal age for the consulship was forty-three; Pompey was only thirty-six. Furthermore he had not been quaestor or praetor, as was required of candidates for the consulship. Hence the need of a decree in his favor.

808. ante, quam: = antequam.
810. iterum: cf. l. 347 and note.
811. Quae nova: the innovation which. in: in the case of.
814. profecta sunt in: have been conferred upon (lit., have proceeded to).

Chapter 22

817. videant: i.e. Catulus, Hortensius, and other objectors. non ferendum: intolerable.
818. illorum: i.e. the optimates, who had conferred honors on Pompey, which were ratified by the people. Now, he claims, the optimates in turn should support the will of the people.
819. vestrum: asyndeton, but that your judgment.
822. vel: even.
823. isdem istis: i.e. Catulus, etc.
826. parum consuluistis: had too little regard for. studia: enthusiasm.

828. in... vidistis: showed deeper political insight.
830. sibi... parendum esse: that they and all the others must bow. populi: w. auctoritati.

837. qui: indef. pudore... moderatiores: of greater self-control because of their sense of honor and regard for moderation.
842. libidines et iniurias: acts of lust and injustice.
843. nostris magistratibus: dat.; trans. in the eyes of, etc. Cicero said in another address that Pompey, when he took Jerusalem in 63 B.C., permitted nothing in the temple to be touched.
846. quibus... inferatur: a clause of purpose.
851. Pro sociis: in defense of allies.
852. hostium simulatione: *under the pretense of acting against the enemy.*

854. *sed:* *but even.* animos ac spiritus capere: *to satisfy the arrogance and insolence.*

**Chapter 23**

856. conlatis signis: *i.e.* when the battle has been joined.

857. nisi erit idem qui: *unless he is also a man who.* The rel. clauses are descriptive.

861. idoneus qui mittatur: *the man to be sent* (lit., *suitable who should be sent*); a rel. clause of obligation or propriety; 192, c. Cf. impetret, l. 733.

862. pacatam, locuples: *the state would not be considered subdued as long as plunder was possible.*

864. Ora maritima: *of Asia Minor.*

866. Videbat: *the subj. is ora.*

868. eos: *refers to imperatores, not to paucos. classium nomine: with their so-called fleets,* existing only in name. The money for the support of these fleets had been embezzled by the commanders; see l. 468.

869. maiore: *greater than if we had not fought.* videremur: *we were seen.*

870. cupiditate: *desire for gain.*

871. iacturis: *expenditures,* in purchasing their appointments.

873. Quasi videamus: *a conditional clause of comparison takes the subjv. non:* w. videamus.

875. quin ... credatis: *we should expect the infinitive here,* since *dubitare means hesitate.* Cf. note on l. 639.

879. est vobis auctor: *you have as an authority.*

880. Servilius had fought against the pirates and the Isauri; Curio (l. 883) against the Thracians and Dardanians.

881. exstiterunt: *= fuerunt.*

884. praeditus: *honored (beneficiis), distinguished (rebus), possessing (ingenio).*

885. Lentulus: *consul 72 B.C., lieutenant under Pompey in the war with the pirates.* pro: *in keeping with.*

888. auctoritatibus: abl. of means. orationi: *argument.*

889. responderene: *whether,* etc. *We should expect the enclitic -ne to be written w. horum instead of respondere.*
892. auctore: with the approval of.
893. neve: and not.
896. iterum: the first time was when the bill of Gabinius was passed.

897. quid est quod: what reason is there to.
898. re: the proposal. perficiendi facultate: the power to carry it through.

900. beneficio: in electing him praetor.
904. templo: not temple, but sacred spot; i.e. the Rostra. The word is applied to any space marked off by the augurs.
905. ad . . . adeunt: enter the service of the state.
907. neque quo: nor because.
909. honoribus: what office was still to be sought by Cicero?
910. ut . . . oportet: as one ought to do.
912. ab uno: from any individual. hoc loco: where political addresses were made.

913. feret: permits it.
917. tantum abest ut videar: so far am I from seeming. ut videar is subj. of abest; ut intellegam is a clause of result.
920. hoc honore: the praetorship.
921. adfectum: the recipient of.
924. rationibus: interests. praeferre: me is the subj.
THE CITIZENSHIP OF ARCHIAS

INTRODUCTORY NOTE

1. Archias. — The poet, A. Licinius Archias, was a Greek, born at Antioch in Syria about the year 119 B.C. In his youth he acquired considerable fame among his fellow citizens for his poetical ability, and, traveling in Asia Minor, Greece, and Southern Italy, was received with honor by men of rank. In 102 B.C., he came to Rome, where the Luculli in particular were his patrons, for whom he took the gentile name of Licinius. Accompanying Marcus Lucullus, he visited Heraclea in Lucania, where he was honored with citizenship. Later he accompanied Lucius Lucullus upon his Asiatic campaign.

In 89 B.C. the lex Plautia-Papiria gave the Roman franchise to all residents in Italy who were enrolled as citizens in any allied town, provided that they should register before a Roman praetor within sixty days. That same year Archias was registered by Quintus Metellus Pius at Rome, in accordance with the law. It was not until twenty-seven years later (62 B.C.) that a man named Grattius called his citizenship into question. This he did under the lex Papia, passed in 65 B.C., which required the removal of all foreigners from Rome. The charge was aimed not so much at Archias as against his patron, Lucius Lucullus, who had many political enemies, and whose victories had been celebrated in verse by the poet.

2. The Oration. — Cicero undertook the defense of the poet, partly, as he says, because of his personal indebtedness to him. The case was tried before a jury, with Cicero's own brother as presiding judge (62 B.C.). The oration was irregular in the fact that the orator argued the case but briefly, discoursing at greater length on the benefits of literature. "Strange words these to fall from the pleader's lips in the dusty atmosphere of the praetor's court! non fori, neque iudiciali consuetudine, says Cicero himself, in the few words of graceful apology with which the speech ends.
But in truth, as he well knew, he was not speaking to the respectable gentlemen on the benches before him. He addressed a larger audience: posterity and the civilized world.”—Mackail’s “Latin Literature.”

The defense was undoubtedly successful, for Archias is mentioned later as a resident of Rome.

**OUTLINE**

I. **Exordium et propositio** — The orator’s reasons for defending Archias, Ch. 1, 2.

II. **Narratio** — The early life of Archias in Greece and his removal to Italy, Ch. 3, 4 (par. 1).

III. **Confirmatio** —
   1. Proof that Archias is a Roman citizen, Ch. 4–5.
   2. Proof that Archias ought in any case to be a Roman citizen, Ch. 6–12 (par. 1).

IV. **Peroratio** — Archias should be protected in his rights, Ch. 12 (par. 2).

**Chapter 1**


2. *exiguum*: the modesty here assumed by the orator was intended to conciliate the jury. *exercitatio dicendi*: readiness of speech, derived from practice.


4. *ratio*: theoretical knowledge, of the art of public speaking. This is the third requisite of an orator, the others being *ingenium* and *exercitatio*. *optimarum artium*: of the liberal arts. Cicero means that an orator must have broad general culture.

5. *profecta*: derived (from). *a qua*: to which. *confiteor*: “Roman juries looked on the literary barrister as unpractical; hence the faltering way in which Cicero owns to a knowledge of Greek literature.”—Reid. *tempus*: lit., subj. acc. of *abhorruisse*, but trans. as acc. of duration.

6. *abhorruisse*: (*I*) have been averse. *earum rerum*: i.e. the three essential qualities. *vel*: strengthens *in primis, especially*.

7. A. *Licinius*: Cicero skillfully assumes the Roman citizenship of his defendant by using only his Latin name.
8. quoad longissime: as far back as.
11. suscipiendam: referring to the resolution, ingrediendam to the actual undertaking. rationem: pursuit.
12. exstitisse: = fuisse.
15. quantum . . . nobis: as far as in me lies.
17. hoc ita dici: i.e. that I am so indebted to the poet.
18. facultas ingenii: natural ability.
20. dediti: devoted. fuimus: used rather than sumus because dediti has the force of an adj.
21. humanitatem: culture.

Chapter 2

24. quaestione legitima: in a legal inquiry, conducted in a regular court. iudicio publico: in a state trial, one in which the state was a party. cum agatur: though the case is tried.
25. praetorem: Q. Cicero, brother of the orator, lieutenant a few years later in Caesar’s army.
26. tanto . . . frequentia: in so crowded an assembly; abl. of attendant circumstance. Note the hendiadys.
29. abhorreat: differs. The difference consisted in this, that Cicero proposed to speak in praise of literature, as well as argue the case.
30. vobis: (and) to you.
32. hoc concursu, hac . . . humanitate: in this assembly, with such culture on your part; abl. of attendant circumstance.
33. hoc praetore: Q. Cicero wrote some poetry himself, but only a few verses remain.
34. de studiis humanitatis ac litterarum: about the pursuit of culture and the study of literature.
35. in . . . persona: in the case of a character.
36. persona: lit. mask, a word borrowed from the stage. in iudiciis periculisque: in courts and lawsuits.

39. perficiam ut putetis: I will cause you to think.

40. segregandum: sc. esse.

41. asciscendum fuisse: ought to have been; in dir. disc. asciscendus fuit; 198, note 2; 218.

Chapter 3

42. ut primum: as soon as. ex pueris excessit: grew out of boyhood.

43. ab eis artibus: modifies contulit, which is coördinate w. excessit. ad (humanitatem): with a view to.

44. scribendi: of composition. primum: w. coepit.

46. loco nobili: of a noble family.

47. quondam: Antioch had lost much of its importance because of the Mithridatic wars and the quarrels of the Seleucidae.

59. celebrabantur: the tense implies customary action.

61. exspectatio: anticipation in regard to the man.

63. ipsius: of the man himself.

64. admiratio: the admiration he excited. Italia: i.e. southern Italy, known as Magna Graecia.

68. disciplinarum: sciences. studia haec: i.e. the study of poetry.

73. tranquillitatem: in the interval between the Gracchan disturbances (121 B.C.) and the Social War (90-88 B.C.).

74. vehementius: with greater zeal.

76. aliquid iudicare: to form any opinion. de ingeniiis: about men of genius.

78. Hac tanta celebritate famae: because of this fame so widely spread. absentibus: sc. nobis, to us who were far away.

79. Mario, Catulo: consuls in 102 B.C. consule is singular because Marius was the more famous.

80. eos: such. quorum alter: Marius. res maximas: the victory over the Cimbri and Teutones.

81. alter: Catulus, who was a soldier and shared with Marius the glory of his victory. He was also a man of literary taste: hence studium et aures: appreciation and attention.
THE CITIZENSHIP OF ARCHIAS

82. posset: subjv. in a descriptive clause. Luculli: a noble Roman family distinguished by Lucius and Marcus. praetextatus: a youth, properly applied to a Roman boy who wore the toga praetexta until his seventeenth year; not to be taken literally here, for the honors mentioned would scarcely have been given to one so young.

84. hoc: explained by the noun clause ut . . . senectuti. ingenii ac litterarum: an evidence of his literary ability; pred. gen.

87. illi: the well known. Numidico: Metellus was so called because of his victories over the Numidians.

88. Pio: a surname given to the younger Metellus because he sought the recall of his father from exile. Aemilio: a great statesman and orator. vivebat: associated. Catulo et patre et filio: the father was the colleague of Marius (l. 81); the son was consul in 78 B.C., and was a prominent leader of the aristocracy.

89. L. Crasso: a famous orator about 95 B.C.


91. devinctam consuetudine: bound by ties of friendship.

92. eum colebant: cultivated his acquaintance.

Chapter 4

95. satis longo intervallo: after quite a long interval; the abl. may be taken as absolute.

97. decederet: was returning. Rome was still his place of residence. Heraclia: nothing remains to-day of this old Greek city of southern Italy. Quae cum: = et cum (causal) ea.

98. esset aequissimo . . . foedere: enjoyed very favorable treaty rights (with Rome); abl. of description.

99. cum: although. tum: yet especially.

101. civitas: citizenship. lege: known as the lex Plautia-Papiria from the gentile names of the tribunes who proposed it in 89 B.C.

101. si qui: i.e. (civitas data est) eis qui. Note that the law is stated in the form of a quotation; hence the subjv. verbs which in dir. disc. would be fut. perf.
103. *ferebatur*: is parenthetical and not part of the wording of the law.

104. *praetorem*: *a praetor*; see Introd. 34. *essent professi*: *i.e.* declared their intention to become citizens.

109. *causa dicta est*: Archias has met the three conditions of the law: he was a citizen of an allied town, Heraclea, had long been a resident of Rome, and had made his declaration before a praetor, Metellus.

110. *Gratti*: *voc.* Grattius was the prosecutor who claimed that Archias was not a citizen.

111. *religione et fide*: scrupulous honor and good faith. *non*: *not that.*

113. *interfuisse*: was present (when it was done). *egisse*: *i.e.* by his influence.

114. *huius iūdici*: of this trial.

117. *Italico bello*: in the Social War of 90 B.C.

118. *ad ea*: *in reply to the proofs.*

120. *litterarum memoriam*: documentary evidence.

121. *et*: *sc. est ridiculum.* *amplissimi viri*: Metellus.

122. *religionem*: conscientious testimony. *municipi*: before the Social War, Heraclea was an allied town without Roman citizenship (*civitas foederata*); afterwards, a town enjoying full citizen rights (*municipium*); see Introd. 21.

124. *quas idem*: you yourself. *An*: introducing a rhetorical question; 89, b.; B. 162, 4, a; Bur. 368; HB. 236; cf. Cat., I, 1. 20.

125. *tot annis*: Archias came to Rome in 102, thirteen years before citizenship was granted (*ante civitatem datam*).

128. *collegio*: board, consisting of eight praetors.

**Chapter 5**

130. *Appi*: Appius Claudius Pulcher, whose records were kept too carelessly (*neglegentius*).

131. *Gabini*: = *et Gabini.* *quamdiu . . . fuit*: before he was tried (lit., *as long as he was safe*). After his praetorship Gabinius was convicted of extortion practiced while he was governor of Achaia.

132. *calamitas*: he lost his civil rights. *tabularum fidem*: confidence in his records.

133. *Metellus*: the third praetor mentioned.
138. quid est quod dubitetis: *what reason is there for doubting?* The clause is descriptive. Archias, therefore, was a citizen not only of Heraclea but of other towns.


142. credo: *I suppose*, used w. irony. The four towns referred to were in Magna Graecia, called here Graecia.

143. quod: the antecedent is id (l. 146). *scaenicis artificibus: the Romans of the Republic regarded acting on the stage as unworthy of citizens.*

146. legem Papiam: the alien act of the tribune Papius, passed in 65 B.C., providing that all foreigners should be expelled from Rome. It was under this act that Archias was brought to trial.

150. Scilicet ... obscurum: *of course, for I suppose* (ironical) *it is not known.*

151. proximis censoribus: during the time of the last censors, 70 B.C., and also those of 86 (superioribus) the poet was absent. The first censors (primis) after he became a citizen in 89, resigned without taking the census.

152. apud exercitum: *with the army, as a guest of the commander.* *cum eodem quaestore: with the same man* (Lucullus) *when he was quaestor, under Sulla.*

156. ita: *thereby.* *pro: as. eis temporibus: beginning the main clause; construe w. fecit.*

157. quem: *he whom.*

158. et (omit) testamentum fecit, etc.: only citizens could perform these acts.

159. civium: *i.e. bequeathed by Romans.*

160. in beneficiis: *among those to be rewarded.* The proconsul (pro consule) on returning from his province would report the names of his followers who were to be rewarded for their services. The naming of Archias implied that Lucullus regarded him as a citizen.

162. suo ... iudicio: the poet and his friends have acted as though he were really a citizen.

Chapter 6

165. ubi: = *id quo, the means by which* (lit., *wherewith*); *i.e.* his poetry. *ex: after.* The clause is descriptive.
166. *convicio*: the wrangling of the courts.

167. *An*: cf. l. 126, and *Cat.*, I, l. 20. *suppetere ... posse*: that we could have ideas.

168. *quod dicamus*: a purpose clause. *nisi excolamus*: the subjv. may be due to the indir. disc., or may be a condition less probable (*should cultivate*).


173. *adferre, proferre*: either in speaking or writing something new.

vivo: have lived. tempore: needs, in court; time of peril.

quis reprehendat: a potential question, or a question of "ideal certainty." (Hale.)

si: w. sumpsero, l. 186. quantum temporum tantum: as much time as. suas res obeundas: attending to their business.

tempestivis: protracted, beginning before the usual hour, which was three or four in the afternoon.

alveolo: gambling flourished notwithstanding many laws condemning it. pilae: throwing and catching formed the basis of the different games of ball, but the bat seems not to have been used. See Johnston's The Private Life of the Romans.

eo: w. magis, the more.

crescit oratio et facultas: the power of public speaking is improved.

periculis: a term referring to criminal trials.

Quae: this ability. quae summa sunt: the principles of living, derived from philosophy.

multis litteris: by wide reading.

magno operae: = magnopere. laudem: true merit.

parvi: of little importance; see 110.1

impetus: the attacks resulting from the suppression of Catiline's conspiracy.

exemplorum: the examples of men who have practiced these high principles.

accederet: were thrown upon them. Literature preserves the examples of great men. imagines, expressas: words used of the work of a sculptor or painter.

Chapter 7

est ... respondeam: it is clear (to me) what answer I shall give. The question is deliberative (dir. what shall I reply?).

animo ac virtute: attributive w. homines.

sine doctrina: pred. phrase w. fuisse. naturae ... divino: by an almost divine quality of their very nature.

ad laudem valuisse: has availed to produce true merit.

idem ego: I further.
215. ratio . . . doctrinae: systematic training derived from instruction.

216. nescio quid: see Vocab.

218. Africanum: Scipio Africanus the Younger, conqueror of Carthage, a scholar and statesman as well as soldier. Scipio, Laelius, and Furius were patrons of Greek culture at Rome, after the conquest of Greece in 146 B.C.

219. illis temporibus: abl. of time, but trans. for (i.e. considering) those times.

221. Catonem: Cato, the Censor, who lived 234–149 B.C., was the father of Latin prose. "He was considered by men of later times as the ideal of Roman character."

222. ad perciendi am: in appreciating.

223. adiuvarentur: were continually aided.

227. ceterae: sc. animi remissiones. This passage in Cicero’s tribute to letters is deservedly famous. temporum: gen. of possession.

Chapter 8

234. deberemus: it would be our duty.

236. Rosci: Roscius, the comic actor, died a few months before this trial. He had been a slave, but lived to realize a large fortune by his profession, and became the friend of Cicero and other public men.

237. excellentem . . . venustatem: the excellence and charm of his art.

240. animorum motus: mental activity. celeritatem ingeniorum: natural quickness.

243. novo genere dicendi: cf. l. 27.

244. cum: concessive. litteram nullam: not a single word.

246. quae agerentur: which were then going on; i.e. current events. The subjv. is due to attraction. revocatum: i.e. encored.

247. eandem rem dicere: treat the same theme.

249. scriptorum: the Greek writers, of the same country as Archias.

250. diligam, etc.: deliberative subjv.; cf. l. 176.

253. ceterarum . . . constare: the study of other things (than poetry) is based on theory, rules, and practice.

254. poetam: sc. sed. valere: derives his power (from). Poeta nascitur, non fit was a Latin proverb.
256. *ille*: well-known, great. Ennius, "the father of Latin poetry," was born in Calabria 239 B.C., and came to Rome in 204.

260. *Saxa ... bestiae*: when Amphi- on, king of Thebes, was building the walls of his city, according to the story, he caused the stones to take their places by the music of his lyre. Orpheus in the same way drew after him wild beasts and even trees.

266. *pugnant inter se*: there were seven cities claiming the honor of being the birthplace of Homer.

**Chapter 9**

270. *repudiabimus*: in questions of deliberation the fut. ind. is sometimes used instead of the pres. subjv.; Bur. 757; HB. 572.

271. *omne studium*: his utmost zeal.

273. *Cimbricas res*: the war w. the Cimbri.

274. *durior*: too rude. Marius boasted that the camp and battle field were his only school.

275. *aversus a*: unfriendly to.

277. *Themistoclem*: Themistocles, the Athenian statesman and commander, the victor in the battle of Salamis, 480 B.C. *illum, ille* (l. 280); cf. l. 256.

278. *quaereretur*: impers. *acroama*: performer. This Greek
word (lit., *thing heard*) comes to mean an entertainment, as a play, dance, or recitation; then the person who gives the entertainment.

281. **Plotium**: the first Roman teacher of rhetoric, a friend of Marius.

284. **ab hoc**: *i.e.* by Archias.

287. **aperuit**: especially to Roman merchants.

289. **natura et regione**: *by natural situation*; hendiadys. **populi Romani**: note the repetition and emphatic position of this phrase.

290. **non maxima**: *no very great*. Plutarch says that Lucullus had 10,000 men against an army of 200,000. **Armeniorum**: the allies of Mithridates.

292. **urbem Cyzicenorum**: Cyzicus was an important city on the southern coast of the Propontis, friendly to Rome. ** eiusdem**: Lucullus.

293. **ore ac faucibus**: *the open jaws* (lit., *mouth and jaws*).

294. **nostra feretur**: *as ours* (the battle) will be spoken of.

296. **apud Tenedum pugna**: the battle off Tenedos, 73 B.C.

So it is named, though really fought near Lemnos.

298. **Quae . . . efferuntur**: *by whose genius these deeds are proclaimed*. In trans. begin w. the antecedent clause **ab eis**, etc.

299. **Africano superiori**: the elder Scipio.

300. **is**: *i.e.* his statue. In Cicero’s time, according to Livy, there were three statues at the entrance of the tomb of the Scipios, one of which was thought to be that of Ennius.

303. **huius**: of the present Cato (Uticensis). **Cato**: the Censor. His praises were sung by Ennius, who had served as a soldier under him in Sardinia. It was in Cato’s army that Ennius first came to Rome in 204 B.C.

Chapter 10

307. **haec**: sc. *carmina*. **fece rat**: the word for “poet” in Greek means *maker*. **Rudinum hominem**: Ennius, born at Rudiae of Greek origin, became a Roman citizen late in life.

309. **civitatibus**: dat. of agent.

320. **Graeca leguntur**: *Greek is (or Greek writings are) read*. Archias wrote in Greek, Ennius in Latin.

322. **suis finibus**: *to its own boundaries* (lit., *by, etc.*). **sane**:
we must admit. Latin was spoken in Latium and in the Roman colonies, Greek in the whole civilized world.

327. quo: wherever. The antecedent is eodem.
329. pervenerint: subjv. in an indir. clause.
330. cum ... tum: while ... at the same time.
331. haec: i.e., these poems. ampla: honorable.
332. de: at the risk of.
337. qui ... inveneris: a rel. causal clause; 192, b1.
338. vere: sc. dixit.
342. in contione ... donavit: citizenship was often conferred by generals in this way.
344. eiusdem laudis: the same as Pompey received from Theophanes.
346. credo: ironical.
347. perficere non potuit: could not have managed; 198, note 2.
349. petentem = si petisset. quem: i.e. Sulla; subj. of iubere (l. 352).
350. de populo: from the common people, untrained; cf. Archias loco nobili (l. 46). ei subiecisset: had handed up to him, sitting upon the tribunal at the auction of the goods of the conquered.
351. quod fecisset: causal, giving Sulla’s reason. in eum: about him.
352. longiusculis: the only merit of the writing was its verse-form, consisting of alternate lines of five and six feet (elegiac couplets).
355. huius: Archias.
358. qui ... cuperet: especially since he (Metellus) so much desired to have his own deeds written about.
360. pingue ... peregrinum: though uttering something dull and provincial.

Chapter 11

363. prae nobis ferendum: must be openly acknowledged.
364. optimus quisque: all the best men.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bur.</th>
<th>A.</th>
<th>B.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>H.</th>
<th>HB.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 —</td>
<td>807</td>
<td>535</td>
<td>283</td>
<td>634</td>
<td>592</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 —</td>
<td>921</td>
<td>308,c</td>
<td>304,3</td>
<td>597</td>
<td>511</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
282

NOTES

124 366. in eo ipso: in the very act.
367. despiciunt: express contempt for. praedicari... nominari: to be named and praised.
369. amicissimi sui: his own most intimate friend.
373. ille Fulvius: Fulvius Nobilior, who was criticised by Cato the Censor for taking Ennius with him (comite), 180 B.C.
374. Musis: Fulvius built a temple in Rome to Hercules and the Muses.
376. prope armati: i.e. before laying down their arms.
381. a abhorrere: to disregard.
384. me indicabo: I will betray (accuse) myself; said in a jocular spirit. The phrase is generally used of criminals who give themselves up to the authorities. quodam: here used to soften the following phrase.
392. hic: Archias. The poem dealing with the suppression of the conspiracy was probably never completed.
393. res: subject, theme.
397. quid est quod: cf. note, l. 138.
401. nec tantis: the conclusion begins here.
403. Nunc: as it is, opposed to si nihil (l. 399).
408. cum adaequandam: must endure to; "must be made co-existent with."—Reid.

Chapter 12

412. videamur: are we to seem? Deliberative subjv.
416. cum: concessive. spatium: se. vitae: moment of our lives.
423. imagines: portraits, molded or carved; perhaps the wax portrait masks of ancestors who had been curule magistrates. simulacra: as representations; pred. acc. in relation to statuas et imagines.
427. effigiem: a delineation.
428. nonne debemus: and ought we not? expressam: accurately drawn.
429. omnia: obj. of spargere ac disseminare.
432. sapientissimi: especially the Greek philosophers Pythagoras, Socrates, and Plato, who taught immortality.
433. pertinebit: shall continue in relation.
435. pudore, ingenio (l. 437), causa (with a cause, l. 439): abl. of description.
437. vetustate: by the duration (of his friendship).
438. quod... videatis: descriptive. summorum... ingeniiis: by men of the highest genius.

439. beneficio legis: the lex Plautia-Papiria.

443. ut eum: w. accipiat (l. 449), depending on petimus.

451. de causa: i.e. on the question itself, chapters 1–5.

452. omnibus: dat. of agent.

453. a aliena: at variance with.

454. de studio: on the pursuit of literature, chapters 6–12.
GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

PART I. INFLECTION

NOUNS

FIRST DECLENSION

1.

SINGULAR  
N. porta  
G. portae  
D. portae  
Ae. portam  
Ab. portā

PLURAL  
portae  
portārum  
portīs  
portās  
portīs

SECOND DECLENSION

2.

SINGULAR  
N. amīcus  puer  ager  vir  bellum  
G. amīci  puerī  agrī  virī  bellī  
D. Ab. amīcō  puerō  agrō  virō  bellō  
Ae. amīcōrum  puerōrum  agrōrum  virōrum  bellōrum

PLURAL  
N. amīcipuer  ager  vir  bellum  
G. amīcōrum puerōrum agrōrum virōrum bellōrum  
D. Ab. amīcīs puerīs agrīs virīs bellīs  
Ae. amīcōs puerōs agrōs virōs bella

1 The base of a noun is found, in any declension, by dropping the ending of the genitive singular; the stem, by dropping -rum of the genitive plural in the first, second, and fifth declensions, -um in the third and fourth: base, port-, stem, portā.
THIRD DECLENSION

3.

SINGULAR

N. cōnsul  
G. cōnsulis  
D. cōnsulī  
Ac. cōnsulem  
Ab. cōnsule

mercātōr  
mercātōris  
mercātōri  
mercātōrem  
mercātōre

pater  
patris  
patri  
patrem  
patre

legiō  
legiōnis  
legiōni  
legiōnem  
legiōne

PLURAL

N. Ac. cōnsulēs  
G. cōnsulum  
D. Ab. cōnsulibus

mercātōrés  
mercātōrum  
mercātōribus

patrēs  
patrūm  
patrībus

legiōnēs  
legiōnum  
legiōnibus

4.

SINGULAR

N. lēx  
G. lēgis  
D. lēgi  
Ac. lēgem  
Ab. lēge

prīnceps  
prīncipis  
prīncipī  
prīncipem  
prīncepe

mīles  
mīlitis  
mīlīti  
mīlitem  
mīlīte

cīvitās  
cīvitātis  
cīvitāti  
cīvitātem  
cīvitāte

(The plural is regular)

5.

SINGULAR

N. Ac. flūmen  
G. flūminis  
D. flūmini  
Ab. flūmine

opus  
operis  
operi  
opere

tempus  
temporis  
temporī  
tempore

caput  
capitis  
capīti  
capite

PLURAL

N. Ac. flūmina  
G. flūminum  
D. Ab. flūminibus

opera  
operum  
operibus

tempora  
temporum  
temporibus

capita  
capitum  
capitibus

1 Many words in -s, of all genders, change s to r between two vowels: ses, aeris; mōs, mōris; iūs, iūris.
6.

**SINGULAR**

N. caedēs nāvis hostis mōns nox
G. caedis nāvis hostis montis noctis
D. caedi nāvī hostī montī noctī
Ac. caedem nāvim(-em)₁ hostem montem noctem
Ab. caede nāvī(-e)² hoste monte nocte

**PLURAL**

N. caedēs nāvēs hostēs montēs noctēs
G. caedium³ nāvium³ hostium³ montium³ noctium³
D. Ab. caedibus nāvibus hostibus montibus noctibus
Ac. caedīs(-ēs)³ nāvis(-ēs)³ hostīs(-ēs)³ montīs(-ēs)³ noctīs(-ēs)⁴

7.

**SING.**

N. Ac. cubīle cubilia⁴ vectīgal vectīgālia⁴
g. cubīlis cubilium⁴ vectīgalis vectīgalium⁴
d. Ab. cubīli⁵ cubilibus vectīgāli⁵ vectīgalibus

**FOURTH DECLENSION**

**SINGULAR**

N. manus lacus domus cornū
G. manūs lacūs domūs cornūs
D. manuī (-ū) lacuī (-ū) domuī cornū
Ac. manum lacum domum cornū
Ab. manū lacū domō (-ū) cornū

Locative sing. domī, at home.

---

₁ Acc. sing. in -im or -em is found in febris, nāvis (usually -em), puppis (usually -im), secūris, sementis, turris.

² Abl. sing. -i or -e is found in avis, civis, classis, febris, finis, ignis, īmber, nāvis, orbis, puppis, sementis, turris.

³ Gen. plur. -ium and acc. plur. -is or -ēs are found in, —

a. Nouns in -ēs or -is (having the same number of syllables in nom. and gen.).

b. Polysyllables in -ns or -rs, and sometimes -tās; also proper names in -ās.

c. Monosyllables in -s or -x, following a consonant.

d. īmber, linter, and nox.

⁴ Gen. plur. -ium, nom. and acc. plur. -ia, are found in neuters with nom. in -e, -al, -ar.

⁵ Abl. sing. -i is found in neuters with nom. sing. in -e, -al, -ar.
### PLURAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.</th>
<th>manūs</th>
<th>lacūs</th>
<th>domūs</th>
<th>cornua</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>manuum</td>
<td>lacuum</td>
<td>domuum</td>
<td>cornuum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. Ab.</td>
<td>manibus</td>
<td>lacubus (-ibus)</td>
<td>domibus</td>
<td>cornibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>manūs</td>
<td>lacūs</td>
<td>domōs (-ūs)</td>
<td>cornua</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### FIFTH DECLENSION

#### SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.</th>
<th>diēs</th>
<th>rés</th>
<th>rēs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>diēr</td>
<td>rér</td>
<td>rér</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>diēr</td>
<td>dēr</td>
<td>rēb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>dīm</td>
<td>rem</td>
<td>rēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>dīē</td>
<td>rēb</td>
<td>rēb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PLURAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.</th>
<th>senēs</th>
<th>vīrēs</th>
<th>itinerā</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>senum</td>
<td>virium</td>
<td>itinerum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. Ab.</td>
<td>senibus</td>
<td>viribus</td>
<td>itineribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>senēs</td>
<td>vīris (-ēs)</td>
<td>itinerā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SPECIAL NOUNS

#### SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.</th>
<th>deus</th>
<th>senex</th>
<th>vis</th>
<th>iter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>dei</td>
<td>senis</td>
<td>vis</td>
<td>itineris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>deō</td>
<td>senī</td>
<td>vī</td>
<td>itinerī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>deum</td>
<td>senem</td>
<td>vim</td>
<td>iter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>deō</td>
<td>senem</td>
<td>vī</td>
<td>itinere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### PLURAL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.</th>
<th>Persēs ¹</th>
<th>Dēlos ²</th>
<th>Iuppiter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>Archiae</td>
<td>Persae</td>
<td>Iovis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>Archiae</td>
<td>Persae</td>
<td>Iovi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>Archiān (-am)</td>
<td>Persēn</td>
<td>Dēlon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>Archiā</td>
<td>Persē</td>
<td>Iuppiter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>Archiā</td>
<td>Persē</td>
<td>Iovem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ A Greek noun of the first declension.
² A Greek noun of the second declension.
### ADJECTIVES

#### FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

**12.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>M.</strong></td>
<td><strong>F.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>bonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>bonī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>bonum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>bonō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>M.</strong></td>
<td><strong>F.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>liber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>liberī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>M.</strong></td>
<td><strong>F.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>noster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>nostrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**13.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>M.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **M.**   | **F.** | **N.** | **M.** | **F.** | **N.** |
| N.        | neuter | neutra | neutrum| ūnus 4 | ūna   | ūnum   |
| G.        | neutrius| neutrius| neutrius| ūnus 4 | ūnus  | ūnus   |
| D.        | neutri | neutri | ūni    | ūni    | ūni    | ūni    |
| Ac.       | neutrum| neutram| neutrum| ūnum   | ūnam  | ūnum   |
| Ab.       | neutrō | neutrā | ūnō    | ūnā    | ūnō    | ūnō    |

1 Other cases like bonus.
2 Possessive pronoun, used as an adjective.
3 So also uter.
4 So also nūllus, sōlus, tōtus, ūllus.
## ADJECTIVES

### THIRD DECLENSION

#### 14. Adjectives of Three Endings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>M.</strong></td>
<td><strong>F.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>ācer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>ācris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. Ab.</td>
<td>ācri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>ācrem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 15. Adjectives of Two Endings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>M. &amp; F.</strong></td>
<td><strong>N.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>fortis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>fortis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. Ab.</td>
<td>fortī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>fortēm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 16. Adjectives of One Ending

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>M. &amp; F.</strong></td>
<td><strong>N.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>potēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>potentīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>potentī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>potentem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>potentī (-e)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Grammatical Appendix

#### SINGULAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>vetus</td>
<td>vetus</td>
<td>veterēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>veteris</td>
<td>veteris</td>
<td>veterum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>vēterī</td>
<td>vēterī</td>
<td>vēteribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>vēterem</td>
<td>vetus</td>
<td>vēterēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>vētere (-ī)</td>
<td>vētere (-ī)</td>
<td>vēteribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SPECIAL ADJECTIVES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>plūs</td>
<td>plūrēs</td>
<td>plūra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>plūris</td>
<td>plūrium</td>
<td>plūrium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>plūribus</td>
<td>plūribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>plūs</td>
<td>plūrēs</td>
<td>plūra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>plūre</td>
<td>plūribus</td>
<td>plūribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M.</th>
<th>F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>M. &amp; F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>duae</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>trēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>duōrum</td>
<td>duārum</td>
<td>duōrum</td>
<td>trium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. Ab.</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>duābus</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>duōs</td>
<td>duās</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>trīs, trēs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### REGULAR COMPARISON

**POSITIVE**

| lātus, -a, -um | lātior, -ius | lātissimus, -a, -um |
| fortis, -e | fortior, -ius | fortissimus, -a, -um |
| potēns | potentior, -ius | potentissimus, -a, -um |
| vēlōx | vēlōcior, -ius | vēlōcissimus, -a, -um |
| ācer, ācris, ācre | ācrior, -ius | ācerrimus, -a, -um |
| liber, -era, -erum | liberior, -ius | liberrimus, -a, -um |
| facilis, -e | facilior, -ius | facillimus, -a, -um |

**COMPARATIVE**

| bonus, -a, -um | melior, melius | optimus, -a, -um |
| malus, -a, -um | pōior, pōius | pessimus, -a, -um |
| māgnus, -a, -um | māior, māius | māximus, -a, -um |

**SUPERLATIVE**

1 So also difficilis, similis, dissimilis, gracilis, humilis.
20. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POSITIVE</th>
<th>COMPARATIVE</th>
<th>SUPERLATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>látē</td>
<td>látius</td>
<td>látissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liberē</td>
<td>liberius</td>
<td>liberrimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facile</td>
<td>facilius</td>
<td>facillimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ācriter</td>
<td>ācrius</td>
<td>ācerrimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortīter</td>
<td>fortius</td>
<td>fortissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bene</td>
<td>melius</td>
<td>optimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>male</td>
<td>pēius</td>
<td>pessimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>māgnopere</td>
<td>magis</td>
<td>māximē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multum</td>
<td>plūs</td>
<td>plūrimum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parum</td>
<td>minus</td>
<td>minimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prope</td>
<td>propius</td>
<td>proximē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diū</td>
<td>diūtius</td>
<td>diūtissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saepe</td>
<td>saepius</td>
<td>saepissimē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

21. PRONOUNS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLU.</th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLU.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. ego</td>
<td>nōs</td>
<td>tü</td>
<td>vōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. meī</td>
<td>nostrum, -trī</td>
<td>tuī</td>
<td>vestrum, -trī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. mihi</td>
<td>nōbīs</td>
<td>tībi</td>
<td>vōbīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. mē</td>
<td>nōs</td>
<td>tē</td>
<td>vōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. mē</td>
<td>nōbīs</td>
<td>tē</td>
<td>vōbīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLU.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. ego</td>
<td>suī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. meī</td>
<td>suī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. mihi</td>
<td>sībi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. mē</td>
<td>sē, sēsē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. mē</td>
<td>sē, sēsē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
22. **POSSESSIVE**

Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, are used and declined like adjectives.

23. **DEMONSTRATIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>M.</strong></td>
<td><strong>F.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. híc</td>
<td>haec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. húius</td>
<td>húius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. huíc</td>
<td>huíc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. hunc</td>
<td>hanc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. hóc</td>
<td>hác</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>M.</strong></td>
<td><strong>F.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. ille¹</td>
<td>illa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. illius</td>
<td>illius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. illī</td>
<td>illī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. illum</td>
<td>illam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. illō</td>
<td>illā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>M.</strong></td>
<td><strong>F.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. is</td>
<td>ea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ēius</td>
<td>ēius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. eī</td>
<td>eī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. eum</td>
<td>eam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. eō</td>
<td>eā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>M.</strong></td>
<td><strong>F.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. īdem</td>
<td>eadem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ēiusdem</td>
<td>ēiusdem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. eīdem</td>
<td>eīdem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. eundem</td>
<td>eandem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. eōdem</td>
<td>eōdem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Iste, ista, istud, is declined like ille. ² Or īdem. ³ Or eīsdem.
24. **Pronouns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>INTENSIVE</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M.</td>
<td>F.</td>
<td>N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. ipse</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ipsius</td>
<td>ipsīus</td>
<td>ipsius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ipsī</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. ipsum</td>
<td>ipsam</td>
<td>ipsum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. ipsō</td>
<td>ipsā</td>
<td>ipsō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

25. **Relative Pronouns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M.</td>
<td>F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. quī</td>
<td>quae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. cūius</td>
<td>cūius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. cui</td>
<td>eui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. quō</td>
<td>quā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

26. **Interrogative Pronouns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M. &amp; F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. quis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. cūius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. eui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. quem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. quō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The plural of the interrogative quis is like that of the relative quī. When used as an adjective, the singular also is like that of the relative.

27. **Indefinite Pronouns**

The indefinite pronouns are:

1. quis (qui), quae (qua), quid (quod), any (one), anything.
2. aliquis (-qui), aliqua, aliquid (-quod), some (one), some thing.
3. quispiam, quaepiam, quidpiam (quod-), any (one) at all.
4. quisquam, quicquam, any (one) at all (169).
5. quilubet, quaelibet, quidlibet (quod-), any (one) you please.
6. quīvis, quaevis, quidvis (quod-), any (one) you wish.
7. quidam, quaedam, quiddam (quod-), a certain (one).
8. quisque, quaeque, quidque (quod-), each (one), every (one).

28. The indefinite quis is declined like the interrogative quis (26), but has quae or qua in the neuter plural, and, when used as an adjective, in the feminine singular. Aliquís has aliqua, not aliquae, in the feminine singular and neuter plural.

a. The feminine singular forms of quis, aliquis, quispiam, and quisque, are not used as pronouns, but as adjectives. In all words the neuter singular form in quid is used as a pronoun, in quod as an adjective.

b. Quidam has n instead of m before d in quendam, quandam, quórundam, quärundam. Quisquam has c for d in the neuter quícquam.

VERBS

29. FIRST CONJUGATION

Principal Parts

laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum, praise.
laudor, laudārī, laudātus sum, be praised.

Indicative

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I praise, am praising</td>
<td>I am praised</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudō</td>
<td>laudāmus</td>
<td>laudor</td>
<td>laudāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudās</td>
<td>laudātis</td>
<td>laudāris (-re)</td>
<td>laudāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudat</td>
<td>laudant</td>
<td>laudātur</td>
<td>laudantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Imperfect

I was praising (I praised) | I was praised

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudābam</td>
<td>laudābāmus</td>
<td>laudābar</td>
<td>laudābāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābās</td>
<td>laudābātis</td>
<td>laudābāris (-re)</td>
<td>laudābāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābat</td>
<td>laudābant</td>
<td>laudābātur</td>
<td>laudābantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Future

I shall praise | I shall be praised

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudābō</td>
<td>laudābimus</td>
<td>laudābor</td>
<td>laudābimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābis</td>
<td>laudābitis</td>
<td>laudāberis (-re)</td>
<td>laudābimini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābit</td>
<td>laudābunt</td>
<td>laudābitur</td>
<td>laudābuntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Perfect

*I have praised, I praised*  
*I have been (or I was) praised*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudāvi</td>
<td>laudāvīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāvisti</td>
<td>laudāvīstis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāvit</td>
<td>laudāvērun  (-ēre)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pluperfect

*I had praised*  
*I had been praised*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudāveram</td>
<td>laudāverāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāverās</td>
<td>laudāverātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāverat</td>
<td>laudāverant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Future Perfect

*I shall have praised*  
*I shall have been praised*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudāverō</td>
<td>laudāverīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāverīs</td>
<td>laudāverītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāverit</td>
<td>laudāverīnt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Subjunctive

Present

*I may praise*  
*I may be praised*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudem</td>
<td>laudemus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudēs</td>
<td>laudētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudet</td>
<td>laudent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Imperfect

*I might praise*  
*I might be praised*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudārem</td>
<td>laudārēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudārēs</td>
<td>laudārētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāret</td>
<td>laudārent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Perfect

*I may have praised*  
*I may have been praised*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudāverim</td>
<td>laudāverīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāveris</td>
<td>laudāverītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāverit</td>
<td>laudāverīnt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 The translation of the subjunctive varies.
## Pluperfect

I should ¹ have praised ²
laudāvissem laudāvissēmus
laudāvissēs laudāvissētis
laudāvissēt laudāvissent

I should ³ have been praised ²
laudātus essem laudātī essēmus
laudātus essēs laudātī essētis
laudātus esset laudātī essent

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudā, praise thou</td>
<td>laudāre, be thou praised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāte, praise ye</td>
<td>laudāmini, be ye praised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudātō, thou shalt praise</td>
<td>laudātor, thou shalt be praised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudātō, he shall praise</td>
<td>laudātor, he shall be praised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudātōte, you shall praise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudantō, they shall praise</td>
<td>laudantor, they shall be praised</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>32.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres. laudāre, to praise</td>
<td>laudāri, to be praised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf. laudāvisse, to have praised</td>
<td>laudātus esse, to have been praised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. laudātūrus esse, to be about to praise</td>
<td>laudātum īri, to be about to be praised</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Participles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres. laudāns, praising</td>
<td>Perf. laudātus, having been praised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. laudātūrus about to praise</td>
<td>Fut. laudandus (Gerundive), to be praised</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>34.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gerund</td>
<td>Supine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. laudandi, of praising</td>
<td>Ac. laudātum, to praise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. laudandō, for praising</td>
<td>Ab. laudātū, to praise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. laudandum, praising</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. laudandō, by praising</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ You, he, they would have praised.
² The translation of the subjunctive varies.
³ You, he, they would have been praised.
35. SECOND CONJUGATION

**Principal Parts**

- moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum, advise
- moneor, monērī, monitus sum, be advised

**Indicative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>moneō</td>
<td>moneam</td>
<td>moneor</td>
<td>monear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>monēs</td>
<td>moneās</td>
<td>monēris (-re)</td>
<td>moneāris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>monet</td>
<td>moneat</td>
<td>monētur</td>
<td>moneātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>monēmus</td>
<td>moneāmus</td>
<td>monēmur</td>
<td>moneāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>monētis</td>
<td>moneātis</td>
<td>monēminī</td>
<td>moneāminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>monent</td>
<td>moneant</td>
<td>monentur</td>
<td>moneantur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>monēbam</td>
<td>monērem</td>
<td>monēbar</td>
<td>monērer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>monēbō</td>
<td>monēbor</td>
<td>monēminī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>monuī</td>
<td>monuerim</td>
<td>monitus sum</td>
<td>monitus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>monueram</td>
<td>monuissem</td>
<td>monitus eram</td>
<td>monitus essem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td>monuerō</td>
<td></td>
<td>monitus erō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>monē</td>
<td>monēte</td>
<td>monēre</td>
<td>monēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>monētō</td>
<td>monētōte</td>
<td>monētor</td>
<td>monētor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>monētō</td>
<td>monentō</td>
<td>monentor</td>
<td>monentor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive**

- monēri
- monitus esse
- monitum ēri

**Participles**

- Pres. monēns
- Fut. monitūrus
- Perf. monitus
- Fut. monendus (Gerundive)

**Gerund**

- monendī, etc.

**Supine**

- monitum, -ū

---

1 Omitted forms and meanings are like those of lauō.
2 The meanings are as given in 31 and 32.
# Third Conjugation

## Principal Parts

- **Present:** regō, regere<br>  
- **Past:** rēxi, rēctum<br>  
- **Future:** regor, regī, rēctus sum

### Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. regō</td>
<td>regam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regis</td>
<td>regās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regit</td>
<td>regat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēginas</td>
<td>rēgāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēgitis</td>
<td>rēgātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regunt</td>
<td>regant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect:** regēbam

**Future:** regam  
regēs  
reget, etc.

**Perfect:** rēxi  
rēxerim

**Plural:** rēxeram  
rēxissem

**Future Perfect:** rēxerō

### Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. regor</td>
<td>regor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regeris (-re)</td>
<td>regāris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regitur</td>
<td>regātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regimur</td>
<td>regāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regimini</td>
<td>regāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reguntur</td>
<td>regantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect:** regēbar

**Future:** regerē  
regēris (-re)  
regētur, etc.

**Perfect:** rēctus sum  
rēctus sim

**Future Perfect:** rēctus erō  
rēctus eram  
rēctus essem

### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. rege</td>
<td>regite</td>
<td>regere</td>
<td>regimini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. regitō</td>
<td>regitōte</td>
<td>regitor</td>
<td>regitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>reguntō</td>
<td></td>
<td>reguntor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Infinitive

- **Pres. regere**
- **Perf. rēxisse**
- **Fut. rēctūrus esse**

### Participles

- **Pres. regēns**
- **Fut. rēctūrus**

**Gerund**
- regendī, etc.

**Supine**
- rēctum, -ū

**Gerundive**
- regendus

---

This is a translation of a portion of a Latin grammar textbook, focusing on the third conjugation and providing the principal parts, active and passive indicative and subjunctive forms, as well as imperative, infinitive, and participle forms for the verb *regō*. The text is clear and accurately transcribed, with proper formatting and organization to enhance readability.
37. THIRD CONJUGATION IN -ĪŌ

Principal Parts \{capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, take
\{capior, capī, captus sum, be taken

The perfect and supine systems are regular; see regō.

**ACTIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. capiō</td>
<td>capiam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capis</td>
<td>capiās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capit</td>
<td>capit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capimus</td>
<td>capiāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capitis</td>
<td>capiātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiunt</td>
<td>capiant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PASSIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capior</td>
<td>capiar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caperis (-re)</td>
<td>capiāris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capitur</td>
<td>capiātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capimur</td>
<td>capiāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capimini</td>
<td>capiāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiuntur</td>
<td>capiantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inf. capiēbam</th>
<th>caperem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fut. capiam</th>
<th>capier</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiēs</td>
<td>capiēris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiet, etc.</td>
<td>capiētum, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres. cape</th>
<th>capere</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut. capitō</td>
<td>capitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiuntō</td>
<td>capiuntor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres. capere</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Participles**

| Pres. capiēns | Fut. capiēndus (Gerundive) |

**Gerund**

capiendi, etc.

38. FOURTH CONJUGATION

Principal Parts \{audiō, audire, audīvī, auditum, hear
\{audior, audīrī, auditus sum, be heard
### Grammatical Appendix

#### Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong> audiō</td>
<td>audiam</td>
<td>audior</td>
<td>audiar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audis</td>
<td>audiās</td>
<td>audīris (-re)</td>
<td>audiāris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit</td>
<td>audiāt</td>
<td>auditur</td>
<td>audiātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīmus</td>
<td>audīāmus</td>
<td>audīmur</td>
<td>audiāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audītis</td>
<td>audīātis</td>
<td>audīmini</td>
<td>audiāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiunt</td>
<td>audiant</td>
<td>audiuntur</td>
<td>audiāntur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Impf.</strong> audiēbam</td>
<td>audīrem</td>
<td>audiēbar</td>
<td>audīrer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong> audiām</td>
<td></td>
<td>audiar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēs</td>
<td></td>
<td>audīris (-re)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiet, <em>etc.</em></td>
<td></td>
<td>audiētur, <em>etc.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perf.</strong> audiīvi</td>
<td>audīverim</td>
<td>audītus sum</td>
<td>audītus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plup.</strong> audīveram</td>
<td>audīvissem</td>
<td>audītus eram</td>
<td>audītus essem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>F. P.</strong> audīverō</td>
<td></td>
<td>audītus erō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong> audi</td>
<td>audite</td>
<td>audire</td>
<td>audīmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fut.</strong> auditō</td>
<td>auditōte</td>
<td>auditor</td>
<td>auditor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditō</td>
<td>audiantō</td>
<td>audiantor</td>
<td>audiantor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Infinitive

| **Pres.** audīre   |                      | audīrī             |                      |
| **Perf.** audīvisse|                  | audītus esse       | audītum īrī        |
| **Fut.** auditūrus | *esse*           | audius              | audius             |

#### Participles

| **Pres.** audiēns  |                      | **Perf.** audītus  |                      |
| **Fut.** auditūrus |                  | **Fut.** audiendus | *Gerundive*          |

**Gerund**: audiendi, *etc.*

**Supine**: audītum, -ū
39. **ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong> laudātūrus sum, <em>I am about to praise</em></td>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong> laudātūrus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IMPF.</strong> laudātūrus eram</td>
<td><strong>IMPF.</strong> laudātūrus essem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUT.</strong> laudātūrus erō</td>
<td><strong>PERF.</strong> laudātūrus fuerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERF.</strong> laudātūrus fuī</td>
<td><strong>PLUP.</strong> laudātūrus fuissem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLUP.</strong> laudātūrus fueram</td>
<td><strong>F. P.</strong> laudātūrus fuerō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive**

| **Pres.** laudātūrus esse |
| **PERF.** laudātūrus fuisse |

40. **PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong> laudandus sum, <em>I am to be praised, I have to be praised</em></td>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong> laudandus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IMPF.</strong> laudandus eram</td>
<td><strong>IMPF.</strong> laudandus essem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUT.</strong> laudandus erō</td>
<td><strong>PERF.</strong> laudandus fuerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERF.</strong> laudandus fuī</td>
<td><strong>PLUP.</strong> laudandus fuissem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PLUP.</strong> laudandus fueram</td>
<td><strong>F. P.</strong> laudandus fuerō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive**

| **Pres.** laudandus esse |
| **PERF.** laudandus fuisse |

41. **DEPONENT VERBS**

**Examples**

Conj. I. hortor, hortāri, hortātus sum, *exhort*

Conj. II. vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *fear*

Conj. III. sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow*¹

Conj. IV. potior, potīrī, potītus sum, *become master of*

¹Pres. indic.: sequor, sequeris, sequitur, sequimur, sequimini, sequuntur.
In the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative, these verbs are conjugated like the passive of regular verbs. All the forms, except the gerundive, are active in meaning.

**Imperative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>hortāre</th>
<th>verēre</th>
<th>sequere</th>
<th>potīre</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>hortātor</td>
<td>verētor</td>
<td>sequitor</td>
<td>potītor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>hortāri</th>
<th>verēri</th>
<th>sequī</th>
<th>potīri</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>hortātus esse</td>
<td>veritus esse</td>
<td>secūtus esse</td>
<td>potitus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>hortātūrus esse</td>
<td>veritūrus esse</td>
<td>secūtūrus esse</td>
<td>potitūrus esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Participles**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>hortāns</th>
<th>verēns</th>
<th>sequēns</th>
<th>potiēns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>hortātūrus</td>
<td>veritūrus</td>
<td>secūtūrus</td>
<td>potitūrus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>hortātus</td>
<td>veritus</td>
<td>secūtus</td>
<td>potitus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ger.</td>
<td>hortandus</td>
<td>verendus</td>
<td>sequendus</td>
<td>potiendus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Gerund**

hortandī verendī sequendī potiendī

**Supine**

hortātum veritum secūtum potitum

42. There are four semi-deponent verbs, having the active form in the present system, but the passive in the perfect system, with the active meaning throughout: audeō, audēre, ausus sum, dare; gaudeō, gaudēre, gàvisus sum, rejoice; soleō, solēre, solitus sum, be accustomed; fidō, fidere, fīsus sum, trust.

43. **IRREGULAR VERBS**

**Principal Parts:** sum, esse, fuī, futūrus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>I am</em></td>
<td><em>I may be</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 The translation of the subjunctive varies.
VERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sum</td>
<td>sumus</td>
<td>sim</td>
<td>simus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>es</td>
<td>estis</td>
<td>sis</td>
<td>sitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>est</td>
<td>sunt</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect**

*I was*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>eram</th>
<th>erāmus</th>
<th>essem</th>
<th>essēmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>erās</td>
<td>erātis</td>
<td>essēs</td>
<td>essētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erat</td>
<td>erant</td>
<td>esset</td>
<td>essent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

*I shall be*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>erō</th>
<th>erimus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eris</td>
<td>eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erit</td>
<td>erunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect**

*I have been, I was*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>fuī</th>
<th>fuimus</th>
<th>fuerim</th>
<th>fuerimus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fuistī</td>
<td>fuistis</td>
<td>fueris</td>
<td>fueritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuit</td>
<td>fuērunt (-ēre)</td>
<td>fuerit</td>
<td>fuerint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect**

*I had been*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>fueram</th>
<th>fuerāmus</th>
<th>fuissem</th>
<th>fuissēmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fuerās</td>
<td>fuerātis</td>
<td>fuissēs</td>
<td>fuissētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerat</td>
<td>fuerant</td>
<td>fuisset</td>
<td>fuissent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect**

*I shall have been*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>fuerō</th>
<th>fuerimus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fueris</td>
<td>fueritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerit</td>
<td>fuerint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 The translation of the subjunctive varies.
### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pres.</strong></td>
<td><strong>este, be ye</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>es, be thou</td>
<td>estote, ye shall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUT.</td>
<td>FUT.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esto, thou shalt be</td>
<td>futurus esse, to be about to be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esto, he shall be</td>
<td>suntou, they shall be</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Participles

futurus, about to be

44. **Principal Parts:** possum, posse, potui, be able.

#### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Imperative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>possum, potes, potest</td>
<td>possumus, potestis, possunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPF.</td>
<td>poteram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUT.</td>
<td>poterō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERF.</td>
<td>potuerō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUP.</td>
<td>potueram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td>potuerō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>possim, possis, etc.</td>
<td>possem, possēs, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPF.</td>
<td>potuerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUP.</td>
<td>potuissem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>potuisse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

45. **Principal Parts:** fio, fieri, factus sum, be made, be done.

#### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Imperative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fio, fis, fit</td>
<td>fimus, fitis, fiunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPF. fiēbam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUT. fiam, fiēs, etc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERF. factus sum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUP. factus eram</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P. factus erō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fiam, fiās, etc.</td>
<td>fierem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPF.</td>
<td>factus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUP.</td>
<td>factus essem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperative

| Pres. | fi, fite |

#### Participle

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>potēns (adj.)</td>
<td>faciendus (Gerundive)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### VERBS

#### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fieri</td>
<td>factus esse</td>
<td>factum īri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Principal Parts: eō, īre, īi (īvī), ītum, go.

#### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eō, īs, īt, īmus, ītis, īunt</td>
<td>ībam</td>
<td>ībō</td>
<td>īi, īsti, īit (īt)</td>
<td>īimus, īstis, īerunt (-re)</td>
<td>īeram</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eam</td>
<td>īrem</td>
<td>īrim</td>
<td>īris, īstis, īerunt (-re)</td>
<td>īsem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>Fut.</th>
<th>F. P.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ī, īte</td>
<td>ītō, ītōte</td>
<td>ītō, īuntō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>īre</td>
<td>ītum esse</td>
<td>īeram</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>īrems (Gen. īuntis)</td>
<td>ītūrus</td>
<td>īam</td>
<td>īeram</td>
<td>īturn</td>
<td>-u</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Gerund

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>īundi, etc.</td>
<td>īse, īsum</td>
<td>īsĭbar</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Supine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>īam</td>
<td>īam</td>
<td>īam</td>
<td>īam</td>
<td>īam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Principal Parts: \{ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, bear \feror, ferri, lātus sum, be borne\}

#### Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. ferō</td>
<td>feram</td>
<td>feror</td>
<td>ferar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fers</td>
<td>ferās</td>
<td>ferris</td>
<td>ferāris (-re)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fert</td>
<td>ferat</td>
<td>furtur</td>
<td>ferātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferimus</td>
<td>ferāmus</td>
<td>ferimur</td>
<td>ferāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fertis</td>
<td>ferātis</td>
<td>ferimīni</td>
<td>ferāmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferunt</td>
<td>ferant</td>
<td>feruntur</td>
<td>ferantur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPF. ferēbam</td>
<td>ferrem</td>
<td>ferēbar</td>
<td>ferrer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUT. feram</td>
<td>ferar</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERF. tuli</td>
<td>tulerim</td>
<td>lātus sum</td>
<td>lātus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLUP. tuleram</td>
<td>tulissem</td>
<td>lātus eram</td>
<td>lātus essem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P. tulerō</td>
<td></td>
<td>lātus ērō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Imperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>fer, ferte</th>
<th>ferre, ferimini</th>
<th>ferto, fertöte</th>
<th>ferto, feruntö</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>fertö, fertöte</td>
<td></td>
<td>ferto, fertöte</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Infinitive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>ferre</th>
<th>ferri</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>tulisse</td>
<td>latus esse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>läturus esse</td>
<td>latum īri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Participles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>ferēns</th>
<th>Perf. latus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>läturus</td>
<td>Fut. ferendus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Gerund & Supine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gerund</th>
<th>Supine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ferendi, etc.</td>
<td>latum, -ū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 48. Principal Parts

- volō, velle, volui, be willing, wish.
- nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, be unwilling.
- mālō, mālle, māluī, prefer.

### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>volō</th>
<th>nōlō</th>
<th>mālō</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vis</td>
<td>nōn vis</td>
<td>māvīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vult (volt)</td>
<td>nōn vult</td>
<td>māvult</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volumus</td>
<td>nōlumus</td>
<td>mālumus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vultis (voltis)</td>
<td>nōn vultis</td>
<td>māvultis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volunt</td>
<td>nōlunt</td>
<td>mālunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPF.</th>
<th>volēbam</th>
<th>nōlēbam</th>
<th>mālēbam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>volam, volēs, etc.</td>
<td>nōlam</td>
<td>mālam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>volui</td>
<td>nōlui</td>
<td>māluī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>volueram</td>
<td>nōlueram</td>
<td>mālueram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. P.</td>
<td>voluerō</td>
<td>nōluerō</td>
<td>māluerō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>velim, velīs, etc.</th>
<th>nōlim</th>
<th>mālim</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IMPF.</td>
<td>vellem, velēs, etc.</td>
<td>nōllem</td>
<td>māllem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>voluerim</td>
<td>nōluerim</td>
<td>māluerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>voluissem</td>
<td>nōluissem</td>
<td>māluissem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
VERBS

Imperative

Pres. nōli
Fut. nōlitō
nōlitō

nōlite
nōlitōte
noluntō

Infinitive

Pres. velle
Perf. voluisse

nōlle
nōluisse
mālle
māluisse

Participle

Pres. volēns

nōlēns

nōlēns

49. dō, dare, dēdī, datum, give, is conjugated like the verbs of the first conjugation, but the stem vowel a is short in all forms except the second person singular of the present active indicative and imperative (dās, dā), and the nominative singular of the present participle (dāns).

50. DEFECTIVE VERBS

Indicative

Perf. coepī, I began
meminī, I remember
ōdī, I hate

Plur. coeperam
memineram, I remembered
ōderam, I hated

F. P. coeperō
meminerō, I shall remember
ōderō, I shall hate

Subjunctive

Perf. coeperim
meminerim
ōderim

Plur. coepissem
meminissem
ōdissem

Imperative

Singular
mementō

Plural
mementōte

Infinitive

Perf. coepisse
meminissee
ōdisse

Fut. coeptūrus esse
ōsūrus esse
Participles

Perf. coeptus, begun  üsus
Fut. coepturus  üsûrus

51. The defective verb inquam, say, is used with direct quotations. It has the following forms, but only the first three are in common use.

Indicative

Pres. inquam inquis inquit inquimus inquitis inquiunt
Imp. — — inquiëbat — — —
Fut. — — inquiës inquiet — — —
Perf. inquiï inquisti inquit — — —

Imperative

Pres. inque  Fut. inquitô

52. IMPERSONAL VERBS

Principal Parts: licet, licère, licuit (licitum est) it is allowed.

Indicative  Subjunctive

Pres. licet  liceat
Impf. licëbat  licëret
Fut. licëbit
Perf. licuit (licitum est)  licuerit (licitum sit)
Plup. licuerat (licitum erat)  licuisset (licitum esset)
F. P. licuerit (licitum erit)

Infinitive
licère, licuisse, licitûrum esse

PART II. THE FORMATION OF WORDS

53. Root. — A root is a monosyllable which contains the fundamental meaning of a word. Thus duc- implies the idea of leading in the noun dux and in the verb dúcō. A root may vary in quantity or in spelling, as dúc-, dúc- (in dúcō, dux); teg-, tog- (in tegō, toga).

54. Stem. — A stem is a fixed part of an inflected word. In some words it is the same as the root, as in dux (duc-s), in which
the stem and the root are both duc-. In others the stem is the root with one or more added letters, as in duc-e-, the stem of dūcō, and in flū-min-, the stem of flūmen.

55. Suffix. — A suffix is one or more letters added to a root or to a stem, to modify the meaning. Thus -tor is the suffix added to the root duc-, to make duc-tor, a leader; but added to the stem audi-, to make audi-tor, a hearer.

56. Prefix. — A prefix is one or more letters joined to the beginning of a word to modify its meaning: ab-dūcō, I lead away.

57. Word Formation. — Word formation treats of the derivation of words from roots or stems by the use of suffixes and prefixes.

58. Derivative Words. — A word formed from a root or a verb-stem is called a primary derivative: vic-tor, victor. A word derived from a noun-stem or an adjective-stem is called a secondary derivative: victor-ia, victory.

NOUNS: PRIMARY DERIVATIVES

59. The suffixes -tor, -sor, form nouns denoting the agent or doer: ōrā-tor, one who speaks (ōrō); dēfēn-sor, one who defends (dēfendō).

(a) gladiā-tor, one who uses the sword, is probably from the stem of an obsolete verb.

(b) Other suffixes denoting agency are seen in scrib-a, col-ōnus pa-ter (one who protects).

60. The suffixes -iō, -siō, -tiō, -sus, -tus (gen. ūs), -tūra, -ina, -ium form nouns denoting action or, concretely, the result of action: leg-iō, a levying, a legion (legō); incēn-siō, a setting fire to (incendō); ōrā-tiō, a speaking (ōrō); vi-sus, a looking, act of seeing (videō); adven-tus, a coming to, approach (adveniō); iac-tūra, a throwing (iaciō); rap-ina, act of robbery (rapiō); gaud-i-um, joy (gaudeō).

Note. — In general, nouns denoting action are primarily abstract, but often become concrete, that is, they lose the idea of action and come to denote the result, the means, or the place of action.

61. The suffixes -men, -mentum, -mōnia, -mōnium form nouns denoting action, the means, or the result of action: ag-men, that which is led (agō); flū-men, a flowing (fluo); ōrnā-mentum,

1 Some of the less common suffixes are omitted.
that which adorns (ōrnō); dētrī-mentum, that which is worn away, loss (dēterō); queri-mōnia, a complaining (queror); testi-mōnium, evidence (testor).

62. The suffixes -brum, -crum, -trum, -ulum, -bulum, -culum, -bra, -ula, -bula, etc., form nouns denoting the means, the instrument, or the place: dēlū-brum, a place of cleansing, a temple (dēluō); simulā-crum, a likeness (simulō); vinc-ulum, a bond (vincīō); pā-bulum, that which nourishes (pā-, nourish); gubernā-culum, a helm (guberno); late-bra, a hiding-place (lateō).

63. The suffix -or forms masculine abstract nouns denoting a mental state: am-or, love (amo); tim-or, fear (timeō).

NOUNS: SECONDARY DERIVATIVES

64. The suffixes -lus, -la, -lum, -ulus, -cuius, etc., form nouns called diminutives. These words follow the gender of the words from which they are derived: libel-lus, little hook (liber); tabel-la, small board, tablet (tabula); lect-ulus, little couch (lectus).

65. The suffixes -tās, -tūs, -tūdō, -ia, -ium, -tium form abstract nouns denoting quality or condition: boni-tās, goodness (bonus); vir-tūs, manliness (vir); audāc-ia, boldness (audāx); amici-tia, friendship (amicus); servi-tium, slavery (servus).

66. The suffix -ium is much used in both primary (60) and secondary (65) derivatives. The following secondary derivatives denote action: auspic-ium, augury (auspex); remig-ium, rowing (remex).

67. The suffix -ārius added to a noun-stem denotes a dealer or maker; -ārium, the place where things are kept: falc-ārius, scythe-maker (falx); tabul-ārium, record-office (tabula).

68. The suffixes -ō, -lis, -nus (gen., -i) added to a noun-stem may denote the person concerned, frequently an officer: centuri-ō, commander of a century (centuria); aedī-lis, commissioner of buildings (aedēs); tribū-nus, head of a tribe (tribus).

69. The suffixes -ātus, -ūra, added to the stem of a personal name, denote office; -īna, an art: cōnsul-ātus, office of consul (cōnsul); praefect-ūra, office of commander (praefectus); medic-īna, the healing art (medicus).

ADJECTIVES: PRIMARY DERIVATIVES

70. The suffixes -āx, -īcus, -idus, -ulus form adjectives, chiefly with the meaning of the present participle: aud-āx, daring
(audeō); am-icus, loving, friendly (amō); tim-idus, fearful, timid (timeō); crēd-ulus, quick to believe (crēdō).

71. The suffixes -ilis, -bilis, -tīvus form adjectives, chiefly with a passive meaning, sometimes denoting capability: fac-ilis, that may be done, easy (faciō); crēdi-bilis, that may be believed (crēdō); cap-tīvus, captured (capiō).

ADJECTIVES: SECONDARY DERIVATIVES

72. Adjectives meaning belonging to, relating to, derived from, are formed with the following suffixes: -cus, -icus, -ticus; -ius, -icius; -nus, -ānus, -ēnus, -ēnus; -ālis, -ēlis, -ēlis, -ūlis; -āris, -ārius; -īvus, -timus; -ensis; -cer, -cris, -ter, -tris, -ester, -estris, -estis: bell-icus, of war (bellum); frater-nus, of a brother (frater); rēg-ālis, of a king (rēx); cōnsul-āris, of a consul (cōnsul); mari-timus, of the sea (mare); agr-estis, of the field (ager).

73. The suffixes -ōsus, -lentus, -tus form adjectives meaning full of, provided with: pericul-ōsus, full of danger, dangerous (periculum); turbu-lentus, disorderly (turba); homi-tus, honorable (honor); iūs-tus, just (iūs).

74. The suffix -eus forms adjectives denoting material; idus, denoting state or condition: argenti-eus, made of silver (argentum); luc-idus, bright (lūx).

75. The suffixes -ānus, -ēnus, -ēnus, -icus, -iūs, -ēnus form adjectives denoting place of origin: Rōmānus, of Rome (Rōma); Ital-icus, Italian (Italia); Athēn-ēnus, of Athens (Athēnae).

76. The suffixes -ernus, -urnus, -tinus form adjectives from nouns or adverbs denoting time: hodi-ernus, of this day (hodie); noct-urnus, at night (nox); crās-tinus, of to-morrow (crās).

DERIVATION OF VERBS

77. Primary Verbs.— Some verbs are derived from roots, either directly or by the addition of a vowel. In this class are most verbs of the third conjugation and irregular verbs: reg-e-re, es-se, i-re, fer-re, vel-le, da-re. Others are formed from nouns, adjectives, or other verbs.

78. Denominative Verbs.— Verbs derived from nouns or adjectives are called denominative: liber-ō, set free (liber); nōmin-ō, name (nōmen); flōr-eō, bloom (flōs, flower); met-uō fear (metus); fin-iō, put an end to (finis).
79. Verbs Derived from Verbs. — These include:

(a) Frequentative or intensive verbs, denoting repeated or intense action. They are of the first conjugation, and end in -tō, -sō, -itō, -titō, -sitō: iac-tō, toss (iaciō); ag-itō, move violently (ago); cur-sō, run about (currō).

(b) Inceptive or inchoative verbs, denoting the beginning of an action. These end in -scō, and are added to present stems: hebē-scō, grow dull (hebeo, be dull).

Note. — Some verbs of this class apparently come from nouns or adjectives: advesperāscit, evening approaches (vesper); inveterāscō, grow old (vetus).

(c) Causative verbs, signifying a causing to act: caedo, cause to fall (cado, fall); fugō, put to flight (fugiō, flee); sistō, cause to stand (stō, stand).

DERIVATION OF ADVERBS

80. Adverbs are derived chiefly from adjectives, nouns, or pronouns.

81. Adverbs in -ē are formed from adjectives of the second declension: lātē, widely (latus). In bene and male, -e is short.

82. Adverbs in -ter (-iter) are formed chiefly from adjectives of the third declension: gravi-ter, heavily (gravis).

83. Adverbs in -am, -em, -im, -um, and some in -e are the accusative singular of nouns or adjectives; those in -a, -ās are the accusative plural: quam, vicem, partim, multum, facile, cētera, alias.

84. Adverbs in -ā, -ō, -ō, and some in -ē, -ē, are the ablative singular of adjectives, nouns, or pronouns: rēctā, prīmō, modo, forte, hodiē.

85. Adverbs in -tus (-itus) are formed from nouns or adjectives and denote source or time: antīquitus, ancienly (antiquus); divīnitus, by divine favor (divinus).

COMPOUND WORDS

86. Compound words are formed by the union of simple words.

(a) Nouns: agri-cola, tiller of a field, farmer; artī-fex, master of an art (ars, faciō); bene-volentia, good-will; inter-rēgnum, interval between two reigns; rēs-pūblica, commonwealth.
(b) Adjectives: omni-potēns, almighty; parti-cepṣ, partaking, sharing (pars, capiō); venē-ficus, poisoning (venēnum, faciō).

c Verbs: ab-eō, go away; anim-ad-vertō, turn attention to, observe; prae-dicō, foretell; satis-facīō, make amends (do enough for); vēn-eō, go to sale, be sold (vēnum, eō).

d Adverbs: ad-hūc, hitherto; postri-diē, the next day.

87. Prefixes. — The prefixes of compound words are the following:

a, ab, abs, away, off, without. ob, before, against.
ad, to, toward, near. per, through, thoroughly.
ambi-, around. post, after, behind.
ante, before. prae, before.
circum, around, about. praeter, beside.
com-, con-, co-, together. prō, prō, por, forth, before, for.
dē, away. re-, red-, back.
dis-, dī-, apart. sē-, sēd-, apart.
ed, ex, out, without. sub, under.
in, in, into, against; not. subter, beneath.
inter, between. super, suprā, over.
intrō, within. trāns, across.

PART III. SYNTAX

88. Questions. — Questions, in Latin, may be introduced by an interrogative pronoun, interrogative adjective, or interrogative adverb, especially -ne, nōnne, num. Nōnne implies the answer yes; num, the answer no: -ne is an enclitic, attached to the first word of the question, and implies nothing about the answer.

4. mōsne māiorum (tē impedit)? does the custom of our an-cestors hinder you? Cat. I. 11.
5. nōnne hunc in vincula dūcī imperābis? will you not order him to be put into prison? Cat. I. 11.
a. -ne is sometimes used for nōnne or num, when the answer is understood: potestne tibi haec lūx esse iūcunda? can this light of day be pleasant to you? Cat. I. 6 (answer “no”).

b. Tandem or the enclitic -nam are sometimes used to emphasize a question: quō ūsque tandem? how far, pray? Cat. I. 1.

c. Questions are sometimes expressed without an interrogative word: patēre tua cōnsilia nōn sentīs? do you not see that your plots are exposed? Cat. I. 1.

d. For indicative questions see 184; for subjunctive questions see 201; for questions in indirect discourse see 215, d.

89. Alternative or Double Questions. — These inquire which of two or more suppositions is true. The first member begins with utrum, -ne, whether, or without an introductory word; the second member begins with an, or, negative annōn, or not: utrum is clēmēns an inhumānissimus esse videātur, whether he would appear to be mild or most inhuman; Cat. IV. 6.

a. Necne, or not, may be used instead of an nōn in the second member of a double indirect question (202): quaesivi in conventū fuisset necne, I asked whether he had been at the meeting or not; Cat. II. 6.

b. An may introduce a single question, being equivalent to -ne, nōnne, or num, with added surprise or emphasis upon a preceding statement: an Scipio Gracchum interfēcit? did not Scipio kill Gracchus? Cat. I. 1.

90. Rhetorical Question. — A rhetorical question is one whose answer is self-evident, and is put by way of emphasis for a declarative statement: quis dubitat? who doubts? (= nobody doubts).

91. Answers. — The answer “yes” is expressed by repeating the verb or another emphatic word, or by vērō, etiam, ita, certē, etc. The answer “no” is expressed by repeating the verb with nōn, or by nōn minimē, etc., without a verb.

NOUNS

92. Agreement. — A noun used as an appositive or predicate of another noun or pronoun agrees with it in case: Opīmius, cōnsul, Opīmius the consul; Cat. I. 2; virō forti, collēgae meō, to a brave man, my colleague; Cat. III. 6.
NOUNS

Nominative Case

A noun in the nominative case may be used as follows: —

93. Subject of a finite verb: senátus haec intellegit, the Senate knows these things; Cat. I. 1.

94. Subject of an "historical" infinitive (213): Caesar frúmentum flágitáre, Caesar kept demanding grain.

95. Predicate nominative, after a. The intransitive verbs be, become, seem, etc.: patria, quae est parēns omnium, our country, which is the parent of all; Cat. I. 7.

b. The passive verbs be made, be called, be chosen, etc.: habētur vir ēgregius Paulus, let Paulus be regarded as an extraordinary man; Cat. IV. 10.

Vocative Case

96. The name of the person or thing addressed is put in the vocative case. This is spelled like the nominative except in the singular of -us nouns of the second declension, which have the vocative in -e: quō usque abūtēre, Catilīna, patientiā nostrā? how long, Catiline, will you abuse our patience? Cat. I. 1.

a. Filius and proper names in -ius form the vocative singular in -i: fili, son; Marce Tulli, quid agis? Marcus Tullius, what are you doing? Cat. I. 11.

Genitive Case

The genitive case is used with nouns, adjectives, and verbs.

A. Genitive with Nouns

97. Possessive genitive, denoting the possessor: ex aedibus Cethēgi, from the house of Cethegus; Cat. III. 3.

98. Subjective genitive, denoting the agent or subject of an action or feeling implied by another noun: deōrum ergā vōs amore, with the love of the gods for you; Cat. III. 1.

99. Objective genitive, denoting the object of an action or feeling implied by another noun: invidiae metus, the fear of unpopularity; Cat. I. 11.

100. Descriptive genitive, used to describe another noun. In this use the genitive is modified by an adjective or pronoun: hūius modi cōnsultum, a decree of this kind; Cat. I. 2.

101. Genitive of material, denoting the material of which something consists; talentum aurī, a talent of gold.
102. Appositional genitive, having the force of an appositive: hoc poëtae nomen, this name of poet; Ar. S.

103. Genitive of the whole, depending on a word denoting a part. The word denoting the part may be a noun, a pronoun (indefinite or interrogative), an adjective (numeral, comparative, or superlative), or an adverb (denoting quantity or place): quid cōnsili? what plan? Cat. I. 1; ubinam gentium? where in the world? Cat. I. 4.

a. The ablative with dē or ex may be used instead of the genitive of the whole, especially after cardinal numerals: unus ex istis, the only one of these; Cat. III. 7.

B. Genitive with Adjectives

104. The objective genitive is used with adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, memory, fullness, participation, or their opposite: plenissimum nāvium, very full of ships; P. 12.

a. For the genitive with proprius, similis, see 119 a, b.

C. Genitive with Verbs

105. With verbs of accusing, acquitting, condemning, a genitive is used to denote the charge: mē inertiae condemnō, I find myself guilty of inactivity; Cat. I. 2.

106. The impersonal verbs of feeling, miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, and taedet, take an accusative of the person concerned, and a genitive of that which causes the feeling: mē meōrum factōrum paenitēbit, I shall repent of my deeds (lit. it will repent me of); Cat. IV. 10.

107. Interest and réfert take the genitive of the person or thing concerned, if expressed by a noun, but the ablative feminine singular of the possessive, if expressed by a personal pronoun. The degree of interest is expressed by a genitive of value, a neuter accusative, or an adverb: parvī réfert, it matters little; P. 7. meā quid interest, what is for my interest; Cat. IV. 5.

108. Verbs of memory, memini, obliviscor, reminiscor, take the genitive or accusative. If the object is a person, obliviscor takes the genitive only, and reminiscor the accusative only: obliviscere caedis, forget murder; Cat. I. 3.

109. The genitive is sometimes used with potior (147); rérum potīri, to get control of affairs; Cat. II. 9.
110. With est and verbs of value, the genitive adjectives māgnī, parvī, tanti, quantī, plūris, plūrimī, denote indefinite value: est tanti, it is of such value, it is worth while; Cat. I. 9.

111. Predicate Genitive. — A possessive or descriptive genitive may be used in the predicate: unum genus est eōrum, one class consists of those men; Cat. II. 8; est sapientiae, it is the part of (belongs to) wisdom; P. 7.

Dative Case

The uses of the dative case are as follows: —

112. Dative of indirect object,
   a. With transitive verbs: (tabellās) ostendimus Cethēgō, we showed the tablets to Cethegus; Cat. III. 5.
   b. With intransitive verbs meaning favor, help, please, trust, and their opposites; believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist; envy, threaten, pardon, spare: huic urbi minitantem, threatening this city; Cat. II. 1. mihi crēdite, believe me, Cat. II. 7.

   Note 1. — Some verbs of these meanings are transitive and govern the accusative, as délectō, iubeō, iuvō, laedō.

   Note 2. — In the passive these verbs are used only impersonally (172, b): mihi nihil nocēri potest, in no way can harm be done to me; Cat. III. 12.

   c. With some verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super: cui adulēscentulō facem praetulisti, before what young man have you carried a torch? Cat. I. 6.

   d. With verbs accompanied by satis, bene, and male: satis facere reī públicae, to satisfy (do enough for) the state; Cat. I. 1.

113. Dative of separation, with verbs meaning take away, used of words denoting persons: hunc mihi timōrem ēripe, take away this fear from me; Cat. I. 7.

114. Dative of purpose or tendency, denoting the purpose for which anything is done, or the object toward which anything tends: eōs qui frūctuī sunt, those who are (for) a source of income; P. 6.

   a. The dative of purpose is often used in connection with the dative of reference (115): eōs qui vōbīs frūctuī sunt, those who are (for) a source of income to you; P. 6.
115. Dative of reference, denoting the person or thing concerned by the action: tibi uni vexatio sociorum impunita fuit (for) in the case of you alone the harassing of our allies has been unpunished; Cat. I. 7.

a. The dative of reference may be equivalent to a possessive genitive or adjective: tibi de manibus, from your hands; Cat. I. 6.

b. The dative of personal pronouns, mihi, tibi, etc., may be used with expressions of emotion, interest, surprise, or derision. This is called the ethical dative or dative of feeling. It is in reality a dative of reference: Tongilium mihi eduxit, bless me, he did take along Tongilius; Cat. II. 2.

116. Dative of the agent, used with a passive periphrastic form, or with a perfect participle: erit verendum mihi, I shall have to fear; Cat. I. 2. tibi co[nstitut[i tu fu[erunt, they have been designated by you; Cat. I. 7.

117. Dative of the possessor, used with forms of sum: est vobis auctor, you have (as) an authority; P. 23.

118. Dative with personal nouns, instead of the genitive: nullo est portis custos, there is no guard for the gates; Cat. II. 12.

119. Dative with adjectives meaning near, like, fit, sufficient, acceptable, friendly: proximi Germannis, next to the Germans; B.G. I. 1.

a. Similis may take the genitive instead of the dative, especially of words denoting persons: tu similis, like you (the like of you); Cat. I. 2.

b. Proprius may take a possessive genitive instead of the dative: huius imperi proprium, characteristic of this authority; Cat. I. 5.

Accusative Case

The uses of the accusative case are as follows:—

120. Direct object of a transitive verb: ducem hostium videmus, we see the leader of the enemy; Cat. I. 2.

121. Secondary Object. — Some verbs meaning ask, demand, teach, or conceal, may take two objects, one of the person (direct object), the other of the thing (secondary object): hos sententiam rogò, I ask them their opinion; Cat. I. 4. id quod nòs Mithridatès docuit, what Mithridates taught us; P. 7. In the passive construction these verbs retain the secondary object in the accusative.

Note. — The verbs so used are orò, poscò, rogò, interrogò,
flágitó, doceó, cēlō. Petó and postulō take ab with the ablative of the person asked; quærō takes ab, dē, or ex; poscó and flágitó may take ab. Interrogō and quærō may take dē with the ablative of the thing asked about, instead of a direct accusative.

122. Predicate Accusative. — The verbs make, call, choose, regard, show, etc., may take two accusatives, one of the direct object, the other a predicate accusative: quem Statōrem nōmini-

nāmus, whom we call protector; Cat. I. 13. In the passive these verbs take a predicate nominative (95), instead of the predicate accusative of the active construction.

a. Certain infinitives like esse, with a subject accusative, may take a predicate accusative in agreement with the subject: quem esse hostem comperisti, whom you have learned to be an enemy; Cat. I. 11.

123. Subject of an Infinitive. — The accusative is used as the subject of any infinitive except an historical infinitive (213): si tē interfici iüsserō, if I shall order you to be put to death; Cat. I. 5.

124. Object of Certain Prepositions. — For these prepositions see 231.

125. An accusative may follow the adjectives propior, proximus, and the adverbs propius, proxime, pridie: pridie Kalendas, the day before the Calends; Cat. I. 6.

126. Accusative of place to which, with ad, in, or sub: ut tē ad portās prósequantur, to follow you to the gates; Cat. I. 8.

a. A preposition is not used with the accusative of the names of towns, small islands, domus, or rūs, but names of towns may take ad when it means towards, or near to: sé Massiliam côñferet, he will go to Massilia; Cat. II. 6.

127. Accusative denoting duration of time or extent of space: domicilium Rōmae multōs annōs habuit, he had a residence at Rome many years; (Ar.) 4.

a. The preposition per is sometimes used with the accusative of duration: per decem diēs; Cat. III. 8.

128. Cognate Accusative. — A verb may take the accusative of a noun having a meaning similar to its own. Such an accusative is called cognate; cum tridūi viam prócessisset, when he had gone forward a three days' journey; B. G. I. 38.

129. Adverbial Accusative. — An accusative, chiefly of neuter pronouns and adjectives, may be used as an adverb: quid tacēs, why are you silent? Cat. I. 4.
130. Accusative of Exclamation. — The accusative is used in exclamations: O tempora! O the times! Cat. I. 1.

Ablative Case

131. The with-case was originally the instrumental, the in-case was the locative, and the from-case was the ablative. As the instrumental and the locative passed out of use, the ablative absorbed their functions.

The uses of the ablative are as follows: —

132. As the object of certain prepositions. For these prepositions see 231.

133. Ablative of separation, with or without ab, dē, or ex. A preposition is generally used with words denoting persons. A preposition is generally omitted with verbs of figurative separation, free, relieve, deprive: 1 córā relevātus, relieved of care; Cat. I. 13; dum modo á vōbīs periculum dépellātur, provided the danger be removed from you; Cat. II. 7.

a. This includes the ablative of place from which, generally used with ab, dē, or ex: exīre ex urbe, to go out of the city; Cat. I. 5.

b. With the ablative of the names of towns, small islands, domus, and rūs, the preposition is not used, except in the meaning from the neighborhood of: Rōmā profectus est, he went away from Rome; Cat. II. 7. á Brundisio, from (the port of) Brundisium; P. 12.

134. Ablative of source or parentage. Ex or ab is sometimes used, especially with pronouns: summō nātī locō, born of the highest rank; Cat. IV. 8.

a. Ablative of material, with ex or dē: exercitum collēctum ex senibus, an army composed of old men, Cat. II. 3.

135. Ablative of agent, with ab, denoting the person by whom the action of a passive verb is done: dictae sunt á principibus sententiae, opinions were expressed by the chief men; Cat. III. 6.

136. Ablative of accordance, denoting that in accordance with which something is done. The preposition, if used, is dē or ex: iūdiciō senātūs, according to the decision of the senate, Cat. III. 6.

137. Ablative of comparison, following a comparative adjective or adverb when quam, than, is not used: patria mihi vītā meā cārior, my country, dearer to me than my life; Cat. I. 11.

1 abdicō, exuō, levō, liberō, privō, solvō, spcliō.
a. *Quam* is used when the first of the words compared is in the genitive, dative, or ablative, and *may be* used when the first is in the nominative or accusative. If *quam* is used, the two words compared are in the same case.

b. *Amplius, longius, plus, or minus*, may be used without affecting the case of the following noun: *amplius pedum mille sexcentorum, of more than 1600 feet; B.G. I. 38.*

138. Ablative of accompaniment, with *cum*: *occisus est cum liberis Fulvius, Fulvius was killed together with his children; Cat. I. 2.*

a. *Cum* may be omitted in military phrases, when the noun is modified by any adjective except a numeral: *pedestribus cópiis, with the infantry; B. G. III. 11.*

139. Ablative of manner, with or without *cum*: *mágnō cum strepitú égressí, having gone out with great uproar; B. G. II. 11; aequó animó moriar, I shall die with a calm mind; Cat. IV. 2.*

140. Ablative of attendant circumstance, expressing the situation or circumstance of an action. The preposition, if used, is *cum*: *hisce óminibus, with these omens; cum summá salúte, to (with) the highest welfare; Cat. I. 13.*

141. Ablative of *means or instrument*, without a preposition: *nox tenebris obscúráre nón potest, night with its darkness cannot conceal; Cat. I. 3.*

142. Ablative of *cause or reason*, generally without a preposition: *cónfessiónibus suis, because of his own confessions; Cat. III. 6.*

143. Ablative of *description*, denoting quality or characteristic. This ablative is always modified by an adjective or genitive: *litterae eádem ratíóne, letters of the same character, Cat. III. 5.*

144. Ablative of *specification*, denoting that in respect to which anything is or is done: *impudentia, quá superábat omnés, his impudence, in which he surpassed all men; Cat. III. 5.*

145. Ablative of *degree* of difference, used (a) with comparatives and words implying comparison; (b) with *absum, cônsidó, etc., to denote the interval of space: multó cárior, much dearer; Cat. I. 11.*

146. Ablative of the *route* taken, denoting the way or route by which, without a preposition: *Aureliá viá profectus est, he has gone by the Aurelian road; Cat. II. 4.*

147. The ablative is used with *útor, fruor, fungor, potior, vèscor*, and their compounds: *quó úsque abútère patientiá nostrá? how far will you abuse our patience? Cat. I. 1.*
a. Potior may take the genitive (109).

148. The ablative is used with opus est and usus est, there is need: si opus factō esset, if there should be need of action; B.G. I. 42.

149. The ablative of plenty or want, used with some adjectives and verbs: 1 carēre aspectū, to be without the sight; Cat. I. 7.

150. The ablative is used with dignus, indignus, contentus, and frētus: dignum custōdiā, deserving of custody; Cat. I. 8.

151. Ablative absolute.—An ablative absolute is a phrase consisting of a noun or pronoun in the ablative, and a participle, an adjective, or another noun in agreement with it.

a. An ablative absolute may express time, cause, condition, concession, manner, means, situation. It may be best rendered by a clause beginning with when, because, if, although, etc.: vivis nōbis, while we are alive; Cat. II. 7. hoc interfectō, if this man were put to death; Cat. I. 12. recitātīs litterīs, by the reading of the letters; Cat. III. 5.

b. The phrase is often to be translated by an active participle with the noun as object, when the agent is the same as the subject of the main verb: eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, having completed this work, he stationed guards; B.G. I. 8.

152. Ablative denoting time when or within which, without a preposition: quid proximā nocte ēgeris, what you did last night; Cat. I. 1.

153. Ablative of place where ("locative ablative"), with in or sub: in Ītaliā, in Italy; Cat. I. 2.

a. The preposition may be omitted with such words as locō, parte, parietibus, and with any noun modified by tōtus, medius, cūntus, and the like: tōtā Ītaliā, in all Italy; Cat. II. 4.

b. Plural names of towns express place where by the ablative without a preposition: Athēnīs, at Athens.

Locative Case

154. The locative case, denoting place where, is used instead of the ablative in the singular of names of towns and small islands of the first, second, and sometimes the third declension; also in domī, at home; militiae, in military service; rūri, in the country. The ending of the locative is -ae in the first declension, -i in the second and third: quī Rōmæ remanent, who stay in Rome; Cat. II. 8.

1 cōnfertus, inānis, opīmus, refertus; abundō, careō, compleō, egeō.
ADJECTIVES

155. An adjective is *attributive* when it describes a noun directly; *predicate*, when it forms part of the predicate with sum, or with a passive verb like be named, be called, be chosen (95).

156. Agreement. — An adjective or participle (220), whether attributive or predicate, agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case: fortēs virī, brave men; rēs pūblica (commonwealth), the state.

a. With two or more nouns connected by et, -que, or atque, the adjective or participle is usually plural, but it may be singular if the nearest noun is singular: signum et manum suam, his seal and hand; Cat. III. 5.

b. With two or more nouns of different genders an attributive adjective takes the gender of the nearest; a predicate adjective or participle is generally masculine if one or more of the nouns denote living things, neuter if they denote things without life: vitam, bona, fortūnas, coniugēs, liberōsque vestrōs, your lives, property, etc.; Cat. III. 1.

Uses of Adjectives

157. An adjective may be used as a noun, chiefly in the plural: bonī, good citizens; omnia, all things.

158. An adjective may be used with the force of an adverb: invitā, unwillingly; frequēns, in great numbers.

159. Some adjectives may denote a part of an object, as extrēmus, the end of, infīmus, the bottom of, summus the top of: extrēmā pueritiā, at the end (close) of his boyhood; P. 10.

160. A superlative adjective or adverb may be best translated by very; a comparative, by too, rather, unusually: sērius, too late; superbius, somewhat arrogantly.

a. A superlative with quam or quam possum is translated as ... as possible: quam māximis potest itineribus, by as long marches as possible.

PRONOUNS

161. When pronouns are used as nouns, the rules for the cases of nouns apply; when used as adjectives, they follow the rules for the agreement of adjectives (156).

162. Personal Pronouns. — There is no special pronoun of the third person, but a demonstrative pronoun may be so used: sī eōs plācāre nōn possēs, if you could not pacify them; Cat. I. 7.
a. The nominatives ego, tú, nōs, vōs, are used for emphasis: pestem, quam tú máchināris, the ruin which you plot; Cat. I. 1; nōs cōnsulēs dēsumus, we, the consuls, are at fault; Cat. I. 1.

b. The genitives nostrī, vestrī, are objective (99); nostrum and vestrum, as a rule, are genitives of the whole (103): quem nostrum, what man of us? Cat. I. 1. ducem memorem vestrī, a leader mindful of you; Cat. IV. 9.

c. The plural of the pronoun of the first person is sometimes used for the singular: vidēs nōs multā cōnārī, you see that I (we) attempt many things; Orator, 30.

163. Reflexive Pronouns. — The reflexive sē and the possessive suus may refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand (direct reflexive): sē suaque dēdīrunt, they surrendered themselves and their property; B. G. II. 15.

   a. Sē or suus in a subordinate clause may refer to the subject of the verb upon which the clause depends, if the clause expresses the thought of that subject (indirect reflexive): his mandāvit ut ad sē referrent, he ordered them to report to him; B. G. I. 47.

   b. Sē or suus may refer to a person mentioned in the sentence, not the subject: dēsīnant insidiāri domī suae cōnsulī, let them cease to plot against the consul in his own house; Cat. I. 13.

   c. The personal pronouns of the first and second persons may be used in a reflexive sense, that is, they may denote the same person as the subject: mē condenmō, I find myself guilty; Cat. I. 2.

164. Possessive Pronouns. — Possessive pronouns agree in gender, number, and case, with the word with which they are used, not with the word denoting the possessor: quis tē ex toluis amīcis salūtāvit? who of so many friends of yours saluted you? Cat. I. 7.

   a. The possessive pronoun suus is used reflexively, that is, it refers to the subject of the sentence (163). When some other person or thing is meant, his, her, its, or their is expressed by the genitive of a demonstrative, ēius, eōrum, etc.: ēius sociōs, his allies; Cat. II. 2. illōrum responsīs, according to their answers; Cat. III. 8.

   b. A possessive pronoun may be used in place of the genitive of a personal pronoun: nostrā (= nostrī) caede, with the slaughter of us; Cat. I. 3.

165. Demonstrative Pronouns. — Demonstrative pronouns, when not used as adjectives, take the gender and number of the
noun to which they refer: quis eum senātor appellāvit? what senator called him by name? Cat. II. 6.

a. Hic, this, refers to what is near the speaker in place, time, or thought; iste, that (of yours), to something near the person spoken to; ille (that) to what is remote: hic tamen vivit, yet this man lives; Cat. I. 1. ista subsellia, the benches near you; Cat. I. 7; aquilam illum argenteam, that silver eagle; Cat. I. 9.

b. Hic . . . ille may mean the latter . . . the former: hic cum auxilium feret, illum ēripuit, when the latter brought help, he rescued him (the former); B. G. IV. 12.

c. Iste may be used to express contempt, especially when addressing opponents: istius furōrem, the frenzy of that scoundrel; Cat. I. 1.

d. Ille may mean that famous: M. Catōnem, illum senem, Marcus Cato, that (famous) old man; Ar. 7.

e. Is, this, that, is frequently used as the antecedent of quī, or in agreement with the antecedent: is quī hanc urbem servāvit, he who saved this city; Cat. III. 1.

166. Intensive Pronoun. — The pronoun ipse emphasizes the word to which it refers: Catilīna ipse profūgit, Catiline himself has fled; Cat. II. 3; erat scriptum ipsius manū, it had been written in his own hand; Cat. III. 5.

a. Ipse may mean very, exactly, of one's own accord; Catilīnam ipsum ēgredientem, Catiline departing of his own accord; Cat. II. 1.

b. Ipse may be used as a reflexive pronoun: si quid ipsī (= sibi) opus esset: if he needed anything (lit. if any need was to himself); B. G. I. 34.

167. Relative Pronoun. — The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; its case depends upon the structure of the clause in which it stands: mê quid pudeat, quī vivō? why should I be ashamed who live? Ar. 6.

a. With two or more antecedents a relative pronoun may agree with the nearest or follow the rule for a predicate adjective (156): ōtium atque divitiae, quae prima mortāles putant, leisure and wealth which men consider of the first importance; Sall. Cat. 36.

b. The relative may not agree with its antecedent, but with an appositive or predicate noun in its own clause: gladiātōrēs, quam manum certissimam fore putāvit, the gladiators, a band which he thought would be most faithful; Cat. II. 12.

c. The antecedent may stand in the relative clause: ut, quam
urbem pulcherrimam esse voluérunt, hanc défendant, that they may defend this city, which they wished to be the fairest; Cat. II. 13.

d. The antecedent may be repeated, standing in both clauses: quae religiō . . . eā religiōne; Cat. III. 6.

e. The antecedent may be omitted, especially if it is indefinite: sunt quí dicant, there are those who say; Cat. II. 6.

f. The relative pronoun at the beginning of a sentence or clause may be equivalent to a demonstrative or a personal pronoun, with or without a preceding conjunction (et, nam, sed): quí cum respondissent, and when they had replied; Cat. III. 5.

168. Interrogative Pronouns. — The masculine singular of the interrogative pronoun, as a rule, is quí, who, and of the corresponding adjective is quī, what? of what sort? But quī may be used as a pronoun and quí as an adjective: quí tē salútāvit? who greeted you? Cat. I. 7; quí eum senātor appellāvit? what senator addressed him? Cat. III. 5.

169. Indefinite Pronouns. — There are eight indefinite pronouns, as given with their meanings in 27. Quis, any one, is used chiefly after sī, nisi, né, num; quisquam, any one at all, is used chiefly in negative sentences, and in questions implying a negative: sī quid hís accidat, if anything should happen to them; B. G. III. 22. neque quisquam est tam áversus á Musís, nor is any one so hostile to the Muses; Ar. 9.

a. Nescio quis (lit. I don’t know who) is used with the force of alíquīs, some (one) or other, and in this sense does not require the subjunctive: nesciō quō pactō, in some way or other; Cat. I. 13.

b. With superlatives quīisque denotes a class: optimus quīisque, all the best men (lit. each best man).

170. Alius and alter. Alius and alter may be adjectives or pronouns.

a. Alter . . . alter mean the one . . . the other, alius . . . alius, one . . . another, aliī . . . aliī, some . . . others: hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est, one of these was killed, the other taken prisoner; B. G. I. 53.

b. Two different cases of alius may be used in the same clauses with the meaning one (some) . . . one, another (others) . . . another: aliud aliī nātūra iter ostendit, nature points out one road to one man, another to another; Sall. Cat. 2.
VERBS

171. Agreement. — A finite verb agrees with its subject in number and person: *haec cōnsul videt*, *the consul sees these things*; Cat. I. 1.

a. If there are two or more subjects, connected by *et*, *-que*, or *atque*, the verb may agree with the nearest or be plural: *Asia atque Mithridātēs nōs docuit*, *Asia and Mithridates taught us*; P. 7.

b. If singular subjects are connected by words meaning either, *neither*, the verb is usually singular: *neque agrī cultūrā nec ratiō atque ūsus belli intermittitur*, *neither the cultivation of the land nor the theory and practice of war is interrupted*; B. G. IV. 1.

c. If two singular subjects form one idea, the verb is singular: *Matrona et Sēquana dividit*, *the Marne and Seine separate*; B. G. I. 1.

d. A collective noun generally takes a singular verb, but may take a plural: *cum tanta multītūdō tēla conicerent*, *when so great a crowd threw spears*; B. G. II. 6.

e. If two or more subjects are of different persons, the first person is preferred to the other two, and the second to the third: *si tū et Tullia valētis, ego et Cicerō valēmus*, *if you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well*; Cic. Epist.

172. Impersonal Verbs. — Some verbs are used only in the indicative and subjunctive, third person singular, and in the infinitive, without a personal subject. To this class belong:—

a. Verbs meaning *it happens, it is permitted, it is necessary*, etc. Such verbs take a phrase or a clause as the subject: *quae licet recognōscās, and these things you may recall* (lit. it is permitted that you recall); Cat. I. 3.

b. The passive of some intransitive verbs, including verbs which in the active are construed with the dative (112, Note 2); *quōcumque ventum sit, wherever they came* (lit. it was come); P. 13.

c. Verbs of feeling: *mē paenitēbit, I shall repent* (lit. it will repent me); Cat. IV. 10.

d. A neuter gerundive may be used impersonally in the passive periphrastic conjugation: *erit verendum mihi, I shall have to fear*; Cat. I. 2.

Tenses of the Indicative

173. Present Indicative. — The present indicative represents action as taking place at the time of speaking or writing: *urbis*
tecta defendunt, they are defending the houses of the city; Cat. II. 13.

a. The present is often used instead of a past tense to describe an action more vividly. It is then called the historical present: litterās prōferrī iubet, he orders the letter to be produced; Cat. III. 5.

b. The historical present may be used with dum, while (195, d).

c. With diū, iam, iam diū, iam dūdum, the present is used of an action beginning in the past and continuing in the present: nimmer diū tē castra désiderant, the camp has too long been missing you; Cat. I. 5.

174. Imperfect Indicative. — The imperfect indicative represents action as going on in past time: putābam, I was thinking; Cat. III. 2.

a. The imperfect may be used in descriptions. erant duo itinera, there were two ways; B. G. I. 6.

b. The imperfect may represent an action as customary or attempted: classem hostium vidēbātis, you used to see the enemy’s fleet; P. 12. quod faciēbas, which you were preparing to do; Cat. I. 5.

c. The imperfect with iam, iam diū, iam dūdum, iam prīdem, is used instead of a progressive perfect or pluperfect: iam prīdem rapiēbat, has long been hurrying; Cat. I. 10.

175. Future Indicative. — The future indicative represents action as taking place in time to come: mē metū liberābis, you will free me from fear; Cat. I. 5.

176. Perfect Indicative. — The perfect indicative has two uses:

a. The present perfect (translated by have), representing an action as completed in the present time: audīvī, I have heard.

b. The historical perfect (English past), representing the action as an historical fact. This is the tense of narration, as the imperfect is the tense of description: ad praetōrem vēnísti, you went to the praetor; Cat. I. 8.

177. Pluperfect Indicative. — The pluperfect indicative represents action as completed before some other past action: qui convēnerant, who had assembled; Cat. III. 3.

178. Future Perfect. — The future perfect represents action which is to be completed before some other future action: sī tē interfici iussērō, residēbit coniūrātōrum manus, if I order (shall have ordered) you to be killed, there will remain a band of conspirators; Cat. I. 5.
179. In some verbs a perfect, pluperfect, or future perfect have the force of a present, past, or future: *memini,* *I remember;* *memineram,* *I remembered.*

180. Epistolary Tenses. — In letters a writer often takes the position of the receiver and uses the imperfect or historical perfect for a present, and a pluperfect for a present perfect: *haec ego scribēbam,* *I am writing this* (lit. was writing).

181. Primary and Secondary Tenses. — The present, future, and future perfect indicative, and the present and perfect subjunctive are primary tenses. The imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect indicative, and the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are secondary tenses.

**Tenses of the Subjunctive**

182. The four tenses of the subjunctive may denote the same time as the corresponding tenses of the indicative, or each tense may have a future force.

* a. In subordinate clauses future time may be expressed by the present subjunctive after a primary tense; by the imperfect after a secondary tense: *venit ut videat,* *he comes that he may see;* *vēnit ut vidēret,* *he came that he might see.*

* b. In subordinate clauses future perfect time may be expressed by the perfect subjunctive after a primary tense; by the pluperfect after a secondary tense: *he says that if he goes (shall have gone), dicit si ierit;* *he said that if he should go (should have gone), dixit si īset.*

* c. In both clauses of conditional sentences the present subjunctive may denote future time, and the imperfect may denote present time (198).*

183. Sequence of Tenses. — In subordinate clauses the tense of the subjunctive depends on the following general rule: The present (or perfect) subjunctive is used after a primary tense; the imperfect (or pluperfect) subjunctive is used after a secondary: *venit ut videat,* *he comes to see;* *rogābō quid fēceris,* *I shall ask what you did;* *vēnit ut videret,* *he came to see.*

* a. The historical present may be regarded as either primary or secondary, and hence may take either sequence.

* b. The present perfect, though properly a primary tense, often takes the secondary sequence: *mihi ut satis esset prōvisum est,* *I have arranged that there should be ample protection;* Cat. II. 12.
Uses of the Indicative

184. In principal clauses the indicative is used to express direct statements of fact and questions of fact. The negative is non: dècrèvit quondam senátus, the Senate once decreed; Cat. I. 2. meministínè mè dícere, do you remember that I said? Cat. I. 3.

185. The indicative is used in the following subordinate clauses:
   b. Parenthetical clauses with ut, as: ut saepe díxí, as I have often said; Cat. I. 9.
   c. Clauses of comparison with ut . . . sic, as . . . so: ut saepe homínês . . . sic híc morbus . . . ; Cat. I. 13.
   d. Certain types of relative (191), temporal (195), causal (196), concessive (197), conditional (198) clauses.

The Subjunctive in Principal Clauses

186. The subjunctive expresses action as willed, desired, or possible. Accordingly we distinguish:—
   a. The subjunctive of will, or volitive subjunctive.
   b. The subjunctive of desire, or optative subjunctive.
   c. The subjunctive of possibility, or potential subjunctive.

187. In principal clauses the volitive subjunctive may express:
   a. An exhortation, in the first person plural of the present tense (negative, nè): optémus, let us wish; Cat. II. 7.
   b. A command, in the third person of the present tense (negative, nè): sècèdant improbì, let the ill-disposed begone; Cat. I. 13. nè patiantur, let them not allow; Cat. II. 4.

188. In principal clauses the subjunctive of wish or desire (optative subjunctive) takes the present tense to imply that the desire may be realized; the imperfect to imply that the desire is not now realized; the pluperfect to imply that the desire was not realized. Utìnam may be used with the present, and generally is used with the other tenses. The negative regularly is nè: utìnam dì immortálês düint, O that the gods may give; Cat. I. 9; utìnam suàs cópiàs édúxisset, O that he had taken his forces; Cat. II. 2.

189. In principal clauses the subjunctive may express action as possible or conditional (potential subjunctive), and is translated by may, might, can, could, should, would. The negative is non: dícat alíquis, some one may say.
The Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses

190. The subjunctive is used in the following subordinate clauses:

a. Purpose clauses (193).
b. Result clauses (194).
c. Clauses of proviso (199).
d. Indirect questions (202).
e. Certain types of: relative clauses (192), temporal clauses (195), causal clauses (196), concessive clauses (197), conditional clauses (198), noun clauses (203), direct questions (201).

Relative Clauses

191. The indicative is used in the following relative clauses:

a. Clauses that state what person or thing the antecedent is (determinative clauses): hōs, qui exercitum déservīrunt, those men who have deserted the army; Cat. II. 3.

   Note. — Determinative clauses are used as pronouns, and must be distinguished from descriptive clauses which are used as adjectives (192).

b. Clauses that state a fact parenthetically, or that add a fact not necessary to the main statement (parenthetical clauses): Santonum finēs, qui nōn longē à Tolōsātium finibus ābsunt, the country of the Santones, which is not far from the country of the Tolosates; B. G. I. 10.

192. Relative clauses that state what kind of person or thing the antecedent is, are called descriptive or characteristic clauses. The subjunctive is used in descriptive clauses, if they are essential to the completeness of the sentence; otherwise, the indicative is used (191, b). The preceding independent clause often contains a statement of existence like est qui, sunt qui: sunt qui dīcant, there are some who say; Cat. II. 6; quam diū quisquam ērit, qui tē dēfendere audeat, as long as there will be a man who dares to defend you; Cat. I. 2.

   a. The subjunctive is used in relative clauses to denote purpose or result (193, 194): ut praesto esset ille, qui fugiēntēs exciperet, that he might be on hand to cut off the fugitives; Cat. III. 4; nēmō tam improbus, qui nōn fateātur, no one so depraved as not to admit; Cat. I. 2.

   b. The subjunctive is used in relative clauses to denote cause, concession, or condition: qui (= cum ego) māgnō in periculō
essem, since I was in great peril; Cat. I. 8; Cethègus, qui (= cum is) respondisset, Cethegus who (although he) had replied; Cat. III. 5; mihi ferreus, qui (= sì is) nón suum dolórem lènierit, to me (he would seem) hard-hearted, who (if he) did not soothe his grief; Cat. IV. 6.

c. The subjunctive is used in relative clauses to denote obligation, after dignus, indignus, idöneus: dignós, quórum salútém commendétis, worthy to have you entrust their safety (lit. whose safety you should entrust); P. 5.

Purpose Clauses

193. The subjunctive with ut, nè, or a relative may express purpose: ut timère désinam, that I may cease to fear; Cat. I. 7; ac nè longum sit, and not to be tedious; Cat. III. 5; praetörem misi, qui efferret, I sent a praetor to bring; Cat. III. 3.

a. In clauses containing a comparative, quó (= ut eó) is used instead of ut to express purpose: quó facilius prohibère possit, that he may be able to prevent more easily; B. G. I. 8.

b. Purpose may be expressed also by a gerund (227), a gerundive (226), or by a supine (229).

Result Clauses

194. The subjunctive with ut, ut nón, or a relative may express result: mòns impendèbat, ut prohibère possent, a mountain was overhanging, so that they could prevent; B. G. I. 6.

a. There is often in the principal clause a correlative word meaning so, such, so great, as ita, sic, tam, tális, tantus, is, iste: tam improbus, qui nón fateātur, so depraved that he does not admit; Cat. I. 2.

Temporal Clauses

195. In temporal clauses: —

a. Ubi, ut (when), postquam, posteáquam, cum primum, simul atque, take the indicative, usually the perfect, sometimes the historical present: ubi sè parātós esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua incendunt, when they thought they were ready, they burned their towns; B. G. I. 5.

b. Cum (when) takes the indicative to define the time of the action of the main verb; the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive to describe the circumstances of the main action: tum, cum ex urbe éiciébam, at the time when I drove him from the city; Cat.
III. 2; cum haesitaret, quaesivi, when he hesitated, I asked; Cat. II. 6.

Note. — Cum may denote cause or concession in connection with time.

c. Cum, whenever, introducing repeated action, generally takes the indicative, but may take the subjunctive: cum aliquid mandaret, whenever he had given a commission; Cat. III. 7.

d. Dum, meaning while, generally takes the indicative historical present (173, b): dum moratur, while he delayed (lit. delays); B. G. I. 39.

e. Dum, quoad, or quam diū, meaning as long as, take the indicative: quam diū quisquam erit, as long as there shall be any one; Cat. I. 2.

f. Dum, dōnec, or quoad, meaning until, take the indicative of an actual event, but the subjunctive of an expected event: quod potuit, restitit, he resisted as long as he could; B. G. IV. 12; dum nāvēs eō conveniērent exspectāvit, he waited until the ships should arrive; B. G. IV. 23.

g. Antequam and priusquam take the indicative to denote an actual event, but the subjunctive to denote an expected event: priusquam pervēnērunt, before they arrived; B. G. I. 53. priusquam quācquam cōnārētur, before he should attempt anything; B. G. I. 19.

Causal Clauses

196. In causal clauses: —

a. Quod, quia, quoniam, and quandō take the indicative when the speaker or writer gives his own reason, but the subjunctive when he gives another’s reason, or a reason not surely known by himself: quod stantem urbem reliquit, quantō illum maerōre esse adflictum putātis, because he left the city standing, with what sorrow do you think he has been filled? Cat. II. 1; urbs mihi laetāri vidētur, quod tantam pestem prōiēcerit, the city seems to me to rejoice, because (as she says) she has cast out so great an evil; Cat. II. 1.

b. Cum, meaning since or because, and quī (= cum is) take the subjunctive: quae cum ita sint, since these things are so; Cat. I. 5.

Concessive Clauses

197. Concessive clauses grant or concede something. They are formed as follows: —
a. Quamquam, although, takes the indicative: *quamquam sunt hostēs, although they are enemies;* Cat. II. 12.

b. Etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, *even if, although,* generally take the indicative, but may take the subjunctive like conditional sī (198): *etsi prope exācta aestās erat, although summer was almost over;* B. G. III. 28.

c. Cum, quamvis, and qui (= cum is), although, take the subjunctive: *cum id posset infinitiāri, although he could have denied it;* Cat. III. 11; Cethēgus, qui respondiisset, Cethegus, who (although he) had replied; Cat. III. 10.

**Conditional Sentences**

198. Conditional sentences are complex sentences, one clause of which expresses a condition, the other a conclusion. The connective may be sī, sīn, nisi, or a relative. The negative is non. The condition may be of the following kinds: —

a. Present condition: —

1. Stated as a fact; present indicative: *sī vincit, bene est, if he is conquering, it is well.*

2. Contrary to fact; imperfect subjunctive: *sī vinceret, bene esset, if he were conquering, it would be well.*

b. Past condition: —

1. Stated as a fact; a past indicative: *sī vicit, bene fuit, if he conquered, it was well.*

2. Contrary to fact; pluperfect subjunctive: *sī vicisset, bene fuisset, if he had conquered, it would have been well.*

c. Future condition: —

1. More probable (*shall, will*); future or future perfect: *sī vincet, bene erit, if he conquers (shall conquer), it will be well.*

2. Less probable (*should, would*); present or perfect subjunctive: *sī vincat, bene sit, if he should conquer, it would be well.*

   Note 1. — The verb in the conclusion may differ in form from the verb of the condition, as, for example, when command, wish, or exhortation is to be expressed.

   Note 2. — In the conclusion of a condition contrary to fact, the verb may be in the indicative (the past tenses): —

   a. In expressions of *ability, duty, or necessity.*

   b. With either of the periphrastic conjugations: (sī tabernae incēnsae essent), quid futūrum fuit? *what would have happened?*
Cat. IV. 8; sì privátus esset, erat délìgendum, if he were a private citizen, he would deserve to be chosen; P. 17.

Note 3. — For conditional sentences in indirect discourse, see 218.

Clauses of Proviso

199. The subjunctive is used with modo, dum, dummodo, if only, provided, so long as, to express a proviso. The negative is nē: dum modo periculum dépellátur, if only the danger be removed; Cat. II. 7.

Subjunctive by Attraction

200. In clauses depending on a subjunctive or on an infinitive, the verb may be put in the subjunctive "by attraction," as potuisset in the following: cum exercitūs, quibuscumque ex gentibus potuisset, comparāsset; P. 4.

Subjunctive in Questions

201. The subjunctive is used in direct questions expressing deliberation or perplexity, surprise or indignation, possibility, obligation, propriety. The negative is nōn: quid tē invītem? why should I invite you? Cat. I. 9; quis possit? who would be able? Cat. II. 5; tū agrīs ōrnātus sis? can you be rich in lands? Cat. II. 8.

202. The subjunctive is used in indirect questions: videō quis habeat Etrūriam, I see who holds Etruria, Cat. II. 3.

Noun Clauses

203. A clause may be used as the subject or object of a verb, or in some other case relation. It is then called a noun clause or substantive clause. Noun clauses may have the verb in the indicative, subjunctive, or infinitive.

204. Indicative Noun Clauses. — A noun clause beginning with the conjunction quod, that, takes the indicative: rēs quod omnēs sē dēdidērunt, the fact that all surrendered; P. 16.

205. Subjunctive Noun Clauses. — Noun clauses beginning with ut, nē, quīn, quōminus, or an interrogative word take the subjunctive, as follows:

a. Noun clauses with ut or nē are used after verbs meaning
advise, command, determine, decree; induce, permit, persuade, request, urge, desire, wish: décrévit senátus ut consúl vidérét né quid rés pública détřimenti caperet, the Senate decreed that the consul should see to it that the republic suffered no harm; Cat. I. 2.

Note. — After verbs meaning advise, command, etc., the subjunctive may be used without ut. The subjunctive may then be a quoted imperative (215, c).

b. Noun clauses with ut or nē are used after verbs meaning fear. Here nē means lest or that, ut means that . . . not: verēri ut habeam satis praesidī, to fear, that I may not have enough protection; Cat. IV. 7.

c. Noun clauses with ut are used after verbs meaning accomplish, cause, and the like; also after verbs meaning expect, wait for: vestra admurmurātiō facit ut agnoscere videāmini, your murmuring makes it clear that you recognize; P. 13.

d. Noun clauses with ut are used with verb phrases and impersonal verbs meaning it happens, it remains, it is permitted, it is necessary, customary, advantageous: accidit ut esset lūna plēna, it happened that there was full moon; B. G. IV. 29.

Note. — Sometimes without ut: licet recognóssās, you may recall (lit. it is permitted that you recall); Cat. I. 3.

e. Noun clauses with nē, quin, or quōminus are used after verbs meaning hinder, prevent, refuse; and with quin, if a negative is expressed or implied, after words meaning doubt, be ignorant, and sometimes hesitate: neque mé impediet quōminus défendam, nor will it prevent me from defending; P. 19. nēmini dubium est quin plūrium imperatór possit, it is doubtful to no one that the general is preëminent; P. 15.

f. Noun clauses beginning with an interrogative word are indirect questions (202).

206. Infinitive Noun Clauses. — An infinitive with subject accusative may be used in a noun clause after verbs meaning say, think, etc. (212).

Use of the Imperative

207. The imperative is used to express command, in the second person of the present tense, and in the second and third

---

1 Except iubeō, which takes the infinitive (212).
2 With verbs meaning permit or wish the infinitive may be used (212).
3 Used affirmatively, these verbs take the infinitive (212).
persons of the future: proficiscere; ēduc omnēs tuōs, depart; take out all your companions; Cat. I. 5.

208. Negative command (prohibition) in the second person may be expressed by nōli (nōlite) + a present infinitive: nōlite dubitāre, do not hesitate; P. 23.

Tenses of the Infinitive

209. The present infinitive denotes the same time as that of the principal verb; the perfect, time before; the future, time after that of the principal verb; that is, the time denoted is relative: dicit sē audīre, he says that he hears. dicit sē auditūrum esse, he says that he will hear. dixit sē audīre, he said he was hearing; dixit sē audivisse, he said that he had heard.

a. Periphrastic Future Infinitive. — As a substitute for a future infinitive, fore or futūrum esse with ut and the subjunctive of the given verb may be used. This construction is necessary when the verb has no future participle: vidēbamus fore ut nēmō eis resisteret, we saw that no one would resist them.

b. A past tense of dēbeō, oportet, or possum is often used with a present infinitive to express ought to have, might (could) have: tē dūcī oportēbat, you ought to have been led; Cat. I. 1.

Uses of the Infinitive

210. The infinitive with or without a subject may be used as the subject of a verb, as a predicate nominative, or in apposition: est mihi tanti subīre, it is worth while for me to undergo; Cat. II. 7.

211. The infinitive without a subject may be used as the object of transitive verbs, or the complement of verbs meaning can, dare, begin, ought, seem, hesitate, etc.: quī dēfendere audeat, who dares to defend; Cat. I. 2; vastāre cupientem, desiring to devastate; Cat. I. 1.

212. The infinitive with subject accusative may be used after verbs meaning say, think, know, perceive, etc.; also with iubeō; vetō, dēcernō, prohibeo, sinō, cōgō (compel), cupiō, patior, volō: tabellās prōferrī iussimus, we ordered the tablets to be produced; Cat. III. 5.

213. Historical Infinitive. — The infinitive may be used with a subject nominative in lively narration. It is then called the

---

1 For the subjunctive with imperō see 205, a.
historical infinitive, and is equivalent to an imperfect or perfect indicative: Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre, Caesar was demanding grain of the Haeduans; B. G. I. 16.

**Indirect Discourse**

214. When a sentence is quoted in dependence upon a verb of saying, knowing, or the like, the quotation is said to be an indirect statement or indirect discourse: direct, ibimus, we shall go; indirect, (dixerunt sē) itūros esse, they said they would go; B. G. I. 13.

215. Moods in Indirect Discourse. — In indirect discourse, a principal verb is generally in the infinitive, standing for a direct indicative; a subordinate verb is in the subjunctive, standing for a direct indicative or subjunctive. In other words, when direct discourse is made indirect:

a. A principal declarative verb in the indicative becomes infinitive: direct, meriti sumus, we have deserved; indirect, dixerunt sē meritos esse, they said they had deserved; B. G. I. 11.

b. A subordinate verb, if indicative, becomes subjunctive; if subjunctive, remains so: direct, id sī fiet, if this happens (shall happen); indirect, intellegēbat id sī fieret, he knew that if this should happen; B. G. I. 10.

c. An imperative verb becomes subjunctive: direct, rever-timini (imperative), return; indirect, (dixit) reverterentur, he said they should return; B. G. I. 7.


216. Tenses in Indirect Discourse. — The tenses of the infinitive are used according to 209; those of the subjunctive, according to the rule for sequence (183).

a. A future tense in a direct subordinate clause becomes present subjunctive in indirect discourse, if it depends on a verb in the present; imperfect, if it depends on a verb in a past tense: direct, sī cōnābimini, if you (shall) attempt; indirect, sī cōnentur, if they attempt, B. G. I. 8; direct, sī pācem populus faciet, if the people (shall) make peace; indirect, sī . . . faceret, if the people should make peace, B. G. I. 13.
b. A future perfect tense in a direct subordinate clause becomes perfect subjunctive, if it depends on a verb in the present; pluperfect, if it depends on a verb in a past tense: intellegō si iste pervēnerit, I know that if he goes (shall have gone, in dir. disc.); Cat. I. 12; eōs, qui restitissent, infirmōs fore putābam, I was thinking that those who should remain (restiterint in dir. disc.), would be powerless; Cat. III. 2.

217. Pronouns in Indirect Discourse. — In changing from the first to the third, ego becomes sé; meus or noster becomes suus. In changing from the second person to the third, tū becomes ille or is; tuus or vester becomes suus or the genitive of is: mihi minus dubitationis datur, I feel less hesitation, becomes sibi minus dubitationis dārī; B. G. I. 14.

218. Conditions in Indirect Discourse. — The verb of the conditional clause in indirect discourse is always in the subjunctive (215, b), the tense depending on the rule for sequence (183). The verb of the conclusion, being a principal verb, is generally in the infinitive (215); in the conclusion of a less probable condition (198, c) the future infinitive is used.

In conditions contrary to fact (198) note the following: —

a. The verb of the conditional clause remains unchanged.

b. The conclusion, if active, is expressed by an infinitive consisting of the participle in -ūrus + fuisse: direct, vēnissem, I would have gone; indirect, sé sé ventūrum fuisse, he would have gone; B. G. I. 34.

c. The conclusion, if passive, is expressed by futūrum fuisse ut with an imperfect subjunctive: direct, sī pūgnāvissent, victī essent; indirect, sī pūgnāvissent, futūrum fuisse ut vincerentur, if they had fought, they would have conquered.

d. The conclusion, if indicative (198, note 2), is expressed in indir. disc. by the perfect infinitive: direct, sī nōn esset (cīvis), asciscendus fuit; indirect . . . asciscendum fuisse, if he were not (a citizen), he ought to have been received (as one); Ar. 2.

219. Informal Indirect Discourse. — When a quotation depends on a verb of saying not expressed but implied in the sentence, the indirect discourse is said to be informal: sī dicere vellet, fēcī potestātem, if he wished to speak, I gave him permission; Cat. III. 5.
Participles

220. Participles are verbal adjectives, and agree with nouns in gender, number, and case (156). The active participles are the present and the future; the passive are the perfect and the future (or gerundive). The negative is nōn.

   a. Deponent and semi-deponent verbs have four participles, all active in meaning, except the gerundive, which is always passive.

221. The present participle denotes the same time as the main verb of the clause or sentence in which it stands: videor vidēre hanc urbem concidentem, I seem to see this city falling.

222. The perfect participle denotes time before that of the main verb. It may be used to modify a noun directly, as an adjective, or to form the compound tenses of the passive voice: his rēbus cognitis discessit, having learned of these things, he departed.

   a. The perfect participle of deponent verbs is sometimes used as if present: isdem ducibus úsus, employing the same men as guides; B. G. II. 7.

223. The present and the perfect participle are sometimes to be translated by a relative clause, or by a clause expressing time, cause, condition, concession: Pompēiō postulanti, to Pompey who demands; P. 19. tē nōn sentientem, though you do not notice (them); Cat. I. 2.

224. The future active participle is used with the verb sum to form the active periphrastic conjugation, and denotes future or intended action: cum sit habitūrus, since he is going to have; Cat. II. 11.

225. The future passive participle is used with sum to form the passive periphrastic conjugation, and denotes necessity or obligation: māgna grātia habenda est, great gratitude (must be felt) is due; Cat. I. 5.

   a. The passive periphrastic forms of intransitive verbs are often used impersonally: mihi vivendum esse, that I must live; Cat. II. 12.

226. The Gerundive. — The future passive participle (220) when used in direct (attributive) agreement with a noun, is called the gerundive. It is so used in the following cases, singular and plural:

   a. Genitive: condiciōnem cōnservandae reī pūblicae, the task of saving the republic; Cat. II. 7.
b. Dative: rare in Cicero.
c. Accusative: ad déponendam audáciá, to lay aside your boldness; Cat. I. 2.
d. Ablative: suppliciō levándō, by alleviating the penalty; Cat. IV. 5.

Note.—A gerundive in the accusative with ad, or in the genitive with causā, may express purpose: vitandae suspiciónis causā, for the purpose of avoiding suspicion; Cat. I. 8.

The Gerund

227. The gerund is a verbal noun, found in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. The present infinitive is used for the nominative.

a. Genitive: dicendī exercitātiō, skill in (of) speaking; Cat. III. 5.
b. Dative: rare in classical Latin.
c. Accusative: tempestivō ad nāvigandum mari, the sea being fit for sailing; P. 12.
d. Ablative: non crēdendō, by not believing; Cat. I. 12.

Note.—A gerund in the accusative with ad, or in the genitive with causā, may express purpose: praeandī causā, for the purpose of plundering; B. G. II. 17.

228. In the genitive or ablative a transitive gerund may take an object, but the gerundive is more common. If the object is a neuter adjective or a neuter pronoun, only the gerund is used: artem véra ac falsa dīiūdicandī, the crt of distinguishing the true from the false. After prepositions the gerundive is regularly used (226, c).

The Supine

229. The supine is a verbal noun found in the accusative and ablative cases.

a. The supine in -um is used with verbs of motion to express purpose: quōs tú ad mé salútātum miserās, whom you had sent to greet me; Cat. I. 4.
b. The supine in -ū is used to denote specification, especially with adjectives meaning easy, good, strange, or the opposite: optimum factū, the best thing to do; Cat. I. 12.
ADVERBS

230. Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs. They may express time, manner, degree, place, etc.

   a. Nē is the negative adverb for commands and expressions of will or desire; nōn is used in statements and questions of fact, and with infinitives, participles, and gerunds.
   b. Two negatives generally make an affirmative: nōn nēminem, some one, more than one; Cat. IV. 5.

PREPOSITIONS

231. A preposition shows a relation between a word in the accusative or ablative case and some other word.

   a. The prepositions used with the accusative are ad, adversus, ante, apud, circā, circum, circiter, cis, citrā, contrā, extrā, in, infrā, inter, intrā, iūxtā, ob, penes, per, post, praeter, prope, propter, secundum, sub, suprā, trāns, ultrā, versus.
   b. The prepositions used with the ablative are ā, ab, abs, cum, dē, ē, ex, in, prae, prō, sine, sub.
   c. With the accusative, in and sub denote motion to a place, with the ablative, rest in a place.

CONJUNCTIONS

232. Conjunctions connect words, phrases, or clauses of equal rank, or principal with subordinate clauses.

   a. Coördinate conjunctions (connecting expressions of equal rank): et, -que, ac, atque, etiam, quoque; aut, sive, vel; nec, neque; at, autem, enim, nam, sed, tamen.
There is no fixed rule for the order of words in a Latin sentence. A common order is (1) the subject with its modifiers, (2) the modifiers of the verb, (3) the verb.

a. To produce emphasis, a word may stand out of its normal position: patēre tua cōnsilia nōn sentīs? do you not see the exposure of your plots? Cat. I. 1.

b. Nouns in the genitive usually follow the words they modify, but precede causā, for the sake, gratiā, on account of: ex faucibus fātī; pācis causā.

c. A vocative generally stands after one or more words of the sentence: quae tēcum, Catilina, sic agit; Cat. I. 7.

d. Demonstrative and intensive pronouns and adjectives of quantity usually precede their nouns; other adjectives precede or follow, according to the emphasis intended: in hāc urbe. The adjective Rōmānus regularly follows its noun: populus Rōmānus.

e. An adjective modifier may be separated from its noun by a preposition: summā cum laude, with the highest praise.

f. Relative pronouns and interrogative words generally stand first in their clauses, unless governed by prepositions.

g. A preposition generally stands before its object, but cum is an enclitic with personal, reflexive, and relative pronouns: tēcum, quibuscum, sēcum.

h. The conjunctions autem, enim, and vērō do not stand first in a sentence, but second or third, igitur usually second. With nē . . . quidem the emphatic word comes between.

i. Inquam and inquit stand after one or more words of a direct quotation: “refer,” inquis, “ad senātum.”

j. Adverbs regularly stand before the words they modify. But fērē, paene, prope, usually follow.

234. Period. — A period is a sentence in which the subordinate phrases or clauses all stand before the main verb, the thought thus being suspended till the end of the sentence. The periodic style is common in Latin; see Cat. III. lines 1–7.
FIGURES OF SPEECH

235. Anaphora is the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive clauses or sentences: intus insidiae sunt, intus periculum est, intus est hostis, within are snares; within, the danger; within, the enemy; Cat. II. 5.

236. Antithesis is the placing of words in contrast or opposition: nōn aliēns praecēptis, sed suis imperiīs, not by the precepts of others, but by his own command; P. 10.

237. Asyndeton is the omission of a connective: frigus, sitim, famem ferre poterat, he could bear cold, thirst, hunger; Cat. III. 7.

238. Chiasmus. — When two similar phrases have the order of words reversed, the figure is called chiasmus: pācis ōrnāmenta, subsidia bellī; P. 2.

239. Climax ("ladder") is a series of phrases or clauses arranged with increasing force: nihil agis, nihil mōliris, nihil cōgitās, you do nothing, plan nothing, think of nothing; Cat. I. 3.

240. Hendiadys ("one through two") is a figure in which two nouns of the same case are connected by a conjunction, when we should expect one noun to modify the other: dēclīnātiōne et corpore, by a turning aside of the body; Cat. I. 6.

241. Irony is saying the opposite of what is meant, when the falsity is evident: crēdō, erit verendum mihi, I suppose I shall have to fear; Cat. I. 2.

242. Litotes is a negative statement used instead of the equivalent affirmative: nōn multa, few; Cat. I. 6.

243. Metaphor is an implied resemblance: sentīna reī públicae, the dregs of the state; Cat. I. 5.

244. Metonymy is the use of one name for another suggested by it: duodecim secūrēs, for duo praetōrēs; see note P. l. 402.

245. Polysyndeton is the repetition of a connective, as et, with several words or clauses: turpēm et infīrmam et abiectam, base and weak and downcast; Cat. IV. 10.

246. Preterition is a figure by which one pretends to omit what he really inserts and emphasizes: nōn dicam duo bella esse cōnfecta, I will not say that two wars were ended; P. 20.

247. Zeugma is a connection of two words with a verb which strictly applies to only one of them: hic locus acervīs corporum et sanguine redundāvit, this place was filled with heaps of bodies, and flowed with blood; Cat. III. 10.
ROMAN CALENDAR

248. The Roman year was designated by the names of the two consuls holding office for that year, as if we should say, "during the presidency of Washington." The names were in the ablative case with cōnsulibus, forming an ablative absolute: Lepidō et Tullō cōnsulibus Cat. I. 6.

a. The Romans did not number the days of the month as we do, but called the first day the Calends (Kalendae), the fifth (seventh of March, May, July, and Oct.) the Nones (Nōnae), and the thirteenth (fifteenth of March, May, July, and October) the Ides (Īdūs).

The days between the Calends and the Nones were reckoned as so many days each before the Nones; the days between the Nones and the Ides as so many days each before the Ides; the days after the Ides as so many days each before the Calends of the next month. But they counted both the day from which and the day to which they reckoned. Therefore, to determine a date falling before the Calends, add two to the number of days in the current month before subtracting the given ordinal.

Thus, the phrase ante diem duodecimum Kalendās Novembris means Oct. 21, for \(31 + 2 - 12 = 21\).

b. A phrase like ante diem quintum Kal. Apr. is idiomatic, for which we should expect diēs quintus (or diē quintō) ante Kal. Apr.

ROMAN NAMES OF PERSONS

249. It was customary for Romans to have three names: a praenōmen (individual name), a nōmen (name of the gēns or tribe), and a cognōmen (family name): Mārcus Tullius Cicerō.

a. There were less than twenty praenomina, such as Gāius, Gnaeus, Mārcus, Pūlius, etc. The nomen ended in -ius. The cognomen often originated as a nickname: Cicerō, chick'pea.

b. Women had no personal names, but were given the feminine form of the tribe name: Tullia, a daughter of Cicero.
LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

BASED ON CICERO

Introductory Note. — The following thirty lessons in prose composition are intended to furnish a general review of the principles of syntax, as found in the orations read. Questions, commands, conditions, and the independent uses of the subjunctive, are treated in the first seven lessons, because of their importance and early use in Cicero. Other topics are presented in the usual order of the grammars. The vocabulary, with few exceptions, is confined to the orations read. In the connected passages at the end of each lesson, the pupil should consult the text upon which it is based, rather than the general vocabulary. The references to grammars are explained on p. 181.

LESSON I

Indicative Questions

1. Direct questions: 88;1 Bur. 363; A. 330; B. 162; G. 450; H. 378; HB. 231.

2. Alternative or double questions: 89; Bur. 372; A. 334; B. 162, 4; G. 458; H. 380, 1; HB. 234.

3. Answers: 91; Bur. 370; A. 336; B. 162, 5; G. 471; H. 379; HB. 232.


1See Grammatical Appendix.

346
Note 1.—The connectives in double questions may be: —
   I. utrum ... an
   II. -ne ... an
   III. — ... an

Note 2.—In the second member or not is expressed by annōn, or necne. The latter is used rarely in direct questions, but often in indirect.

Exercise 1 (Cat. I. Chapters 1, 2)

1. Who delivered the orations against Catiline? 2. Where was the first oration delivered? 3. How many orations were delivered against the same conspirators? 4. Into what strongly-fortified place were the senators called together? 5. Why were all good citizens afraid? 6. Have you not heard the decree of the Senate and the plan of the consul? 7. Will the number of the enemy increase? 8. Does not the consul condemn himself for (of)¹ inactivity? He does (he condemns). 9. Patriots will not plot the ruin of the republic, will they? 10. Do we seem to be doing enough for the republic, or not? 11. By whom was Gaius Gracchus killed? 12. Gaius Gracchus was the son of Cornelia, was he not? 13. Were the Gracchi patriots, or did they desire to devastate Italy with fire and sword (slaughter)? 14. Will Catiline see the eyes of many who are watching him? No (he will not see). 15. To whom shall we intrust [the welfare of]¹ the republic?

Exercise 2 (Cat. I. 1, 2)

Catiline has too long abused the patience of the people. His boldness has been unbridled. But he will not carry out (perficio) his designs, if the consul does (fut. tense) his duty by (enough for) the republic. For the Senate has intrusted to Cicero [the welfare of] the republic. Once:

¹ Words in parentheses () are explanatory or to be used in translation; words in brackets [ ] are not to be translated.
citizens were put to death because of a suspicion of insurrection. And so the consul has ordered (iubeō) Catiline to be arrested, and will do what ought (oportet) to be done.

LESSON II

Commands

1. The imperative: 207; Bur. 931; A. 448; B. 281; G. 266; H. 560; HB. 495.
2. The subjunctive of command: 187, b; Bur. 768; A. 439; B. 275; G. 263; H. 559; HB. 501.
3. Negative command (prohibition): 208; Bur. 934; A. 450; B. 276; G. 271; H. 561; HB. 501.
4. The vocative: 96; Bur. 389; A. 340; B. 171; G. 201; H. 402; HB. 400.

Note 1. — Dic, dūc, and fac are used for dice, dūce, face.
Note 2. — In commands of the third person, the negative is nē. Compare the following:

Positive                Negative
2 pers. scribe, scribite, write. nōlī (nōlīte) scribere, do not write.
3 pers. scribat, let him write. nē scribat, let him not write.
        scribant, let them write. nē scribant, let them not write.

Note 3. — Distinguish between let used in translating the subjunctive of command and let meaning allow, which requires a separate Latin word: sine (let, allow) eōs scribere.

Exercise 1 (Cat. I. 3, 4)

1. Send two Roman1 knights to the consul before daybreak (light). 2. Call all patriots together and encourage them. 3. Fortify and strengthen your homes, citizens, with stronger (greater) guards. 4. Let them not condemn the consul for (of) inactivity. 5. Let Catiline be arrested and put to death. 6. Let all good men say [that] it was done too late. 7. Marcus Tullius, will you allow (patior) the enemies of the republic to live? 8. Don’t change your mind.

1 The adjective Rōmānus regularly follows its noun.
9. Be not lax in [the midst of] these dangers. 10. Lead out all the forces of the state and free us from danger. 11. Fear the guards of the city, Catiline, and lay no plots (plot nothing) in your camp in Etruria. 12. Who will defend you, Catiline? 13. Were you not hemmed-in on-all-sides? 14. Were your plans not clearer to me than day (light)? 15. Was your conspiracy confined within (by) the walls of a private house or the walls of the city?

**Exercise 2 (Cat. I. 3, 4)**

Were you not at the house (domī) of Laeca, Catiline? The walls of that private house have not contained the voices of your conspirators. My guards have surrounded you, and you will not be able to lift-a-finger (move yourself). You¹ have planned for (dē) the destruction of the city, but I¹ for her safety. Listen-to (hear) the opinions of these senators. Those men whom you have chosen will not set-fire-to the city, but will be patriotic citizens.

**LESSON III**

*Subjunctive in Independent Sentences*

1. Hortatory, expressing exhortation: 187, a; Bur. 768; A. 439; B. 273; G. 263; H. 559; HB. 500.
2. Optative, expressing a wish; 188; Bur. 773; A. 441; B. 279; G. 260; H. 558; HB. 510.
3. Potential, expressing possibility: 189; Bur. 777; A. 446; B. 280; G. 257; H. 552; HB. 516.

*Note 1.* — For the independent subjunctive in commands, see Lesson II; in deliberative questions, see Lesson VII.

*Note 2.* — The negative for hortatory and optative sentences is regularly nē; for potential sentences, nōn.

¹ Use a pronoun.
Exercise 1 (Cat. I. 5, 6)

1. Let us defend the city with all our forces. 2. May the consul defend the city. 3. O that (would that, utinam) the consul were defending the city. 4. Would that the consul had defended us against (ab) this band of conspirators. 5. Let us not say [that] the consul was too cruel. 6. O that you had gone to the camp of the enemy. 7. Some one (aliquis) may think [that] Jupiter is not the most ancient guardian of the city. 8. You may [possibly] say [that] the gates are open and [that] many leading men have fled. 9. May all good citizens be grateful (have gratitude) to the immortal gods, who have checked these wicked attempts. 10. Let us do what (that which) is most expedient (useful) for the common safety. 11. Did you not stand in the Comitium, ready to kill the consuls and the chief men of the state? 12. Offer to this young man a better gift than a sword and a torch. 13. O that he were offering a better gift. 14. Let them not stand in the Comitium (Lesson II, Note 2). 15. Did they stand in the Comitium or in the Forum?

Exercise 2 (Cat. I. 5, 6)

Let Catiline depart with all his friends and go to the camp of Manlius. He has often attacked (peto) the consul-elect and his rivals. By this time (iam) all know his life and hate him. They are unwilling [to have] him live (him to live) in the city which he dooms (calls) to destruction. They fear the dagger which has been consecrated by sacred [rites]. May the good fortune of the Roman people stand-in-the-way-of his madness (dat.).
LESSON IV

The Infinitive

1. Tenses of the infinitive: 209; Bur. 939; A. 486; B. 270; G. 281; H. 617; HB. 472.

2. The infinitive without subject: 211; Bur. 951; A. 456; B. 328; G. 423; H. 607; HB. 586.

3. The infinitive with subject-accusative: 212; Bur. 954; A. 459; B. 331; G. 527; H. 613; HB. 589.

4. The infinitive with possum, licet, oportet, debeo 209, b; Bur. 944; A. 486, a; B. 270; G. 254, R; H. 618; HB. 582, 3.

Note 1.—Can and could are expressed by the forms of possum: I can do this, hoc facere possum; I could (was able to) do this, hoc facere poteram.

Note 2.—May and might, denoting permission (not possibility) are expressed by licet: I may do this, licet mihi (or mē) hoc facere (lit. it is permitted me to do this).

Note 3.—Must may be expressed by oportet or necesse est; ought, by debeo or oportet: (1) I must do this, mē hoc facere necesse est (or oportet); (2) I ought to do this, hoc facere debeo, or mē hoc facere oportet.

Note 4.—To say could have done, might have done, ought to have done, Latin uses a present (not perfect) complementary infinitive.

1. I could have done this, hoc facere potui.

2. I might have done this, mihi (or mē) hoc facere licuit (permission); hoc facere potui (possibility).

3. I ought to have done this, hoc facere debui, or mē hoc facere oportuit.

Note 5.—Debeo denotes obligation based on duty to one's self; oportet denotes obligation based on duty to others.

Note 6.—With oportet the person affected is expressed by the accusative; with licet, necesse est, by the dative or the accusative.

Exercise 1 (Cat. I. 7, 8)

1. Catiline was ordered (iubeo) to go into exile. 2. He said he would go into exile. 3. He is said to have gone
into exile. 4. Catiline ought to have gone into exile. 5. You know, Catiline, that you ought to have gone into exile. 6. Ought the consul to have been moved by hatred or by pity? 7. Why did you attempt to come into the Senate? 8. Did not the senators hesitate to salute him? 9. Cicero desired to do his duty by (do enough for) the republic. 10. Cicero said that he desired to do his duty by the republic. 11. Who was not able (impf.) to hear the voices of those who stood around the Senate? 12. All could have heard them a little while ago. 13. My slaves must (oportet) not fear me. 14. A slave may not (i.e. is not permitted to; Note 2) come into the Senate. 15. Let us compel all the friends of Catiline to go out with him.

Exercise 2 (Cat. I. 7, 8)

No one of (from) that great throng dared (to) salute Catiline in the Senate. For good citizens feared him, and thought he was the common enemy of them all. Did he not discern (perspiciō) their will? Would that he had heard the voice of his country, which silently (silent) spoke to (with) him.

Catiline desired to give himself into custody, but no one received him. Even his friend Metellus rejected him. And so Cicero said that he ought to leave (go out of) the city.

LESSON V

Conditional Sentences

1. Conditions stated as a fact: 198, a, b; Bur. 911; A. 515; B. 302; G. 595; H. 574; HB. 579.
2. Conditions more probable (shall, will): 198, c; Bur. 911; A. 516; B. 302; G. 595; H. 574; HB. 579, a.
3. Conditions less probable (should, would): 198, c; Bur. 915; A. 516; B. 303; G. 596; H. 576; HB. 580.
Note 1.—Latin often requires a future or future perfect where English uses a present tense: if he does (Latin shall do) this, it will be well.

Note 2.—Conditions less probable are sometimes called possible or less vivid conditions.

Note 3.—A negative condition is generally introduced by nisi, unless; if the negative is applied to a single word by sǐ nôn.

Exercise 1

1. If he was in the Forum, he heard Cicero's speech. 2. If he is in the Forum now, he is listening to (hears) Cicero's speech. 3. If he goes (Note 1) to the Forum, he will hear Cicero's speech. 4. If he should go to the Forum, he would hear Cicero's speech. 5. If Catiline should go, who would salute him? 6. If you are patriotic citizens, do not let (patrior) the enemy (to) collect their troops. 7. If we have a decree of the Senate against (in) the conspirators, let them fear its authority. 8. If Catiline did not send ahead his silver eagle, he did not wish to go to his army. 9. If I say this to Marcellus, men will lay violent (violence and) hands on me (dat.). 10. The consul will not order you to leave (go out of) the city, unless you hesitate (Note 1). 11. The consul would not order you to leave the city, unless you should hesitate. 12. If Catiline was rejected by Lepidus, he ought to have gone (Lesson IV, Note 4) to Metellus. 13. Ought we not call all good men together? 14. We ought to call all good men together. 15. How long, Catiline, do you think you can abuse our patience?

Exercise 2 (Cat. I. 9, 10)

All [men] know, Catiline, that you will never reform (correct yourself). And so a storm of unpopularity overhangs you (dat.). If you wish to declare (indicō) war upon your country (dat.), your army in Etruria is ready. Go straight to that army, and let hatred be kindled (cōnflō)
against me (dat.). Go to that band of scoundrels, with whom you may revel (subjv.) in pleasure. O that the gods had given you a better purpose (mēns). But do not think that you will ever distress the republic [as] a consul.

LESSON VI

Conditional Sentences (Continued)

1. Conditions contrary to fact: 198, a, b; Bur. 919; A. 517; B. 304; G. 597; H. 579; HB. 581.
2. Conditions with débeō, oportet, possum: 198, Note 2; Bur. 921; A. 517; B. 304; G. 597; H. 582; HB. 581.
3. Proviso: 199; Bur. 929; A. 528; B. 310; G. 573; H. 587; HB. 529.

Note.—Débeō, oportet, possum, necesse est often stand in the indicative instead of the subjunctive, in the conclusion of a condition contrary to fact. The imperfect represents present time, the perfect or pluperfect, past time: délēri exercitus potuit, si persecūti victōres essent, the army might (could) have been destroyed, if the victors had pursued.

Exercise 1

1. They will conquer, if they fight bravely. 2. They would have conquered, if they had fought more bravely. 3. If they had heard the speech, they would have praised the orator. 4. If they were listening-to (hearing) the speech now, they would praise the orator. 5. If they should hear the speech, they would praise the orator. 6. If the consul had not ordered Catiline to leave (go from) the city, he would not have gone. 7. If Cicero had feared unpopularity, he could not have saved the state. 8. We shall reach (perveniō ad) the camp before evening, provided we go by the shortest road. 9. If the friends of the con-
spirators had gone into the temple, who would have saluted them? 10. If you had spoken with (cum) them, they ought to have feared your authority. 11. If I were in Italy, I should see the cities which the Romans built (aedificō). 12. Would you encourage the soldiers, if you were the commander-in-chief? 13. Let us separate these conspirators from patriotic men. 14. Many thought that Cicero was embarrassed by the customs of the ancestors. 15. Do not fear unpopularity, but show (referō) gratitude to the Roman people, by whom you have been raised to the highest office.

Exercise 2 (Cat. I. 11–13)

I ought not to neglect the safety of my [fellow] citizens. If only Jupiter will aid us, I promise (to) you that I shall bring all things to light. Let all know that I will not give one hour to this gladiator. If I punish him, many will say that I have acted cruelly. But I shall keep him and his allies from the houses of the city and the temples of the gods.

LESSON VII

Subjunctive Questions

1. Indirect questions: 202; Bur. 846; A. 330; B. 300; G. 460; H. 649; HB. 537.
2. Double questions: 89, and a; Bur. 372; A. 334; B. 162, 4; G. 458; H. 380; HB. 234.
3. Questions of deliberation, possibility, propriety: 201; Bur. 771; A. 444; B. 277; G. 465; H. 559, 4; HB. 503.
4. Sequence of tenses: 183; Bur. 781; A. 482; B. 266; G. 509; H. 543; HB. 476.

Note 1.—Whether, in single questions, is expressed by -ne or num (without difference of meaning); in double questions, by
utrum or -ne: quaesivit salvusne esset filius, he asked whether his son was safe; quae\text{\textipa}rit utrum v\text{\textipa}rum an falsum sit, he asks whether it is true or false.

Note 2.—The future tense in indirect questions is expressed by the subjunctive of the active periphrastic conjugation: rog\text{\textipa} quid fact\text{\textipa}rus sis, I ask what you will do (are about to do); rog\text{\textipa}vi quid fact\text{\textipa}rus ess\text{\textipa}s, I asked what you would do (were about to do); rog\text{\textipa} quid faci\text{\textipa}s means I ask what you are doing.

Note 3.—The person asked is expressed by the accusative with rog\text{\textipa}; by ab, d\text{\textipa}, or ex + the ablative with quaer\text{\textipa}; by ab + the ablative with peto and postul\text{\textipa}.

Exercise 1

1. Why, O Catiline, are you an enemy of your country? 2. I ask you, Catiline, why you are an enemy. 3. I ask you, Catiline, whether you are an enemy or not. 4. The consul asked Catiline why he was an enemy. 5. The consul asked him how long he had been an enemy. 6. I ask you, whether you were an enemy of your country yesterday. 7. I ask you, Catiline, whether you will be an enemy. 8. He asked Catiline whether he would be an enemy. 9. I shall ask Catiline whether he is an enemy or a good citizen. 10. I-am-in-doubt; what shall I say about the punishment of this man? 11. Why should you go (pres. tense) [as] an ambassador to the camp of the enemy? 12. What was I to do? (not inf.; cf. what am I to do? i.e. what shall I do?) 13. I didn’t know (nesci\text{\textipa}) what I was to do. 14. Let all men declare what they have heard about the perils of the republic. 15. If you know in what peril the republic is, tell the consul (dat.). 16. He ought to have told the consul what he knew about the perils of the republic.

Exercise 2 (Cat. II. 1, 2)

At last, fellow-citizens, we know that Catiline has gone. Those weapons, with which he threatened us (dat.), we
shall no longer need (it will be necessary [for] us) to fear. Let us rejoice because there is no foe within the city-walls. Who will blame me, if I do not think that Catiline ought to be put to death now? If I had put him to death, how many would have accused me severely? Even many senators did not believe all (neut. acc. pl.) that I said.

LESSON VIII

Agreement

   2. Agreement of adjectives: 156, a, b; Bur. 629; A. 285; B. 234; G. 211; H. 394; HB. 320.
   3. Agreement of relative pronouns: 167, a, b; Bur. 703; A. 305; B. 250; G. 614; H. 396; HB. 281.
   4. Agreement of verbs: 171, a–e; Bur. 735; A. 316; B. 254; G. 211; H. 388; HB. 328.

Note.—In a compound infinitive, depending on a personal verb like dicuntur, the participle is in the nominative form: —
   1. dicuntur secūti esse, they are said to have followed.
   2. Miles dicitur secūtus esse, the soldier is said to have followed.
   3. dicitur (impersonal) militem secūtum esse, it is said that the soldier followed.

Exercise 1

1. Cicero [when] consul delivered the orations against Catiline, the senator. 2. These men said they had come [as] ambassadors. 3. All good soldiers desire to be and to seem brave. 4. Cicero said that his son and daughter were safe. 5. Many men and women, who saw the brave soldier, saluted him. 6. Gabinius was the first to be called (was called first) to the consul. 7. You and Metellus came unwillingly (unwilling). 8. Did they not assemble (come together) in-great-numbers? 9. Labor and pleas-
ure are unlike (dissimilar things). 10. Were the swords and daggers, which were in the camp, handed over to the consul? 11. Neither the lieutenant nor the praetor could overtake the men who went out of the city. 12. At last we have warded-off the sword and flame that threatened the city (dat.). 13. There came together a great number of citizens, who had heard that Cicero would deliver an oration. 14. Let all patriots thank the gods (dat.), as (that which) I have often said. 15. The temple of Jupiter was on the top of the hill.

Exercise 2 (Cat. II. 3, 4)

Do you ask from what countries the enemy have gathered their forces? They have come from Italy and Gaul. In the army of Catiline are desperate men of all classes, who would rather (prefer to) fight for (pro) their leader than for their country. If they do not know that this leader has gone out, I will tell (to) them that he has gone by the Aurelian Way. O that these young men had never lived on intimate terms with him!

Lesson IX

Pronouns

1. Personal: 162, a, b; Bur. 661; A. 295; B. 242; G. 304; H. 500; HB. 254.
2. Reflexive: 163, a–c; Bur. 666; A. 299; B. 244; G. 309; H. 502; HB. 260.
3. Possessive: 164, a, b; Bur. 618; A. 302; B. 243; G. 312; H. 501; HB. 254.
4. Relative: 167, a–c; Bur. 693; A. 304; B. 250; G. 610; H. 510; HB. 281.
5. Intensive: 166, a, b; Bur. 671; A. 298; B. 249; G. 311; H. 509; HB. 267.
Note.—Distinguish between the reflexive and the intensive pronoun. Sé is not intensive or emphatic, but gets its meaning from the fact that it refers to the subject; ipse is generally used for emphasis, though it may be reflexive: Rōmānī sē défendunt, the Romans defend themselves; Rōmānī ipsī oppidum défendunt, the Romans themselves defend the town.

Exercise 1

1. Manlius has pitched his camp against us in the pass of Etruria. 2. Manlius said he would pitch his camp in Etruria. 3. Manlius is said to have attempted to seize the pass. 4. Who will not fight for (prō) his country, which is the parent of us all? 5. Who of us will say that this is not the fairest of all lands? 6. If the praetors overtake the Allobroges, will they arrest them and seize their letters? 7. I (emphatic) gave myself into custody; why did you not receive me? 8. Fellow-citizens, you must (Lesson IV, Note 3) defend yourselves and your property against (ab) the attacks which these men are making. 9. Our ancestors themselves have left (to) us many examples of their virtues. 10. Lentulus and Cethegus, the friends of Catiline, acknowledged their seals and handwriting (hands). 11. Do you know their seals and handwriting, Marcus Tullius? 12. These men say they will escort you to the very gates of the city. 13. Catiline easily endured hunger and cold, which weaken most men. 14. He asked Catiline whether he easily endured hunger and cold. 15. The letter had been written by his own hand to (ad) his son and daughter, who were in Gaul.

Exercise 2 (Cat. II. 5, 6)

If I had known that Catiline was the companion of gladiators and desperate men, I should have compelled him to leave the city, which he wishes to destroy. You all know what slaughter and burning they have planned.
Do you think we need (it is necessary [for] us) to dread foreign nations and kings? Greater dangers are within. Let the Senate be called together, and let the whole matter be laid before the conscript fathers. Then I will ask Catiline whether Manlius, his centurion, has pitched a camp and is now waiting for him.

LESSON X

Pronouns (Continued)

1. Demonstrative: 165, a–e; Bur. 711; A. 296; B. 246; G. 305; H. 505; HB. 271.
2. Interrogative: 168; Bur. 679; A. 333; B. 90; G. 106; H. 511; HB. 275.
3. Indefinite: 169, a, b; Bur. 682; A. 309; B. 252; G. 313; H. 512; HB. 276.
4. Alius, alter: 170, a, b; Bur. 729; A. 315; B. 253; G. 319; H. 516; HB. 279.

Note 1.—Hic, iste, and ille are demonstratives of the first, second, and third persons, respectively.

Note 2.—Ullus, any, is the adjective in negative expressions, corresponding to the pronoun quisquam: sine ullō periculō, without any danger.

Note 3.—The same as is regularly expressed by idem qui (eadem quae, idem quod): ego idem sentiō quod tū, I think the same as you.

Exercise 1

1. One of the consuls was Catiline’s enemy, the other was said to be his friend. 2. Some of the conspirators went out by the Aurelian Way, others remained in the city. 3. Some witnesses said one thing, some another (170, b). 4. Every one of us knows where your friends met last night. 5. If any one should ask why the Allobroges were in the city, Lentulus could (would be able to) tell him. 6. If any one had asked why they were in the city, Lentulus
could have told (Lesson VI, Note) him. 7. Who does not know that certain of (ex) the chief men have fled? 8. These soldiers fought most valiantly; those guarded the camp which had been pitched in the middle of the hill. 9. Don't think, Catiline, that those companions of yours will accomplish their undertakings without punishment. 10. That letter was written by the same hand as (by which) this. 11. How can we escape the weapons of that [scoundrel]? 12. Some men may say that the Gauls will not form a conspiracy against the republic. 13. The consul ought to summon to himself all (169, b) the best and noblest. 14. If the consuls do their duty by (to) the state, we shall not need to fear the attacks of any one. 15. Those who heard the oration learned that the republic was in great peril.

Exercise 2 (Cat. II. 7, 8)

If Catiline should change his mind and go out of the city, some would say that Cicero had driven him into exile. And yet if he had put him to death, the same men would have said that he was a tyrant. But Cicero was willing to undergo unpopularity, provided the state was not in peril. He knew there were six classes of men in Catiline's army. The first of these were deeply in (in great) debt, but expected that by the aid of Catiline their property would be saved.

LESSON XI

The Genitive with Nouns

1. Possessive Genitive: 97; Bur. 401; A. 343; B. 198; G. 362; H. 440; HB. 339.
2. Subjective Genitive: 98; Bur. 402; A. 343; B. 199; G. 363; H. 440; HB. 344.
4. Descriptive Genitive: 100; Bur. 421; A. 345; B. 203; G. 365; H. 440; HB. 355.

5. Appositional Genitive: 102; Bur. 411; A. 343; B. 202; G. 361; H. 440; HB. 341.

6. Genitive of the whole: 103; Bur. 412; A. 346; B. 201; G. 367; H. 441; HB. 346.

Note 1.—The subjective and objective genitives are distinguished by converting the phrase into a sentence: the love of a father (amor patris) may mean the father loves (pater amat), and hence the genitive is subjective; or it may mean one loves his father (amat patrem), in which case the genitive is objective.

Note 2.—Numerals and quidem are generally followed by ex or de and the ablative rather than by the genitive of the whole: unus ex militibus, one of the soldiers.

Note 3.—The adjective omnis is not followed by the genitive of the whole: all of us, nos omnès (not nostrum).

Exercise 1

1. Were Tiberius and Gaius Gracchus the sons of Cornelia? 2. Whose letter is this? 3. Cicero said that Catiline was a man of great boldness. 4. This soldier’s knowledge of war is extraordinary. 5. The name of king was always hateful to the Roman people. 6. How much authority was given to the consul? 7. Do you know how much authority was given to the consul? 8. If all the soldiers should fight bravely, we should conquer. 9. Certain of (Note 2) the knights were unfriendly to Cicero. 10. Love of country did not stand-in-the-way-of Catiline’s purposes (dat.). 11. Cicero said that the customs of the ancestors and the safety of the republic demanded the severest punishment. 12. Is not this the fairest of all lands? 13. Let the conspirators be disturbed (moved) by the fear of the people. 14. We all know what (of) plan you formed (took). 15. We heard that the Senate decreed a thanksgiving of twenty days.
Exercise 2 (Cat. II. 9–10)

Cicero said that the second class of the conspirators' army were burdened with debt but did not despair of honors (acc.). But they could not become consuls or kings in the ashes of the city. In (in) the third class were Sulla's soldiers, who were impelled by the hope of plunder. They would not have fallen into such debt, if Sulla had been alive. With this army of criminals of all classes, what did the leader expect he could do?

LESSON XII

The Genitive with Adjectives and Verbs

1. Genitive with adjectives: 104; Bur. 425; A. 349; B. 204; G. 374; H. 450; HB. 354.
2. Genitive with verbs of accusing: 105; Bur. 431; A. 352; B. 208; G. 378; H. 456; HB. 342.
5. Genitive of indefinite value (with est): 110; Bur. 424; A. 417; B. 203; G. 380; H. 448; HB. 356.

Exercise 1

1. The Romans were always desirous of victory and mindful of their allies. 2. Are your friends mindful of you (pl., 162, b)? 3. It will be worth-while (tanti) for us (dat.) to do this, provided our friends are willing. 4. It is [the duty] of the consul to defend the city and the temples of the gods. 5. He says that the sixth class consists (is) of the friends of Catiline. 6. The consul will not
repent of his acts. 7. He says that he does not repent (it does not repent him) of his acts. 8. Do not forget me, and that I am your consul. 9. It concerned the consul greatly (110) that his colleague should be (inf. clause) a friend. 10. It concerns you (107) also that your colleague be a friend. 11. The orator accused Catiline of many things which the senators had not heard before. 12. Remember your former victories, soldiers, if you fear the enemy. 13. The lieutenant was a man most-experienced in (of) war. 14. It will concern us (107) little whether the enemy are in our camp or not. 15. He thinks that four thousand men are in camp.

Exercise 2 (Cat. II. 11–13)

If these are Catiline’s forces, citizens, do you dread war? Can that wounded gladiator conquer in a contest of this kind? I have been informed that all the colonists will easily defend their towns. Metellus, who is experienced in warfare, will check all attempts outside of the city. If any friends of Catiline remain in the city, they will see that I am a watchful consul. If the gods will be our leaders, I promise that every loyal man will be safe.

LESSON XIII

The Dative Case

1. Indirect object with transitive verbs: 112, a; Bur. 450; A. 362; B. 187; G. 345; H. 424; HB. 365.
2. Indirect object with intransitive verbs: 112, b; Bur. 456; A. 367; B. 187.; G. 346; H. 426; HB. 362.
3. Indirect object with compound verbs: 112, c, d; Bur. 464; A. 370; B. 187; G. 347; H. 429; HB. 376.

Note 1.—Some intransitive verbs are used in the passive voice impersonally: persuādētur mihi, I am persuaded (it is persuaded to me); persuādētur tibi, you are persuaded.
Note 2.—Mittō and scribō take either the dative of indirect object, or the accusative with ad. The accusative is used if the idea of motion predominates: tibi, or ad tē, scribam, *I shall write to you.*

**Exercise 1**

1. Who will envy his friend's glory? 2. It is [the duty] of every man to resist the leaders of that conspiracy. 3. To you, Cicero, our country has intrusted the lives (life) and property (goods) of her citizens. 4. He ought to obey the decree of the Senate and go into exile. 5. He is persuaded. I have been persuaded. 6. Can you not persuade him? 7. Can he not be persuaded? 8. Let not these desperate men threaten us with sword and flame. 9. Cicero said that foreign nations preferred to serve the Roman people [rather] than rule over others. 10. The Allobroges said that Lentulus had written a letter to Catiline (Note 2). 11. Did the Senate give most liberal rewards to the ambassadors of the Allobroges? 12. Cicero promised (to) the citizens that every loyal man would be safe. 13. We ought, conscript fathers, to consult for [the interest of] these men and women who are in peril. 14. If we lay hands on Catiline and his friends, we shall do our duty by (enough for) the republic. 15. When was Manlius placed-in-command-of the army?

**Exercise 2 (Cat. III. 1–3)**

By Cicero's plans and labors the state was saved. Fire had almost been placed under the temples, but it had been extinguished. Then in the Forum, the consul told (to) the people how great their peril had been. He had heard that certain Gauls would cross the Mulvian Bridge and that they had letters for (ad) Catiline. He arrested them and some of the conspirators, and then laid the whole matter before the Senate, which he had quickly assembled.
LESSON XIV

The Dative (Continued)

1. Dative of purpose: 114; Bur. 483; A. 382; B. 191; G. 356; H. 433; HB. 365.
2. Dative of reference: 115; Bur. 470; A. 376; B. 188; G. 356; H. 433; HB. 366.
3. Dative with adjectives: 119; Bur. 487; A. 384; B. 192; G. 359; H. 434; HB. 362.
4. Dative of the possessor: 117; Bur. 479; A. 373; B. 190; G. 349; H. 430; HB. 374.
5. Dative of the agent: 116; Bur. 480; A. 374; B. 189; G. 354; H. 431; HB. 373.
6. The passive periphrastic conjugation: 225; Bur. 1000; A. 500; B. 337; G. 251; H. 621; HB. 600.

Note 1. — In expressions of possession the genitive emphasizes the possessor; the dative, the fact of possession: bonus servus est consulis, the good slave is the consul’s; bonus servus est consuli, the consul has a good slave.

Note 2. — To avoid confusion with another dative connected with the passive periphrastic, the agent may be expressed by the ablative with à, ab: hostibus à nóbis parcendum est, we must spare our enemies.

Exercise 1

1. Can this day be pleasant to wicked men? 2. Your safety will be (for) the greatest concern (care) to all your friends. 3. The men who saved the state are (for) an honor to themselves. 4. We must defend our wives and children. 5. They say that they must defend their wives and children. 6. You have many brave generals and thousands of soldiers. 7. Cicero said that he would provide for the safety of the Roman people. 8. Our country ought (Lesson IV, Note 3) to be very dear to us. 9. Is
this boy like his father or his grandfather? 10. We must praise the consul and give thanks to the immortal gods. 11. I learned that the ambassadors had a letter, and that it was Catiline's (see Note 1). 12. Give a signal to those guards who are nearest to the gates. 13. Catiline asked whether those gladiators would be faithful to him. 14. I ought to be pardoned (it is fitting to be pardoned to me, 112, Note 2). 15. If your voice has been [a means of] (for) safety to any one, you ought to be pardoned.

Exercise 2 (Cat. III. 4–6)

Volturcius and the Gauls said that some of the conspirators were ready to burn the city and that Cethegus wished to do this before the Saturnalia. We know that the house of Cethegus was full of good weapons. In the Senate the tablets of the conspirators were read. I asked them whether they recognized the seals of the tablets. All confessed. Then the Senate thanked me and the praetors who had commanded the troops of the state.

LESSON XV

The Accusative

1. Direct object: 120; Bur. 493; A. 387; B. 172; G. 330; H. 404; HB. 390.
2. Secondary object: 121; Bur. 507; A. 396; B. 178; G. 339; H. 411; HB. 393.
3. Predicate accusative: 122; Bur. 506; A. 393; B. 177; G. 340; H. 410; HB. 392.
4. Subject of infinitive: 123; Bur. 526; A. 397; B. 184; G. 343; H. 415; HB. 398.
5. Prepositions with the accusative: 231; Bur. 1019; A. 220; B. 141; G. 416; H. 420; HB. 455.
Note.—Moneō, advise, warn, may be followed by two accusatives, one of the person, and the other a neuter pronoun or adjective, expressing the thing: eōs hōc moneō, I give them this warning (warn them this).

Exercise 1

1. Have you read the letter that Cicero wrote to (ad) his son? 2. Many citizens asked Caesar his opinion about the conspiracy. 3. Caesar, having been asked his opinion, spoke as follows (said words of this kind). 4. The Roman people did not elect Catiline consul. 5. He says that the Roman people could have elected (Lesson IV, Note 4) Catiline consul. 6. Let us inform the consul that (inf. clause) the gates are open. 7. It is said that the leaders sought (petō) aid even of (121, a) the slaves. 8. Jupiter was rightly called the stay of the city. 9. Didn’t the Haedui call their magistrate “vergobretus”? 10. The consul has given the enemy this warning (Note). 11. Every senator called Catiline a dangerous citizen. 12. Caesar wrote that he had led his army into the farthest part of the province. 13. Tell me who was-in-command—of the tenth legion. 14. Let the boys remember their friend and his words (108). 15. The leaders think that they will not lack infantry (infantry will not be lacking to them).

Exercise 2 (Cat. III. 7–9)

Now, fellow-citizens, you need (opportet) not fear the forces of Catiline. The leader himself was very shrewd and watchful, a man of great endurance. If we had not driven him from the city, we should have had to watch (plup. ind.; 198, Note 2) day and night (acc. pl.). It was not [in the power] of the consuls, but of the gods to withstand his attempts. They have surely aided (brought aid to) us, all these days, and especially Jupiter, whose new statue has been set up in the temple.
LESSON XVI

The Accusative (Continued)

1. Place to which: 126, a; Bur. 513; A. 426; B. 182; G. 337; H. 418; HB. 365.
2. Duration and extent: 127; Bur. 518; A. 423; B. 181; G. 335; H. 417; HB. 387.
4. Adverbial accusative: 129; Bur. 524; A. 397; B. 185; G. 333; H. 416; HB. 387.
5. The accusative in exclamations: 130; Bur. 501; A. 397; B. 183; G. 343; H. 421; HB. 399.

Note. — Years of age may be expressed by annōs nātus with a numeral: trīgintā annōs nātus, thirty years old, at the age of thirty.

Exercise 1

1. A certain Gaul came to Rome to the Senate. 2. An attack was made on (in) the Allobroges (acc.), who had come to Italy. 3. Cicero and Antonius were consuls one year. 4. Rome, the most famous of all cities, was fifteen miles away from (ā) the sea. 5. Why do these citizens stand-about the Senate in-great-numbers? 6. We know that this army has marched many miles to-day. 7. Cicero delivered these orations [when he was] forty-three years old (Note). 8. Did you see the Roman knights who went to Cicero’s house? 9. Let us ask (quaerō, Lesson VII, Note 3) the lieutenant whether he went home or to Geneva. 10. Cicero allowed (patior) the friends of Catiline to return to their homes. 11. Cicero made this reply (replied these things) to the ambassadors. 12. What reply would he make (what things would he reply) to the ambassadors if they should consult him? 13. If he had consulted us, we should have made the same reply as (should
have replied the same which) he. 14. Do you remember that the Helvetians were very powerful (were able most)? 15. O fortunate city, if all its citizens are patriotic!

Exercise 2  (Cat. III. 10–12)

If a thanksgiving has been appointed (decreed), let us celebrate these days of safety. You have been saved without bloodshed (blood), which has not happened since (post) the memory of man (men). Let no reward be given to me, provided you remember that in my consulship the state was saved. But it will be your [duty] to defend me against (ab) the attacks of these most daring men, and to worship Jupiter, the divine guardian of this city and of us all.

LESSON XVII

The Ablative

1. Prepositions with the ablative: 231; Bur. 1020; A. 220; B. 142; G. 417; H. 490; HB. 456.
2. Ablative of Separation: 133; Bur. 528; A. 400; B. 214; G. 390; H. 461; HB. 408.
3. Ablative of Source: 134; Bur. 532; A. 403; B. 215; G. 395; H. 467; HB. 413.
5. Ablative of Comparison: 137; Bur. 541; A. 406; B. 217; G. 296; H. 471; HB. 416.
6. Ablative of degree of difference: 145; Bur. 582; A. 414; B. 223; G. 403; H. 479; HB. 424.

Note 1.—To resign an office is expressed by sē abdicāre ā: sē ā praetūrā abdicāvit, he resigned the praetorship.

Note 2.—When an agent is looked upon rather as a means through which something is done, per with the accusative is used instead of ab with the ablative.
Exercise 1

1. We must wrest that dagger from (de) his hands.
2. Could any other [man] have freed (Lesson IV, Note 4) Rome from her perils?
3. Which conspirator was compelled to resign his office?
4. If Cicero had resigned the consulship, Catiline would not have gone out of the city.
5. For many years our country has been without (careō, 149) provinces and harbors.
6. Let the enemy fear the assembly of patriotic men more than the swords of the soldiers.
7. Cicero asked the Senate who was milder than himself (166, b).
8. Do you think that Cicero was a much greater consul than Caesar?
9. He asked whether Catiline had more (amplius) than two thousand soldiers.
10. All the colonists have been informed by the consul with-regard-to (de) the attempts of the enemy.
11. Caesar was said to have descended (orior) from (ab) Trojan blood.
12. Cicero was born of an equestrian family (134).
13. It was learned through (Note 2) scouts that the enemy had marched in (into) another direction.
14. In-comparison-with the forces of the enemy, we ought not to despise our legions.
15. In-return-for all his labors, Cicero demanded nothing except (nisi) the memory of his consulship.

Exercise 2 (Cat. IV. 1–3)

The eyes of all Romans were turned toward the consul who had rescued them and their children from all perils, forgetful of his own safety. They thought not only about themselves, but about the family of the consul. They knew that he was deeply moved by the grief of his wife and daughter. They saw the accused who had confessed, and Lentulus who had resigned his praetorship. So they hoped that the Senate would punish the criminals without delay.
LESSON XVIII

The Ablative (Continued).

1. Ablative of means: 141; Bur. 570; A. 409; B. 218; G. 401; H. 476; HB. 423.
2. Ablative of cause: 142; Bur. 546; A. 404; B. 219; G. 408; H. 475; HB. 444.
3. Ablative of manner: 139; Bur. 554; A. 412; B. 220; G. 399; H. 473; HB. 445.
4. Ablative of accompaniment: 138; Bur. 550; A. 413; B. 222; G. 392; H. 473; HB. 418.
5. Ablative of description: 143; Bur. 557; A. 415; B. 224; G. 400; H. 473; HB. 443.
6. Ablative of specification: 144; Bur. 586; A. 418; B. 226; G. 397; H. 480; HB. 441.
7. Ablative with deponent verbs: 147; Bur. 572; A. 410; B. 218; G. 407; H. 477; HB. 429.
8. Ablative with certain adjectives: 150; Bur. 587; A. 418; B. 226; G. 397; H. 481; HB. 442.

Note.—Cause is sometimes expressed by the accusative with ob or propter: ob eam rem, for this reason; propter timorem, on account of fear.

Exercise 1

1. The soldiers will not be content with such (of this kind) booty. 2. How is the city defended? Is it not (defended) by garrison and watches? 3. You will never repent (it will never repent you) of having fought (to have fought) with so great bravery. 4. They will not be satisfied with the punishment of you (not gen.; see 164, b) who have remained in the city. 5. You have heard that Catiline was a man of great endurance of hunger and thirst. 6. This general is worthy of the highest praise because he has conquered without bloodshed (blood). 7. Cicero wrote that nothing could be better than friend-
ship. 8. Caesar went to a town of the Allobroges, Geneva by name. 9. Sulla's soldiers hoped (themselves) to be able to secure greater booty on this account (because of this). 10. Cicero says that he did this relying on the aid of the gods. 11. The men whom Catiline left in the city are much more powerful than those whom he took with him. 12. If you wish to enjoy (útor) peace to-day, surrender yourselves and all your [property] to the Roman people. 13. Catiline, a man of the greatest boldness, came into the temple with the other senators. 14. Why did Catiline use that silver eagle, of (dé) which we have heard so much (many things)? 15. Don't flee from the city because of fear; these soldiers will bravely defend you from (ab) the enemy.

Exercise 2 (Cat. IV. 4–6)

Silanus, the consul-elect, who was asked his opinion (121) in the Senate, thought the conspirators were deserving of death. Caesar said that imprisonment for life (chains everlasting) was a more (magis) suitable punishment for them. Cicero saw what was for his interest (what concerned him, 107); for he knew that Caesar was a friend of the people. But he preferred to follow the opinion of Silanus, and did not fear the charge of cruelty in (the case of) these most bitter enemies.

LESSON XIX

The Ablative (Concluded)

1. Ablative absolute: 151; Bur. 558. A. 419; B. 227; G. 409; H. 489; HB. 421.
3. Ablative of place where and whence: 153; 133, a, b; Bur. 588, 530; A. 426; B. 228, 229; G. 385, 390; H. 483, 491; HB. 433, 409.

4. Locative Case: 154; Bur. 606; A. 427; B. 232; G. 411; H. 483; HB. 449.


Note.—A possessive pronoun or adjective limiting domi has the form of the genitive: suae domi, at his house.

Exercise 1

(Use the ablative absolute when possible)

1. Cicero said that in Catiline's camp there was not any (169) good man. 2. If these men alone are punished, the danger will not be removed. 3. At my command (me commanding) the gates will be open. 4. Tell us where you were last summer and what you saw. 5. These orations which we are reading were delivered in the consulship of Cicero and Antonius. 6. My friends were at Brundisium two years; they will go to Geneva within ten days. 7. I-wish-that (utinam) you had been at my house last night. 8. Having delivered this speech, the senator returned to his house. 9. I know that this letter was written on the first (248) of October. 10. It ought to have been written (Lesson IV, Note 4) on the thirteenth of September. 11. I shall write you (Lesson XIII, Note 2) another letter on the fifth of November. 12. Do you know whether the ambassador has come from Rome or not? 13. Do you prefer to live in the city or in the country? 14. Because these scoundrels have been driven out, do not think we have been freed from all peril. 15. The third oration against Catiline was delivered on the third of December; the fourth, on the fifth of December.
Exercise 2 (Cat. IV. 7–8)

Do you think, senators, that I do not have enough protection? The whole city is full of loyal citizens of all classes. Why should I fear (deliberative subjv.) the attacks of others? Even the freedmen and slaves contribute as much as they can to (ad) the common safety. The shopkeepers (those who are in shops) also know that their profits are maintained by peace. And so if this harmony is pleasing to all men, we shall preserve our common country and the temples of the gods.

LESSON XX

Review of the Indicative

1. Uses of the indicative: 184, 185; Bur. 743; A. 437; B. 271; G. 254; H. 523; HB. 545.


3. Tenses with iam, iam diū, iam dūdum, iam prīdem: 173 c; 174 c; Bur. 749; A. 466; B. 259, 4; G. 230; H. 533; HB. 485.

4. Order of words: 233; Bur. 1055; A. 600; B. 351; G. 684; H. 685; HB. 630.

Note 1.—With expressions of duration, like iam diū, iam dūdum, the present tense is translated by have and the imperfect by had: tē iam dūdum hortor (hortābar), for a long time I have (had) been urging you.

Note 2.—Remember that iam with a negative means longer.

Exercise 1

1. The Senate used-to-consult (174, b) for the safety of the allies. 2. The Gauls kept-making sallies from the town and attacks on (in) the Romans (acc.). 3. My brother has been living now a long time in that city.
4. Catiline has long been plotting the destruction of the city and the slaughter of the citizens. 5. The general had not known for a long time in what direction the enemy were marching. 6. The Allobroges had now for a long time been complaining of (dé) the unjust rule of the Roman people. 7. If Catiline goes to Marseilles, certain of (Lesson XI, Note 2) his friends will follow him. 8. Did you remember that I said he would go to Geneva? 9. Why did all good citizens hate you, Lentulus? 10. They will hate all these desperate men, the enemies of their country. 11. Do you think that Cicero will refer this question (thing) to the Senate to-day? 12. If Catiline goes into exile, we shall no longer need (opportet) to fear. 13. Such men will never repent (106) of their purposes, as I have often said. 14. They may (Lesson IV, Note 2) go to Marseilles, provided they do not levy an army on the Gauls (112, b). 15. It concerns us (107) greatly that the temples of the gods be defended (inf.) by guards as strong as possible.

Exercise 2 (Cat. IV. 9–11)

You see, conscript fathers, that all ranks of citizens are-of-one-opinion (think one and the same). They know that our country is beset by the weapons of impious conspirators. Therefore it is for-us (ours) to decide to-day whether (Lesson VII, Note 1) these temples and shrines shall remain or be destroyed.

Many illustrious generals have opened new provinces for us, but no one must be praised more than that consul who has saved the state. In-return-for this service (thing) I know that the Roman people will remember (memoriā teneō) my consulship, and will provide for the safety (dat.) of my son.
LESSON XXI

Relative Clauses

1. Relative clauses with the indicative: 191, a, b; Bur. 797; A. 535; B. 311; G. 610; H. 589; HB. 499.
2. Relative clauses with the subjunctive: 192, a–c; Bur. 798; A. 535; B. 283; G. 631; H. 591; HB. 521.

Note 1.—In the sentence, "the soldier, who reported the victory, is named Galba," the clause merely designates (points out) the particular soldier and is called determinative, having its verb in the indicative: miles, qui victoriam nuntiat, appellatur Galba. If we say "Galba is a soldier who fights bravely," the clause describes the soldier and requires a subjunctive verb: Galba est miles qui fortiter pugnet.

Note 2.—Descriptive clauses often follow such expressions as sunt qui, there are those (some) who; nēmō est qui, there is no one who; sōlus (únus) est qui, he is the only one who; quis est qui, who is there who?

Note 3.—Descriptive clauses also follow dīgnus, indīgnus, idōneus: nōn erit idōneus qui mittātur, he will not be a suitable man to send (to be sent); hic liber dīgnus est qui legātur, this book is worth reading (worthy to be read; worthy that it should be read).

Note 4.—Relative clauses expressing purpose, result, cause, and concession are treated in later lessons.

Exercise 1

1. This is the oration which Cicero delivered in the temple of Jupiter. 2. Catiline was not worthy to be elected consul. 3. The Gauls are the only nation that can make war on us (dat.). 4. There are gladiators who are better disposed (of better spirit) than certain of the senators. 5. These brave soldiers are worthy to be praised by the lieutenant. 6. There is no one who does not know how many dangers we have escaped. 7. There were some who did not hear the things he said. 8. There were two consuls in Rome, one of whom was said to be a friend of
Caesar. 9. Who is there in all this empire who does not think that Pompey ought to be chosen commander-in-chief? 10. There are no other legions which we can send to (ad) this war if these are defeated (abl. abs.). 11. Let us choose a commander, fellow-citizens, who is able to protect our allies from these powerful kings. 12. Don't you think that he is a suitable [man] to be chosen as commander-in-chief? 13. Those whom Catiline has left at Rome must be informed [that] the consuls are watchful. 14. He is the only man whom we must fear. 15. Fortune favors the brave: if our commanders rely on themselves, their soldiers will rely on them.

**Exercise 2 (Pomp. 1–3)**

During the praetorship of Cicero, two powerful kings of Asia were making war on the allies of the Roman people. It was necessary to put a general in-command-of the army. The praetor who had not delivered an oration to the people before, spoke concerning the virtues of Gnaeus Pompey. He said that the tributaries of the republic were in danger and that the commander was about to return to Rome. Pompey, a man of remarkable wisdom, had carried on many wars on land and sea. No one else could (impf.) wipe out the disgrace incurred in the former war.

**LESSON XXII**

**Purpose Clauses. Noun Clauses**

1. Purpose clauses with ut, né, or a relative: 193; Bur. 812; A. 531; B. 282; G. 545; H. 568; HB. 502.

2. Noun clauses after verbs of fearing: 205, b; Bur. 838; A. 564; B. 296, 2; G. 550; H. 567; HB. 502, 4.

3. Sequence of tenses: 183; Bur. 781; A. 482; B. 266; G. 509; H. 543; HB. 476.
Note 1.—A relative pronoun, relative adjective, or relative adverb introduces a purpose clause when there is a close connection with the antecedent.

Note 2.—In the earlier form of expression, nē accidat, timeō, as two sentences, meant let it not happen, I am afraid, i.e. I am afraid that it may happen. This came to be the meaning of the complex sentence timeō nē accidat, in which nē means that. Similarly accidat, timeō meant let it happen, I am afraid, i.e. I am afraid that it may not happen. Accidat becoming subordinate to timeō, ut came to be the connective as the opposite of nē.

Note 3.—Only the present and imperfect subjunctive are used in purpose clauses, except in the case of defective verbs like memini, or verbs like cognōscō, whose meaning differs in the present and perfect systems.

Exercise 1

1. Let the consuls be vigilant that the enemy may not be able to move (himself) against the republic. 2. Send soldiers to the camp to bring the rest of the weapons. 3. I am not afraid that men will say that I did this too cruelly. 4. Are you not afraid that you will not have enough (of) protection? 5. It is greatly to be feared that we may be too mild toward (in) these most bitter enemies. 6. Caesar will go to Geneva to find out what tribes are conspiring against the Roman people. 7. Refer the matter to the senate, so that no danger (not any of danger) may threaten the city. 8. Caesar used-to-send-ahead his cavalry to terrify the enemy. 9. If Catiline's forces are like these, we need not fear that our army will not be able to withstand them. 10. The lieutenant's friends will come by the Aurelian Way, that they may more easily (193, a) arrive at (ad) the camp. 11. If they had gone by another way, they would have found a place suitable for a camp. 12. What was there which could please a man like Catiline (104, a)? 13. May that weapon be wrested from (dē) his hands. 14. There is no one who
does not know that they have attempted to kill the con-
sul. 15. I inquired of the boy (Lesson VII, Note 3) whether he lived at Brundisium or at his home.

**Exercise 2 (Pomp. 4–6)**

Mithridates is now making-ready his fleets and armies to bring war upon us by land and sea. Even in Spain we are compelled to fight with his allies. Our ancestors punished those who had arrogantly addressed our am-
bassadors. Ought we to disregard the loss of revenues and the massacre of Roman citizens? Unless you defend your tributaries in Asia from even the fear of calamity, you will lose the income of a whole year.

**LESSON XXIII**

**Result Clauses. Noun Clauses**

1. Result clauses with *ut*, *ut non*, or a relative: 194, 194, *a*; Bur. 818; A. 537; B. 284; G. 552; H. 570; HB. 521, 2.

2. Noun clauses with verbs meaning *to accomplish*: 205, *c*; Bur. 842; A. 568; B. 297; G. 553; H. 566; HB. 521, 3.

3. Noun clauses with verbs meaning *it happens*: 205, *d*; Bur. 843; A. 569, 2; B. 297, 2; G. 553, 3; H. 571; HB. 521, 3.

4. Sequence of tenses: 183, Bur. 781; A. 482; B. 266; G. 509; H. 543; HB. 476.

*Note 1.* — A relative clause of result is also a clause of descrip-
tion (192, *a*), as in *si quis est talis qui me accusat*, *if any one is of such a mind as to blame me.*

*Note 2.* — With *tantum abest* two *ut*-clauses are used, one the subject of *abest*, the other a clause of result: *tantum abest ut laudetur, ut etiam accusetur*, *so far is it from the truth that he is praised, that he is even blamed.*
Exercise 1

1. The city was so fortified that the people did not fear. 2. Cicero speaks in-such-a-manner that he seems to be moved by pity. 3. You are such [a man], Lentulus, that the memory of your grandfather has not recalled you from crime. 4. Who can be so hard-hearted as-not-to-be (who is not) moved by the grief of his friends? 5. Such a storm suddenly arose that it (rel.) drove (déferō) our ships, some in one direction, and some in another (170). 6. The orator will let (make) the people know what the Senate has decreed. 7 It happened that the envoys of the Allobroges were at Rome that day. 8. It remains for-us-to (that we) consider what we must do. 9. We shall not make them hear. 10. We fear that we shall not make them hear. 11. I am so far from denying that this is true, that I now confess [it]. 12. Do not despair; we shall defeat them easily, if only (199) you are brave. 13. We have written letters to the Roman knights to inform them about their property. 14. The result was that the Roman knights were informed about their property. 15. The general was informed that his cavalry could not overtake the enemy.

Exercise 2 (Pomp. 7–9)

I shall speak of your tax-collectors whose fortunes are-at-stake. These men are the support of the state, and their welfare ought to receive your careful attention (be for a care to you). Lucullus has conquered and sunk the king's fleet, and on this account (qua dé causā) he must be praised. But the king has fled as a suppliant to other kings. If Lucullus had captured him, the war would no longer be dangerous (periculōsus).
LESSON XXIV

Noun Clauses (Continued)

1. Clauses with ut or nē after verbs of commanding, persuading, requesting, etc.: 205 a; Bur. 826; A. 563; B. 295; G. 546; H. 565; HB. 502, 3.

2. Clauses with nē, quīn, or quōminus, after verbs of hindering, preventing, refusing: 205 e; Bur. 829; A. 558; B. 284; G. 549; H. 594; HB. 302.

3. Clauses with quīn after verbs or phrases of doubting: 205 e; Bur. 833; A. 558; B. 298; G. 555, 2; H. 595; HB. 519, 4, b.

Note 1.—Nē is used after a positive verb of hindering or refusing; quīn (= quī + nē, by which not), after a negative; quōminus (by which less), after either a positive or a negative: eum impedient nē (or quōminus) hōc faciat, they will hinder him from doing this; eum nōn impedient quīn (or quōminus) hōc faciat, they will not hinder him from doing this.

Note 2.—Prohibēo, prevent, is oftener followed by the infinitive than by the subjunctive (212).

Exercise 1

1. Cicero often advised Catiline to go into exile. 2. Let us urge all good citizens to hear the consul’s speech. 3. The Senate will decree that our allies shall not suffer (capiō) any (of) injury. 4. It is much better to persuade than to command men to do this. 5. Do you think you can persuade your friends (112, b) to go with you? 6. Who can doubt that the immortal gods will defend this city? 7. There is no doubt that even the Gauls knew the plans of the conspirators. 8. The consul said that he was not yet induced to do this. 9. Let no one prevent the ambassadors from speaking with the general. 10. These soldiers will not refuse to fight bravely, if you encourage them. 11. The general urged his soldiers to hinder the
enemy from crossing the river. 12. There are many who did not doubt that Pompey would quickly bring this war to an end. 13. The ambassador could not be persuaded (112, Note 2) to remain in Rome many days. 14. We ought to have prevented (Lesson IV, Note 4) the conspirators from meeting at (coming-together-to) the house (126) of Laeca. 15. If they had asked that they might (Lesson IV, Note 2) do this, they would have obtained-their-request.

**Exercise 2 (Pomp. 10–12)**

It seems to me to be necessary to put in command of this war a man in whom the four qualities (things) of a great commander exist. That Pompey is [a man] of great knowledge of military matters, many tribes and nations declare. There is no kind of warfare in which he has not been trained. The sea was so full of pirates that no Roman fleet could sail in safety. But has not Pompey driven them all from the sea within three months?

**LESSON XXV**

**Noun Clauses (Concluded)**

1. Clauses with quod and the indicative: 204; Bur. 822; A. 572; B. 299; G. 524; H. 588; HB. 552.

2. Review of constructions with licet, oportet, necesse est: 205, d; 209, b; 212; Bur. 828, 948; A. 565; B. 295, 6; G. 535; H. 564, 618; HB. 513, 585.

3. Constructions with volō, patior, cōgō: 205, a, and 212; Bur. 837; A. 563 b; B. 331, 296; G. 553, 2; H. 565, 2; HB. 502, 3, 586.

*Note 1.*—After accēdit, _it is added_, or accidit, _it happens_, either an indicative _quod_-clause or a subjunctive _ut_-clause may be used, though accidit usually takes an _ut_-clause (Lesson XXIII)
accedebat huc quod Dumnorix dixerat, furthermore (it was added to this that) Dumnorix had said.

Note 2.—With licet, oportet, necesse est a subjunctive clause may be used (usually without ut) though the infinitive is more common, as explained in Lesson IV, Notes 2, 3: licet hoc facias, you may do this; oportet hoc facias, you ought to do this; necesse est hoc facias, you must do this.

Note 3.—After volo, patior, cogō, the infinitive is generally used instead of the subjunctive: verum audire non vult, he does not wish to hear the truth; mihi credas volo, I wish you to believe me.

Exercise 1

1. What [shall I say of the fact] that all our allies are demanding Pompey as commander for this war? 2. Furthermore (it is added that) there is no one else who is able to prevent the enemy from conspiring against us. 3. You may do this if it seems [best] to you. 4. We must ward-off the danger not only in Asia, but also in Spain. 5. Our ambassadors ought not to have been unjustly treated at Corinth. 6. The Gauls will compel the traders to tell what they have learned about the country. 7. We are allowing the enemy to treat our commanders unjustly. 8. There is no doubt that he might (Lesson IV, Note 4) have done this. 9. Who doubts that he could have done this? 10. He knows that he ought to have informed the consul about the plans of these men. 11. Cicero wished his friends to know that he would employ (use) their assistance in the protection of the republic. 12. The traders, who were crossing the sea, were afraid that their fortunes would not be safe. 13. There was the additional circumstance (it was added) that our armies crossed the sea in the dead-of winter to escape the pirates. 14. O that we had troops worthy of such a leader! 15. Do not prevent him from telling us what must be done.
Exercise 2 (Pomp. 13–15)

If we compare Pompey with other generals, we shall see how many and how great are his virtues. Not only does he restrain himself, but he prevents his legions from harming conquered nations. And so he has caused (made) these nations to believe that he is like the old Romans, a man of great self-restraint. And indeed it greatly concerns the state what our allies think of a general to whom we have intrusted (Lesson XXI, Note 1) their welfare.

LESSON XXVI

Temporal Clauses

1. With postquam, ubi, etc.: 195, a; Bur. 870; A. 543; B. 287; G. 561; H. 602; HB. 550.
2. With cum: 195, b; Bur. 856; A. 545; B. 288; G. 578; H. 600; HB. 524.
3. With dum, etc.: 195, d, e, f; Bur. 876; A. 553; B. 293; G. 571; H. 603; HB. 507.
4. With antequam and priusquam: 195, g; Bur. 863; A. 551; B. 291; G. 574; H. 605; HB. 507.

Note 1. — In direct discourse, as a rule, the indicative is used in all temporal clauses with these chief exceptions: (a) cum usually takes the subjunctive (imperfect or pluperfect) to describe the circumstances of the main action; (b) dum, antequam, and priusquam, before, take the subjunctive to express an act as anticipated or expected, from a past point of view; from a present point of view, the present subjunctive or the present or future perfect indicative.

Note 2. When a subordinate clause merely defines or dates the time of the main action, cum or ubi is used with the indicative; cum, with any past tense; ubi, generally with the perfect or historical present.
Exercise 1

1. After the consul had reported the question to the senate, Caesar and Silanus expressed their opinions.
2. When I saw the letter,1 I recognized the hand of my friend.
3. At the time when I was reading my friend's letter, I had already been informed of his safety.
4. While these things were going on at Rome, we were many miles away from the city.
5. Before you consider what must be done, listen to the witnesses who have been called together.
6. As soon as the Roman² knights learned what was going on in Asia, they reported the situation to Cicero.
7. Our armies will be victorious as long as we have commanders of such ability.
8. It was the plan of the general to fortify the camp before the enemy should know where his army was.
9. When this oration was delivered, the Forum was full of patriotic citizens who had come to hear the new praetor.
10. When this oration had been delivered,¹ all felt that Pompey was worthy to be chosen (Lesson XXI, Note 3) commander.
11. Lucullus was not recalled until³ he had been defeated by Mithridates with the loss of many men (many having been killed).
12. Do not give up (cease from) the battle, soldiers, until you put the king's forces to flight.
13. Catiline was driven from the city before he should be killed.
14. Catiline was driven from the city before his army was defeated.
15. Unless you send a large army to Asia to defend your allies, you will be unable to hold them in allegiance.

Exercise 2 (Pomp. 16–18)

Finally Pompey seems to excel all our great soldiers in good-fortune, which is a gift of the gods themselves.

¹ Write in two ways: (1) with a clause; (2) with an ablative absolute.
² Order: knights Roman.
³ priusquam.
And so I ask you, citizens, whether I have shown that he is the only man who should be sent to Asia as commander. Hortensius thinks that everything ought not to be put in the hands of one man. But if you had followed his opinion heretofore, the pirates would still hold the sea.

LESSON XXVII
Causal and Concessive Clauses

1. Causal clauses with *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*: 196, a; Bur. 886; A. 540; B. 285; G. 539; H. 588; HB. 555.
2. Causal clauses with *cum* or *qui*: 196, b; Bur. 892; A. 540; B. 286; G. 586; H. 594; HB. 523.
3. Concessive clauses with *quamquam*, *etsi*: 197, a, b; Bur. 894; A. 527; B. 309; G. 603; H. 585; HB. 556.
4. Concessive clauses with *cum* or *qui*: 197, c; Bur. 807; A. 549; B. 309; G. 580, 634; H. 597, 593; HB. 525, 523.

*Note 1.* — *Quod* and *quia*, *because*, give a reason based on fact, taking the indicative, if the reason is known, the subjunctive if it is quoted. *Quoniam*, *since*, introduces a self-evident or admitted fact, and hence takes the indicative: *quoniam iam nox est*, since it is already night. *Cum*, *since*, is used to express the circumstances that cause an action: *Haedui cum se défendere nón possent*, *since* (and when) the Haedui could not defend themselves.

*Note 2.* — In concessive clauses, *quamquam* means *this is so, but*; *licet*, *let this be so, yet*; *etsi*, *even if this is so, yet*. *Cum* states the circumstances in spite of which the action occurs: *nam cum id posset iníftiári*, for although (in spite of the fact that) he could have denied it.

*Note 3.* — *Quamquam* often introduces an independent sentence, meaning *and yet*.

**Exercise 1**

1. Let us rejoice because we have escaped this peril.
2. Since this is so, senators, do you hesitate to do-your-duty-by the state?
3. Return, O citizens, to your homes,
since there is no longer anything to fear (which must be feared). 4. Since they are not permitted (licet) to do this, they ask that you do not refuse to send them aid. 5. Although there are men who say that Catiline ought not to have been cast into exile, yet I do not fear them. 6. Although Cicero had heard many orations from the Rostra, yet he had never spoken from that place. 7. However—much this war is to be feared, our forces will conquer under the leadership of Pompey (abl. abs.). 8. Even if the river is very wide and deep, we must try to cross it. 9. And yet it is not so wide that we cannot cross it. 10. A nation is fortunate indeed to have (which has) commanders of such ability and virtue. 11. These praetors, who (because they) were most patriotic, undertook (took upon themselves) the task. 12. The lieutenant, who (although he) had kept the soldiers in camp many days, on the seventh day sent cohorts to get grain. 13. The town could not have been captured, though there were few defenders.¹ 14. We ought to thank the consul, because he has freed us from fear. 15. Who is there who does not think that we ought to thank the consul?

Exercise 2 (Pomp. 19–21)

Pompey wishes to take Gabinius with him as lieutenant, but objection is made because Gabinius was tribune last year. Nothing will prevent me from laying this matter before the Senate.

But Catulus says that we must do nothing contrary to the customs of our ancestors. He is a man of great influence. And yet he seems to have forgotten the new and important (great) precedents that have already been established in [the case of] this man.

¹ Express in two ways (151).
LESSON XXVIII

Participles

1. Present and perfect participles: 221; Bur. 986; A. 490; B. 336; G. 282; H. 640; HB. 600.
   2. Participles used for clauses: 223; Bur. 991; A. 496; B. 337; G. 664; H. 637; HB. 604.
   3. The active periphrastic conjugation: 224; Bur. 327; A. 498; B. 337; G. 247; H. 531; HB. 600.
   4. The periphrastic future infinitive: 209, a; Bur. 946; A. 569, a; B. 270, 3; G. 248; H. 571; HB. 472, c.

Note 1.—With polliceor and sperō, the future infinitive or posse, with subject-accusative, is commonly used: sé obsidēs datūrōs polliciti sunt, they promised to give hostages.

Note 2.—Notice the difference between audiō eum loqui and audiō eum loquentem.

Exercise 1

1. And so he [though] conquered, was able to accomplish much.
2. We have read that the magistrates put to death men [who were] eager for a revolution.
3. Do you not see all orders of citizens holding the same opinion (thinking the same)?
4. Cicero learned all the plans of the conspirators almost before their meeting was broken up (the meeting having been scarcely yet dismissed).
5. Following the Allobroges by the same road, the praetors arrested them near the Mulvian bridge.
6. I am about to speak of the great virtues of a man who has often conquered our enemies.
7. I do not doubt that he is about to go to Marseilles.
8. Having made all things ready, the consul was able to carry out the measures (those things) which the Senate decided [upon].
9. Never since the founding of the city (after the city founded) has such gratitude been due (to) the immortal gods.
10. He
promised to remain at his brother's house to-day. 11. Two Roman knights are said to have promised to go to Cicero's house. 12. This young man hopes to live (that he will live) a-long-time. 13. The Gauls saw that it would happen (be, fore) that no one would be able (im pf. subj.) to resist Caesar's army. 14. Cicero tried to persuade the Senate to pardon Brutus and his friends. 15. No one can be found so desperate as-not-to-believe (Lesson XXIII, Note 1) that Catiline is an enemy of the state.

Exercise 2 (Pomp. 22–24)

Even if these eminent men object, yet they see that the Roman people have never acted unwisely in [the case of] Pompey. They ought, therefore, to approve your judgment at this time. No other commander could live in Asia with such self-control. His very coming into their cities brings joy to our allies. I urge you, citizens, for (dé) these reasons, to approve this bill of Manilius and to appoint a man who will bring honor to our common country.

LESSON XXIX

Gerund. Gerundive. Supine

2. Uses of the Gerundive: 226; Bur. 1003; A. 503; B. 339; G. 425; H. 621; HB. 609.
3. Uses of the Supine: 229; Bur. 1015; A. 509; B. 340; G. 434; H. 632; HB. 618.
4. Expressions of purpose: 193, b; Bur. 1007; A. 533; B. 282; G. 544, Rem. 2; H. 622, 626; HB. 612.

Note 1.—With the genitives mei, tuì, sui, nostri, vestri, the gerundive ends in -i, without regard to gender or number.

Note 2.—The expression of purpose may be illustrated as fol-
envoys came to seek peace, légāti vēnērunt, (1) ut pācem peterent; (2) qui pācem peterent; (3) ad pācem petendam; (4) pācis petendae causā; (5) pācem petítum.

Exercise 1

1. Let us take time for reflection (reflecting) before we decide upon this matter (thing).
2. The envoys came from the Allobroges to complain of (dē) their injuries.
3. Mithridates had (came into) great hope of seizing the neighboring kingdom.
4. Even the freedmen have been aroused to defend the republic.
5. I urged you to do this for the purpose of freeing yourselves.
6. My friend was not less prompt in (in) doing things, than in planning [them].
7. Cicero said that Catiline was living to strengthen his audacity.
8. Caesar selected certain men to-be-sent (gerundive) to Gaul as centurions.
9. Citizens, we must not only feel grateful, but express our gratitude to the immortal gods, because we have conquered the enemy.
10. It is not easy to say whether this is the best thing to do.
11. It is not easy to say whether he is a suitable man to carry (Lesson XXI, Note 3) on the war with the Germans.
12. Many citizens went to the Forum to hear the orator.
13. There were some who rejoiced that an opportunity of fighting was afforded (given) them.
14. Who would aid (pres. subj.) the conspiracy (acc.) by keeping silent?
15. Who will prevent us from attempting to aid the consul?

Exercise 2 (Archias, 1–2)

Cicero thought that he ought to use his ability in behalf of the poet Archias because he had derived much from him, even [as] a boy. He feared that it might seem strange to the judges that he should speak of the study of literature before them, but he urged them to

1 Express in different ways.
remember that all arts are bound together by a-kind-of (a certain) relationship.

LESSON XXX

Indirect Discourse

   2. Tenses in indirect discourse: 216; Bur. 966; A. 584; B. 317; G. 653; H. 644; HB. 593.
   3. Conditional sentences in indirect discourse: 218; Bur. 979; A. 589; B. 319; G. 656; H. 646; HB. 536.

Examples of Conditional Sentences

1. Direct: *si vincit, bene est*, if he is conquering, it is well.
   2. Indirect: (a) *dicō si vincat, bene esse*, I say that if he is conquering, it is well. (b) *dixī si vinceret, bene esse*, I said that if he was conquering, it was well.
   3. Direct: *si vincet, bene erit*, if he conquers (i.e. shall conquer) it will be well.
   4. Indirect: (a) *dicō si vincat, bene futūrum esse*, I say that if he conquers, it will be well. (b) *dixī si vinceret, bene futūrum esse*, I said that if he should conquer, it would be well.
   5. Direct: *si vicerit, bene erit*, if he shall have conquered, it will be well.
   6. Indirect: (a) *dicō si vicerit* (perf. subjv.) *bene futūrum esse*, I say that if he shall have conquered, it will be well. (b) *dixī si vicisset, bene futūrum esse*, I said that if he should have conquered, it would be well.
   7. Direct: *si vincat, bene sit*, if he should conquer, it would be well.
   8. Indirect: (a) *dicō si vincat, bene futūrum esse*, I
say that if he should conquer, it would be well. (b) dixi sī vinceret, bene futūrum esse, I said that if he should conquer, it would be well.

9. Direct: sī vinceret, bene esset, if he were conquering, it would be well.

10. Indirect: (a) dicō (dixī) sī vinceret, bene futūrum fuisse (rarely esse), I say (said) that, if he were conquering, it would be well.

11. Direct: sī vícisset, bene fuisset, if he had conquered, it would have been well.

12. Indirect: dicō (dixī) sī vícisset, bene futūrum fuisse, I say (said) that if he had conquered, it would have been well.

13. Direct: sī contendissent, victi essent, if they had fought they would have been conquered.

14. Indirect: dicō (dixī) sī contendissent, futūrum fuisse ut vincerentur, I say (said) that if they had fought, they would have been conquered.

Exercise 1

1. The consul said that the citizens would defend their homes.  2. The consul had told (to) the citizens to defend their homes (dir., defend your homes).  3. He writes to his lieutenant to come with his legion (dir., come with your legion) to the territory of the Allobroges.  4. He knew that the grain, which the Haedui promised, had not been given.  5. Let us honor the poet Archias. What did he say? He said that we should honor the poet Archias.  6. Shall (201) we read these books of the old writers?  7. He asks whether we shall read these books of the old writers.  8. The Senate thanked Cicero because he had freed the citizens from fear (the Senate’s reason).  9. The knights reported to Cicero that their property (things) in Asia would be in great peril, unless aid should
be sent by the Romans. 10. Do you know in what (how great) peril their property will be (Lesson VII, Note 2), if we do (shall) not send aid to them? 11. He said he would have assaulted the town, if he had thought there were so few soldiers within. 12. Do you think their property would have been lost if we had sent aid? 13. Cicero said that the plans of the conspirators could (218, d) never have been brought to light, if he had not been guided by the gods. 14. If you had (were having) a residence at Rome, would you desire to be enrolled as a Roman citizen? 15. It ought to concern us (107) greatly, what the poets and philosophers have written.

Exercise 2 (Archias, 3–5)

Archias [when] a boy lived in Antioch, where (in which city) his fame was so great that he was thought worthy of hospitality by many men in Greece and Italy. When he came to Rome, he was received by the Luculli. Afterwards by the law of Silvanus and Carbo he obtained the right of a Roman citizen. Since he was enrolled by Metellus, who was a most careful and conscientious man, no one ought to doubt that he was a citizen.

Exercise 3 (Archias, 6–8)

Do you ask why Cicero was so delighted with Archias? He said that by his studies of the poet his mind was refreshed when it was wearied with daily strife, and his power of speaking was increased (act. inf.). He believed that the greatest men have added training to natural ability. A poet is a gift of the gods to us, and is worthy of special honor.
Exercise 4 (Archias, 9–12)

Certainly we must receive as a citizen a man who by his verses has celebrated not only our generals, but the whole Roman people. Soldiers know that if there are no heralds of their valor, body and fame will be buried (fore ut) in the same tomb. Indeed, all of us (we all) are eager for glory, even the philosophers who pretend to despise it. For the hope of immortal fame makes us undergo all perils and labors of life.
ENGLISH—LATIN AND LATIN—ENGLISH VOCABULARIES
VOCABULARY

ENGLISH—LATIN

Note.—After verbs, 1 indicates that the parts are formed like those of laudō; 2, like those of moneō; 4, like those of audiō.

**A**

ability, *ingenium*, -i, N.
able, am able, *possum*, posse, 
potui.

about, around, *circum* w. acc.; 
about, concerning, *de*, w. abl.

abuse, abātor, -ī, -āsus sum.
accomplish, *cōnsiciō*, -ere, -feci, 
-fectus.
accuse, *accūsō*, 1.
accused, the, *reus*, -ī, M.
acknowledge, *cōnsiciōr*, -ērī, -fessus sum; cognōscō.
act, *factum*, -ī, N.; to act, 
faciō.
add, *adiungō*, -ere, -iuntī, 
-iunctum.
added, it is, accēdit, -ere, -cessit.
address, *appellō*, 1.
afraid, be afraid, *timeō*, -ere, -ui.

after, *post*, prep.; *postquam*,
con.
afterwards, *postēā*.
against, *contrā*, in, w. acc.
ago, ante, adv.

aid, *auxilium*, -ī, N.; to aid, 
iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum; adiuvō.
alive, *vīvus*, -a, -um.

all, *omnis*, -e, every, the whole, 
all; *tōtus*, -a, -um, all, en-
tire; *universus*, -a, -um, all (taken together).
allegiance, *officium*, -ī, N.
allow, *patior*, -ī, passus sum; 
licet, -ēre, licuit.
ally, *socius*, -ī, M.
alone, *sōlus*, -a, -um; *ūnus*, -a, 
-um.
already, *iam*.
also, *et*, etiam.
although, *quamquam*, quāmquām, quānvīs, 
cum.
always, *semper*.
am, *sum*, esse, fuī, fūtūrus.
ambassador, *legētūs*, -ī, M.
ancestors, *māiores*, -um.
ancient, *antīquus*, -a, -um.
and, *et*, -que, ac or atque; and 
so, itaque; and yet, tamen.
another, *alius*, -a, -ud.
any, anybody, any one, any-
thing, *aliquis*; in a negative 
sentence, *quisquam*, *ullus*; 
after *si*, nisi, nē and *num*, 
-*quis*; interrogative, *ecquis*.
appoint, *dēligō*, -ere, -lēgī, -lēc-
tum.
approve, *comprobō*, 1.
arise, *coōrion, -ūrī, -ortus sum.*
army, *exercitus, -ūs, M.*
around, *circum, w. acc.*
arouse, *excitō, 1.*
arrest, *comprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsum.*
arrest, *comprehendo, -ere, -hendi, -hensum.*
arrest, *comprehendo, -ere, -hendi, -hensum.*
arrive, *perveniō, -ire, -venī, -ventum.*
arrogantly, *superbē.*
at, *ars, artis, F.*
as, *ut, parenthetical.*
as as long as, *quamdiu.*
as as much as, *quantum.*
as as soon as, *simul ac (atque); cum prīmum.*
ashe, *cinis, -eris, M.*
as, *rogō, 1; quaerō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītum.*
as, *circum, w. ace.*
assemble, *intr., conveniō; tr., cogō.*
assemble, *conventus, -ūs, M.*
assistance, *opera, -ae, F.*
at last, *tandem.*
at the house of, *apud, w. acc.*
at the time when, *tum cum.*
attack, *impetus, -ūs, M.; to attack, petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.*
attempt, *cōnātus, -ūs, M.; to attempt, cōnōr, 1.*
audacity, *audācia, -ae, F.*
aurelian, *Aurēlius, -a, -um.*
authority, *auctoritās, -ātīs, F.*
avoid, *vitō, 1.*
away, *be, absūm, -esse, āvī.*

**B**

band, company, *manus, -ūs, F.*
be, *sum; be not, neg. command, see Lesson II.*

be without, *be deprived of, careō, 2.*
become, *be made, fīō, fierī, factus sum.*
before, *ante, apud, w. acc.; adv. previously, ante, anteā; conj. antequam, prīiusquam.*
behalf, *in behalf of, prō.*
believe, *crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditum.*
beset, *obsidēō, -ere, -sēdī, -ses- sum.*
better, *melior, -ius.*
bill, *law, lēx, lēgis, F.*
bind together, *contineō.*
bitter, *acerbus, -a, -um.*
blame, *accurō, 1.*
blood, *sanguis, sanguinis, M.*
body, *corpus, -oris, N.*
boldness, *audācia, -ae, F.*
book, *liber, librī, M.*
booty, *praeda, -ae, F.*
born, *be born, nāscor, -ī, nātus sum.*
boy, *puer, -ī, M.*
brave, *fortis, -e; audāx, -ācis.*
bravely, *fortiter, audācter.*
bravery, *virtūs, -ūtis, F.*
bridge, *pōns, pontis, M.*
bring, *bring out, efferō, -ferre, extuli, ēlātum; bring to, ad- ferō; bring to an end, con- ficiō, -ere, -fīcē, -fectum; bring to light, inlūstrō, 1; bring upon, īnferō.*
brother, *frāter, frātris, M.*
Brundisium, *Brundisium, -ī, N.*
build, *aedificō, 1.*
burden, *premō, -ere, pressī, pressum.*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>burn,</td>
<td>incendō, -ere, -cendi, -censis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>burning, a</td>
<td>incendium, -ī, N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but, sed,</td>
<td>autem; but if, sīn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>by, a, ab.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call,</td>
<td>appellō, 1, address, call by name; nōminō, 1, name; vocō, 1, summon; convocō, 1, call together.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>camp,</td>
<td>castra, -ōrum, N. pl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can,</td>
<td>possum, posse, potuī.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capture,</td>
<td>expūgnō, 1, comprohendō, -ere, -hendī, -hensus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>care,</td>
<td>cūra, -ae, F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>care for,</td>
<td>prōvideō, -ere, -vidī, -visum, w. dat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>careful,</td>
<td>dīligēns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carry on (war),</td>
<td>gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carry out,</td>
<td>trānsigō, -ere, -ēgī, -actus; perficiō.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cast (out),</td>
<td>cīcio, -ere, -ieci, -iectum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cavalry,</td>
<td>equitātus, -ās, M.; equitēs, -um, M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cease,</td>
<td>désinō, -ere, -sīv(-sīvī), -situm; désistō, -ere, -stili, -stītum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>centurion,</td>
<td>centuriō, -onis, M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>certain,</td>
<td>a certain, quīdam.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>certainly,</td>
<td>certē.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chain,</td>
<td>vinculum, -ī, N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>change,</td>
<td>mātō, 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>check,</td>
<td>comprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chief men,</td>
<td>principēs, -um.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>children,</td>
<td>liberī, -ōrum, M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose,</td>
<td>dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>citizen, cīvis, -is, M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>citizenship, civitās, -lātis, F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>city, urbs, urbis, F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>class, genus, -eris, N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>clear, clārus, -a, -um.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cohort, cohors, -rtis, F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cold, frīgus, -oris, N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>colleague, collēga, -ae, M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>collect, colligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum; cōgō.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>colonist, colōnus, -ī, M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>come, veniō, -ire, vēni, ventum; come together, conveniō.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>command, imperō, 1; iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum; be in command of, praesum, -esse, -fui.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>commander-in-chief, imperātor, -ōris, M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>common, communīnis, -e.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>companion, ally, socius, -ī, M.; comes, -itis, M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>compare, comparō, 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>comparison, in . . . with, prō.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>compel, cōgō, -ere, coegi, coactum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>complain, complain of, queror, -ī, questus sum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>concern, it concerns, interest, -esse, -fui.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>concerning, dē.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>condemn, condemnō, 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>confess, confiteor, -ēri, -fessus sum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>confine, contineō, -ere, -uī, -ten tum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>conquer, vincō, -ere, vici, victum; superō, 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>conscientious, sāntctus, -a, -um.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>conscript, conscriptus, -a, -um.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>consecrate, inītiō, 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>consider, dēliberō, 1; cōnsiderō, 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Latin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conspiracy, conspirator, conspire</td>
<td>consūlatus, -ātus, -ās, M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consul, consul, consulship</td>
<td>consulatus, -ātus, -ās, M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consult, consul, consular, consul</td>
<td>consulātus, -ātus, -ās, M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consulship, consul, consulship</td>
<td>consulātus, -ātus, -ās, M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consult, consular, consul</td>
<td>consulātus, -ātus, -ās, M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contain, see hold</td>
<td>contenētus, -ātus, -ās, M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>content, contents, -a, -um.</td>
<td>contenētus, -ātus, -ās, M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contest, certamen, contest to</td>
<td>certamen, -ānūs, -ās, N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contrary to</td>
<td>contrā, w. acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contribute, confero, confer</td>
<td>conferrō, 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cornelia, Cornelia</td>
<td>Cornelia, -ae, F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>could, see can</td>
<td>could, see can</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>country, terra, -ae, F., land</td>
<td>country, terra, -ae, F., land</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>earth, rūs, rūris, N., country as opposed to city</td>
<td>earth, rūs, rūris, N., country as opposed to city</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crime, scelus, -eris, N.</td>
<td>crime, scelus, -eris, N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>criminal, facinorosus, -ī, M.</td>
<td>criminal, facinorosus, -ī, M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cross transeō, -erē, -ivī (-īī), -ittum</td>
<td>cross transeō, -erē, -ivī (-īī), -ittum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cruel, crūdēlis, -e.</td>
<td>cruel, crūdēlis, -e.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cruelly, crūdēlīter</td>
<td>cruelly, crūdēlīter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>custody, custōdia, -ae, F.</td>
<td>custody, custōdia, -ae, F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>custom, mōs, mōris, M.</td>
<td>custom, mōs, mōris, M.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**D**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dagger, stīca, -ae, F.</td>
<td>dagger, stīca, -ae, F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daily, cotidiēns, -a, -um.</td>
<td>daily, cotidiēns, -a, -um.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>danger, periculum, -ī, N.</td>
<td>danger, periculum, -ī, N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dangerous, importūnus, -a, -um.</td>
<td>dangerous, importūnus, -a, -um.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dare, audēō, -erē, ausus sum.</td>
<td>dare, audēō, -erē, ausus sum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daring, audāx, -ācis.</td>
<td>daring, audāx, -ācis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daughter, filia, -ae, F.</td>
<td>daughter, filia, -ae, F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>day, diēs, -ēs, M. and F.; to-day, hodiē; yesterday, hesterō diē.</td>
<td>day, diēs, -ēs, M. and F.; to-day, hodiē; yesterday, hesterō diē.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

dead of, the, summus, -a, -um. | dead of, the, summus, -a, -um. |
| dear, carō, -a, -um. | dear, carō, -a, -um. |
| death, mors, mortis, F.; put to death, necō, 1. | death, mors, mortis, F.; put to death, necō, 1. |
| debt, aes aliēnum, N. | debt, aes aliēnum, N. |
| December, December, -bris, -bre. | December, December, -bris, -bre. |
| decide, decide upon, statuō, -ere, -ūs, -ūtum. | decide, decide upon, statuō, -ere, -ūs, -ūtum. |
| declare, declarō, 1; confirmō, 1. | declare, declarō, 1; confirmō, 1. |
| decree, dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum; decree of the Senate, senātūs cōnsulūm, -ī, N. | decree, dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum; decree of the Senate, senātūs cōnsulūm, -ī, N. |
| deep, altus, -a, -um. | deep, altus, -a, -um. |
| deeply, vehementer. | deeply, vehementer. |
| defeat, superō, 1; vincō, -ere, -vīcī, victum. | defeat, superō, 1; vincō, -ere, -vīcī, victum. |
| defend, defendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsum. | defend, defendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsum. |
| defendor, defensor, -orīs, M. | defendor, defensor, -orīs, M. |
| delay, mora, -ae, F. | delay, mora, -ae, F. |
| delight, dēlectō, 1. | delight, dēlectō, 1. |
| deliver, (an address), habēō, 2. | deliver, (an address), habēō, 2. |
| demand, poscō, -ere, poposći, postulō, 1; dēposcō. | demand, poscō, -ere, poposći, postulō, 1; dēposcō. |
| deny, say not, negō, 1. | deny, say not, negō, 1. |
| depart, proficiscor, -ī, -fectus sum. | depart, proficiscor, -ī, -fectus sum. |
| derive, accipio, -ere, -cēpī, -cep tum. | derive, accipio, -ere, -cēpī, -cep tum. |
| descend, be descended, orior, iō, -ortus sum. | descend, be descended, orior, iō, -ortus sum. |
| deserving, be . . . of, mereor, 2. | deserving, be . . . of, mereor, 2. |
| design, cōnsilium, -ī, N. | design, cōnsilium, -ī, N. |
| desire, vīlō, velle, volui; cupio, cupere, cupiō, cupūtum. | desire, vīlō, velle, volui; cupio, cupere, cupiō, cupūtum. |
| desirous, cupidus, -a, -um. | desirous, cupidus, -a, -um. |
| despair, désperō, 1. | despair, désperō, 1. |
| desperate, perdītus, -a, -um. | desperate, perdītus, -a, -um. |
| despise, contemnō, -ere, -tempšt, -temptum. | despise, contemnō, -ere, -tempšt, -temptum. |
| destroy, dēleo, -ere, -ēvī, -ētum. | destroy, dēleo, -ere, -ēvī, -ētum. |
ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY 403

destruction, pestis, -is, F.; exi-
tium, -î, N.
devastate, vâstô, 1.
direction, pars, partis, F.
disgrace, macula, -ae, F.
dismiss, dîmîttô.
disregard, neglect, neglegô, -ere, -lêxi, -lêctum.
divine, divînus, -a, -um.
do, faciô, -ere, fêci, factum.
do not, negative command, see Lesson II.
doubt, be in doubt, dubitô, 1; there is no doubt that, nôn est dubium quîn.
dread, pertimôscô, -ere, -uí.
drive, déferô; drive away, dê-
pellô, -ere, -pulî, -pulsum; drive out, expellô; éiciô, -ere, éicê, éiectum.
due, dêbitus, -a, -um.
duty, do one's duty, satis facere.

E
eager, be, studeô, 2; eager for, adj., cupidus, -a, -um.
eagle, aquîla, -ae, F.
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, -e.
elect, creô, 1.
else, alius, -a, -ud.
embarrass, impediô, 4.
eminent, clârißimus, -a, -um.
empire, imperium, -î, N.
encourage, cohortor, 1.
end, bring to an, cônficiô.
durability, patientia, -ae, F.
dure, patior, patî, passus sum.
enemy, hostis, -is, M., of one's country; inîmîcus, -î, M., a personal enemy.

enough, satis.
enroll, ascribô, -ere, -scripî, -scripsum.
enlô, légâtus, -î, M.
enlô, invideô.
equestrian, equester, -tris, -tre.
escape, vitô, 1; effugî, -ere, -fûgî, -fugitum.
escort, prósequor, -î, -secûtus sum.
especially, praesertim.
establish, cônstituô, -ere, -uî, -âtum.
even, etiam.
evening, vespér, -erî, M.
everlasting, sempiternus, -a, -um
every, each, quisque; every one, quisque, quaeque, quodque (quidque).
everything = all things.
exemlple, exemplum, -î, N.
excel, antecellô, -ere, w. dat.
except, praeter, w. acc.; nisi, after negatives.
exile, exsilium, -î, N.
exist, sum, -esse, -fûi.
extpect, spôrô, 1.
experienced, perîtus, -a, -um.
express, dicô; express grati-
tude, grátias agô.
extinguish, restinguô, -ere, -stînxi, -stîctum.
extravagant, singulâris, -e.
eye, oculus, -î, M.

F
fair, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
faithful, fidêlis, -e; certus, -a, -um.
fall into, incidô, -ere, -cidî.
fame, fâmâ, -ae, F.
family (i.e. stock), genus, -eris, N., gēns, gentis, F.
famous, clārus, -a, -um.
far, longē; be so far from, tan-tum abest ut.
farthest, extrēmus, -a, -um.
father, pater, patris, M.
fear, timor, -ōris, M.; metus, -ūs, M.; to fear, vereor, 2;
timeō, 2; metuō, -ere, -uī, metútum.
feel, sentiō, -ire, -sensī, sensum.
feel grateful, grātiam habeo.
fellow-citizen, civis, -is, M.; pl., civēs, Quirītēs.
few, paucl, -ae, -a.
fifteen, qūndecim.
fight, pugnō, 1; contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum.
find, inventō, -ire, -uēnī, -ven-tum, discover; reperīō, -ire, reperī, repertum, meet with;
cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nītum, find out.
fire, ignis, -is, M.; incendium, -ī, N.
first, prīmus, -a, -um.
fitting, it is, opertē, 2.
five, quīnque.
flame, flamma, -ae, F.
flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitum; profugiō.
fleet, classis, -is, F.
foe, see enemy.
follow, sequor, -ī, secūtus sum.
for, prō, ad, w. acc.; nam, conj.; for a long time, now for a long time, iam diū, iam dūdum.
force, vīs, vīs, F.; forces, troops, cōpiæ, -ārum, F.
foreign, externus, -a, -um.
forget, oblīviscor, -ī, oblītus sum.
forgetful of, oblītus, -a, -um.
form, make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.
former, prīstīnus, -a, -um; su-perior, -ius.
fortify, mūniō, 4.
fortunate, fortūnātus, -a, -um.
fortune, good fortune, fortūna, -ae, F.; fortunes, fortūnae, rēs.
fifty, quaddagintā.
found, build (a city), condō, -ere, -didī, -ditum.
four, quattuor.
fourth, quārtus, -a, -um.
free, set free, liberō, 1.
freedman, liberīnus, -ī, M.
friend, amīcus, -ī, M.; of the people, populāris.
friendship, amīcitia, -ae, F.
from, out of, ē, ex; from, away from, ā, ab; dē, down from.
full, plēnus, -a, -um.

G

garrison, praesidium, -ī, N.
gate, porta, -ae, F.
gather, collect, collīgō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
general, imperātor, -ōris, M.
Geneva, Genāva, -ae, F.
get grain, frūmentor, 1.
gift, dōnum, -ī, N.
give, dō, dare, dēdī, datum.
gladiator, gladiātor, -ōris, M.
glory, gloria, -ae, F.
go, eō, ire, ēī, itum; pergō, -ere, perrēxī, perrēctum; go out, excē; is going on, geritur.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>god, deus, deī, M.</td>
<td>highest, summus, -a, -um.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good, bonus, -a, -um.</td>
<td>hill, collis, -is, M.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good citizens, boni, -ōrum.</td>
<td>him, eum, se.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grain, frumentum, -ī, N.</td>
<td>himself, ipse, suī.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grandfather, avus, -ī, M.</td>
<td>hinder, impēdiō, 4.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grateful, be, grātiām habeō.</td>
<td>his, her, its, suus, -a, -um; eius.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gratitude, grātia, -ae, F.</td>
<td>hittherto, adhúc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>great, māgnus, -a, -um; how great, summus, -a, -um, quantus, -a, -um.</td>
<td>hold, teneō, -ere, -uī, -tentum; contineō.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>greatly, māgnopere, māgni.</td>
<td>home, domus; homeward, domum; at home, domī.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grief, maeror, -ōris, M.</td>
<td>honor, honor, -ōris, M.; to honor, colō, -ere, -uī, cultum.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guard, custōs, -ōdis (a sentinel); praesidium, -ī (a garrison); to guard, custōdiō, 4.</td>
<td>hope, spēs, speī, F.; to hope, spērō, 1.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guardian, custōs, -ōdis, M.</td>
<td>hospitality, hospitium, -ī, N.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guide, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum.</td>
<td>hour, hōra, -ae, F.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hand, handwriting, manus, -ūs, F.</td>
<td>house, domus, -ūs, F.; at the house of, apud, or ad, w. acc.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hand over, trādō, -ere, -didi, -ditum.</td>
<td>how, quam; in what manner, quō modo.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happens, it happens, the result is, accidit, -ere, accidit; fit, fierī, factum est.</td>
<td>how great, quantus, -a, -um.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>harbor, portus, -ūs, M.</td>
<td>how long, quam diū.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hard-hearted, ferreus, -a, -um.</td>
<td>how many, quot, indecl. adj.; quam multī, -ae, -a.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>harm, noceō, 2.</td>
<td>how much, quantum.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>harmony, concordia, -ae, F.</td>
<td>however much, quamvīs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hate, ōdiī, ōdisse, with present meaning.</td>
<td>hunger, famēs, -īs, F.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hateful, odiōsus, -a, -um.</td>
<td>I, ego.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hatred, odium, -ī, N.; invidia, -ae, F.</td>
<td>if, si, conj.; if only, modo, dum, dum modo, cons.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have, habeō, 2.</td>
<td>illustrious, clārus, -a, -um.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>he, is, ille, hic.</td>
<td>immortal, immortālis, -e.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear, audiō, 4.</td>
<td>impel, impellō, -ere, -pullī, -pullīsum.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hem in, teneō, -ere, -uī, -tentum.</td>
<td>impious, impius, -a, -um.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>herald, praecō, -ōnis, M.</td>
<td>in, in, w. abl.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heretofore, adhúc.</td>
<td>inactivity, inertia, -ae, F.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>Latin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>income,</td>
<td>fructus, -ūs, M.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>increase,</td>
<td>crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētum.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incur,</td>
<td>concipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -cep-tum.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indeed, at least,</td>
<td>quidem; surely,</td>
<td>profectō.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>induce,</td>
<td>addūcō.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infantry,</td>
<td>peditēs, -um, M., pl.;</td>
<td>peditātus, -ūs, M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>information,</td>
<td>of this</td>
<td>1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>injury,</td>
<td>ināuria, -ae, F.;</td>
<td>detri-mentum, -ī, N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inquisitise,</td>
<td>quacerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insurrection,</td>
<td>sēditiō, -onis, F.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interest,</td>
<td>interest, -esse, -fuit.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intimate,</td>
<td>on . . . terms, fam’ilihariter.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>into,</td>
<td>in, w. ace.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intrust,</td>
<td>permittō; commendō, 1.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>involved,</td>
<td>be, versor, 1.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it, is, ea, id; suā.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>joy,</td>
<td>gaudium, -ī, N.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>judge,</td>
<td>iūdex, iūdicis, M.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>judgment,</td>
<td>iūdicium, -ī, M.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jupiter,</td>
<td>Iuppiter, Iovis, M.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep, restrain,</td>
<td>contineō, -ere, -uī, -tentum; keep off, arceō, 2; keep silent, taceō, 2.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kill,</td>
<td>interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fēctum; occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kind,</td>
<td>genus, -eris, N.; of this</td>
<td>1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kindle,</td>
<td>cōnflo, 1.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>king,</td>
<td>rēx, rēgis, M.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knight,</td>
<td>equēs, -ītis, M.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know,</td>
<td>sciō, 4; nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum; intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum; not know, nescīō, -īre, -īvī.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knowledge,</td>
<td>scientia, -ae, F.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>labor,</td>
<td>labor, -ōris, M.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lack,</td>
<td>dēsum, -esse, -fuī.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>land,</td>
<td>terra, -ae, F.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>large,</td>
<td>māgnus, -a, -um.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>last,</td>
<td>proximus, -a, -um.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>late,</td>
<td>sērō, adv.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>law,</td>
<td>lex, légis, F.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lax,</td>
<td>dissolūtus, -a, -um.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lay before,</td>
<td>report, dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum; lay on, īnerō.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lead,</td>
<td>dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum; lead out, edūcō.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leader,</td>
<td>dux, ducis, M.; prīnceps, -ipis, M.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learning men,</td>
<td>prīncipēs, -um, M.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn,</td>
<td>cognōscō, -ere, cognōvī, cognitum.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leave behind, leave,</td>
<td>relinquō, -ere, -lēquī, -lēctum; exēō, -īre, -ūī, -lūtum.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>legion,</td>
<td>légio, -onis, F.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let, see Lesson II; allow,</td>
<td>patiō,</td>
<td>patū, passus sum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>letter,</td>
<td>litterae, -arum, F.; epis-tula, -ae, F.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>levy (upon),</td>
<td>imperō, 1.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liberal,</td>
<td>amplus, -a, -um; liberālis, -e.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lieutenant,</td>
<td>légātus, -ī, M.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>life,</td>
<td>vīta, -ae, F.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>light,</td>
<td>daylight, lūx, lūcis, F.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
like, similis, -e. like, wish, volō; velle, voluī.
listen, audīō, 4.
literature. litterae, -ārum, F.
little, parvus, -a, -um.
live, habitō, 1; vivō, 3.
long, a long time, longer, longest, diū, diūtius, diūtissimē; no longer, nōn iam.
long since, iam prīdem.
lose, āmillō, -ere, -mīsi, -missum.
loss, dēminuītiō, -onis, F.
loyal, bonus, -a, -um.

M
madness, furor, -ōris, M.
magistrate, magistrātus, -ūs, M.
maintain, alō, -ere, -ūi, altum.
make, facio, -ere, fēci, factum; make upon, īnferō; make ready, parō, 1.
man, vir, virī, M., distinguished from women; homō, -īnis, M. and F., human being.
many, mūltī, -ae, -a.
march, īter, itineris, N.; to march, īter faciō.
Marseilles, Massilia, -ae, F.
massacre, caedes, -is, F.
matter = thing.
may, see Lesson III.
me, see I.
meet together, conveniō.
meeting, coctus, -ūs, M.
memory, memoria, -ae, F.
middle, middle of, mediūs, -a, -um.
might, expressing permission, licet.
mild, clēmēns, -entis; lēnis; -e.
mile, mille passuum.
military affairs, rēs mīlitāris.
mind, mēns, mentis, F., understanding; animus, -ī, M., will.
mindful, memor, -ōris.
month, mēnsis, -is, M.
most, adj., plūrimus; adv. plūrimum; superlative ending of adj. or adv.
move, moveō, -ere, mōvī, mōtum; permoveō.
much, multus, -a, -um; adv., multum, multō.
Mulvian, Mulvius, -a, -um.
must, see Lesson IV.
my, meus, -a, -um.
myself, ego.

N
name, nōmen, nōminis, N.
nation, nātiō, -onis, F.
natural ability, nātūra, -ae, F.
near, prope, ferē; ad, w. acc.
nearest, proximus, -a, -um.
need, be necessary, necesse est; oportet, 2.
eglect, neglegō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum.
neighboring, fīnitimus, -a, -um.
neither . . . finitimus, -a, -um.
either . . . nor, neque . . . neque, nec . . . nec.
ever, numquam.
nevertheless, yet, still, tamen.
new, novus, -a, -um.
night, nox, noctis, F.; night before, nox superior.
no, nūllus, -a, -um.
noble, nōbilis, -e.
nobody, no one, nēmō; gen. and abl. supplied from nōllus.
no longer, nōn iam.
not, nōn, nē; not even, nē . . .
quidem.
not only . . . but also, nōn
sōlum . . . sed etiam.
not yet, nōndum.
nothing, nihil.

November, November, -bris, -bre.

now, nunc, iam.

number, numerus, -ī, M.; in
great numbers, frequēns, -entīs.

O

O that, utinam.
obey, pārēō, 2.
object, reclāmō, 1.
objection, make . . . to, ob-
trectō, 1.
obtain, obtain a request, im-
pētō, 1.

October, Octōber, -bris, -bre.
of, concerning, dē.
offer, praēferō; obferō.
office, imperium, -ī, N.; magis-
trātus, -ūs, M.
often, saepe.
old, senex, senis; vetus, -erīs.
on, in, w. acc. after verbs of
motion; w. abl. after verbs
of rest.
on all sides, undique.

once, quondam.
one, ānus, -a, -um.
one . . . another, alius . . .
alius.
one . . . the other, alter . . .
alter.
only, sōlus, -a, -um; ānus, -a,
-um.
open, patēfacio; be open, pateō,
-ēre. -uī.

opinion, sententia, -ae, F.
opportunity, facultās, -ātīs, F.
or, aut; in double questions,
an nōn; in indirect double
questions, necne.
oration, orātō, -ōnis, F.
orator, orātor, -ōris, M.
order, in order that, ut, conj.
order, command, iūbeō, -ēre,
iussī, iussum; imperō, 1.
order, rank, Ārdō, -inis, M.
other, alius, -a, -ud; some . . .
others, aliī . . . aliī; the other,
alter, cēlerus.
ought, dēbēō, 2; oportet, 2; see
Lesson IV.

our, noster, nostra, nostrum.
out of, ē, ex.
outside of, extrā, w. acc.
overhang, impendeō, -ēre.
overtake, cōnsequor, -ī, -secutus
own, his, suus, ipsīus.

P

pardon, ignōscō, -ere, -ignōvī,
ignōtum.
parent, parēns, -entīs, M. or F.
part, pars, partīs, F.
pass, fauces, -ium, F.
patience, patientia, -ae, F.
patriot, bonus, -ī, M.
patriotic, bonus, -a, -um; amāns
rei publicae.
peace, pāx, pācis, F.
people, populus, -ī, M.
peril, periculum, -ī, N.
permit, allow, pātor, pas,
passus sum; licet, 2.
persuade, persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī,
-suāsum.
philosopher, philosophus, -ī, M.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pirate,</td>
<td>praedō, -onis, M.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pitch,</td>
<td>pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pity,</td>
<td>misericordia, -ae, F.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place,</td>
<td>locus, -i, M.; pl. locē and loca.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place in command of,</td>
<td>praeficiō, w. dat.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plan,</td>
<td>consilium, -i, N.; to plan, cōgitō, 1; excōgitō, 1.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pleasant,</td>
<td>iucundus, -a, -um.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>please,</td>
<td>délectō, 1, w. acc.; placeō, 2, w. dat.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pleasing,</td>
<td>grātus, -a, -um.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pleasure,</td>
<td>voluptās, -tātis, F.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plot,</td>
<td>māchinor, 1; mōltor, 4.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plunder,</td>
<td>praeda, -ae, F.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poet,</td>
<td>poēta, -ae, M.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possible, as ... as possible,</td>
<td>quam + sup. of adj.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>power,</td>
<td>facullās, -tātis, F.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>powerful,</td>
<td>potēns, -entis; be very powerful, plūrimum posse or valēre.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praetor,</td>
<td>praetor, -ōris, M.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praise,</td>
<td>laus, laudis, F.; to praise, laudō, 1.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>precedent,</td>
<td>exemplum, -ī, N.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prefer,</td>
<td>mālō, mālle, mālūī.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>preserve,</td>
<td>cōnservō, 1.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pretend,</td>
<td>simulō, 1.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prevent,</td>
<td>dēterrcō, 2; prohibeō, 2.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>private,</td>
<td>privātus, -a, -um.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>profit,</td>
<td>fructus, -ās, M.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>promise,</td>
<td>polliceor, 2.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prompt,</td>
<td>prōmptus, -a, -um.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>property,</td>
<td>rēs, rērum, F.; bona, -ōrum, N.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>protect,</td>
<td>dēfendō, -ere, -fendi, -fēnsum.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>protection,</td>
<td>praesidium, -ī, N.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>provide,</td>
<td>provideō; cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -sultum.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>provided that,</td>
<td>modo, dum, dum modo.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>province,</td>
<td>prōvincia, -ae, F.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>punish,</td>
<td>pūniō, 4; ulciscor, -ī, ultus sum.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>punishment,</td>
<td>poena, -ae, F.; supplicium, -ī, N.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>purpose,</td>
<td>mēns, mentis, F.; consilium, -ī, N.; for the purpose of, causā.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put in command of,</td>
<td>praeficiō, -ere, -feci, -fectum.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put to death,</td>
<td>necō, 1; interficiō, -ere, -feci, -fectum.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put to flight,</td>
<td>in fugam dō, dare, dēdi, datum; fugō, 1.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>question,</td>
<td>rēs, rei, F.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quickly,</td>
<td>celeriter.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raise,</td>
<td>efferō, -ferre, extuli, ēlātum.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rank,</td>
<td>ordō, -inis, M.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reach,</td>
<td>perveniō.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>read,</td>
<td>lectō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ready,</td>
<td>parātus, -a, -um; make ready, comparō, 1.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reason, cause,</td>
<td>causa, -ae, F.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recall,</td>
<td>revocō, 1.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>receive,</td>
<td>recipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recognize,</td>
<td>cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refer,</td>
<td>referō.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reflect,</td>
<td>cōgitō, 1.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refresh,</td>
<td>reficiō.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refuse,</td>
<td>recūsō, 1.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
regard, with — to, dē.
reject, repudiō, 1.
rejoice, laetor, 1.
rely, (upon), confidō, -ere, fīsus.
relying, frētus, -a, -um.
remain, stay, mancō, -ere, mānsī, mānsum; remaneō; it remains, relinquitur.
remaining, reliquus, -a, -um.
remarkable, eximius, -a, -um.
remember, memini, meminisse; reminiscor, -l.
remove, depello, -ere, -pull, -pulsum.
repent, paenitet, -ere, -uit.
report, defero.
reply, respondō, -ere, -spondō, -sponsum.
republlic, rēs publica, F.
rescue, eripio, -ere, -ui, -reptum.
residence, domicilium, -i, N.
resign, abdicō (1) ab.
resist, resistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum.
rest of, the, see remaining.
restrain, contineō, -ere, -uī, -tentum.
result, the — was, factum est.
return, revertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum; deponent in pres. system; redeō, -irc, -iī, -itum; in return for, prō.
revel, bacchor, 1.
revenue, vectīgal, -ālis, N.
revolution, rēs novae.
reward, praemium, -i, N.
right, iūs, iūris, N
rightly, vērē.
rival, competitor, -ōris, M.
river, flūmen, flāminis, N.
road, via, -ae, F.; iter, itineris, N.

Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um; Romans, Rōmānī, -ōrum, M.
Rome, Rōma, -ae, F.
Rostra, rōstra, -orun, N.
ruin, pestis, -is, F.
rule, imperium, -i, N.; to rule, regō, -ere, réxi, réctum; rule over, imperō, 1, w. dat.

S
sacred rites, sacra, -ōrum, N.
safe, tūtus, -a, -um, well-guarded, secure; salvus, -a, -um, incolunis, -e, unharmed.
safety, salūs, -ūlis, F.; in safety, tūtō.
sail, nāvīgō, 1.
sally, excursus, -ās, M.
salute, salūtō, 1.
same, the same, idem, eadem, idem.
satisfied, contentus, -a, -um.
save, servō, 1; cōnservō, 1.
say, dico, -ere, dixi, dictum.
sarcely yet, vixdum.
soundret, implied in iste; sceleratūs, -i, M.
scout, explorātor, -ōris, M.
sea, mare, maris, N.
seal, signum, -i, N.
secure, potior, 4.
see, videō, -ere, vidi, visum.
seek, pelō, -ere, -ivi, -itum.
seem, videor, -ērī, visus sum.
seize, occupō, 1; capiō, -ere, cēpi, captum; comprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hensus.
select, see choose.
self, ipse, -a, -um; of himself, sui.
self-control, temperantia, -ae, F.
self-restraint, continentia, -ae, F.

Senate, senātus, -ās, M.

senator, senātor, -ōris, M.

send, mittō, -ere, mūsī, missum; send ahead, praemittō.

separate, sécerno, -ere, -crem, -cretum.

September, September, -hris, -hrē.

serve, servio, 4.

set fire to, incendō, -ere, -cendi, -censum.

set up, conloco, 1.

seventh, septimus, -a, -um.

severe, vehementer.

severest, summus, -a, -um.

shop, taberna, -ae, F.

short, brevis, -e.

show, referō; ostendō, -ere, -ī, -entum.

shrewd, callidus, -a, -um.

shrine, fānum, -ī, N.

signal, sīgnum, -ī, N.

silent, tacitus, -a, -um; keep silent, taceō, 2.

silver, adj., argenteus, -a, -um.

since, cum, quoniam.

sink, déprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum.

situation, rēs, rei, F.; causa, -ae, F.

six, sex.

sixth, sextus, -a, -um.

slaughter, caedes, -is, F.

slave, servus, -ī, M.

so, tam, ita, sic; so great, tantus, -a, -um; so that, ut.

soldier, miles, militis, M.

some one, something, some, aliquis, quidam, nescio quis.

some . . . others, alī . . . alī. son, filius, -ī, M.

soon, as —— as possible, quam primum.

Spain, Hispānia, -ae, F.

speak, loquor, -ī, locūtus sum; dico, -ere, dictum.

special, eximius, -a, -um.

speech, ōrātiō, -onis, F.

spirit, animus, -ī, M.

stake, be at, agō, -ere, ēgī, -ēctum.

stand, stō, -āre, stetī, stātum; stand about, circumstō; stand in the way of, obstō, -āre, -stī.

state, rēs pública, F.; cīvitās, -tātis, F.

statue, sīgnum, -ī, N.

stay, slator, -ōris; to stay, remaneō, -ere, -mānī, -māntum.

still, etiam, nunc, lamen.

storm, lempeslās, -tālis, F.

straight, adv., rēctā.

strange, mirus, -a, -um.

strengthen, fīrmō, 1.

strife, conviciūm, -ī, N.

strong, fīrmus, -a, -um.

strongly-fortified, mānītissimus.

study, studium, -ī, N.

such, of such a kind, tālis, -e; is, ea, id; so great, tantus, -a, -um; in such a manner, sic.

suddenly, subitō, repentē.

suffer, patior, patī, passus sum; suffer injury, dētrimentum capiō.

suitable, idōneus, -a, -um.

summer, aestās, -tātis, F.

summon, vocō, 1.

suppliant, supplex, -icis, M.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>support</td>
<td>firmamentum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>surely</td>
<td>profectō, adv.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>surrender</td>
<td>dēdō, -ere, dēdī, dēditum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>surround</td>
<td>circumcludō, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suspicion</td>
<td>suspiciō, -onis, F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sword</td>
<td>gladius, -i, M.; ferrum, -is, N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tablet</td>
<td>tabella, -ae, F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take</td>
<td>capio, -ere, cēpi, captum; take upon, undertake, suspiciō; take (time), sūmō, -ere, sūmpsi, sūmplum; take with, -ēdūcō.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>task</td>
<td>negotium, -i, N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tax-collector</td>
<td>publicānus, -ī, N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell</td>
<td>dīcō, -ere, dīxi, dictum; nārrō, 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>temple</td>
<td>templum, -ī, N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tenth</td>
<td>decimus, -a, -um.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terrify</td>
<td>perterreo, 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>territory</td>
<td>finēs, -īum, M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than</td>
<td>quam.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thank</td>
<td>gratiȃs aȏgō.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thankful</td>
<td>gratiam habeō.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thanksgiving</td>
<td>supplicātiō, -onis, F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that</td>
<td>ille, is, iste; that of yours, iste; that, in order that, ut, quō; that not, nē, ut nōn; the fact that, quod; (doubt) that, quīn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>their</td>
<td>suus, -a, -um; eōrum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>themselves</td>
<td>sē.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there</td>
<td>ibi; to that place, eō; as an expletive, omitted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>therefore</td>
<td>itaque, igitur.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they</td>
<td>generally omitted; pl. of is, ille, hīc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thing</td>
<td>rēs, reī, F.; neut. pl. of adj.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td>reckon, putō, 1; believe, arbitrōr, 1; value, existimō, 1; think of, cōgitō, 1, w. acc.; think with (some one), sentiō, -ēre, sēnsī, sēnum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>third</td>
<td>tertius, -a, -um.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thirst</td>
<td>sītis, -is, F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>this</td>
<td>hīc, is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>though</td>
<td>although, cum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thousand</td>
<td>mīlle, indecl. adj. in sing.; pl., mīlia, -īum, noun, N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>threaten</td>
<td>minitor, 1; impendeō, -ēre.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>three</td>
<td>trēs, tria.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throng</td>
<td>frequentia, -ae, F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>through</td>
<td>throughout, per, w. acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>till</td>
<td>dum, quod.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time</td>
<td>tempus, -oris, N.; now for a long time, iam diū, iam dūdum; by this time, iam.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to</td>
<td>ad, w. acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to-day</td>
<td>hodie, adv.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>together</td>
<td>prefix com-; adv., ānā.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>too</td>
<td>comparative ending.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top</td>
<td>the top of, summus, -a, -um.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>torch</td>
<td>fax, facis, F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>towards</td>
<td>ad, in, w. acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>town</td>
<td>oppidum, -ī, N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trader</td>
<td>mercātor, -āris, M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>training</td>
<td>disciplīna, -ae, F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>treat</td>
<td>trāctō, 1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tribe</td>
<td>civītās, -ātis, F.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tribune</td>
<td>tribūnus, -ī, M.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tributary</td>
<td>vectīgālis, -is, M.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The Latin entries are provided in their original form with some modern orthographic adaptations.
Trojan, Trōiānus, -a, -um.
troops, cōpiae, -ārum, F.
true, vērus, -a, -um.
trust to, frētus, -a, -um, w. abl.
try, cōnor, 1.
turn, convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum.
twenty, vīgintī.
two, duo, duae, duo.

U
undergo, subeō, -ire, -īvī, -ītum.
undertaking, conātus, -ās, M.
unfriendly, inimicus, -a, -um.
unjust, inīguus, -a, -um.
unjustly, iniūriōsē.
unless, nisi, conj.
unlike, dissimilis, -e.
unpopularity, invidia, -ae, F.
until, till, dum, quoad.
unwilling, invītus, -a, -um; be unwilling, nōlō, nōlle, nōlūī.
unwisely, imprūdenter.
urge, cohortor, 1.
use, āsus, -ās, M.; to use, ālor, ātī, āsus sum.
useful, ūtilis, -e.

V
valiantly, fortiter.
valor, virtus, -ūtis, F.
vergobretus, vergobretus, -ī, M.
verse, versus, -ās, M.
very, īpsē, when a noun is to be emphasized; otherwise, superlative ending of adj. or adv.
victorious, victor, -ōris.
victory, victōria, -ae, F.
vigilant, vigilāns, -antis.
will, voluntās, -tātis, F.

willing, be willing, volō, velle, volūā.

winter, hiems, hiemis, F.; pass the winter, hiemō, 1; winter-quarters, hiberna, -ōrum, N.

wipe out, dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum.

wisdom, sapientia, -ae, F.; cōn-silium, -ī, N.

wish, desire, be willing, volō, velle, volūā.

with, in company with, cum.

within, of time, expressed by abl.; of place, intus, adv.; intrā, prep. w. acc.

without, sine, w. abl.; be without, careō, 2.

withstand, obsistō, -ere, -stītī, -stītum; resistō.

witness, testis, -is, M.

woman, mulier, -eris, F.

word, verbum, -ī, N.

worship, veneror, 1.

worthy, dīgnus, -a, -um; it is worth while, tantī est.

wrest, extorquō, -torquēre, -torsī, -torquētum.

write, scribō, -ere, scripsi, scrip-tum.

writer, scrip-tor, -ōris, M.

would that, utinam, adv.

wounded, sauciūs, -a, -um.

Y

year, annus, -ī, M.

yesterday, hesternā die.

yet, tamen; not yet, nōndum.

you, tū, vōs.

your, tuus, -a, -um; vester, vestra, vestrum.

yourself, tūī.

youth, a young man, iuvenis, -īs, M.; adulēscēns, -entis, M.

Z

zeal, studium, -ī, N.
VOCABULARY

LATIN–ENGLISH

The figures 1, 2, and 4 after verbs indicate that the principal parts are like those of laudō, moneō, and audiō, respectively.

A

A., see Aulus.

ā (before cons.), ab (before vowels or cons.), abs (before tē); prep. w. abl. (away from), from, by; as prefix, away, off, un-.

abdīcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dicō], tr., disown; se abdicāre, resign, abdicate, w. abl. of the office.

abdō, -dere, -dīdī, -ditum [dō], tr., put away, hide, conceal, bury.

abeō, -ire, -ī, -ītum [eō], intr., go away.

abhorreō, -ēre, -uī, — [horreō], tr. and intr., shrink from, be remote from, be foreign to, be averser; differ.

abiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [iaciō], tr., throw away, give up, abandon.

abiectus, -a, -um [abiciō], cast down, downcast, prostrate, overwhelmed.

abs, see ā.

absconditus, -a, -um [abscondō], hidden, concealed, secret.

absēns, absentis, adj. [absum], absent, distant.

absolūtiō, -ōnis, F. [absolvō], acquittal.

abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctum [abs + trahō], tr., draw away from.

absum, abesse, āfuī [sum], be away, be distant, be absent.

abundantia, -ae, F. [abundō], abundance.

abbrūtus, -a, -um [abscindō], cast down, downcast, prostrate, overwhelmed.

ac, see atque.

accēdiō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum [ad + cēdō], intr., go to, come to, approach, be applied, Ar. 6.

accelero, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad + celerō], intr., make haste, hasten.

accido, -cidere, -cidi, — [ad + cadō], intr., fall, happen.

accipio, -cipere, -cipē, -ceptum [ad + capiō], tr., take to, receive; hear; incur, sustain. P. 6; learn, P. 9.
Accius, -i, M., Accius (ak’sh(y)-us), a Roman poet, born 170 B.C.

accommodátus, -a, -um [accommodō], suitable, fit, adapted, appropriate.

accommodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [commodō], tr., adapt, suit, accommodate.

accubo, -are, — [ad -cubo], intr., lie at, recline.

accurate, adv. [accuratus], with care, accurately.

accuso, -are, -avi, -atum [ad -causa], tr., blame, find fault with.

acer, acris, acre, sharp, keen, eager, active, severe, vigorous.

acerbe, adv. [acerbus], bitterly, harshly.

acerbitās, -tatis, F. [acerbus], bitterness, severity.

acerbus, -a, -um [acer], bitter, harsh, violent, severe.

acervus, -i, M., heap, pile.

Achāia, -ae, F., Achaia (a-ka’ya), southern Greece.

Achillēs, -is, M., Achilles, Greek warrior and hero of Homer’s Iliad.

aciēs, -ēi, F., edge, line, battle-line, array, army (in battle array).

ācriter, adv. [ācer], sharply, keenly, energetically, zealously.

acroāma, -atis, N. (Greek), sound, entertainment; performer, Ar. 9.

āctus, -ūs, M. [agō], act (of a play).

ad, prep. w. acc., to, towards, near, at, at the house of, among, till, for, for the purpose of, in point of, as regards; as prefix, to, at.

adaequō, -āre, -āvī -ātum [aequō], tr., make equal to.

addō, -dere, -didī, -ditum [ad + dō], tr., put to, add.

addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [ad + dūcō], tr., lead to, bring to; induce, influence.

1. adeō, -ire, -ii, -itum [1. eō], tr., go to, visit; enter upon, Ar. 5.

2. adeō, adv. [2. eō], (to this limit), so far, even, Cat., I, 2; actually.


adferō, adferre, attuli, adlātum [ferō], tr., bring to, bring, apply; produce, cause, occasion, add.

adficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum [facciō], tr., do to, treat, affect, impair; visit, honor (with); in pass., suffer, receive; suppliciō adficere, punish.

adfingo, -fingere, -finxī, -fictum [fingo], tr., strike at, smite, afflict, distress, Cat., I, 13.

adfictō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of adfligō], tr., shatter, trouble, distress, Cat., I, 13.

adfligō, -fligere, -flīxi, -fictum [fligō], tr., strike at, smile, afflict, distress, ruin.

adflō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [flō], tr., blow, waft (towards).

adfluēns, -entis [adfluō], abounding, rich (in), full.

adgregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [gregō].
tr., bring together (in a flock).

adhibeō, -ère, -uī, -itum [habēō], tr., (hold toward), apply, use, employ; lend, furnish, supply.

adhortor, āvī, -ātus sum [hortor] dep., encourage, urge on.

adhūc, adv. [hūc], hitherto, as yet, up to this time.

adimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēemptum [emō], tr., take away, deny.

adipiscor, -i, adeptus sum, dep. [apiscor], (come up with), attain, obtain, secure.

aditus, -us, M. [1. adeō], access, approach, avenue, path.

adiumentum, -i, N. [adiuo], help, aid.

adiungo, -iungere, -iunxi, -iunctum [iungō], tr., join to, add; impose, confer upon.

adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvēi, -iūtum [iuvō], tr., help, assist.

adliçio, -licere, -lexi, -lectum [lacīo], tr., allure; attract, influence.

administer, -tri, M. [minister, servant], assistant.

administra, -ae, F., handmaiden, assistant.

administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ministrō], tr., care for, manage, govern, conduct, arrange, execute.

admīrātiō, -ōnis, F. [admīror], admiration.

admīrōr, -ārī, -ātus sum [mīrōr], dep., wonder at, marvel at, admire.

admoneō, -ère, -uī, -itum [moneō], tr., remind, warn; advise.

admonitus, -ūs, M. [admoneō], advice, suggestion.

admurmurātiō, -ōnis, F., a murmuring.

adnuō, -nuere, -nuī, — [nuō], intr., nod to, nod assent.

adornō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ōrnō], tr., adorn, equip, provide.

adprobō, -āre, āvī, -ātum [ad + probō], tr., give assent to, approve of.

adpropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [propinquō], intr., draw near (to), approach.

adquirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisītum [quaerō], tr., add (to), acquire, gain.

adscribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum [scribō], tr., enroll (as a citizen).

adsentīō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum [sentiō], intr., assent to, agree with.

adsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum [sequor], dep., follow up, overtake, reach; accomplish, effect, obtain, attain.

adservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [servō], tr., watch over, keep, guard.

adsidō, -sidere, -sēdī, — [sidō], intr., take a seat, sit down.

adsiduē, adv. [adsiduus], constantly.

adsto, -stāre, -stīti, — [stō], intr., stand near, stand by.

adsuefactus, -a, -um [adsuefaciō], trained, accustomed.

adsum, -esse, -fui [sum], be near, be present; aid, assist.

adulēscēns, -entis, M. [adulēscō], young man, youth.
adulescentia, -ae, F. [adulēscēns], youth.
adulescentulus, -i, M. [adulēscēns], very young man.
adulter, -terī, M., adulterer.
adultus, -a, -um [adolēscō], mature, full-grown.
adventīcius, -a, -um [advenīō], foreign.
adventus, -us, M. [advenio], arrival, approach, coming.
adversus, -a, -um [advertō], (turned towards), facing, unfavorable; adversae rēs, adversity.
adverāscit, -ere, —, impers., evening approaches, it grows dark.
aedificium, -i, N. [aedificō], building, house, edifice.
aedifico, -are, -avi, -atum [aedes, faciō], tr., build.
aedēs -is, F., (a dwelling of the gods), temple; pl., (a dwelling for men), house.
Aegaeus, -a, -um, Aegē'an.
aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick, suffering.
aegrē, adv. [aeger], with difficulty, reluctantly, bitterly.
Aemilius, -i, M., Aemilius, a gentile name; M. Aemilius Scaurus, consul 115 and 107 B.C.
Aenēas, -ae, M., Aene'as.
aequē, adv. [aequus], equally; aequē ac, just as.
aequitās, -tātis, F. [aequus], justice, equity.
aequus, -a, -um, even, equal; fair, just, right; favorable, calm; aequō animō, with a calm mind, with resignation.
aerārium, -i, N. [aerārius], treasury.
aerārius, -a, -um [aēs], of the treasury.
aes, aeris, N., copper, bronze, money; aes aliēnum, (another's money), debt; pl., bronze tablets.
aestās, -tātis, F., summer.
aestimō, -āre, āvī, ātum [aēs], tr., judge, estimate.
aestus, -ūs, M., heat.
aetās, -tātis, F., age, old age; life.
aeternus, -a, -um, everlasting, eternal, endless.
Aetōli, -orum, M., the Aetolians, inhabitants of Aetolia.
Africa, -ae, F., Africa, especially the Roman province in the northern part of the continent.
Äfricănus, -a, -um [Äfrica], African; Africanus, a surname of two of the Scipios.
ager, agri, M., field, land, country.
agītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of agō], tr., disturb, agitate, rouse.
agnōscō, -noscere, -nōvī, -nitum [ad + (g)nōscō], tr. recognize, understand.
agō, -ere, -ēgi, āctum, tr., (put in motion), drive, do, act, act on; aim at; speak, plead; spend (aetatem); pass., be at stake, P. 2, 6; age vērō, come now, well then.
agrarius, -a, -um [ager], pertaining to land; agrārii, M. pl., the agrarian party (supporting agrarian laws).

agrestis, -e [ager], of the country, country (adj.); rude, boorish, ignorant; as noun, countrymen.

agricola, -ae, M., farmer.

Ahāla, -ae, M., Ahala, a family name; Gāius Servilius Ahāla, a Roman officer, 439 B.C.

aliquando, adv. [ali-+ quandō], at some time, at any time, at length, finally, at last.

alius, -a, -ud, adj. or pron. (App. 13), another, other (of more than two); pl. some, others; alius . . . alius, one . . . another; alii . . . alii, some . . . others

Allobrogēs, -um, M. pl., the Allo’broges, a tribe southwest of Lake Geneva.

alter, -era, -erum, adj. or pron. (App. 13), the other (of two), second (in a series), another; alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other.

aliquot [alius, quot], indecl. adj., some, several, a number of.

aliquot [alius, quot], indecl. adj., some, several, a number of.
1. amicus, -i, M., friend.

2. amicus, -a, -um, friendly, dear.

Amīsus, -i, F. Amī'sus, a city of Pontus.

āmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum [mittō], tr., (send away), lose.

amō, -are, -avi, -atum, tr., love.

amoenitas, -tatis, F. [amoenus], charm, beauty.

amor, -oris, M. [amo], love.

amplector, -plecti, -plexus sum [ambi + plectō], dep., twine about, embrace, include, Cat., IV, 4.

amplified, -are, -avi, -atum [amplus, facio], tr., enlarge, extend, increase.

amplitude, -inis, F. [amplus], breadth, greatness, eminence, honor.

amplexus, -a, -um, great, ample; generous; illustrious, distinguished, honorable.

antecellō, -ere, —, — [cellō], intr., surpass, be superior to.

ante, prep. w. ace., before; adv., before, beforehand; ago; paulō ante, a little while ago; just now; as prefix, before, in advance.

anteā, adv. [ante], before, hitherto, formerly.

antequant, conj. [ante + quam], before.

anguli, -ëre, anxī, —, tr., distress, trouble, torment.
Antioch, a city of Syria.

Antiochus, the Great, king of Syria, 223–187 B.C.

Antiquitas, antiquity.

Antiquus, ancient, old: the men of old.

Apertus, open, undisguised.

Apparatus, prepared; elaborate, sumptuous.

Arbor, tree.

Ardeo, be on fire, be in flames, burn.

Arbor, a tree.

Armenian.

Armoe, arm, equip.
ars, artis, F., skill, art, accomplishment, quality, practice.
artifex, -ficis, M. [ars, fació], artist, scænicus artifex, actor.
arx, arcis, F., citadel, fortress, stronghold.
ascendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēnsum [ad + scandō], tr. and intr., climb, rise, ascend.
asciscō, -sciscere, -scivi, -scitum [ad + sciscō], tr., admit (to), enlist (in).
ascribo, -ere, ascripsi, ascriptum [scribo], tr., enroll, appoint.
Asia, -ae, F., Asia, Asia Minor.
Asiaticus,-a,-um [Asia], Asiatic.
aspectus, -ūs, M. [aspiciō], sight, view; appearance.
aspicio, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum [ad + spiciō], tr., look at, look upon.
asiduitās, (adsid-) -tātis, F. [assiduus], perseverance, persistent effort.
at, conj., but, expressing contrast or objection; yet, yet at least.
Athēnæae, -ārum, F., Athens.
Athēniënsis, -e, of Athens; pl. as noun, the Athenians.
atque (before vowels or cons.), ac (before cons.), and, and also, and especially; after words of comparison, as.
atquī, conj., and yet, why!
attrōcitās, -tātis, F. [atrōx], cruelty, fierceness, harshness.
attrōx, -ōcis [āter, black], fierce, cruel, horrible, inhuman, monstrous.
attendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum [ad + tendō], tr., (stretch toward), w. or without animum, observe, notice, mark, listen.
attenuō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [tenuō, make thin], tr., make thin, reduce.
Atticus, -i, M., Atticus; T. Pomponius Atticus, a correspondent of Cicero; Intro. 11.
attingō, -ere, attigī, attāctum [ad + tangō], tr., touch, reach, attain to; approach; attempt, touch upon, Ar. 9; set foot on, P. 9.
attribuō, -uere, -ūi, -ūtum [ad + tribuō], tr., assign, allot, distribute.
atuli, from adferō.
auctiōnārius, -a, -um [auctīō], of an auction, of the auctioneer.
auctor, -ōris, M. [augeō], originator, author, promoter, approver.
auctōritās, -tātis, F. [auctor], influence, authority, power, prestige; opinion.
audācia, -ae, F. [audāx], daring, boldness, courage; audacity, presumption, effrontery.
audāx, -ācis [audeō] bold, daring, audacious.
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, semidep., dare.
audiō, -īre, -īvi, -ītum, tr., hear, hear of, listen to.
auerō, -ferre, abstuli, ablātum [ab + ferō], tr., bear away, carry off.
aufugio, -fugere, -fugê, — [ab + fugio], intr., run away, escape.
augeô, -ère, auxì, auctum, tr., increase, enrich.
Aulus, -î, M., Aulus, a prae-nomen or personal name.
Aurélius, -a, -um, Aurelian; see Forum Aurélium.
auris, -is, F., ear; attention.
aurum, -i, N., gold.
auspicium, -i, N. [auspex], (divination by the flight of birds), augury; pl. auspices.
aut, conj., or; aut ... aut, either ... or.
autem, conj., on the other hand, but; furthermore, moreover, besides, while.
auxilium, -î, N. [augeo], aid, help, assistance; pl., auxiliary forces.
avâritia, -ae, F. [avârus], greed,avarice.
àversus, -a, -um [àvertô], turned away, averse, obstinate, hostile.
avidê, adv. [avidus], eagerly.
avidus, -a, -um [aveô, crave], craving, eager for.
avitus, -a, -um [avus], of one's grandfather.
ávocô, -âre, -âvi, -âtum [vocô], tr., call away.
avus, -î, M., grandfather.

B
bacchor, -âri, -âtus sum, dep. [Bacchus, god of wine], (celebrate the festival of Bacchus), revel, rage.
barbaria, -ae, F. [barbarus], barbarism; foreign country, uncivilized people.
barbarus, -a, -um, foreign, strange; as noun, foreigner.
barbâtus, -a, -um [barba], bearded.
beâtus, -a, -um [beô, make happy], happy, blessed, prosperous, Cat., II, 9.
bellicósus, -a, -um [bellum], warlike.
bellô, -âre, -âvi, -âtum, intr., wage war, carry on war, fight.
bellum, -î, N., war.
bene, adv. (App. 20), well, successfully.
beneficium, -î, N. [bene + faciô], (a well-doing), kindness, favor.
benefvolentia, -ae, F. [benevolentus], good will, benevolence, loyalty.
benignitas, -tâtis, F. [benignus], favor, courtesy, kindness.
bêstia, -ae, F., beast, animal.
bibô, -ere, -bibi, —, tr., drink.
bînî, -ae, -a, two each, two.
bipertîtô, adv. [bis + partitus], in two divisions.
bis, num. adv., twice.
Bithynia, -ae, F., Bithynia, a district of Asia Minor, south of the Black Sea.
bonus, -a, -um, good, worthy, excellent; as noun, bonum, advantage; pl. boni, good men, loyal citizens, patriots; bona, -órùm, goods, property, possessions.
Bosporâni, -órùm, M., dwellers on the Bosporus.
brevis, -e, short, brief.
breviter, adv. [brevis], briefly.
Brundisium, -i, N., Brundisium, a town in southern Italy; modern Brindisi.
Brūtus, -ī, M., Brutus, a family name; D. Iūnius Brūtus, consul, 138 B.C.
campus, -i, M., a plain, field; especially the Campus Martius, a plain in Rome, dedicated to Mars, used for assemblies of the people.
canō, -ere, cecinī, cantum, tr. and intr., sing, predict.
cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of canō], intr., sing.
cantus, -ūs, M. [canō], song, music.
capillus, -ī, M. [caput], hair (of the head).
capiō, capere, cépi, captum, tr., take, receive, hold, contain, capture, take prisoner; w. cōnsilium, form, adopt; w. dē-trimentum, suffer.
capitālis, -e [caput], deadly, mortal.
Capitōlium, -ī, N. [caput], the Capitoline Hill; the Capitol, a temple of Jupiter situated on the Capitoline.
Cappadocia, -ae, F., Cappadocia, a country of Asia Minor.
caput, capitis, N., head, life, civil rights.
Carbō, -ōnis, M., Carbo, a family name; C. Papirius Carbō, tribune of the people 89 B.C.
carcer, carceris, M., prison.
careō, -ère, -uí, —, fut. part. cariturus, intr., be without, want, be free from, be deprived of, withdraw from, Cat., I, 7.
cāritās, -tātis, F. [cārus], dearness, high price.
carmen, -inis, N., song, poem, verse.
Carthaginiensis, -e, of Carthage; pl. as noun, the Carthaginians.
Carthago, -inis, F., Carthage, a city in northern Africa.
cārus, -a, -um, dear, precious, valued.
Cassius, -ī, M., Cassius, a gentile name; 1. Lūcius Cassius,
a confederate of Catiline;
2. C. Cassius, consul 73 B.C.;
3. C. Cassius Longinus, praetor 44 B.C.

castē, adv. [castus], purely, honestly.

castra, -ōrum, N. pl., a camp.

castrēnsis, -e, of the camp.

cāsus, -ūs, M. [cadō], (a falling), accident, chance, fate, calamity; emergency, P. 20.

Catilina, -ae, M., Catilina (kat'i-lin), a family name; L. Sergius Catilina, the conspirator; see p. 181.

Catō, -onis, M., Cato, a family name; 1. Porcius Catō, a friend of Archias; 2. Mārcus Catō, the censor (234–149 B.C.).

Catulus, -ī, M., Ca’tulus, a family name; 1. Q. Lutātius Catulus, consul 102 B.C.; 2. Q. Lutātius Catulus, son of 1, consul 78 B.C.

causa, -ae, F., cause, reason, case, interest, question; causā (following a gen.), on account (of), for the sake (of), for the purpose (of).

-ce, enclitic emphasizing certain pronouns.

cēdō, -ere, cessi, cessum, intr., go from, withdraw; pass by (of time); yield, submit.

celeber, -bris, -bre, populous, frequented, busy.

celebritās, -tātis, F. [celeber], renown, celebrity.

celebrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [celeber], tr., frequent, throng; celebrate, solemnize, keep, honor, extol.

celeritās, -tātis, F. [celer], quickness, swiftness, celerity, rapidity, promptness.

celeriter, adv. [celer], quickly.

cēna, -ae, F., dinner, banquet.

cēnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [cēna], intr., dine, eat dinner.

cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, cēnsum, tr., tax, estimate, assess, enroll (as a citizen), resolve, enroll, vote; think.

cēnsor, -ōris, M., censor; see Introd. 38.

cēnsus, -ūs, M. [cēnseō], census, a censor’s list, census roll.

centuria, -ae, F. [centum], a division of the people, originally numbering one hundred.

centuriātus, -ūs, M. [centuriō], the office of a centurion, centurionship.

centuriō, -onis, M. [centuria], centurion.

Cēparius, -ī, M., Ceparius, a gentile name; Mārcus Cēparius, a confederate of Catiline.

cernō, -ere, crēvi, crētum, tr., separate, distinguish; see, perceive; decide, decree.

certāmen, -inis, N. [certō], contest, rivalry.

certē, adv. [certus], certainly, surely, at least.

1. certō, adv. [certus], with certainty, certainly.

2. certō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr., contend, struggle, fight, vie.

certus, -a, -um [cernō], decided
certain, sure; particular, definite; faithful; certior facio, inform; certior fiō, be informed.
cervix, -icus, F., neck.
cēterus, -a, -um, the rest, the other, other; pl. as noun, others, the others, the rest.
Cethēgus, -i, M., Cethēgus, a family name; C. Cornēlius Cethēgus, a confederate of Catiline.
Chīi, -ōrum, M., the Chians, people of the island Chios in the Aegean.
Chilō, -onis, M., Chilo, a family name; Q. Annius Chilō, a confederate of Catiline.
cibus, -i, M., food.
Cicerō, -onis, M., a cognomen or family name; 1. Mārcus Tullius Cicerō, the orator; see Introd.; 2. Q. Tullius Cicerō, praetor 62 b.c.; 3. M. Tullius Cicerō, son of the orator, born 65 b.c.
Cilicia, -ae, F., Cilicia, a Roman province in southern Asia Minor.
Cimber, -brī, M., Cimber, a cognomen; see Gabinius.
Cimbrī, -ōrum, M., the Cimbri, a people of northern Germany.
Cimbricus, -a, -um [Cimbrī], of the Cimbri, Cimbrian.
cingō, -ere, cinxī, cinctum, tr., surround.
cinis, cineris, M., ashes.
Cinna, -ae, M., Cinna, a family name; L. Cornēlius Cinna, consul 86–84 b.c., leader of the popular party.
circum, prep. w. acc., around, about; as prefix, around.
circumclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsum [claudō], tr., hem in.
circumdō, -dare, -dedi, -datum [dō], tr., place around, surround with.
circumscribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum [scribō], tr., bound.
circumscripĭtor, -ōris, M. [circumscribō], cheat.
circumsedēo, -sedēre, -sēdi, -sessum [sedēo], tr., sit around, surround.
circumpiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum [specīo], tr. and intr., look about, look out for; observe, consider.
circumstō, -stāre, -stetī, [stō], tr., stand around, surround.
cito, adv., quickly, promptly.
civilis, -e [civis], of citizens, civil.
civis, civis, M., citizen, fellow-citizen.
civitas, -tatis, F. [civis], citizenship, state, tribe, nation.
clam, adv., secretly.
clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr., cry out, shout.
clāmor, -ōris, M. [clāmō], outcry, shout.
clārus, -a, -um, clear, bright; brilliant, renowned, famous, illustrious, honorable, eminent, conspicuous.
classis, -is, F., division; fleet.
Claudius, -i, M., Claudius, a gentile name; Appius Claudiaus Pulcher, praetor 89 b.c.
claudō, -ere, clausi, clausum, tr., close.
clêmëns, -entis, adj., mild, forbearing, merciful, lenient.
clientēla, -ae, F. [cliëns], clientship, clients.
Cn., abbreviation for Gnaeus.
Cnidus, -i, F., Cnidus (ni'dus), a city of Caria in Asia Minor.
coepi, def. vb. (App. 50), began; w. a pass. complementary inf. coeptus sum, etc., is used.
coeptus, -ūs, M. [coepi], beginning, undertaking.
coerceō, -ère, -uí, -itum [con + arceō, confine], tr., restrain, check, correct, repress.
coetus, -ūs, M. [co + eō], meeting, gathering, assembly, company.
cogitātē, adv. [cōgitō], thoughtfully, with thought.
cogitātiō, -onis, F. [cōgitō], thought, purpose, plan, design.
cogitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [con + agītō], tr., consider (thoroughly), ponder, think, think of, plan, plot.
cognātiō, -onis, F., relationship, kinship.
cognītiō, -onis, F. [cognōscō], a becoming acquainted with, acquaintance.
cognitor, -ōris, M. [cognōscō], advocate, supporter.
cognōmen, -inis, N. [nōmen], surname, family name.
cognōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitum [con + gnōscō], tr., learn, ascertain; recognize; note, notice, observe; perf., have learned, hence know; plup., knew.
cógō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum [con + agō], tr., drive together, collect, assemble; compel, force.
cohaereō, -haerere, -haesi, haesum [haereō], intr., cling together, be connected (with).
cohibeō, -ère, -uī, -itum [habēō], tr., hold together, keep.
cohors, cohortis, F., cohort (tenth of a legion).
cohortor, -āvī, -ātus sum [hortor], dep., encourage, urge.
collēctiō, -onis, F. [colligō], a collecting, gathering.
colla, -ae, M., partner in office, colleague.
collēgium, -i, N. [colligō], association, board, college.
colligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum [con + legō], tr., gather, collect; se colligere, assemble.
colō, -ere, -uī, cultum, tr., cultivate, cherish, pay respect to; dwell in.
colōnia, -ae, F. [colō], colony.
colōnus, -i, M. [colō], colonist.
Colophon, -onis, M., Colophon, a city of Asia Minor, north of Ephesus.
Colophonii, -drum, M., the inhabitants of Colophon.
color, -ōris, M., color.
comes, comitis, M. or F., companion, associate, comrade.
cōmissātiō, -onis, F. [cōmissor, revel], revelry.
comitātus, -ūs, M. [comitō], escort, retinue, company.
comitia, -orum, N. [con + eō], assembly, comitia; election.

comitium, -ī, N. [con, eō], the Comitium, a place of assembly adjoining the Forum.

comitor, -ārī, -ātus sum [comes] dep., accompany, attend.

commeātus, -ūs, M. [commeō], intercourse; supplies, provisions.

commemorātiō, -onis, F., remembrance, mention.

commemorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [memorō], tr., call to mind; relate, mention, speak of.

commendātiō, -onis, F. [commendō], a commending, recommendation.

commendō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [mandō], tr., commit for protection, intrust, commend, recommend.

commēō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr., go and come, visit, resort.

committō, -mittere, -misi, -missum [mittō], tr., send together; intrust, commit, permit, allow; begin.

commodē, adv. [commodus], conveniently.

commodum, -ī, N. [commodus], advantage, interest.

commorātiō, -onis, F. [commoror], a tarrying, lingering.

commoror, -ārī, -ātus sum [moror], dep., remain.

commoveō, -movere, -mōvī, -mōtum [moveō], tr., put in violent motion, move, stir, disturb, affect, influence, concern, grieve; commovēre, té, sē, make a noise, lift a finger, stir.

commūnis, -e [mūnus], common, in common, general, public.

commūniter, adv. [commūnis], in common, in general, Ar. 12.

commūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [mūtō], tr., change entirely, change.

comparātiō, -onis, F. [comparō], preparation.

comparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum 1. [parō], tr., prepare, make ready; provide; make up, compose, procure, acquire. 2. [compar, like], compare.

compellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum [pellō], tr., drive together, drive, force.

comperiō, -perire, -perī, -pertum [parīō], tr., learn, discover, ascertain, detect.

competitor, -ōris, M. [competō], rival opposing candidate, competitor.

complector, -plectī, -plexus sum [com + plector], dep., embrace, receive; comprehend.

compleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum [pleō], tr., fill completely.

complexus, -ūs, M. [complector] an embracing, embrace.

complurēs, -a(-īa) [com + plurēs] several, many, many of.

comprehendō, -hendere, -hendi, -hēnsum [prehendō], tr., seize, capture, arrest, grasp, detect.

comprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressum [premō], tr., press together; repress, check, curb; suppress.
comprobō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [probō], tr., approve, endorse, attest.

con-, com-, co-, prefix, with, together, completely, thoroughly, strongly.

cōnātus, -ūs, M. [cōnor], attempt, effort, undertaking.

concēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum [cēdō], tr., and intr., go away, withdraw; grant, concede, give up, yield.

concelebrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [celebro], tr., attend in throngs, celebrate.

concerto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [certō], intr., dispute, wrangle, contend.

concidō, -cidere, -cidī, — [cadē], intr., fall (together), fall to pieces, collapse; fail, P. 7.

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [concilium], tr., bring together, win over, win, gain.

conципīō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [capio], tr., take up, take, receive, incur, conceive.

concitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [citō], tr., rouse, stir up, urge on, excite, agitate.

concordia, -ae, F. [concors], union, harmony, concord; the goddess Concord, in whose temple the Senate often met.

concupiscō, -cupiscere, -cupīvī, -cupitum [inceptive of cupió], desire, long for, covet.

concursō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [cursō], intr., run to and fro, run about.

concursus, -ūs, M. [concurrō], running together, throng, rally, assembly.

condemnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [domnō], tr., condemn, blame, convict, find guilty.

condiciō, -ōnis, F. [condicō], agreement, condition, task, lot; circumstances, Cat., IV, 10.

condō, -ere, condīdi, conditum [con + dō], tr., (put together), found, build; store, treasure, Cat., III, 11; post urbem conditam, since the founding of the city.

cōnferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum [ferō], tr., bring together, bring (upon), take, transfer; compare; appoint, fix, set; postpone, put off; bestow, apply, devote, Ar. 9; cōnferre sē, tē, etc., betake oneself, turn, go.

confertus, -a, -um [cōnferciō], (crowded), filled, full, gorged, Cat., II, 5.

cōnfessiō, -ōnis, F. [confiteor], confession.

cōnfestim, adv., immediately, without delay, at once.

cōnficō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fēctum [faciō], tr., do (thoroughly), accomplish, execute, end, finish; raise (an army); exhaust, overcome, subdue, weaken, wear out, P. 9.

cōnfidō, -ere, -fīsus sum [fidō, trust], semi-dep., trust (fully), have confidence, be confident, believe.

cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [fīrmō], tr., make firm, estab-
lish, secure, confirm, strengthen; prove, assert, promise, assure, reassure, P. 9.

cónfiteor, -fitēri, -fessus sum [fateor], dep., confess, admit; dé sè cónfiteři, admit one's guilt.

cónflagrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [flagrō], intr., burn up, be consumed.

cónfligō, fligere, -flīxi, -flīctum [fligō], intr., strike together, be in conflict, ca. end, engage.

cónflō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [flō, blow], tr., blow up, kindle, cause; bring together, make up, compose.

cónfōrmātiō, -onis, F. [cōn-fōrmō], shaping, training.

cónfōrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [formō], tr., form, mold, train.

cónfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum [frangō], tr., break to pieces, shatter.

congerō, -gerere, -gessi, -gestum [gerō], tr., bring together, collect.

congregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [grex], tr., collect; pass. w. reflex. meaning, assemble (themselves), Cat., I, 13.

coniciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum [iaciō], tr., hurl, aim; drive.

coniectūra, -ae, F. [coniciō], conjecture, inference; reflection, P. 9.

conиünctiō, -onis, F. [coniungō], union, connection.

coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, iūnc-
tum [iungō], tr., join together, connect, unite.

coniünx, -iugis, M. or F. [coniungō], (married person), husband, wife; spouse.

coniūrātiō, -onis, F. [coniūrō], conspiracy.

coniūrātor, -ōris, M. [coniūrō], conspirator.

coniūrātus, -a, -um [coniūrō], (bound together by an oath), allied; pl. as noun, conspirators.

coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., take oath together, plot, conspire.

coniuncro, -are, -avi, -atum, intr., consume.

coniciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum [iaciō], tr., hurl, aim; drive.

consectūra, -ae, F. [coniciō], conjecture, inference; reflection, P. 9.

conscriptus, -ī, M. [conscribō], one enrolled; patrēs (et) conscriptī, conscript fathers, i.e., senators; see note on Cat., I., l. 47.

consecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [sacrō], tr., dedicate, consecrate, devote.
cōnsēnsiō, -ōnis, F. [cṑsēntiō], agreement, unanimity, harmony.
cōnsentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum [sentīō], intr., (I think alike), agree, unite.
cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum [sequor], dep., follow up, overtake, attain; obtain, secure, gain, accomplish; result, ensue.

conservō, -āre, āvī, ātum [servō], tr, save, protect, keep safe, preserve, maintain.
cōnsiderō, -āre, -āvī, ātum, tr., look at closely, consider.
cōnsidō, -sidere, -sēdi, -sessum [sidō], intr., sit down.
cōnsilium, -ī, N. [cōnsulō], plan, purpose, design, plot; deliberation, wisdom, advice, counsel; shrewdness, Cat., III, 7; a council, deliberative body.
cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum [sistō], intr., stand still.
cōnsōlor, -ārī, -ātus sum [sōlor], dep., cheer, comfort, console.
cōnspectus, -ūs, M. [cōspiciō], sight.
cōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum [speciō], tr., see, look at, gaze upon, face.
cōspirātiō, -ōnis, F. [cōspirō], harmony.
cōstānter, adv. [cōstāns], with firmness, consistently, without faltering.
cōstantia, -ae, F. [constāns], steadfastness, firmness, consistency; courage.
cōstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitum [statuō], tr. and intr., place, station, set up; draw up, arrange, establish; decide, decide upon, resolve, fix; designate, select, appoint, mark; make, prepare.
cōnstitō, -stāre, -stītī, -stātum [stō], intr., (stand together), consist of, depend upon; im pers., it is agreed, it is evident, it is proved.
cōnstringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictum [stringō], tr., bind, bind fast, fetter, hold in check.
cōsuētūdō, -inis, F. [cōsuēscō], custom, usage; intimacy.
cōnsul, -is, M., consul; see Introd. 33.
cōnsulāris, -e [cōnsul], of a consul, consular; as noun, exconsul, a man of consular rank.
cōnsulatus, -ūs, M. [cōnsul], consulship.
cōnsulō, -sulere, -sulī, -sultum, tr. and intr., deliberate, consider; w. acc., consult, ask advice of, refer to; w. dat. take counsel (for), consult for the welfare (of), take thought (for).
1. cōnsultō, adv. [cōnsultum], deliberately, purposely.
2. cōnsultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [cōnsulō], intr., take counsel, deliberate.
cōnsультum, -ī, N. [cōnsulō], (deliberation), decree, decision; resolution; see Introd. 30.
cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūptum [sūmō], tr., consume, waste, use up, spend.
contāminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., stain, defile, dishonor, contaminate.

contegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum, [tegō], tr., cover, conceal.

contemnō, -temnere, -tempsi, -temptum [temnō], tr., think lightly of, ignore, despise, scorn.

contendō, -tendere, -tendi, tentum [tendō], tr. and intr., (stretch), strive, fight, contend, contrast, maintain, Ar. 7.

contentio, -onis, F. [contendō], a straining, strain, struggle, contest, rivalry, Cat., IV, 6; comparison.

contentus, -a, -um [contineō], content, satisfied, contented.

continēns, -entis, adj. [contineō], self-restrained, moderate.

continentia, -ae, F. [continēns], restraint, self-control, moderation.

contineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum [teneō], tr., hold together, connect; hold back, restrain, check, keep off; confine, enclose, bound, contain, hold.

contingō, -tingere, -tīgī, -tāctum [tangō], tr. and intr., touch, border on; happen.

continuus, -a, -um [contineō], continuous.

contio, -onis, F. [conventio], assembly, mass-meeting; speech, address, delivered before an assembly.

cōntiōnātor, -ōris, M. [cōntiōnōr], agitator, demagogue.

contrā, prep. w. acc., opposite, facing; against, in hostility to, Cat., I, 2.

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctum [trahō], tr., contract, incur, bring upon.

contrārius, -a, -um [contrā], opposite, contrary, opposed, conflicting.

contrōversia, -ae, F. [contrōversus], controversy, dispute, question.

contumēlia, -ae, F., insult, reproach, abuse.

convenio, -venire, -vēnī, -venētum [veniō], tr. and intr., come together, assemble, unite; impers., it is fitting, it is proper.

conventus, -ūs, M. [conveniō], (a coming together), meeting, assembly.

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum [verto], tr. and intr., turn, change, divert.

convicium, -ī, N., wrangling, strife, disputation.

convincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victum [vincō], tr., overcome; convict, refute; show clearly, prove.

convivium, -ī, N. [convivo], feast, banquet.

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [vocō], tr., call together, summon.

cōpia, -ae, F., supply, plenty, abundance; fluency (of speech); pl., resources, wealth, supplies; forces, troops.
cōpiōsus, -a, -um [cōpia], well-supplied, rich, wealthy; cōpiōsē, adv., fully.
cōram, adv. [co + ōs], face to face.
Corduba, -ae, F., Corduba, a city in Spain, now Cordova,
Corinthus, -ī, F., Corinth, a famous city of Greece.
Cornēlius, -ī, M., Cornelius, a nomen or gentile name; see Scipio, Lentulus, Cinna, Sulla.
corpus, -oris, N., body.
corrigo, -rigere, -rexi, -rectum [con + regō], tr., make straight, set right; improve, correct, reform.
corrōborō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [con, rōbur], tr., strengthen; encourage.
corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum [con + rumpō], tr., destroy, corrupt, falsify, tamper with.
corrūō, -ruere, -ruī, —, intr. [con + ruō], fall together, fall.
corruptēla, -ae, F. [corruptus], a corrupting, temptation; pl., corrupting arts.
corruptor, -ōris, M. [corrumpō], corrupter, seducer.
corruptus, -a, -um [corrumpō], depraved, corrupt, profligate.
cotidiānus, -a, -um [cotīdiē], daily.
cotīdiē, adv. [quot + diēs], every day, daily.
Cotta, -ae, M., Cotta, a family name; L. Aurēlius Cotta, consul 65 b.c.
crās, adv., to-morrow.
Crassus, -ī, M., Crassus, a family name; 1. L. Licinius Crassus, consul 95 b.c., 2. P. Licinius Crassus, censor 89 b.c.
crédō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditum, tr. and intr., believe, suppose (often w. irony); trust, have confidence in; intrust.
crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētum, intr., grow, increase, improve, rise.
Crētēnsis, -e [Crēta], Cretan; pl. as noun, Cretans.
criminor, -āri, -ātus sum [crīmen], dep. charge, accuse.
cruciātus, -ūs, M. [cruciō], torture, torment, punishment.
crūdēlis, -e [crūdus, bloody], unfeeling, unmerciful, cruel.
crūdēlitās, -tātis, F. [crūdēlis], cruelty.
crūdēliter, adv. [crūdēlis], cruelly, severely.
cruentus, -a, -um [cruor], blood-stained, bloody.
cubile, -is, N., bed, couch.
culpa, -ae, F., fault.
cultūra, -ae, F. [colō], cultivation.
1. cum, prep. w. abl., with, against; written as an enclitic after a personal, reflexive, or rel. pron.
2. cum, conj., when, while, since, although; whenever; cum ... tum (etiam), not only ... but also.
cumulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [cumulus, heap], tr., heap up, add to, crown.
cunctus, -a, -um [coniunctus],
all together, all, the whole.
cupiditas, -tatis, F. [cupidus],
desire, passion, ambition.
cupidus, -a, -um [cupio], eager
(for), desirous (of); avaricious.
cupio, cupere, cupivi, cupitum,
tr. and intr., desire, long (for),
wish (for).
cur, adv., why.
cura, -ae, F., care, anxiety, concern, trouble, duty.
curia, -ae, F., senate house, i.e.
the Curia Hostilia in the Forum.
Curiô, -onis, M., Curio, a family name; C. Curiô, consul 76 B.C.
curô, -âre, -âvi, -âtum [cura],
tr., care for, take care; maintain; w. gerundive, cause, have (something done).
curriculum, -î, N. [currus], course.
currus, -ûs, M. [currô], chariot.
cursô, -âre, —, — [freq. of curió], run about.
cursus, -ûs, M. [currô], a running, course, career; journey, P. 12; progress, P. 14.
curûlis, e [currus], curule; sella curûlis, the curule chair.
custôdia, -ae, F. [custós], a guarding; guard, watch, sentinel; custody, protection; watch station, P. 6.
custôdiô, -îre, -îvî, -îtum [custôs]
tr., guard.
custôs, custôdis, M., guard, guardian,
Cyziceni, -ôrum, M., the people
of Cyzicus (siz’i-kus), the Cyzicenes.

D
D., see Decimus.
damnatiô, -ônis, F. [damnô], condemnation.
damnô, -âre, -âvî, -âtum, tr.,
[damnum, loss], (inflict loss upon), condemn, convict.
dê, prep. w. abl., down from, from, concerning, about, of, for, over; as prefix, down, off, away, completely, not.
deboô, -êre, -ui, -itum [dê + habeô], tr., withhold, hence owe; ought (w. inf.); pass., be due.
débilis, -e, feeble, helpless, powerless.
debilitôtô, -âre, -âvî, -âtum [dêbilis], tr., disable, weaken, wear out, Cat., II, 5; overcome, overwhelm.
debitus, -a, -um [deboô], deserved; due.
décédô, -cédere, -cessî, -cessum [cédô], intr., go away, depart, withdraw.
decem, indecl. adj., ten.
décernô, -cernere, -crêvî, -cretum [cernô], tr., decide, determine; decree, vote, vote for.
decet, -êre, -uit, impers., it becomes, is proper.
deçimus, -a, -um [decem], tenth.
Decimus, -î, M., Decimus, a praenomen.
dêklärô, -âre, -âvî, -âtum [clärô],
make clear, make evident, prove.
declinatio, -onis, F. [déc-linō], a turning aside.
décoc-tor, -oris, M. [déc-o-coqō, boil away], spendthrift, bankrupt.
decorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [decus], tr., adorn, honor, distinguish.
déc-cretum, -ī; N. [dèc-ernō], decree, decision.
decum-a, -ae, F. [decima, se. pars], a tenth part, tithe, land tax.
dèdecus, -oris, N. [dē + decus, honor], disgrace.
dédi-cō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dicō], tr., dedicate.
dédi-tiō, -onis. F. [dèdō], surrender.
déduō, -ere, dédidi, déditum [dō], tr., give up, surrender; devote.
déducō, -dúcere, -dūxī, -duc-tum [ducō], tr., lead away, drive.
défati-gō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [fatigō], tr., weary, wear out.
défendo, -fendere, -fendi, -fend-sum [fendo, strike], tr., defend, protect.
défero, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [ferō], tr., carry down; lay before, refer; report, relate; confer, upon, bestow, intrust, proffer, P. 24.
défessus, -a, -um [défetiscor], wearied, exhausted.
déficio, -ficere, -fēcī, -fēctum [faciō], tr. and intr., withdraw, revolt; fail, be wanting, desert.
défigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum [figō], tr., fix, fasten, plunge.
définiō, -īre, -ivī, -ītum [finō], tr., limit, bound.
déflagrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [flagrō], tr., burn up, destroy by fire.
déiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [iaciō], tr., throw down, thrust aside.
déinde, adv., denoting order, then, afterward, secondly, furthermore.
délabor, -lābī, -lāpsus sum [lābor], dep., slip down, descend.
délectātiō, -onis, F. [délectō], enjoyment, pleasure, delight.
délectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of déliciō, entice], tr., delight, charm, please, give pleasure to.
1. délēctus, -a, -um [délīgo], chosen, picked, select.
2. délēctus,-ūs, M., see dīlēctus.
délēgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [lēgō], tr., send away; intrust.
délēō, -ère, -ēvī, -ētum, tr., blot out, destroy, eradicate.
déliberātiō, -onis, F. [délēberō], deliberation; question, P. 10.
déliberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [lēberō], tr. and intr., think about, consider, deliberate.
délicātus, -a, -um [déliciae], alluring, delightful; effeminate, Cat., II., 10.
délīgō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum [legō, gather], tr., choose, select.
Délos, -i, F. (App. 11), Dèl'ios, an island in the Aegean Sea.
délūbrum, -i, N. [lūō], (place
of purification), shrine, sanctuary, temple.

demens, -entis, adj. [mēns], (out of one's senses), mad, raving, maddened.
dementer, adv. [dēmens], madly, foolishly.
dementia, -ae, F. [dēmens], folly, madness.
demigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [migrō], intr., move away; go away, depart.
demīnuō, -uere, -ūī, -ūtum [minuō], tr., lessen, diminish, take away, detract.
deminiūtiō, -onis, F. [dēminuō], diminution, loss.
demōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [mōnstrō], tr., point out, show.
dēnum, adv., at length, at last.
dēnique, adv., at last, lastly, finally; in short.
dēnotō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [notō], tr., mark out, mark, designate.
dēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [nūntiō], tr., announce.
dēpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum [pellō], tr., drive out, drive; ward off, avert, remove; overthrow.
dēpendō, -ere, dēpendī, — [pendō, weigh], pay.
dēplōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [plōrō], tr. and intr., weep bitterly, lament; mourn, bewail.
dēponō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum [pōnō], tr., lay aside, give up, abandon.
dēportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [portō], tr., bring back, bring home.
dēposcō, -poscere, -poposcī, — [poscō], tr., demand, beg.
dēprāvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [prāvus, crooked], tr., pervert, corrupt, deprave, tamper with.
dēprecātor, -ōris, M. [dēprecō], intercessor.
dēprecor, -āri, -ātus sum [precō], dep., avert by prayer, deprecate, avert.
dēprehendō, -hendere, -hendi, hēnsum [prehendō], tr., seize upon; grasp, detect, discover.
dēprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum [premō], tr., press down, sink.
dēprōmō, -prōmere, -prōmpsi, -prōptum [prōmō], tr., draw, take from.
dērelictus, -a, -um [part. of dērelinquō], deserted, forsaken, abandoned.
dēscribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum [scribō], tr., write down, lay down, arrange, assign.
dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -ser tum [serō], tr., leave, desert, give up; fail, forfeit, Cat., II., 3
dēsiderium, -ī, N. [dēsiderō], a longing (for), want, desire; love.
dēsiderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., long for, demand, call for, desire.
dēsignātus, -a, -um [dēsignō], elect, elected, chosen; cōnsul désignātus, consul elect.
dēsignō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [signō], tr., (mark out), point out, mark, designate.
dēsinō, -sinere, -sīi, -situm
[sinō], tr. and intr., cease, desist.

dēsistō, -sistere, -stiti, -stitum [sistō], intr., (stand away from), desist, cease.

dēspērātō, -onis, F. [dēspērō], despair.

dēspērātus, -a, -um [dēspērō], despaired of, desperate.

dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [spērō], tr. and intr., be hopeless, despair, desist of.

dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum [speciō], tr., look down upon, despise.

despicio, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum [speciō], tr., look down upon, despise.

despolīatus, -a, -um, impoverished.

dēstringō, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictum [stringō], tr., unsheathe, draw.

dēsum, deesse, dēfuī [sum], intr., be lacking, be wanting, be at fault, fail.

dētestor, -ari, -atus sum [testor], dep., (curse), avert by protest, remove.

dētrahō, -trahere, -traxī, -tractum [trahō], tr., take away, withdraw, deny, withhold.

dētrimentum, -i, N. [dēterō, rub away], loss, injury, harm, damage; defeat, overthrow.

dētērō, -terī, -ītus sum [testor], dep., (curse), avert by protest, remove.

dī, pl. of deus.

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum, tr., say, express, speak, declare, call.

dictātor, -ōris, M. [dictō], dictator; see Intro. 39.

dictātūra, -ae, F. [dictātor], dictatorship.

dictītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of dictō], tr., say repeatedly, keep saying.

dictō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of dīcō], tr., repeat; dictate.

diēs, diēi, sing. M. or F., pl. M., day, time, season. See singulī.

differō, differre, distulī, dilātum [ferō], tr. and intr., bear apart, differ.

difficilis, -e [dis + facilis], not easy, difficult.

difficultās, -tātis, F. [difficilis], difficulty, trouble.

diffidō, -fidere, -fisus sum [fidō], semidep., distrust, despair of.

dignitās, -tātis, F. [dignus], dignity, merit, worth, authority, Cat., III, 12.

dignus, -a, -um, worthy (of), deserving, befitting; w. abl.

diiūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [iū-dicō], tr., distinguish; decide, settle.

dilātō, -onis, F. [differō], postponement, adjournment.
dilēctus, -ús, M. [diligō], a choosing, choice, levy, enrollment.
diligēns, -entis, adj. [diligō], industrious, attentive, diligent, faithful, careful, scrupulous, P. 19.
diligenter, adv. [diligēns], carefully, diligently, attentively, Ar. S; faithfully.
diligentia, -ae, F. [diligens], carefulness, industry, attention, diligence, care.
diligo, -ligere, -lexi, -lectum [legō], tr. (choose out), esteem, love.
dilīciesco, -ere, diluxi, — [lucesco], intr., grow light.
dimētior, -mētīri, -mēnsus sum [mētior], dep., measure, measure out.
dimicātio, -onis, F. [dimicō], contest, struggle.
dimicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [micō, brandish], intr., fight, contend, struggle.
dimmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [mittō], tr., send away, discharge; dismiss, adjourn, break up; discontinue, Ar. 11.
direptio, -onis, F. [direpiō], a plundering, pillaging.
direptor, -ōris, M. [direpiō], plunderer.
direpiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum [rapiō], tr., tear asunder; plunder, pillage.

dispersus, -a, -um [dispergō], scattered, dispersed.
diportio, -ere, -ivī, -ītum [partiō], tr., distribute.
disputō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [putō], tr., discuss, argue.
dissēminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [sēminō, sow], tr., scatter widely, spread abroad, disseminate.
dissēnsiō, -onis, F. [dissentiō] (difference of opinion), dissonance, strife, quarrel.
dissentio, -sentire, -sēnsī, sēnsum [sentīō], intr., disagree, dissent, differ.
disserō, -serere, -serui, -ser-tum, tr. and intr., argue, discuss, explain, talk.
dissimilis, -e [similis], unlike, different.
dissimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [simulō], tr. and intr., (make unlike), dissemble, pretend not to; conceal.
dissipō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [supō, throw], tr., spread abroad, scatter, disperse.

dissolūtus, -a, -um [part. of dissolvō], lax, remiss, neglectful of duty.
dissolvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solvūtum [solvō], tr., separate, free (from debt), dissolve.
distribuo, -tribuere, -tribui, -tribūtum [tribuo], tr., assign, distribute.
distringo, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictum [stringō], tr., (stretch apart), distract, occupy.
diū, adv. (App. 20), long (in time), for a long time; quam diū etiam? how much longer? Cat., I, 1; iam diū, long since.
diūtius, comp. of diū.
diūturnitās, -tātis, F. [diūturnus], length of time, long duration.
diūturnus, -a, -um [diū], long-continued, long, lasting.
dīvellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum [vellō], tr., tear apart, tear away, separate.
diversus, -a, -um [divertō], separated, different, diverse, remote, P. 4.
dividō, -videre, -visī, -visum, tr., divide, separate;
extend, P. 11; distribute, P. 13.
divinitus, adv. [divinus], divinely, by the gods, providentially.
divīnus. -a, -um [dīvus], divine, godlike, marvelous, providential.
divitiae, -ārum, F. [dīves], riches, wealth.
dō, dare, dedi, datum (App. 49), tr., give; put, place; allot.
doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum, tr., teach.
doctrina, -ae, F. [doceō], teaching, learning, knowledge, instruction.
doctus, -a, -um [doceō], taught, learned.
documentum, -ī, N. [doceō], proof, evidence.
doleō, -ēre, -uī, —, tr. and intr., grieve, deplore.
dolor, -ōris, M. [doleō], pain, grief, distress, sorrow, horror, torture.
domesticus, -a, -um [domus], of the house, of the family, domestic, internal; w. bellum, civil.
domicilium, -ī, N. [domus], habitation, dwelling, home, seat, abode, residence.
dominātō, -onis, F. [dominus], mastery, supreme power, tyranny.
dominor, -āri, -ātus sum [dominus], dep., rule.
domō, -āre, -uī, -itum, tr., overcome, subdue.
domus, -ūs, F. (decl., App. 8),
house, home; domí, loc., at home.
dönō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dōnum], tr., present' (as a gift).
dōnum, -ī, N. [dō], gift.
dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, intr., sleep.
Drūsus, -ī, M., Drusus, a family name; M. Livius Drūsus, tribune 91 B.C.
dubitatio, -onis, F. [dubito], doubt, hesitation.

dubito, -are, -avi, -atum [dubius], intr., doubt (usually followed by quin); delay, hesitate (usually w. complementary inf.).
dubius, -a, -um, doubtful; neut. as noun, sine dubiō, beyond doubt.
duco, -ere, duxi, ductum, tr., lead, draw, attract, take; think, consider.
ductus, -us, M. [ducō], leadership, command.
dūdum, adv. [diū + dum], a while ago; iam dūdum, this long time, now for a long time.
duint, an old pres. subjv. of dō, = dent.
dulcēdō, -inis, F. [dulcis], sweetness, charm.
dulcis, -e, sweet, delightful.
dum, conj., while, as long as, until; dum modo, if only, provided that.
duo, duae, duo, adj. (App. 17), two.
duodecim [duo + decem], twelve.
dūrus, -a, -um, hard, harsh, rude, insensible.

dux, ducis, M. [dūcō], leader, general.

E
e (before cons.), ex (before vowels or cons.), prep. w. abl., out of, from, of; according to, on, after; as prefix, out, forth, completely, up, off.

ébriōsus, -a, -um [èbrius], given to drink, drunk.

ecquid, adv. interrog. [ecquis], at all? indir., whether, if at all.

ecquis, -quid, interrog. pron., any one, anything; whether any one, whether anything; as adj., any.

édicrum, -ī, N. [édicō], edict, proclamation.

édō, édere, édidi, éditum [dō], tr., give out, publish, record.

édoceō, -docère, -docui, -doc tum [doceō], tr., teach (thoroughly); show.

édūcō, -ducere, -düxi, -ductum [ducō], tr., lead out, take out; (of swords) draw.

éfferō, éfferre, extuli, ēlātum [ex + ferō], tr., bear out, carry out, bring; bring forth; raise up, extalt, Cat., I, 11; praise, extol, Ar. 7, 9.

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [ex + faciō], tr., accomplish, produce, cause, do.

effigies, -ēi, F. [effingō], copy, image, portrait, effigy.

effrēnātus, -a, -um [ex + frēnātus], unbridled, ungoverned, unrestrained.
æflugio, -fugere, -fugii, -fugitum
[fugio], tr., escape.
egëns, -entis, adj., needy, desti-
tute, poor.
egëo, -ère, ui, —, intr., need, lack, not to have.
egestas, -tatis, F. [egëns],
poverty, destitution, want.
ego, meI, pers. pron. (App.
21), /;
egomet, emphatic
form, /myself.
egredior, -gredi, -gressus sum
[gradior], dep., go out, depart.
egregius, -a, -um [grex], excel-
lent, extraordinary, superior,
distinguished, eminent.
éicio, eicere, eieci, -iectum
[iacio], tr., throw out, cast
out, drive out, banish, Cat., I, 12;
reject, Ar. 10.
élabor, -læbi, -læpsus sum
[labor], dep., slip away.
élaboro, -äre, -āvi. -ātum
[laboro], tr., work out, elabo-
rate.
eludó, -ludere, -lūsi, -lūsum
[ludō, play], tr., elude, avoid,
baffle; mock, make sport of.
émergo, -mergere, -mersi, -mers-
sum [mergo], tr. and intr.,
raise up; rise, emerge, come
forth, escape, free oneself.
émittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -mīs-
sum [mittō], tr., send out,
-drive out; let go.
émorior, -morī, -mortuus sum
[morior], dep., (die off), die.
enim, conj., postpositive (App.
233, h), for; indeed, now (in
transitions).
Ennius, -i, M. Ennius, the
father of Roman poetry,
born 239 B.C.
1. eō, ire, ivi (ii), itum (App.
46), go.
2. eō, adv. [is], to that place.
eōdem, adv. [idem], to the
same place, in the same place.
epigrama, -atis, N. (Greek),
an epigram.
epistula, -ae, F., letter.
eques, equitis, M. [equus],
horseman; knight, one of the
equestrian order.
equidem, adv., indeed, verily.
equitātus, -ūs, M. [eques],
cavalry.
ergā, prep. w. acc., towards, for.
ergō, adv., therefore, conse-
quently, then; now (in argu-
ment).
érigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctum,
[regō], tr., raise up; animate,
encourage.
eripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum
[rapiō], tr., snatch away, take
away, wrest; rescue, free,
deliver.
erro, -äre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.,
err, be mistaken.
eructō, -āre, —, — [ructō], tr.,
belch forth.
erudīō, -ire, -ivī, -itum [rudiō],
tr., educate, train.
eruditus, -a, -um [érudiō], edu-
cated, cultivated, learned, ac-
complished.
erumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -rupt-
tum [rumpō], tr. and intr.,
brack out, burst forth, be dis-
closed; rush out, Cat., II, 1.
éscondō, -ere, escendi, escen-
sum [scandō, climb], tr. and intr., climb up, mount, ascend.
et, conj., and; et . . . et, both . . . and.
etenim, conj. [et + enim], for indeed, for; and indeed; stronger than enim.
etiam [et + iam], adv. and conj., also, and also, even, furthermore, now too, still; etiam
atque etiam, again and again; see diū.
etiamsi, conj. [etiam + si], even if, although.

Etruria, -ae, F., Etruria, a division of Italy, north of Latium.
eti, conj. [et + si], although, and yet.

ἐвшῶ, -ῶδε, -ώσι, -ώσυμ [vādō], intr., escape.
ἐворот, -ворот, -ворот, -ворот [vērtō], tr., overturn, overthrow, subvert, destroy.
ἐὐκατῶρ, -ωρίς, M. [ἐυκάτωρ], summoner, instigator.
ἐὔμω, -ωμερ, -ωμεί, -ωμεῖτο [vōmō], tr., vomit forth, cast out, expel.
ex, see ē.

exaggerō, -ᾱρι, -ᾱβι, -ᾱτομ [agger], tr., heap up.
exanimātus, -a, -um [exanimō], (out of breath), fainting, exhausted.
exaudīō, -swire, -swire, -swire [audiō], tr., overhear, hear (from a distance).
excedō, -cedere, -cessi, -cessum [cēdō], intr., go out, depart, withdraw.
excellēns, -entis, adj. [excellō], eminent, distinguished, superior, excellent.
excellō, -cellere, -celsis, -cellum [cellō], intr., be eminent, be superior, surpass.
excelsus, -a, -um [excellō], elevated, high; neut. as noun, a high position.
excidō, -cidere, -cīdī, — [cadō], intr., fall, drop.
excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [capīō], tr., take out, except; take up, undertake, catch, intercept.
excītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of excīo], tr., call out, raise, Cat., II, 9; excite, rouse, stimulate, Ar. 8.
exclūdō, -cludere, -clūsī, -clūsum [claudō], tr., shut out, exclude, refuse to admit.
excolō, -ere, -uī, excultum [colō], tr., cultivate, refine, improve.
excruciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [cru-ciō], tr., torment, torture.
excursiō, -onis, F. [excurrō], (a running out), expedition, excursion, sally, raid, inroad.
exemplum, -i, N. [eximō], sample, example, precedent, Ar. 6; instance.
exeō, -ire, -iī, -itum [ēo], intr., go out, go forth, withdraw.
exerceō, -ere, -ui, -itum [arceō], tr., train, exercise, employ, keep busy; trouble, distress; conduct, preside over, Ar. 2; collect, farm (vectigalia).
Latin-English Vocabulary 443

**practice, exercise, training, skill.**

exercitātus, -a, -um [exercitō], practiced, trained.

exercitus, -ūs, M. [exerceō], (a trained body of men), army.

exhauriō, -haurīre, -hausi, -haustum [hauriō], tr., draw out, drain, take away, remove, exhaust.

exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum [agō], tr., drive out; collect, P. 6; of time, spend, pass, end.

exiguus, -a, -um [exigo], (driven out), limited, narrow, little, slight.

eximie, adv. [eximius], exceedingly, greatly.

eximius, -a, -um [eximo], (taken out), exceptional, conspicuous, extraordinary, excellent.

existimo, -are, -avi, -atum [aestimo, value], tr., estimate, judge, consider, deem, suppose, think.

exitiosus, -a, -um [exitium], destructive, dangerous.

exitium, -i, N. [exeō], destruction, ruin.

exitus, -ūs, M. [exeō], (a going out), outcome, result, end, termination.

exornō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [ornō], tr., adorn.

exorsus, -ūs, M. [exordior], beginning.

expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum [pellō], tr., drive out, expel.

expers, -pertis, adj. [pars], without part in, without.

expetō, -petere, -petīvi, -petī- tum [petō], tr., seek after. seek, claim, request.

expilō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [pilō, rob], tr., pillage.

explānō, -āre, āvi, ātum [plānus], tr., make plain, clear.

explicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [PLICO. fold], tr., extricate.

explōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [plōrō], tr., explore.

expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum [pōnō], tr., set forth; declare, tell, relate; explain.

exportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [portō], tr., carry out, carry away, export.

exprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressum [premō], press out, set forth, relate; draw, portray, Ar. 6.

exprimō, -prōmere, -prōmpsī, -prōptum [prōmō], tr., exhibit, display.

expūgnātiō, -onis, F. [expūgnō], a taking by storm, capture.

exquirō, -quirere, -quisīvi, -quisītum [quaerō], tr., search out, arrive at (w. véritas).

exsilium, -i, N. [exsul], banishment, exile.

existentiō, -onis, F. [existentō], a waiting, anticipation, expectation.

exspectatio, -onis, F. [exspectō], a waiting, anticipation, expectation.

exspectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [spectō], tr. and intr., wait
for, await, expect, look for; wait.

exstinguō, -ere, extīnxi, exstīntum [stinguō, quench], tr., destroy, extinguish.
exstītī, from exsistō.

exasul, -is, M. or F., exile.
exsultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of exsiliō, spring forth], intr., exult, revel, indulge.
exsuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., exceed, transcend.

exterminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [termīnus], tr., drive out, banish.

exterus, -a, -um [extrā], external, foreign.

extollō, -tollere, —, —, tr., lift up, exalt, praise.

extorqueō, -torquere, -torsi, -torstum [torqueō, twist], wrest away, obtain by force, extort.
extrā, prep. w. acc., outside of, beyond, apart from, without.

extrēmus, -a, -um [sup. of exterus], outermost, extreme, last, the end (close) of; ad extrēmus, at last.
exūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstum [ūrō], tr., burn up, burn.
exuviae, -ārum, F. [exuō], (that which is stripped off), spoils, booty.

F
facile, adv. [facilis], easily.
facilis, -e [faciō], (App. 18), easy.

facilitās, -tātis, F. [facilis], accessibility.

facinorōsus, -a, -um [facinus], criminal; as noun, a criminal.

facinus, -oris, N. [faciō], deed; misdeed, reckless act, crime, villainy.

faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, tr., do, make; cause, bring about; offer; pass., fō, fieri, factus sum, irr. (App. 45), be made, be done, become, happen.

factīösus, -a, -um [factiō], partisan, factious.

factum, -i, N. [faciō], action, act, deed, fact.

facultās, tātis, F. [facilis], ability; opportunity, means, power, advantage; facility.

Faesulae, -ārum, F., Faesulae (fes’ū-lē), a city of Etruria, now Fiesole.

Faesulānus, -a, -um [Faesulae], of Faesulae, Faesulan.

falcārius, -ī, M. [falx, scythe], scythe-maker.

Falcidius. -ī, M., Falcidius, a gentile name; C. Falcidius, a tribune.

fallō, -ere, fēfellī, falsum, tr., deceive, disappoint; pass., be deceived, be mistaken.
falsō, adv. [falsus], falsely.
falsus, -a, -um [fallō], deceptive, false, unfounded, undeserved.

fāma, -ae, F. [for, speak], report, fame, reputation, renown.

famēs, famis, F., hunger, famine.

familia, -ae, F. [famulus, slave], slaves of a household, servants, retinue; household, family; familīās, old gen. sing.

familiāris, -e [familia], of the
household; familiar, intimate, friendly; as noun, friend, comrade; sup., intimate friend.

familiäriter, adv. [familiäris], intimately.

fänum, -i, N. [for, speak], shrine, temple.

fascis, -is, M., bundle; pl., the fasces, a bundle of rods containing an ax as a symbol of authority.

fätälis, -e [fätum], of fate, ordained or decreed by fate, destined, connected by destiny.

fateor, -éris, -fassus sum [for, speak], dep., admit, own, confess, acknowledge.

fätum, -i, M. [for, speak], (utterance), fate, destiny; oracle, prophecy.

faucës, -ium, F. pl., throat, jaws; pass, defile, entrance.

faveö, -ére, -fávi, fautum, intr., favor.

fax, facis, F., torch, firebrand; meteor, shooting star.

febris, -is (abl. -i), F., fever.

felfellì, see fallö.

fëllicitàs, -tâtis, F. [félíx], good fortune, felicity.

fëmina, -ae, F., woman.

feré, adv., almost, about, nearly.

ferö. ferre, tulé, látum, tr., bear, carry; endure, suffer, tolerate; say, report, talk about, Cat., I, 10; w. respóñsum, receive; w. lëx, propose.

feröx, -ócis, adj., wild, violent.

feröcitäs, -tâtis, F. [feröx], fierceness, cruelty.

ferrämentum, -í, N. [ferrum], (implement of iron), tool, weapon.

ferreus, -a, -um [ferrum], made of iron; unfeeling, hard-hearted.

ferrum, -i, N., iron; (iron implement), sword, weapon.

fertilis, -e [ferö], fertile, productive.

fëstínò, -äre, -ávi, -átum, intr., make haste.

fëstus, -a, -átum, festal, festive.

fictus, -a, -um [fingö] false, imaginary, fictitious.

fidëlis, -e [fidës], faithful, loyal.

fidës, ei, F. [fidö], trust, pledge, faith, good faith, confidence, protection; honesty; cren- dence; credit, Cat., II, S.

Fidius, -i, M. [fidës], the god of faith, a surname of Jupiter.

figö, -ere, fixi, fixum, tr., fix, fasten, establish.

filia, -ae, F., daughter.

filius, fili, M., son.

fingö, -ere, finxi, fictum, tr., form; imagine, devise.

finis, -is, M., end, limit; pl., borders, territory; quem ad finem to what limit? to what lengths?

finitimus, -a, -um [finis], bordering on, adjoining, neighboring; as noun, neighbor.

fiö, fieri, factus sum, irr., see faciö.

firmämentum, -i, N. [firmö], strengthening, support, main- stay.

firmö, -äre, -ávi, -átum [firmus], strengthen, secure.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>firmus, -a, -um</td>
<td>strong, firm, powerful; trusty, trustworthy</td>
<td>1. M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C.; 2. L. Valerius Flaccus, consul 100 B.C.; 3. L. Valerius Flaccus, praetor, 63 B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flaccus, -i, M., Flaccus, a family name</td>
<td>1. M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C.; 2. L. Valerius Flaccus, consul 100 B.C.; 3. L. Valerius Flaccus, praetor, 63 B.C.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flagitiose, adv.</td>
<td>[flagitiōsus], basely, infamously, shamefully</td>
<td>1. M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C.; 2. L. Valerius Flaccus, consul 100 B.C.; 3. L. Valerius Flaccus, praetor, 63 B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flagitiōsus, -a, -um</td>
<td>[flagitium], shameful, disgraceful, infamous</td>
<td>1. M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C.; 2. L. Valerius Flaccus, consul 100 B.C.; 3. L. Valerius Flaccus, praetor, 63 B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flagitium, -ī, N.</td>
<td>[flagitō], shameful act, outrage, disgraceful thing</td>
<td>1. M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C.; 2. L. Valerius Flaccus, consul 100 B.C.; 3. L. Valerius Flaccus, praetor, 63 B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flagitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.</td>
<td>demand (urgently), clamor for</td>
<td>1. M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C.; 2. L. Valerius Flaccus, consul 100 B.C.; 3. L. Valerius Flaccus, praetor, 63 B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flamma, -ae, F.</td>
<td>[flagrō], flame, fire</td>
<td>1. M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C.; 2. L. Valerius Flaccus, consul 100 B.C.; 3. L. Valerius Flaccus, praetor, 63 B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flectō, -ere, flexī, flexum, tr.</td>
<td>turn, move, appease</td>
<td>1. M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C.; 2. L. Valerius Flaccus, consul 100 B.C.; 3. L. Valerius Flaccus, praetor, 63 B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flētus, -ūs, M.</td>
<td>[fleo], weeping</td>
<td>1. M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C.; 2. L. Valerius Flaccus, consul 100 B.C.; 3. L. Valerius Flaccus, praetor, 63 B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flōrens, -entis, adj.</td>
<td>[flōreō], blooming, flourishing</td>
<td>1. M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C.; 2. L. Valerius Flaccus, consul 100 B.C.; 3. L. Valerius Flaccus, praetor, 63 B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flōreō, -ère, -uī, —</td>
<td>[flōs], intr., flourish; be eminent</td>
<td>1. M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C.; 2. L. Valerius Flaccus, consul 100 B.C.; 3. L. Valerius Flaccus, praetor, 63 B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flūmen, -inis, N.</td>
<td>[fluō], river, stream</td>
<td>1. M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C.; 2. L. Valerius Flaccus, consul 100 B.C.; 3. L. Valerius Flaccus, praetor, 63 B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fluō, -ere, fluxī, fluxum, intr., flow</td>
<td>1. M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C.; 2. L. Valerius Flaccus, consul 100 B.C.; 3. L. Valerius Flaccus, praetor, 63 B.C.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>focus, -ī, M.</td>
<td>fire-place, hearth; home</td>
<td>1. M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C.; 2. L. Valerius Flaccus, consul 100 B.C.; 3. L. Valerius Flaccus, praetor, 63 B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foederātus, -a, -um</td>
<td>[foedus], allied, confederate</td>
<td>1. M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C.; 2. L. Valerius Flaccus, consul 100 B.C.; 3. L. Valerius Flaccus, praetor, 63 B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foedus, -a, -um</td>
<td>foul; shameful, disgraceful, impious, Cat., IV. 1</td>
<td>1. M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C.; 2. L. Valerius Flaccus, consul 100 B.C.; 3. L. Valerius Flaccus, praetor, 63 B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forās, adv.</td>
<td>[acc. of fora], out of doors, forth</td>
<td>1. M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C.; 2. L. Valerius Flaccus, consul 100 B.C.; 3. L. Valerius Flaccus, praetor, 63 B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forēs, adv.</td>
<td>[abl. of fora, door], out of doors, outside, abroad</td>
<td>1. M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C.; 2. L. Valerius Flaccus, consul 100 B.C.; 3. L. Valerius Flaccus, praetor, 63 B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>formidolōsus, -a, -um</td>
<td>[formidō], formidable</td>
<td>1. M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C.; 2. L. Valerius Flaccus, consul 100 B.C.; 3. L. Valerius Flaccus, praetor, 63 B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortasse, adv.</td>
<td>perhaps, possibly</td>
<td>1. M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C.; 2. L. Valerius Flaccus, consul 100 B.C.; 3. L. Valerius Flaccus, praetor, 63 B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forte, adv.</td>
<td>[abl. or fors], by chance, perchance</td>
<td>1. M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C.; 2. L. Valerius Flaccus, consul 100 B.C.; 3. L. Valerius Flaccus, praetor, 63 B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortis, -e, strong, brave, courageous, gallant, fearless, stalwart, Ar. 7; pl. as noun, brave men</td>
<td>1. M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C.; 2. L. Valerius Flaccus, consul 100 B.C.; 3. L. Valerius Flaccus, praetor, 63 B.C.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortiter, adv.</td>
<td>[fortis], bravely</td>
<td>1. M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C.; 2. L. Valerius Flaccus, consul 100 B.C.; 3. L. Valerius Flaccus, praetor, 63 B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortitūdō, -inis, F.</td>
<td>[fortis], bravery, courage, fortitude</td>
<td>1. M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C.; 2. L. Valerius Flaccus, consul 100 B.C.; 3. L. Valerius Flaccus, praetor, 63 B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortūna, -ae, F.</td>
<td>[fors], fortune, chance; good fortune, misfortune; lot, fate, destiny; pl., fortunes, property, possessions</td>
<td>1. M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C.; 2. L. Valerius Flaccus, consul 100 B.C.; 3. L. Valerius Flaccus, praetor, 63 B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortūnātus, -a, -um</td>
<td>[fortūnō], happy, fortunate</td>
<td>1. M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C.; 2. L. Valerius Flaccus, consul 100 B.C.; 3. L. Valerius Flaccus, praetor, 63 B.C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forum, -ī, N., open space, court, market place, forum; especially the Forum (the open space between the Capitoline and Palatine hills)</td>
<td>1. M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C.; 2. L. Valerius Flaccus, consul 100 B.C.; 3. L. Valerius Flaccus, praetor, 63 B.C.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum, tr.</td>
<td>1. M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C.; 2. L. Valerius Flaccus, consul 100 B.C.; 3. L. Valerius Flaccus, praetor, 63 B.C.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
break, subdue, crush, weaken, bend, wear out, Ar. 11.
fräter, frātris, M., brother.
fraudātiō, -ōnis, F. [fraudo, cheat], fraud.
frequēns, -entis, adj., repeated, frequent, crowded, full; pl., in crowds, in great numbers.
frequentia, -ae, F. [frequēns], assembly, crowd, throng, multitude.
frequentō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [frequēns], tr., visit frequently, bring in crowds.
frētus, -a, -um, relying, depending, trusting.
frigus, -oris, N., cold.
frōns, frontis, F., forehead, brow.
frūctus, -us, M. [fruor], enjoyment, fruit, benefit, advantage, gain, reward, profit, Cat., I, II, S. income, products.
frūmentārius, -a, -um [frūmentum], of grain; rēs frūmentāria, grain supply, grain.
fruor, frūi, frūctus sum, dep., enjoy.
fuga, -ae, F., flight.
fugiō, fugere, fūgi, fugitum, tr. and intr., flee, escape, elude.
fugītivus, -a, -um [fugiō], fleeing, fugitive; as noun, runaway slave.
fulgeō, -ēre, fulsi, —, intr., glitter, gleam.
fulmen, -inis, N. [fulgeō], thunderbolt, lightning.
Fulvius, -i, M., Fulvius, a gentile name; 1. M. Fulvius Flaccus, consul 125 B.C., partis of C. Gracchus; 2. M. Fulvius Nōbilior, consul 189 B.C., a patron of Ennius, the poet.
fundāmentum, -ī, N. [fundō], foundation.
1. fundō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., found, establish.
2. fundō, -ere, fūdi, fūsum, pour, scatter, rout.
fūnestus, -a, -um [fūnus], deadly, fatal, destructive.
fungōr, fungi, ūntus sum, dep. perform, fulfill.
furiōsus, -a, -um [furia], (full of madness), raging, frenzied, furious.
Fūrius, -i, M., Furius, a nomen or gentile name; 1. P. Fūrius, a confederate of Catiline; 2. L. Fūrius Philus, consul 136 B.C.
fūro, -ere, -ūi, —, intr., rage, rave, be mad.
fūror, fūrois, M., madness, rage, frenzy.
fūrtim, adv. [fūrtum], by stealth, stealthily.
fūrtum, -ī, N. [fūr], theft, robbery.

G
Ga-binius, -i, M., Gabinius (ga-bin'i-us), a gentile name; 1. P. Gabinius, praetor 89 B.C.; 2. P. Gabinius Cimber, a confederate of Catiline; 3. A. Gabinius, tribune 67 B.C.
Gabinius, -a, -um, of Gabinius, Gabinian.
Gāius, Gāi, Gāiō, etc., M.,
**Gaius** (gā’yus), a praenomen or personal name; abbr. C.

**Gallia**, -ae, F., Gaul.

**Gallicánus**, -a, -um, Gallic.

**Gallicus**, -a, -um [Gallia], Gallic, of Gaul.

**Gallus**, -a, -um, of Gaul, Gallic:

masc. as noun, a Gaul; pl., the Gauls.

**ganeo**, -onis, M. [ganea], glutton, debauchee.

**gaudeo**, -ere, gavisus sum, semidep., rejoice, be glad.

**gaudium**, -i, N. [gaudeō], joy, gladness.

**gaza**, -ae, F., treasure, wealth.

**gelidus**, -a, -um [gelu, ice], very cold.

**gener**, -eri, M., son-in-law.

**gens**, gentis, F., tribe, race, nation.

**genus**, generis, N., birth, race; nation; kind, class, character, style, nature.

**gerō**, -ere, gessī, gestum, tr., do, manage, carry on, wage; sē gerere, conduct oneself, act; rēs gestae, deeds, exploits.

**Glabriō**, -onis, M., Glabriō, a family name; M’. Acilius Glabriō, a Roman commander in the Third Mithridatic War.

**gladiātor**, -ōris, M. [gladius], gladiator, ruffian.

**gladiātorius**, -a, -um [gladiātor], of gladiators.

**gladius**, -i, M., sword.

**Glauceia**, -ae, M., Glau’cia, a family name; C. Servilius Glauceia, praetor 100 B.C.

**glória**, -ae, F., glory, fame, honor, renown.

**Gnaeus**, -i, M., Gnaeus (nē’us), a praenomen or personal name.

**gnāvus**, -a, -um [cf. (g)nōscō], busy, diligent, active.

**Gracchus**, -i, M., Gracchus; pl., the Gracchi; a family name; 1. Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus, tribune, 133 B.C.; 2. Gaius Sempronius Gracchus, brother of Tiberius, tribune 123 and 122 B.C.

**gradus**, -ūs, M., step, grade, degree, rank.

**Graecia**, -ae, F., Greece.

**Graecus**, -a, -um, Greek, Greco.

**gratia**, -ae, F. [grātus], favor, good will, influence; thanks, gratitude; grātiās agere, thank, give (express) thanks; grātiam referre, show gratitude, reward.

**Grattius**, -i, Grattius, the prose-cutor of Archias; see note, Ar., 1, 112.

**gratuito**, adv., without pay, for nothing, for no particular reason.

**grātulātiō**, -onis, F. [grātulor], manifestation of joy, public thanksgiving, Cat., IV, 5.

**grātus**, -a, -um, acceptable, welcome; thankful, grateful; pleasing.

**gravis**, -e, heavy, weighty, burdensome; severe, authoritative; august, dignified; important, grave, serious, P., 2, 9.
gravitas, -tatis, F. [gravis], weight; authority, dignity.
graviter, adv. [gravis], heavily, seriously, severely, deeply, gravely.
gravō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [gravis], tr., weigh down, load; pass., object, be unwilling.
grex, gregis, M., flock, herd; band, throng.
gubernātiō, -ōnis, F. [gubernō], (a piloting), direction, management.
gubernō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., steer, pilot, manage.
gusto, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., taste, appreciate.

H
habeō, -ēre, -uī, -ītum, tr., have, hold; feel, entertain, consider; w. ōratiō, deliver, make; w. honor, pay.
habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of habitō], intr., dwell, reside, live.
habitus, -ūs, M. [habeō], condition, quality, Ar. 7.
haereō, -ēre, haesī, haesum, intr., stick, cling, adhere, be fixed, remain.
haesitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of haereō], intr., (stick fast), hesitate.
Hannibal, -is, M., Hannibal, the Carthaginian general.
haruspex, -icis, M., soothsayer; see Classical Dictionary.
haud, adv., not, not at all.
hauriō, -īre, hausī, haustum, tr., draw, derive.

hebēscō, -ere, —, —, inceptive vb. [hebeō, be dull], grow dull, S3, b.
Hēraclia (-ēa), -ae, F., Heraclea (her-a-klē’a), a Greek city of southern Italy.
Hēracliēnsis, -e [Hēraclia], Heracle'an; as noun, Heracle'an, inhabitant of Heraclea.
hercule, adv., or interj. [voc. of Herculēs], by Hercules, verily.
herēditās, -tatis, F. [hēres], inheritance.
hesternus, -a, -um, of yesterday; hesternō diē, yesterday.
hibernō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [hībernus], winter, pass the winter.
hibernus, -a, -um, pertaining to winter; hiberna (sc. castra), winter quarters.
1. hīc, haec, hōc, dem. pron., this, this man, this thing, he, she, it; pl., these, these men, these things.
2. hīc, adv., here; at this point (of time), hereupon; on this point (subject).
hiems, hiemis, F., winter.
hinc, adv., from this place, hence; from this fact; on this side.
hīscē = hīs, w. emphasis.
Hispānia, -ae, F., Spain.
Hispāniēnsis, -e, [Hispānia], Spanish, of Spain.
Hispānus, -a, -um, Spanish; masc. as noun, a Spaniard.
hodiē, adv. [hic, diēs], to-day, this day.
hodiernus, -a, -um [hodiē], of
this day; hodiernus diēs, to-day, this day.
Homērus, -ī, M., Homer.
homō, hominis, M. or F., (human being), man.
honestās, -tātis, F. [honor], honor.
honestē, adv. [honestus], with honor, honorably.
honestō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [honestus], honor, distinguish, grace.
honestus, -a, -um [honōs], honored, respected, honorable, distinguished, respectable, Cat., II, 8.
honor (or honōs), honōris, M., honor, respect; an honor.
honōrātus, -a, -um [honōrō], honored, respected.
hōra, -ae, F., hour.
horribilis, -e [horreo + bilis], terrible, dreadful, horrible.
hortātus, -ūs, M. [hortor], encouragement.
Hortēnsius, -ī, M., Hortensius, a gentile name; Q. Hortēn-
sius, the orator, consul 69 B.C.
hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., urge, encourage, exhort.
hōsce, emphatic form of hōs.
hospes, -itis, M., guest-friend, guest, friend.
hospitium, -ī, N. [hospes], (the relation of host and guest), hospitality, tie of friendship, Cat., IV, 11.
hostilis, -e [hostis], of an enemy, hostile.
hostis, hostis, M., (stranger), an enemy (of the state); pl., the enemy:
hūc, adv., hither, to this place; to this point.
hūiusce, more emphatic than hūius, this very, this.
hūmānitās, -tātis, F. [hūmānus], human nature, humanity; kindness; refinement, culture, civilization.
hūmānus, -a, -um [homō], human, cultured, refined; reasonable, Ar. 7.
humilis, -e [hūmus], low, obscure, humble, inferior.
humus, -ī, F., earth, ground, soil; humī, loc., on the ground.

I
iaceō, -ère, -uī, —, intr., lie, lie prostrate, be powerless.
iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum, tr., throw; w. vōcēs, utter.
iactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of iaciō], tr., throw, toss, toss about; w. sē, vaunt, display; make a display.
iactūra, -ae, F. [iaciō], (a throwing away), loss.
iactus, -ūs, M. [iaciō], a throwing, hurling, falling, Cat., III, 8.
iam, adv., w. pres. tense, by this time, now; w. past tense, already, at length, now, hitherto; w. fut. tense, presently, at once, now; w. negatives and interrogatives implying a negative, longer; see diū, pridem, tum, vērō.
Iānuārius, -a, -um [iānua], of January.

ibi, adv., there, in that place; then, thereupon.

dcirco, adv. [id + abl. of circus], on that account, for that reason.

dem, eadem, idem, dem. pron., [is], (App. 23), the same, the same man; also.

deo, adv., on that account, therefore.

doneus, -a, -um, suitable, fit, deserving.

Idus, -uum, F., the Ides, the fifteenth day of March, May, July, and October, the thirteenth of other months.

igitur, conj., then, therefore, accordingly.

ignavia, -ae, F. [ignavus], inactivity, laziness, cowardice.

ignis, -is, M., fire.

ignominia, -ae, F. [in + nomen], disgrace, dishonor, ignominy.

ignore, -are, -avi, -atum, tr., not to know, be ignorant of, be unaware.

ignoscō, -ere, ignōvī, ignōtum, intr., (not to know), pardon.

ignōtus, -a, -um [ignōscō], unknown; as noun, stranger.

Ilias, -adis, F., the Iliad, the epic poem by Homer.

ille, illa, illud, dem. pron., that (yonder), that man, he, she, it; the famous, the great; pl., those, they, those men, those things.

illinc, adv. [ille], from that place, thence; on that side.

Illyricus, -a, -um, of Illyricum, Illyrian.

im-, see in-, as prefix.

imagō, -inis, F. [cf. imitor], (an imitation), likeness, image, portrait, model.

imberbis, -e [barba], without a beard, beardless.

imitor, -āri, -ātus sum, dep., copy, imitate.

immānis, -e, monstrous, enormous, frightful, savage, Ar. 8.

immānitās, -tātis, F. [immānis], monstrous size, vastness, enormity.

immaturus, -a, -um [mātūrus], unripe, premature, untimely.

immineō, -ere, —, — [mineō], intr., impend, threaten.

imminuō, -uere, -ui, -ūtum [minuō], tr., lessen, diminish, encroach upon.

immittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mīsum [mittō], tr., send into, let in.

immō, adv., on the contrary; immō vērō, nay more, aye, indeed, or rather, Why! Cat., I, 1.

immortalis, -e [mortālis], immortal.

immutatus, -a, -um [immūtō], changed, altered, transformed.

impediō, -ire, -ivi, -ītum [in, pēs], tr., entangle, hinder, encumber, prevent; suspend, P. 7.

impellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsūm [pellō], tr., strike against; incite, instigate, rouse.

impendeō, -ere, —, — [pendeō,
hang], intr., overhang; threaten; be near, be at hand, impend.
imperator, -ōris, M. [imperō], commander-in-chief, general.
imperātorius, -a, -um [imperātor], of a commander, worthy of a commander.
imperitus, -a, -um [peritus], inexperienced, ignorant.
imperium, -ī, N. [imperō], command, control, power, supreme power, authority, dominion; government, office, empire.
imperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr., command, demand, levy (upon).
impertiō, -īre, -īvi, -ītum [partiō], tr., share with; give, bestow (upon), impart.
impetrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., obtain one's request, gain one's end; secure, obtain.
impetus, -ūs, M., attack; violence, fury.
impius, -a, -um [pius], irreverent, ungodly, treasonable, wicked, impious.
implōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [plōrō], tr., beg earnestly, implore.
importūnus, -a, -um, unfit, rude, cruel, unnatural, unfeling, relentless.
improbītās, -tātis, F. [improbus], wickedness, iniquity, depravity, recklessness.
improbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [improbus,] tr., reject, disapprove.
improbōs, -a, -um [probus], wicked, depraved, shameless, worthless; pl. as noun, profili- gates, scoundrels, the ill-disposed.
impūbēs, -ēris, adj. [pūbēs], youthful, beardless.
impudēns, -entis, adj. [pudēns], shameless, impudent, presumptuous, P. 16.
impudenter, adv. [impudēns], shamelessly, impudently.
impudentia, -ae, F. [impudēns], shamelessness, impudence.
impudicus, -a, -um [pudicus], shameless, without modesty.
impūnitus, -a, -um [pūnitus], unpunished, unrestrained.
impūrus, -a, -um [pūrus], unclean, impure.
in, prep. w. acc., (of motion) into, to, on, upon, toward, against, for, concerning; w. abl., (of rest) in, on, at, in the case of, in regard to; as prefix, in, into, over, on, at, against; neg. prefix, not.
inānis, -e, empty, deserted; useless, idle, vain.
ināuditus, -a, -um [audio], unheard of, unknown.
inauratus, -a, -um [inaurō], gilded.
incēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum [cēdō], intr., advance; pervade.
incendium, -ī, N. [incendō], a burning, fire, flame, conflagration.
incendō, -cendere, -cendi, -cessum, tr., set fire to, burn.
incēnsio, -onis, F. [incendō], burning.
inceptum, -i, N. [incipiō], beginning, undertaking.

incertus, -a, -um [certus], uncertain; unsettled.

incidō, -cidere, -cidī, — [cadō], intr., fall in, fall into, incur.

incipio, -cipere, -cepi, -ceptum [capio], tr. and intr., undertake; begin.

incipium, -dicis, M. or F. [indicō], (one who points out), informer, witness, accuser.

indicium, -i, N. [indicō], information, proof, evidence, testimony, indication.

indicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [index], tr., point out, indicate, declare, reveal, tell, prove; betray, accuse.

indicō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum [dicō], tr., proclaim, declare (upon).

indignē, adv. [indignus], unworthily, undeservedly.

indignus, -a, -um [dignus], unworthy.

inducō, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum [duco], tr., lead into, lead on, bring to, induce.

industria, -ae, F. [industrius], diligence, industry.

industrius, -a, -um, industrious, enterprising.

indutiae, -arum, F., truce.

ineō, -ire, -ii, -itum [eō], tr., enter, enter upon, form, engage in, begin; pres. part. as adj., early, the beginning of.

iners, -ertis, adj., unskillful, inactive, indolent, Cat., II, 5.

inertia, -ae, F. [iners], inactivity, idleness, indolence.

infamia, -ae [infamis], ill report, disgrace, infamy.

infamis, -e [fama], notorious, infamous.

inferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum [ferō], tr., bring upon, lay upon, apply; wage, make upon.

inferus, -a, -um, below, lower:
m. pl. as noun, the dead; apud inferōs, in the lower world.

Infestus, -a, -um, unsafe, hostile, dangerous, troublesome; indignant (at).

Infidus, -a, -um, faithless.

Infimus, -a, -um [sup. of inferus], lowest, meanest, basest.

Infinitus, -a, -um [finitus], endless, countless.

Infirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [infirmus], tr., weaken, refute, disprove.

Infirmus, -a, -um [firmus], weak, powerless, delicate, infirm.

Infitiātor, -ōris, M. [infitiōr], denier; debtor.

Infitiōr, -āri, -ātus sum [infitiāe], dep., deny.

Infλmmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [flammō], tr., kindle, set fire to, burn; inflame, arouse.

Inflo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [flō, blow], tr., (blow into), inspire.

Informō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [formō], tr., mold, train.

Ingēnium, -ī, N. [cf. gignō], native talent, ability, genius.

Ingēns, -gentis, adj., vast, great.

Ingenuus, -a, -um, native, free-born.

Ingrātus, -a, -um, ungrateful.

Ingravēscō, -ere, —, — [inceptive of ingravē, weigh down], intr., increase, grow worse.

Ingridior, -gridi, -gressus sum [gradior], dep., go into, enter, enter upon, come upon.

Inhiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [hiō], intr., open the mouth (for), gape.

Inhūmānus, -a, -um [hūmānus], inhuman.

Iniciō, -icere, -ičī, -iectum [iaciō], tr., throw in, cast on; cause; inspire.

Inimicitia, -ae, F. [inimicus], unfriendliness, enmity.

Inimicus, -a, -um [amicus], unfriendly, hostile; as noun (personal), enemy, foe.

Iniquitas, -tātis, F. [inīquus], unfairness, injustice.

Iniquus, -a, -um [aequus], uneven, unfair, unjust.

Initiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [initium], tr., initiate, consecrate.

Initium, -ī, N. [ineō], a beginning.

Iniūria, -ae, F. [ius], wrong, injustice, injury; iniūriā, unjustly.

Iniūriōsē, adv. [iniūriōsus], unjustly, unfairly.

Iniussū, abl. sing. M., without the command.

Inlecebra, -ae, F. [iniciō], incitement, allurement, charm.

Inlūstris, -e [lux], bright, brilliant, illustrious; famous, glorious.

Inlūstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [lūstrō], tr., light up, illuminate, make illustrious, bring to light, make clear, explain.

Innocēns, -entis, adj. [nocēns], harmless, blameless, innocent, honest, P. 10.

Innocentia, -ae, F. [innocēns], innocence, integrity, P. 13.
innumerabilis, -e [numerus], countless, innumerable.
inopia, -ae, F. [inops], want, lack, scarcity.
inquam (inquis, inquit), def. vb. (App. 51), I say.
inrepō, -rēpere, -rēpsi, — [rēpō, creep], intr., creep in, be stealthily inserted.
inrētiō, -īre, -īvi, -ītum [rēte, net], tr., catch in a net, ensnare, entrap.
inscribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum [scribo], tr., write upon, inscribe, entitle.
insepultus, -a, -um [sepelid], unburied.
insideō, -sidēre, -sēdi, — [sedeō], tr. and intr., sit upon, be seated, dwell, exist.
insula, -ae, F., island.
insum, -esse, infui [sum], be in, exist in, be present.
integer, -gra, -grum [cf. tangō], untouched, whole, unbroken, sound, entire, unhurt; fresh; irreproachable, of integrity.
inšerences, -entis, adj. [sapiēns], unwise, foolish.
inšolēns, -entis, adj. [soleō], (usual), insolent.
inšolenter, adv. [insolēns], unusually, insolently.
inšolitus, -a, -um [insoleō], unusual, strange.
inспектō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [inspicio], tr. and intr., look at, look on, observe.
inšpērātus, -a, -um [spērō], unexpected.
instituō, -stituere, -stitūtum [statuō], tr. and intr., put in place, establish, train, Ar. 8; begin; determine, decide, intend.
institutum, -i, N. [instituō], custom, institution.
instō, -stāre, -stīti, -stātum [stō], intr., be at hand, draw nigh.
instruō, -struere, -strūxi, -strūctum [struō], tr., build; array, marshal, draw up; equip, P. S.
insula, -ae, F., island.
insum, inesse, infui [sum], be in, exist in, be present.
integer, -gra, -grum [cf. tangō], untouched, whole, unbroken, sound, entire, unhurt; fresh; irreproachable, of integrity.
inšerences, -entis, adj. [sapiēns], unwise, foolish.
inšolēns, -entis, adj. [soleō], (usual), insolent.
inšolenter, adv. [insolēns], unusually, insolently.
inšolitus, -a, -um [insoleō], unusual, strange.
inpektō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [inspicio], tr. and intr., look at, look on, observe.
inšpērātus, -a, -um [spērō], unexpected.
instituō, -stituere, -stitūtum [statuō], tr. and intr., put in place, establish, train, Ar. 8; begin; determine, decide, intend.
institutum, -i, N. [instituō], custom, institution.
instō, -stāre, -stīti, -stātum [stō], intr., be at hand, draw nigh.
instruō, -struere, -strūxi, -strūctum [struō], tr., build; array, marshal, draw up; equip, P. S.
[inter + legō, gather], tr., learn, perceive, know, understand, be sure, recognize, see clearly.
intendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tendentum [tendō], tr. and intr., stretch out; aim, purpose, intend.
inter, prep. w. acc., between, among; as prefix, between.
intercedō, -cedere, -cessi, -cessum [cēdō], intr., go between, intervene, elapse.
intercessio, -onis, F. [intercedō], intervention, veto, protest.
interea, adv. [inter + ea], in the meantime, meanwhile.
intereō, -ire, -ii, -itum [eō], intr., perish, be lost.
interruptō, -ficere, -fēci, -flectum [faciō], tr., kill, put to death, murder.
interim, adv., meanwhile, in the meantime.
interimō, -imere, -ēmi, -emptum [emō], tr., (take from the midst), kill, murder.
interior, -ius, comp. adj. [intrā], interior, inland, P. 22.
interitus, -ās, M. [interereō], ruin, destruction, death, overthrow.
internecio, -onis, F. [nex], massacre.
interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [rogō], tr., ask, inquire of, question.
intersum, -esse, -fuī [sum], be between; be different, differ; be present; impers., it concerns, it interests.
intervallum, -ī, N., interval (of space or time).
interventus, -ūs, M. [interveniō], (a coming between), intervention.
intestinīus, -ā, -um [intus], internal; civil.
intimus, -ā, -um [sup. of interior], inmost; as noun, most intimate friend, bosom friend.
intra, prep. w. acc., within.
intrōdūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum [intrō + dūcō], tr., lead in, bring in, introduce.
intueor, -tuēri, -tuitus sum [tueor], dep., look upon, gaze at.
intus, adv. [in], within, on the inside.
inultus, -ā, -um [ulciscor], unpunished.
inūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstum [ūrō], tr., burn in, brand upon, impress (upon), Cat., II, 9.
inúsitātus, -ā, -um [ūsitor], unusual.
inütilis, -e [ūtilis], useless, unprofitable.
invādō, -vadere, -vāsi, -vāsum [vadō], tr., enter; possess.
inveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum [veniō], tr., (come upon), find, discover, detect, invent.
investigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [vestigium], tr., track, hunt out, investigate.
inveterāscō, -ere, inveterāvī, — [inceptive of inveterō], intr., grow old, become established, become fixed.
invictus, -ā, -um [victus], unconquered, invincible.
*LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY*

**invidia, -ae, F. [invidus], envy, hatred, unpopularity, odium.**

**invidiosus, -a, -um [invidia], causing unpopularity, hateful.**

**invidus, -a, -um, envious; as noun, envious person.**

**invisus, -a, -um [invideo], displeasing, detested.**

**invitatus, -us, M. [invito], invitation.**

**invito, -are, -avi, -atum, tr., invite, summon.**

**invitus, -a, -um, against the will, unwillingly.**

**lovis, see luppiter.**

**ipse, -a, -um, intensive pron.** (App. 24), self; (I) myself, (you) yourself, (he) himself, etc.; very.

**ira, -ae, F., anger.**

**iracundia, -ae, F. [ira], excessive anger, wrath.**

**irascor, -i, iratus sum [ira], dep., be angry.**

**irruptio, -onis, F. [irrupmō], (a breaking in), invasion, incursion, attack.**

**is, ea, id, dem. pron. (App. 23), that, this, he, she, it; such; pl., these, those, they.**

**isdem = eisdem.**

**isse = īvisse [1. eō].**

**iste, ista, istud, dem. pron.** (App. 23), that (of yours), yonder; that man (in irony or scorn), that scoundrel; such, he.

**ita, adv., so, thus, in such a manner; ita ut, just as.**

**Italia, -ae, F., Italy.**

**Ítalicus -a, -um, Italian.**

**itaque, conj. [ita + que], and so, therefore, accordingly.**

**item, adv., likewise, also, besides.**

**iter, itineris, N. [1. eō], way, course, road; journey, march.**

**iterum, adv., again, a second time; iterum et saepius, again and again.**

**iubeō, -ere, iussi, iussum, tr., order, direct.**

**iúcundus, -a, -um [iuvō], pleasing, pleasant, agreeable.**

**iúdex, iúdicis, M. [iús + dícō], judge, juror.**

**iúdiciālis, -e [iúdex], of a court, judicial.**

**iúdicium, -i, N. [iúdex], judgment, decision, verdict, opinion; trial, court of justice.**

**iúdicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [iúdex], tr., judge, decide, determine, think, consider.**

**iugulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., kill.**

**iugulum, -i, N. [iugum], (collar bone), throat.**

**Iugurtha, -ae, M., Jugurtha, a king of Numidia.**

**Iúlius, -i, M., Julius, a gentile name; see Caesar.**

**iungō, -ere, īnxī, īunctum, tr., join.**

**Luppiter, Iovis (App. 11), M., Jupiter, the chief god of the Romans.**

**iús, iūris, N., right, justice; the principle of right upon which law (lēx) is based: iūre. rightly.**
iusiurandum, iūrisiūrandī, N., oath.

iusā, abl. of obsolete iussus [iubeō], by order.
iūstē [iūstus], adv., rightly, justly.
iūstus, -a, -um [iūs], just, right,
proper, fair, regular, Cat., II, 1.

iuvenis, -is, adj., young; as
noun, youth, young person.

iuventus, -tutis, F, [iuvenis],
youth, young person.

iuvo, -are, -iuvi, -iutum, tr., help,
aid, assist.

Kalendae, -ārum, F. pl. (abbr. Kal.), the Calends, the first
day of a month.

Karthago, -inis, F., Carthage.

lacrima, -ae, F., tear.
lactāns, -antis, pres. part.
[lactō], (taking milk), suck-
ling.

Laecā, -ae, M., Laecā, a family
name; M. Porcius Laecā, a
Roman senator, at whose
house the conspirators met.

laedō, -ere, laesi, laesium, tr.,
wound, injure.

Laelius, -i, M., Laelius, a gentile
name; C. Laelius, consul 140
B.C.

laetitia, -ae, F. [laetus], glad-
ness, joy, delight, happiness.

laetor, -āri, -ātus sum [laetus],
dep., rejoice, be glad; rejoice
over.

lamentātiō, -onis, F. [lāmentor],
wailing, lamentation.

lāmentor, --āri, -ātus sum [lā-
mentum], dep., bewail, lament.

languidus, -a, -um, stupid, lan-
guid.

largēr, -īri, -ītus sum [largus],
dep., give bountifully, bestow,
confer.

largītiō, -onis, F. [largior], lavish
giving, bribery, corruption.

largitor, -ōris, M. [largior], (one
who gives lavishly), a liberal
man.

lātē, adv. [lātus], widely.

latebra, -ae, F. [lateō], hiding
place, recess.

lateō, -ēre, -uī, —, intr., lie
concealed, lie hid, escape notice.

Lātīniēnsis, -e [Latium], of
Latium; as noun, a surname.

Latīnus, -a, -um [Latium], Latin.

Latium, -i, N., Latium (lā'-
sh(y)um), a district in central Italy.

látor, -órís, M. [feró], bearer, proposer.

latró, -ónis, M., robber, brigand.

latrócinium, -í, N. [latró], bandage, robbery; concretely, band of brigands.

latrócinor, -ári, -átus sum [latró], dep., be a brigand, live as a bandit.

látus, lateris, N., side, body.

látus, -a, -um, broad, wide.

laudo, -are, -avi, -atum, tr., praise.

laus, laudis, F., praise, merit, fame, renown, glory.

lectulus, -i, M. [lectus], small couch, bed.

lectus, -i, M., couch, bed.

lēctus, -a, -um [legō], chosen, choice, Cat., II, 9; excellent, eminent.

lēgātiō, -ónis, F. [legō], embassy.

lēgātus, -ī, M. [lēgō], ambassador, envoy; lieutenant.

legiō, -ónis, F. [legō, collect], legion.

lēgitimus, -a, -um [lēx], established by law, legal.

lēgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., appoint (or commission) as lieutenant.

lēgō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum, tr., gather, collect; choose, select; read, read of, P. 10.

lēniō, -ire, -īvī, -ītum [lenis], tr., soften, soothe, alleviate.

lēnis, -e, soft, smooth; mild, moderate, merciful, lenient.

lēnitās, -tātis, F. [lēnis], mildness, gentleness, lenity.

lēnō, -ónis, M., seducer, agent, tool.


lentus, -a, -um [lenis], slow; shirking.

lepidus, -a, -um, charming.


levis, -e, light; trifling, fickle, trivial.

levitās, -tātis, F. [levis], lightness, shallowness, fickleness, trifling conduct, Ar. 5.

leviter, adv. [levis], lightly; slightly.

levō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [levis], tr., lighten; relieve, modify, alleviate.

lēx, lēgis, F., law.

libellus, -ī, M. [liber], little book, book, manuscript.

libenter, adv. [libēns], gladly, with delight, cheerfully, willingly.

liber, librī, M., (inner bark), book.

liber, libera, liberum, free; M.
pl. as noun, (free persons), children.
liberalis, -e [liber], liberal.
liberē, adv. [liber], freely.
liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [liber], tr., free, release, deliver.
libertās, -tātis, F. [liber], liberty, freedom.
libertīnus, -a, -um [libertus], of a freedman; libertīnus homō, freedman.
libet, -ere, libuit or libitum est, impers., it pleases, it is pleasing.
libido, -inis, F. [libet], pleasure, desire, lust, passion.
licentia, -ae, F. [licēns], freedom, license; want of control.
licet, licēre, licuit, impers. (App. 52), it is permitted, it is allowed.
Licinius, -i, M., Licinius, a gentile name; see Archias.
lingua, -ae, F., tongue, language.
līnum, -i, N., (flax), thread, string.
liquefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum; pass., -fīō, -fieri, -factus sum [liqueō + faciō], (make liquid), melt.
littera, -ae, F., letter (of the alphabet); pl., letter (epistle) or letters; literature.
litterātus, -a, -um [littera], (lettered), learned, cultured.
litūra, -ae, F. [linō, smear], (smearing of the wax tablet), erasure.
locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [locus], tr., place, put, set; let a contract, order.
Locrēnsēs, -ium, M., Locrians, inhabitants of Locrians, in southern Italy.
locuplēs, -plētis, adj. [locus, pleō], rich in lands, wealthy, rich.
locuplētō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [locuplēs], tr., make rich, enrich.
locus, -i, M.; pl. loca, -ōrum, N., place, locality, region, position, site, room, station, rank, point, instance.
longē, adv. [Longus], far, by far; long, for a long period.
longinquītās, -tātis, F. [longinquus], distance, remoteness.
longinquus, -a, -um [longē], distant, far off.
longiusculus, -a, -um [longior], rather long, a little longer.
longus, -a, -um, long; far, distant, remote; tedious.
loquāx, -ācis, adj. [loquor], talkative, garrulous.
loquor, loqui, locūtus sum, dep., speak, say.
Lucius, -i, M., Lucius, a praenomen or personal name.
lūctus, -ūs, M. [lugeō], mourning, grief.
Lūcullus, -i, M., Lucullus, a family name; 1. L. Licinius Lūcullus, Roman commander in the Third Mithridatic War; 2. M. Licinius Lūcullus, brother of 1.
lūdus, -i, M., play, game; school.
lūgeō, -ère, lūxi, lūctum, tr. and intr., mourn over, lament.
lūmen, -inis, N. [lūceō, shine], light.
lupīnus, -a, -um [lupus], of a wolf.
lūx, lūcis, F., light, daylight; help, relief, hope of safety, P. 12.
lūxuria, -ae, F. [lūxus], luxury, excess.

M

M., see Mārcus.
M'. , see Mānius.
māchinātor, -tōris, M. [māchinor], contriver, inventor.
māchinor, -āri, -ātus sum [māchina], dep., devise, invent; contrive, plot.
mactō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., glorify, sacrifice; put to death, afflict (with punishment), Cat. I, 11.
macula, -ae, F., stain, disgrace.
Maelius, -i, M., Maelius, a gentile name; Spurius Maelius, a rich plebeian, slain 439 B.C.
maeroēō, -ēre, —, —, tr. and intr., grieve, lament, mourn.
maeror, -ōris [maeroēō], M., sorrow, grief.

magis, comp. adv. (App. 20), more, rather.

magistrātus, -ūs, M. [magister], civil office, magistracy; magistrate.
māgnificē, adv., grandly, gloriously.
māgnificus, -a, -um [māgnus, faciō], great, magnificent, fond of display, powerful.
māgnitūdō, -inis, F. [māgnus], greatness, enormity, magnitude, extent.
māgnopere, adv. [māgnō opere], greatly.
Māgnus, -ī, M., Magnus, the Great, a surname, especially of Pompey.
māgnus, -a, -um, great, large.
māior, māius, adj. [comp. of māgnus], larger, greater; pl. as noun, ancestors, elders.
male, adv. [malus], badly, wrongly, scarcely.
malificium, -ī, N. [male, faciō], evil deed, crime.
malleolus, -ī, M. [dim. of malleus, hammer], firebrand.
mālō, mālle, mālui (App. 48), [magis + volō], irr. wish rather, prefer.
malus, -a, -um, bad, evil; neut. as noun, evil, misfortune, calamity.
mandātum, -ī, N. [mandō], commission, order, instruction, message.
mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [manus + dō], tr., (put in hand), commit, intrust, consign, order, confer, P. 1.
māne, adv., in the morning, early in the morning.
maneō, -ēre, mansī, mansum, intr., remain, persevere.

manicātus, -a, -um [manicae, long sleeves], long-sleeved.
manifēstō, adv. [manifēstus], openly, manifestly, clearly.
manifēstus, -a, -um, clear, open, manifest; apparent, evident, exposed.
Manilius, -i, M., Manilius, a
gentile name; C. Manilius,
tribune 66 B.C.
Manius, -i, M., Manius, a
gentile name.
Manlianus, -a, -um, of Manlius.
Manlius, -i, M., Manlius, a
nomen or gentile name;
Gaius Manlius, the officer
in charge of Catiline’s forces.
mano, -are, -avi, -atum, intr.,
trickle; extend, spread.
mansuetudo, -inis, F. [mansu-
etus], gentleness, mildness.
manubiae, -arum, F. [manus],
spoils.
manus, -us, F., hand; hand-
writing; band, company.
Marcellus, -i, M. [dim. of Mar-
cus], Marcellus, a family
name; 1. M. Claudius Mar-
cellus, the conqueror of Syra-
cuse; 2. M. Claudius Mar-
cellus, consul 51 B.C.
Marcus, -i, M., Marcus, a
praenomen.
mare, maris, N., sea; terrâ
marique, on land and sea.
maritimus, -a, -um [mare], of
the sea, on the sea, maritime;
ôra maritima, seacoast.
maritus, -i, M., married man,
husband.
Marius, -i, M., Marius, a gentile
name; Gaius Marius, the
celebrated general and con-
sul, died 86 B.C.
marmor, -oris, N., marble.
Mârs, Mârtis, M., Mars, god of
war; figuratively, war.
Massilia, -ae, F., Massilia, a
Greek city in Gaul, now
Marseilles.
Massiliensês, -ium, M. pl.
[Massilia], the people of Mas-
silia.
mâter, mâtiris, F., mother;
mâter familīas (old gen. sing.
of familia], matron, mistress
of a household.
mâtûrē, adv. [mâtûrus], early,
soon.
mâtûritās, -tātis, F. [mâtûrus],
ripeness, maturity.
mâtûrō, -äre, -āvī, -ātum [mâ-
tûrus], tr. and intr., make
ripe, bring to maturity; hasten.
mâtûrus, -a, -um, ripe, mature;
early, speedy.
máximē, adv [sup. of magis],
most, very greatly, especially,
entirely, ever so much, Cat., I,
12.
máximus, -a, -um, sup. of mágnus (App. 19), greatest,
largest; very great; see ponti-
fex.
Mâximus, -i, M., Maximus, a family name; Q. Fabius Mâximus,
dictator 217 B.C.
Mêdēa, -ae, F., Medēa, daugh-
ter of Aeêtes, king of Colehis.
medeor, -ērī, —, dep., heal,
cure, remedy.
medicina, -ae, F. [medicus],
remedy, medicine.
mediocris, -cre [medius], moder-
ate, ordinary, of moderate
attainments, Ar. 5.
mediocrīter, adv. [mediocris],
moderately, slightly.
meditor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep.
think over, consider, meditate, plan, prepare; design, Cat., I, 10.

medius, -a, -um, the middle of.

mehercule, adv. [= mē Her-
culēs iuvet, may Hercules help me], by Hercules, as-

suredly, verily.

mel, mellis, N., honey.

melior, comp. of bonus.

membrum, -i, N., limb.

mementōte, imperative pl. of memorī, remember (ye).

memorī, -isse, def. vb. (App. 50), remember; perf. system
used w. meanings of the pres.

system.

Memmius, -ī, M., Memmius, a
gentile name.

memor, -oris, adj., mindful (of),
remembering, w. gen.

memorābilis, -e [memor], deserv-
ing of record, memorable.

memoria, -ae, F. [memor],
memory, recollection; post
memoriam, within the memory.

memorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
[memor], tr., recall, recount,
relate.

mendicitās, -tātis, F. [mendi-
cus], beggary, extreme pov-

erty.

mēns, mentis, F., mind, intel-
lect; spirit, feeling; dispo-
sition; thought, purpose, plan,
intention, design.

mēnxis, -is, M., monih.

mercātor, -ōris, M. [mercor],
trader, merchant.

mercēs, -ēdis, F. [merx], pay,
reward.

mereor, -ērī, -itus sum, dep.,
deserve, merit.

meritō, adv. [meritum], de-
servedly, justly.

meritum, -ī, N. [mereor], merit,
service, kindness, favor, bene-
fit.

merx, mercis, F., merchandise.

Metellus, -ī, M., Metellus, a
family name; 1. Q. Caecilius
Metellus Numidicus, consul
109 B.C.; 2. Q. Caecilius
Metellus Pius, praetor 89,
consul 80 B.C.; 3. Q. Caecilius
Metellus Crēticus, tri-
bune 75 B.C.; 4. Q. Caecilius
Metellus Celer, praetor in
63 B.C.; 5. M. Metellus,
an associate of Catiline.

metuō, metuere, metui, —
[metus], tr., fear, dread.

metus, -ūs, M., fear.

meus, -a, -um, poss. pron.,
my.

miles, -itis, M., soldier.

militāris, -e [miles], of a soldier,
military; rēs militāris, the
art of war, warfare.

militia, -ae, F. [miles], military
service, military skill; militiae,
loc. in the field, in war.

mille, indecl. adj., thousand;
milia, milium, N. pl. as noun.

minae, -ārum, F., threats.

minimē, adv. [sup. of parum],
least, very little, by no means.

minimus, -a, -um [sup. of par-
vus], least,

minitor, -āri, -ātus sum [freq.
of minor], dep., threaten, men-
ace.
1. minor, -ārī, -ātus sum [minae], dep., threaten.
2. minor, minus, adj. [comp. of parvus], less.
Minucius, -ī, M., Minucius, a gentile name.
minuō, -ere, minuī, minūtum, tr., make less, lessen, diminish.
minus, adv. [comp. of parum] (App. 20), less, not.
mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum [mīrus], dep., wonder at, marvel at, admire, wonder; see modus.
mirus, -a, -um, wonderful, marvelous.
misceō, -ère, -ui, mixtum, tr., mix; devise, Cat., IV, 3.
Misenum, -i, N., Misenum (mi-se'num), a town and promontory near Naples.
miser, -era, -erum, wretched, unhappy, miserable, unfortunate; grievous.
miserandus, -a, -um [miseror], pitiable, to be pitied.
miseria, -ae, F. [miser], wretchedness, misery, trouble.
misericordia, -ae, F. [misericors], pity, compassion, mercy.
misericors, -cordis, adj. [misereō, pity, cor, heart], (tender-hearted), merciful.
miseror, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., deplore.
Mithridātēs, -is, or -ī, M., Mithridates, king of Pontus, who fought w. the Romans 88–63 B.C.
Mithridāticus, -a, -um, of Mithridates, Mithridatic.
mitis, -e, mild, gentle, merciful.
mittō, -ere, mīsi, missum, tr., send.
mixtus, -a, -um [misceō], mixed, promiscuous; mixtum ex, involving.
moderātō, -onis, F. [moderatus], moderation.
moderātus, -a, -um [moderor], moderate, restrained, self-controlled, wise, Ar. 7.
moderor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., guide, restrain, moderate.
modestus, -a, -um [modus], (within due measure), discreet, honorable, scrupulous.
modo, adv. [modus], only, just; lately, a little while ago.
modus, -i, M., measure, limit, extent, amount; way, manner, kind, sort; moderation; eīus modi, of such a nature, such; mirandum in modum, wonderfully.
moenia, -ium, N. pl., defensive walls, city walls, city (inclosed by walls).
mōlēs, -is, F., mass, weight, load, burden, Cat., I, 8.
molestē, adv. [molestus], with trouble, with vexation; molestē ferō, be vexed, be annoyed, be troubled.
molestus, -a, -um [mōlēs], troublesome, disagreeable, annoying.
mōlior, -īrī, -ītus sum [mōlēs], dep., endeavor, attempt; contrive, plan, plot.
mollis, -e, mild, gentle; timid.
moneō, -ère, -ui, -itum, tr.,
warn, advise.
mönstrum, -i, N. [moneō], di-
vine omen; monster, Cat., II, 1.
monumentum, -i, N. [moneō],
(reminder); memorial, monu-
ment; record.
mora, -ae, F., delay, hesita-
tion.
morbus, -i, M., disease, sickness.
morior, mori, mortuus sum,
fut. part., moritūrus [mors],
dep., die.
mors, mortis, F., death.
mortālis, -e [mors], mortal.
mortuus, -a, -um [morior], dead.
mōs, mōris, M., custom, man-
ner; pl., customs, character,
the ways of men, Cat., I, 1;
principles.
mōtus, -ūs, M. [moveō], move-
ment, motion, action; com-
motion, disturbance, shock.
moveō, -ère, mōvī, mōtum, tr.,
move, disturb, affect, influence.
mūcrō, -onis, point or edge of a
sword; sword.
mulier, -is, F., woman.
muli ercula, -ae, F. [dim. of
mulier], mistress.
multītūdō, -inis, F. [multus],
great number, multitude.
1. multō, adv. [multus], by
much, much, far.
2. multō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
[multa, a fine], tr., fine, punish.
multum, adv. [multus], much.
multus, -a, -um, much; pl.,
many.
Mulvius, -a, -um, Mulvian.
mūniceps, -cips, M. or F.
[mūnia, official duties, capiō],
citizen of a free town.
mūnicium, -i, N. [mūniceps],
free town, free district, one
whose people were Roman
citizens, but governed by
their own laws and magis-
trates.
mūniō, -ire, -īvī, -itum, tr.,
fortify, protect.
mūnītus, -a, -um [mūniō], for-
tified, defended; safe, secure.
mūnus, -eris, N., task, duty;
present, favor, Ar. S.
Mūrēna, -ae, M., Murena, a
family name; L. Licinius
Mūrēna, commander in the
Second Mithridatic War (83–
81 B.C.).
mūrus, -i, M., wall.
Mūsa, -ae, F., Muse, one of the
nine goddesses of music,
poetry, and other arts.
mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.,
change.
mūtus, -a, -um, mute, speechless,
silent, voiceless.
Mytilēnaeus, a, -um, of Mytilene
(mit-i-lē’nē), a city on the
island of Lesbos.

N
nam, conj., for; now (introduc-
ing an explanation).
nanciscor, nancisci, nactus sum,
dep., obtain, find.
nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and
intr., tell, narrate, recount.
nāscor, -i, nātus sum, dep., be
born; rise, grow; nātus, born.
Násica, -ae, M., Nasica, a family name; see Scipio.
nátīō, -ōnis, F., (birth), race, tribe, nation.
nātūra, -ae, F. [nāscor], birth; nature.

naufragus, -a, -um [nāvis, frangō], shipwrecked; ruined; pl. as noun, men of wrecked fortunes, bankrupts.

nauticus, -a, -um [nauta], of sailors, nautical, naval.

navigatio, -onis, F. [navigo], sailing, navigation.

navigo, -are, -avi, -ātum [nāvis], tr., put to sea.

nāvīs, -is, F., ship.

-ne, enclitic particle, introducing questions; w. direct questions, not to be translated; w. indirect questions, whether.

1. nē, adv., not; nē . . . quidem, not even.

2. nē, conj., that . . . not, lest; after word of fearing, that.

3. nē, interj., truly, verily.

Néapolitānī, -ōrum, M., the inhabitants of Neapolis, or Naples.
nec, see neque.

necessāriō, adv. [necessārius], of necessity.

necessārius, -a, -um [necesse], necessary, inevitable, unavoidable; as noun, connection, kinsman, relative.

necessē, indecl. adj., necessary.

necessitās, -tātis, F. [necessē], necessity.

necessitūdō, -inis, F. [necesse], close relationship, connection.
necne, conj., or not, used at the end of a double question.

necō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [nex], tr., put to death, kill.

nepōs, -ōtis, M., grandson; spendthrift, Cat., II, 4.
nēquām, indecl. adj., worthless, vile.
nēque (before vowels or cons.), nec (before cons.), conj., and not, nor; neque (nec) . . .
nēque (nec), neither . . . nor.
néquior, comp. of néquam.
néquitia, -ae, F. [néquam],
worthlessness; neglect, negligence, remissness, indecision.
nervus, -i, M., nerve, sinew;
force, strength.
nesció, -ire, -íví (ii), — [né + sció], tr., not know, be ignorant.
nesció quis, nesció quid, (I know not who), some one, (I know not what), something.
neve, or neu, conj. [né + -ve],
and that not, and not.
nex, necis, F., violent death, murder.
nihil, indecl. noun, or nihilum,
-i, N., nothing; aec. as adv.,
not at all; nihil-dum, nothing as yet.
nimis, adv., too, too much.
nimium, adv., too.
nimius, -a, -um [nimis], excessive, too much, too great; as a noun, too much, Cat., III, 9.
nisi, conj., if not, unless, except, but.
niteó, -ère, -uí, —, shine, glisten.
nitidus, -a, -um [niteó], shining;
sleek.
nix, nivis, F., snow.
nóbilis, -e [noscó], well-known,
famous, noble, of high rank.
nóbilitás, -tátis, F. [nóbilis],
fame, renown; high birth, nobility.
nocéns, -entis, adj. [noceó],
guilty; as noun, guilty man, criminal.
noceó, -ère, -uí, -itum, intr.,
harm, injure.
nocturnus, -a, -um [nox], by
night, at night, nightly, nocturnal.
nóló, nólle, nólui, — [nón + voló] (App. 48), irr., be unwillling, not wish.
nómen, -inis, N., name.
nóminátim, adv. [nóminó], by name, expressly.
nóminó, -äre, -ávi, -átum [nómen], tr., name, call (by name).
nón, adv., not.
Nónae, árum, F., the Nones.
nóndum, adv. [nón + dum], not yet.
nónne, interrog. adv., expecting affirmative answer, not.
nónnullus, -a, -um [nón + nullus], (not none), some; pl. as noun, some.
nónnumquam, adv. [nón + numquam], sometimes.
nós, gen. nostrum or nostri, pers. pron., we; see ego.
nóscó, -ere, nóvi, nótum, tr.,
learn; perf., know.
noster, -tra, -trum, poss. pron.,
our, of us; sometimes = meus, my.
nota, -ae, F., mark, sign, brand.
notó, -äre, -ávi, -átum [nota],
tr., mark, brand, single out.
nótus, -a, -um [nóscó], known,
well-known.
novem, adj., indecl., nine.
November, -bris, -bre [novem],
of November.
novus, -a, -um, new, unusual;
novae rés, pl., change of government, revolution.
nox, noctis, F., night.
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

nudius tertius [nunc diēs tertius est], day before yesterday.
nūdus, -a, -um, naked, bare, vacant.
nūllus, -a, -um [neg. of ulla], (App. 13), not any, no, none, no one.
num, interrog. particle; in a dir. question implies a neg. answer, but has no equivalent English word; in an indir. question, whether.
Numantia, -ae, F., Numantia, a city of Spain.
nūmen, -inis, N. [nuō, nod], command, will, divine will.
numerus, -i, M., number.
numquam, adv. [nē + umquam], never.
nunc, adv., now.
nuntio, -are, -avi, -atum, tr., report, announce.
nuntius, -i, M., messenger; message, order.
nerper, adv., recently.
nuptiae, -arum, F. [nubo, marry], marriage, wedding.
usquam, adv., nowhere.
nūtus, -ūs, M. [nuō, nod], nod, command, order, will.

O
Ō, interj., O! oh! alas!
ob, prep. w. ace., on account of, for; as prefix, towards, against, in front of.
obeō, -īre, -iī, -ītum [eō], tr., and intr., go to meet, attend to; reach, Cat., III, 10; accomplish, commit, transact, P 12. 17.
obiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [iaciō], tr., throw before, expose.
oblectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [lactō, allure], tr., delight, entertain.
obligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ligō, bind], tr., bind up; pledge, mortgage, place under obligation.
oblinō, -linere, -lēvī, -litum [linō], smear over, cover.
oblitus, -a, -um, part. of oblinō.
oblitus, -a, -um, part. of oblīvīscor, forgetting, forgetful.
obliviō, -onis, F. [oblīvīscor], a forgetting, oblivion.
oblīvīscor, -ī, oblītus sum, dep., forget.
oboediō, -īre, -iī, -ītum [ob + audiō], intr., listen to, give heed to, obey.
obrēpō, -rēpere, -rēpsi, -rēptum [rēpō], creep up, steal on, come on.
obruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum [ruō], tr., overwhelm, bury.
obscūrē, adv. [obscurs], darkly, obscurely, stealthily.
obscūro, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [obscurs], tr., hide, conceal, obscure, veil, keep secret, Ar. 11.
obscursus, -a, -um, dark, obscure, concealed, unknown, secret; neut. as noun, obscurity.
obsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [sacrō, tr., entreat, implore.
obsecundo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [secundō], intr., yield to, favor, comply with.
obses, -sidis, M. or F., hostage; pledge.

obsideo, -sidere, -sedi, -sessum [sedeō], tr., (sit down against), besiege, hem in, surround, Cat., I, 2; watch for, Cat., I, 10.

obsidiō, -onis, F. [obsideo], siege, invasion, Cat., IV, 10.

obsistō, -sistere, -stiti, -stitum [sistō], intr., stand in the way, oppose, resist, withstand.

obsolesco, -ere, obsolevi, obsoletum [olesco], intr., be out of date, become obsolete, lose force, P. 17.

obstō, -stāre, -stiti, — [stō], intr., stand before, thwart, hinder, check.

obstupēscō, -ere, obstupuī, — [stupēscō], intr., be stunned, amazed, be astounded.

obsum, -esse, -fuī, — [sum], intr., be against, injure, harm.

obtendere, -feci, -factum, pass. fiō, -fieri, -fectum sum, tr., astound, daze, overpower.

obstupēscō, -ere, obstupuī, — [stupēscō], intr., be stunned, amazed, be astounded.

obsum, -esse, -fuī, — [sum], intr., be against, injure, harm.

obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum [teneō], tr., hold, possess; maintain, retain, prove, Cat., IV, 6.

obtingō, -tingere, -tigī, — [tangō], intr., fall to the lot of, befall, happen.

obtrectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [trāctō], tr. and intr., make objection to, be opposed to, decry.

occāsiō, -onis, F. [occidō], opportunity.

occāsus, -ūs, M. [occidō], a falling, downfall; setting.

occidēns, -entis, M. [occidō] (sc. sōl), the sunset, the west.

occidō, -cidere, -cīdi, -cīsum [ob + caedō], tr., kill, slay.

occūlō, -cludere, -clusi, -clusum [ob + claudō], tr., shut up, close.

occultē, adv. [occultus], secretly.

occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., conceal, hide.

occultus, -a, -um [occulō, cover], secret.

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., seize, take possession of, occupy; invest, P. 2.

occurreō, -currere, -currī, -cursum [ob + currō], intr., run to meet, meet; encounter, oppose.

Oceanus, -i, M., the ocean.

Octāvius, -i, M., Octavius, a gentle name; 1. Cn. Octāvius, consul 87 B.C.; 2. L. Octāvius, consul 75 b.c.

octingentesimus, -a, -um, eight hundredth.

oculus, -i, M., eye.

ōdī, odisse, def. vb. (App. 50), hate; perf. system w. meanings of pres. system.

odiōsus, -a, -um [odium], hateful, odious.

odium, -i, N. [ōdi], hatred.

odor, -ōris, M., smell, odor, perfume.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>offensio, -onis, F. [offendō], (a striking against)</td>
<td>disaster, reverse, loss.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>offensus, -a, -um [offendō],</td>
<td>odious, detested, offensive, an object of offense.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>offerō, offerre, obtuli, oblātum [ob + ferō], tr., present, offer; expose, give.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>officium, -i, N. [opus, faciō], service, kindness, duty.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>òlim, adv., formerly, long ago, Ar. 9.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ômen, -inis, N., omen.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missum [ob + mittō], tr., let go; pass over, disregard, say nothing of, omit, abandon, P. 7; set aside, P. 17.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omnīnō, adv. [omnis], altogether, entirely; w. neg., at all.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omnis, -e, all, every, the whole, the whole of.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>onus, -eris, N., load, burden; cargo.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opera, -ae, F. [opus], service, work, assistance, effort; occupation; see pretium; operam dare, take pains, use influence.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opīmius, -i, M., Opimus, a gentile name; L. Opīmius, consul 121 B.C.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opīmus, -a, -um, fat; rich.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opīniō, -onis, F. [opinor], opinion, notion, idea, impression; expectation.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opinor, -āri, -ātus sum, dep., think, suppose, imagine.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opitulor, -āri, -ātus sum [ops, ferō], dep., bear aid, help.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oportet, oportēre, oportuit, im- pers. (App. 52), it is necessary, it ought.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oppetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītum [ob + petō], tr., meet, encounter.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oppidum, -ī, N., town.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oppōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum [ob + pōnō], tr., set before, oppose, place in comparison.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opportūnitās, -tātis, F. [opportūnus], opportunity, fortunate circumstance, P. 17.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opportūnus, -a, -um [ob, portus], suitable, advantageous.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum [ob + premō], tr., (press against), crush, overwhelm, oppress, burden, weigh down, check, Ca, I, 13; destroy, P. 12.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ob + pūgnō], tr., fight against, attack, assault.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ops, opis, F. (nom. and dat. sing. not used), help; pl., resources, power, influence.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>optimās, -ātis, adj. [optimus], of the best, pl. optimātēs, -ium, M., the optimates (opti-mā'tēz), the nobles, the aristocracy.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>optimē, adv., sup. of bene.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>optimus, see bonus.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., choose, wish, desire, hope for.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opulentia, -ae [opulēns], riches, opulence, prosperity.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opus, -eris, N., work; nom. and acc. in phrases w. sum, need; opus est, there is need, it is</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
necessary; magno opere, greatly, thoroughly.

ōra, -ae, F., coast, shore; district.

ōrātiō, -ōnīs, F. [ōrō], speech, address, oration, words, language; argument.

orbis, orbis, M., circle; orbis terrae (or terrārum), (circle of land, i.e. around the Mediterranean), the earth, the whole world.

ōrdō, -inis, M., line, row; rank, class, order, body (referring especially to the Senate or the equites).

orior, -irī, ortus sum, dep., rise, spring; oriēns, -entis, as noun, the rising (sun), the east.

ōrnāmentum, -i, N. [ōrnō], equipment; decoration, ornament, distinction; grace, glory, P. 17.

ōrnātē, adv. [ōrnātus], gracefully, elegantly.

ōrnātus, -a, -um [ōrnō], furnished, equipped, adorned, honored, possessed of, provided with; honorable, P. 1; substantial, P. 6.

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., fit out, furnish, equip; honor, adorn, embellish, add lustre to.

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., speak, beseech, implore, beg.

ortus, -ūs, M. [orior], a rising; sólīs ortus, the east.

ōs, ēris, N., mouth, face, countenance.

ostendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tendum [ob + tendō], tr., stretch out, show, make evident, Ar. 7. display.

ostentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of ostendō], tr., show, display.

Ōstiēnsis, -e, of Ostia, the port of Rome, at the mouth of the Tiber.

ōstium, -i, N. [ōs], mouth, entrance.

ōtiōsus, -a, -um [ōtium], at leisure, at peace, peaceful, peaceable, unconcerned, tranquil, quiet.

ōtium, -i, N., leisure, ease, idleness; quiet, peace.

P

P., see Públius.

pācātus, -a, -um [pācō], subdued, peaceful.

paciscor, -i, pactus sum, dep., agree, agree upon, stipulate, pacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [pāx], tr., make peaceful, subdue. pacify.

pactum, -i, N. [paciscor], (agreement), manner, way.

paene, adv., almost.

paenitet, -ēre, -uit, impers., it repents.

palam, adv., openly, plainly.

Palātium, -i, N., the Palatine Hill.

Pamphylia, -ae, F., Pamphylia, a country in southern Asia Minor.

Pāpius, -a, -um, of Papius, Papian.

pār, paris (abl. pari, gen. pl.
parium), adj., equal, like; adequate; a match (for).
parátus, -a, -um [parō], ready, prepared, equipped.
parcé, -ere, pepercí (parsí) parsum, intr., spare, be considerate of.
parēns, -entis, M. or F. [pariō], parent; father, mother.
pàreō, -ère, -uí, -itum, intr., obey, submit (to), follow, bow (to), P. 22.
párës, parietis, M., wall (of a house), house wall.
pàriō, parere, peperí, partum (fut. part. parítūrus), tr., bring forth, produce, create, form; procure, win, gain; incur, Cat., I, 12.
parë, -äre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., make ready, prepare, provide, procure.
parricída, -ae, M. [pater, caedo], (one who slays his father), parricide, murderer, assassin.
parricidium, -i, N. [parricída], parricide, murder.
pars, partis, F., part, side, direction; party, faction; measure, P. 9.
particeps, participis, adj. [pars, capiō], sharing, as noun, sharer, partaker, participant, accomplice.
partim, adv., partly; partim . . . partim, partly . . . partly; some . . . others; either . . . or.
partus, -a, -um, see pàriō.
parum, adv. (App. 20), but little, too little.
parvulus, -a, -um [dim. of parvus], very small, little.
parvus, -a, -um, small, slight; little, narrow.
pástiō, -onis, F. [pàscō], pasturing, pasturage.
pástor, -ōris, M. [pàscō], shepherd, herdsman.
patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum [pateō + faciō], tr., lay open, open, reveal, disclose, relate, make known.
pateō, -ère, -uī, —, intr., be open, be exposed, be manifest.
pater, patris, M., father; pater familias, head of a household.
patientia, -ae, F. [patiens], patience, forbearance, endurance, ability to bear, Cat., I, 10.
patior, pàti, passus sum, dep., suffer, endure; allow, permit.
patria, -ae, F., fatherland, native land, country.
patricius, -a, -um [pater], patrician; pl. as noun, the patricians.
patrimónium, -i, N. [pater], inheritance (from a father), patrimony.
patrius, -a, -um [pater], of one's father, ancestral.
pauci, -ae, -a, few; paúca, -örum, a few things, a few words, briefly.
paulatim, adv., little by little, gradually.
paulisper, adv. [paulum], for a short time.
paulō, adv. [paulus, little], by a little, a little; see ante.
paulum, adv. [paulus], a little, somewhat.
Paulus, -i, M., Paulus, a family name; L. Aemilius Paulus, consul 168 B.C.
pâx, pâcis, F., peace, harmony, concord.
pectō, -ere, pexī, pexum, tr., comb.
pecuária, -ae, F. [pecū], cattle-raising.
pecūnia, -ae, F. [pecū, cattle], property, wealth, riches, fortune, capital, money.
pecus, -udis, F., a head of cattle, beast; pL, cattle.
pedester, -tris, -tre [pēs], on foot, of foot soldiers.
pello, -ere, pepuli, pulsum, tr., beat, drive, rout; defeat; expel, banish.
Penates, -ium, M., the Penates (pē-nā'tēz), gods of the household.
penetrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr., enter, penetrate.
penitus, adv., inwardly, deeply, wholly.
pēnsitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [pendō], tr., weigh out; pay.
per, prep. w. acc., through, by; for; owing to, P. 1; during; as prefix, through, thoroughly, very.
peraduléscēns, -entis, adj., very young.
perbrevis, -e [brevis], very short.
percellō, -ere, -culi, -culsum, strike, down, cast down, dishearten.
percipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum [capiō], tr., (take fully), receive, reap; perceive, hear, learn, appreciate, Ar. 7.
percutiō, -cutere, -cussi, -cussum [quatiō], tr., strike.
perditus, -a, -um [perdō], lost, ruined, desperate; corrupt, criminal, depraved, worthless, profligate; as noun, scoundrel.
perdō, -ere, perdidī, perditum [dō], tr., ruin.
perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -duc-tum [dūcō], tr., lead through, bring.
peregrinor, -ārī, -ātus sum [peregrinus], dep., go abroad, travel.
peregrinus, -a, -um [per, ager], foreign, strange, provincial.
pereō, -īre, -īi, -ītum [eō], intr., perish, die.
perfectus, -a, -um [perficiō], finished; perfect, ideal.
perferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum [ferō], tr., (bear through), carry, bring; report; suffer, endure, tolerate.
perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [faciō], tr., do thoroughly, accomplish, complete, bring about, cause.
perfringo, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum [frangō], tr., break through, break down; violate.
perfruor, -frui, -frūctus sum [fruor], dep., enjoy fully.
perfugium, -i, N. [perfugiō], place of refuge, refuge, shelter.
pergō, -ere, perrēxi, perrēctum [per + regō], intr., proceed, go on; continue.
perhorresco, -ere, perhorruī, — [horresco], tr., shudder at, tremble at the thought of, Cat., IV, 6.

pericitor, -āri, -ātus sum [periculum], dep., try, test; imperil, endanger, risk.

periculōsus, -a, -um [periculum], dangerous, perilous.

periculum, -ī, N., trial; danger, peril, risk; lawsuit.

periniquus, -a, -um [per + in + aequus], very (or most) unjust.

peritus, -a, -um, skillful, skilled, experienced (in).

permāgnus, -a, -um, very great, very large.

permaneō, -manere, -mansī, -mansum [maneō], intr., remain.

permitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum [mitto], tr., let go, give up, surrender, intrust; permit.

permōdētus, -a, -um [modestus], very modest.

permovedō, -moveō, -movēre, -movī, -mōtum [moveō], tr., more deeply; influence, impel, activate.

permultī, -ae, -a, very many, in great numbers.

permultum, adv. [permultus], very much.

perniciōsīs, -ēī, F., destruction, ruin, disaster, calamity.

perniciōsus, -a, -um [perniciōsīs], destructive, ruinous; dangerous, traitorous.

pernocťō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [nox], intr., spend the night.

perpetuus, -a, -um [petō], con-
tinuous, perpetual, permanent, lasting; in perpetuum, forever.

persaepe, adv. [saepe], very often, many times.

perscribo, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum [scribo], tr., write in full.

perseverantia, -ae, F. [persevero], perseverance.

persōna, -ae, F. [per, sonō], (mask), character, person.

perspicio, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum [speciō], tr., see through, perceive, observe, see clearly.

persuadeō, -suadere, -suadēs, -suasum, intr., persuade, convince.

perterreo, -ēre, -uī, -itum [terreo], tr., frighten thoroughly, terrify.

pertimēscō, -timēscere, -timui, — [timēscō], tr. and intr., be thoroughly frightened, become alarmed; dread, fear.

pertineō, -ēre, -ui, — [teneō], intr., extend, reach, tend; concern, certain, belong, relate.

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [turbō], throw into confusion, disturb, agitate, alarm.

pervadō, -vādere, -vāsi, -vāsum [vādō], tr., go through, spread through, penetrate, reach, pervade, fill.

perveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ver-
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>tum</em> [veniō], intr., <em>arrive, come, reach, attain.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>pēs,</em> <em>pedis,</em> M., <em>foot.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>pestis,</em> <em>pestis,</em> F., <em>plague; ruin, destruction; pest, curse, bane.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>petītīō,</em> -ōnis, F. [petō], <em>thrust, blow, attack.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>petītio,</em> -onis, F. [peto], <em>think, blow, attack.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>philosophus,</em> -i, M., <em>philosopher.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>plica,</em> -ae, F. <em>ball, ball-playing, game of ball.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>pinguis,</em> -ē, <em>fat, dull, stupid.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>placō,</em> -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., <em>appease, satisfy, reconcile, pacify.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>plānē,</em> adv. [plānus, level], <em>plainly, clearly.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>plebs,</em> plēbis or plēbi (or plēbēs, -ei), F., <em>the common people, the people.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>plēnus,</em> -a, -um, <em>full.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>plērique,</em> -aeque, -aque, pl. adj., <em>very many, most.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Plotius,</em> -ī, M. <em>Plotius,</em> a gentile name; L. <em>Plotius Gallus,</em> a rhetorician.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>plūrimus,</em> -a, um, <em>sup. of multus, most; plūrium, adv. (multum), most; plūrium posse, be most (or very) powerful.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>plūs,</em> comp. adj. and adv. [multus], (App. 17), <em>more; pl. more, many.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>poena,</em> -ae, F., <em>punishment, penalty.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Pompeius</em> (Pompēi, Pompēiō, Pompēium), <em>Pompey,</em> a nomen or gentile name; Cn. <em>Pompeius Māgnus,</em> the famous general.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>pōnō,</em> -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., <em>place, put, set; w. castra, pitch.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>pōns,</em> pontis, M., <em>bridge.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>pontifex,</em> -ficis, M. [pōns, faciō], <em>priest, pontiff; pontifex maximus, high priest.</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Pontus,</em> -ī, M., <em>Pontus,</em> a country of Asia Minor, south of the Pontus Euxinus (Black Sea), from which the name is derived.*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
popina, -ae, F., cookshop, eating house, tavern.

populāris, -e [populus], popular, of the people, devoted to the people, acceptable to the people.

populus, -i, M., people, nation; the citizens (opp. militēs).

porta, -ae, F., gate.

portus, -ús, M., harbor, port.

posco, -ere, poposci, -i, tr., demand.

positus, -a, -um [pono], placed, situated, lying.

possessio, -onis, F. [possideo], possession, property.

possum, posse, potui [potis, able + sum], (App. 44), irr., be able, can; usually w. a complementary inf.

post, prep. w. acc., after, behind; within; as adv., afterwards.

postea, adv. [post + ea], afterwards.

posteāquam, conj., after.

posteriorās, -tāris [posterus], the future; posterity.

posterus, -a, -um [post] (App. 19), following; pl. as noun, posterity, descendants; in posterum (tempus), for the future.

posthāc, adv. [hāc], after this, hereafter.

postquam, conj. [post + quam], after.

postrēmō, adv. [postrēmus], finally, lastly.

postrēmus, -a, -um [posterus], last.

postulātum, -i, N. [postulō], a demand.

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., ask, demand, claim (with reasons of right); request.

potēns, potentis, adj., powerful.

potestās, -tāris, F. [potis], power, opportunity, permission.

potior, -iri, -itus sum, dep., get possession of, secure, become master of.

potissimum [sup. of potius], especially, above all, in preference to all others, P. 10.

potius, adv. comp., rather, more.

praē, prep. w. abl., before, in front of; in comparison with, Cat., II, 3; as prefix, before, over.

praebō, -ère, -ui, -itum [prae + habeō], tr., hold forth, offer, render, show, Cat., IV, 6; afford, furnish, Ar. 7.

praecēps, -cipitis, adj. [prae + caput], (head foremost), rash, inconsiderate.

praeciptum, -i, N. [praecipiō], precept, rule.

praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -cep-tum [capiō], take beforehand, advise, warn, direct.

praecipuē, adv. [praecipuus], especially.

praecipuus, -a, -um [capiō], (taken first), special, particular.

praeclārus, -a, -um [clārus], very bright, illustrious, re-
markable, extraordinary; fine, Cat., I, 11; noble, honorable.

praecō, -ōnis, M. [praecū, vocō], herald, eulogizer.

praecōnium, -ī, N. [praecō], proclaiming, publishing.

praecurrō, -currere, -curre, -currī, — [currō], intr., run before, excel.

praedātor, -oris, M. [praedor], robber.

praedicatio, -onis, F. [praedico], proclamation, praise.

praedicō, -are, -avi, -atum [dico], tr. and intr., declare, assert; proclaim, say, call, mention.

praedictus, -a, -um [prae + datus], gifted, endowed, possessing, enjoying.

praedium, -i, N., a farm, estate.

praedō, -ōnis, M., robber, pirate.

praefectūra, -ae, F. [praefectus], prefecture, either the office of governor in a province, or a city governed by a prefect.

praeferō, -ferre, -tuli, lātum [ferō], tr., bear before, carry before; offer, present; prefer.

praeficio, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum [faciō], tr., set over, put in charge (of).

praemittō, -mittere, -mittēre, -mitti, -missum [mittō], tr., send ahead, send in advance.

praemium, -i, N. [prae + emō], reward, gift.

Praeneste, -is, N., Praeneste (pré-nes'te), a town in Latium now Palestrina.

praepōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum [pōnō], tr., set over, put in charge (command) of.

praescribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum [scribō], tr., direct, enjoin upon, prescribe.

praesēns, -entis, adj. [praesum], at hand, present in one's midst, in person, evident, opportune.

praesentia, -ae, F. [praesēns], presence; the present time; in praesentia, at the present time.

praesentīō, -sentire, -sensi, sensum [sentīō], tr., see in advance, anticipate, look forward.

praesertim, adv., especially.

praesideō, -sidere, -sēdi, — [sedeō], intr., guard, protect, watch over, preside over.

praesidium, -ī, N. [praesideo], defense, protection; guard, garrison; force.

praesto, adv., at hand, ready.

praesto, -stare, -stiti, -stītum [stō], stand before, excel; guarantee, do, accomplish, keep.

praestolor, -āri, -ātus sum, dep., await, wait for, expect.

praesum, -esse, -fui, intr., be at the head of, be in command of.

praeter, prep. w. acc., except, besides, contrary to, beyond; as prefix, by.

praeterea, adv. [ea], besides, moreover.
praetereō, -īre, -īī, -ītum [eō], tr., go by, pass over, omit.
praeteritus, -a, -um [praetereō], gone by, past; neut. pl., the past.
praetermittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum [mitto], tr., let go by, omit, pass over, overlook.
praeterquam, adv., except, beyond.
praetextatus, -a, -um [praetexo], wearing the toga praetexta, in childhood.
praetextus, -a, -um [praetexo], bordered; praetexta (sc. toga), the purple-bordered toga worn by Roman boys and magistrates; in praetextā, in boyhood.
praetor, -ōris, M. [prae + eō], (one who goes ahead, commander), praetor, a Roman judge; see Introd. 34.
priestorius, -a, -um [praetor], of a praetor, of a general; cohors praetoria, body guard.
prietūra, -ae, F. [praetor], praetorship.
precors, -āri, -ātus sum [prex, prayer], dep., intreat, pray to, invoke.
premō, -ere, pressī, pressum, tr., press, burden, oppress, distress, overwhelm.
pretium, -ī, N., worth, value, price; bribery; opera prætium, worth while.
pridem, adv., long ago; iam pridem, long ago, for a long time.
priidiē, adv., the day before.
primō, adv. [primus], at first, first.
primum, adv. [primus], first, in the first place; for the first time; quam primum, as soon as possible.
primus, -a, -um, first; in primis, especially.
princeps, principis, adj., first in order, chief; as noun, chief, chief man, prince; leader, guide.
principiō, adv. [abl. of principium], in the first place, first of all.
principium, -ī, N. [princeps], beginning.
prior, prius (App. 19), former, preceding, first; prius, acc. as adv., before, first.
pristinus, -a, -um, former, early.
priusquam, conj. [prius + quam], before; often written prius . . . quam.
privatus, -a, -um [privō], (apart from the state), personal, private, individual; as a noun, private citizen (opp. magistratus).
primō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [privus], tr., deprive.
1. prō, prep. w. abl., before, in front of, instead of, as, according to, in accordance with, in behalf of, for, in defense of, on account of.
2. prō, interj., O!
proavus, -ī, M. [avus], great-grandfather, ancestor.
probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., prove, approve, esteem, admire.
procede, -cedere, -cessi, -cessus [cedo], intr., advance, proceed.

procella, -ae, F., violent wind, storm, tempest.

prōcessiō, -onis, F. [prōcēdō], advance.

prōcul, adv., afar off, at a distance, far.

prōculātiō, -onis, F. [procure], (a caring for), charge, management, task.

prōdigium, -ī, N., (prophetic sign), prodigy (of wickedness), Cat., II, 1.

prōdigus, -a, -um, wasteful; lavish, prodigal; as noun, spendthrift.

prōdo, -ere, prodidi, proditum [do], tr., give forth; hand down, transmit.

prōelium, -ī, N., battle.

prōfectiō, -onis, F. [proficiscor], departure.

prōfectū, adv. [prō + factū], (for a fact), really, actually, certainly, surely, truly.

prōferē, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum [ferō], tr., bring forth, produce, bring forward.

prōfessiō, -onis, F. [profiteor], declaration, registration, Ar. 4.

prōficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum [faciō], tr. and intr., make progress, succeed; accomplish, gain.

prōficiōn, -i, profectus sum [prōfixiō], dep., set out, depart, go forth, go; begin, proceed, P. 2.

prōfiteor, -fitēri, -fessus sum [fateor], dep., declare publicly, profess, make declaration, register; offer, promise.

prōfigātus, -a, -um [prōfigō], abandoned, unprincipled, prōfigate.

prōfigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [prō + figō], tr., strike down, overthrow, overwhelm.

prōfugiō, -fugere, -fugi, —, intr., flee.

prōfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum [fundō], tr., pour out, squander, dissipate.

prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum [gradior], dep., go forward, advance, proceed.

prohibō, -ēre, -ui, -itum [prō + habeō], tr., hold back, check, restrain, cut off, prevent, protect, preserve.

prōiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum [iaciō], tr., cast forth, cast out, throw away.

proinde, adv., therefore.

prōlātō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., extend, put off, delay.

prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missum, tr., send forth, promise.

prōmulgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [mulgō], tr., bring forward, propose (a law).

prōpāgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [pangō], tr., extend, prolong; add, Cat., II, 5; grant, Cat., III, 11.

prope, prep. w. acc., near; adv., near, nearly, almost.

prōpellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus [pellō], tr., drive forward, drive away.
properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [properus], intr., hasten.
prōpōnō, -pōnerē, -posuī, -positum [pōnō], tr., put forth, set before, keep before, propose.
proprius, -a, -um, one’s own, special, peculiar, characteristic; in accordance with.
propter, prep. w. ace, on account of; adv., near, near at hand.
propterea, adv., [ea], for this reason; propterea quod, for the reason that.
propugnaculum, -i, N. [propugno], defense, fortification, bulwark.
propulso, -are, -avi, -atum [freq. of propello], tr., drive back, ward off.
propōsītō, -ōnis, F. [propōribō], (public notice of sale); prescription; confiscation, seizure.
prosequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum [sequor], dep., follow, accompany, escort, attend.
prōsperus, -a, -um [prō, spēs], prosperous, flourishing.
prōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum [speciō], tr. and intr., look forward; look out for, provide for, foresee.
prōsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum [sternō], tr., spread out, prostrate; subdued.
prōstrātus, -a, -um [prōsternus], prostrate; subdued.
prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, —, [sum], intr., be useful, benefit.
prōverbium, -i, N. [verbum], old saying, proverb.
prōvidentia, -ae, F. [prōvidēns], foresight, prudence.
prōvideō, -vidēre, -vīdi, -visum [videō], tr. and intr., foresee; provide (for), Cat., II, 9; take care, arrange; guard against.
prōvincia, -ae, F., province.
prōvinciālis, -e [prōvincia], provincial, in a province.
prōvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [vocō], tr., call forth; provoke, incite.
proximus, -a, -um [prope,] (App. 19), nearest, next, last, before.
prūdēns, -entis, adj., foreseeing, wise, prudent.
prūdentia, -ae, F. [prūdēns], a foreseeing; prudence, wisdom.
pruīna, -ae, F., frost.
pūblicānus, -ī, M. [pūbicus], publican, farmer or collector of revenue.
prūbicatio, -ōnis, F. [pūbicō], confiscation (seizure of private property for the state).
pūbicē, adv. [pūbicus], publicly, by the people.
Pūbicūs, -ī, M., Publicius, a gentile name.
pūbicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [pūbicus], tr., (make public), confiscate.
pūblicus, -a, -um [populus], of the people, of the state, public; rēs pūblīca, state, republic, commonwealth, affairs of state, interests of the country, public welfare.
Publius, -i, M., Publius, a praenomen or personal name.

Pudet, -ère, -uit, impers. [pudor] it shames, it causes shame in.

Pudicitia, -ae, F. [pudicus], purity, chastity.

Pudor, -ōris, M., shame, a sense of right, honor, modesty, modest worth, Ar. 12.

Puer, -eri, M., boy.

Puerilis, -e [puer], of a boy, of boyhood.

Pueritia, -ae, F. [puer], boyhood.

Pugna, -ae, F., fight, battle.

Pugno, -are, -avi, -atum [pugna], intr., fight, contend.

Pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beautiful, fair; noble, honorable.

Pulvinar, -āris, N. [pulvinus, a cushion], (cushioned seat spread at a feast of the gods), altar, shrine; for decl. see App. 7.

Punctum, -i, N. [pungō], punctuation, point; punctum temporis, moment, point of time.

Punicus, -a, -um [Poenus], Punic, Carthaginian.

Puniō, -ire, -ivi, -ītum [poena], tr., punish.

Puppis, -is, F., stern.

Pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., make clean, cleanse, purify; free, acquit.

Purpura, -ae, F., purple, purple robe.

Purpurātus, -a, -um [purpura], clad in purple; as noun, courtier, prime minister.

Pūrus, -a, -um, clean, pure.

Putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., reckon, think, suppose.

Q

Q., see Quintus.

Qua, adv. [qui], by which way, where.

Quaerō, -ere, -quæsīvī, -quæsītum, tr., ask, ask for, seek, inquire; aim at.

Quaesitor, -ōris, M. [quaerō], investigator, investigating officer.

Quaesō, -ere, —, —, tr. and intr., beg, entreat, beseech; generally parenthetical, as in Cat., I, 11.

Quaestiō, -onis, F. [quaerō], inquiry, investigation; trial, law court.

Quaestor, -ōris, M. [quaerō], quaestor; see Introd. 36.

Quaestus, -ūs, M. [quaerō], profit, business; in quaestū, at interest, P. 13.

Quális, -e, adj., interrog., of what sort, what; rel., such as, as.

Quam, adv. and conj., how, as; w. comparatives, than, rather than; w. superlatives, as ... as.

Quamdiū, conj. adv. [quam + diū], as long as.

Quam ob rem, interrog. phrase, for what reason? why? rel., wherefore, why, for this reason.

Quamquam, conj., although; in transitions, and yet.

Quamvis, adv., however.

Quandō, adv., at any time, ever,
some day; conj., when, since, because.
quantum, adv., how much; as far as.
quantus, -a, -um, how great, how much, what; as great as, as much as; correl. w. tantus, as.
quantuscumque, -tacumque, -tumcumque, rel. adj., however great, such as.
quâpropter, adv. [qua + prop- ter], wherefore.
quârê, adv. [quâ + rê], wherefore, why, for which; therefore, and therefore.
quârtus, -a, -um, fourth.
quasi, adv., as if, as it were.
quattuor, indecl. adj., four.
quem ad modum, interrog. phrase [modus], in what manner, how, as.
quérêla, -ae, F. [queror], complaint.
quêrimônia, -ae, F. [queror], complaint, accusation, reproach.
quêror, quérî, questus sum, dep., complain.
qui, quae, quod, rel. pron., who, which, that; as.
quia, conj., because.
quicquam, see quisquam.
quicquid, see quisquis.
quícumque, quæcumque, quodcumque, indef. rel. pron. and adj., whoever, whatever.
quídam, quaedam, quoddam (quiddam), indef. pron. and adj., a certain, a kind of. some;

as it were; pl., certain, some.
quidem, adv., indeed, to be sure; nê ... quidem, not even.
quiës, quiëtis, F., rest, quiet.
quiëscô, -ere, quiëvi, quiëtum [quiës], intr., rest; keep quiet, be still.
quiëtus, -a, -um [quiëscô], undisputed, quiet, peaceful.
quîn, conj. [quî + ne, how not], why not? but indeed; so that ... not, that, but that, but; after words of hindering, from, w. verbal in -ing; quiën etiam, why even, moreover.
quîntus, -a, -um [quînque], fifth.
Quîntus, -i, M., Quîntus, a praenomen or personal name.
Quírites, -ium, M. pl., Quírites (kwi-ri'tez), fellow citizens.
2. quis, quid, indef. pron. (App. 27), any one, anything, some, any; as adj., qui, quae, quod, any; used chiefly after si, nisi, nê.
quisnam (qui nam), quaenam, quidnam (quodnam), interrog. pron. and adj., who, pray? who? more emphatic than quis.
quispiam, quaepiam, quidpiam or quodpiam, indef. pron. and
adj., any one, any; some one.

quisquam, quicquam, indef. pron. (App. 27), any one (at all), anything, any; used chiefly in neg. sentences or in questions involving a neg. answer.

quisque, quidque, indef. pron. (App. 27), each, each one, every one.

quisquis, quidquid, or quicquid, compound rel. pron., whoever, whatever; only forms in common use are quisquis, quicquid, quoquo.

1. quō [qui], adv., rel. and interrog., to what place, whither, where, to which; for which reason, wherefore; before comparatives, by how much, the; quō úsque, how far?

2. quō, conj. [= ut eō], (that thereby), that, in order that; because; quō minus or quōminus, (by which the less), that not, from (doing anything).

quoad, conj. [quō + ad], as long as, until.

quōcīrca, conj., wherefore.

quōcumque, adv., to whatever place, wherever, whichever way, Cat. IV, 3.

quod, conj., because; that, the fact that, as to the fact that; quod sī, but if, and if, now if.

quōminus, see 2. quō.

quondam, adv., once, once upon a time, formerly.

quoniam, conj. [quom(= cum) + iam], since, because, seeing that.

quoque, adv., also, too, even.

quot, adj., indecl., how many, as many as, as.

quotannis, adv. [annus], every year, yearly.

quotiēns, adv. [quot], how often, as often as.

quotiēnscumque, adv. [quotiēns + cumque], just as often as, every time that.

R

rapīna, -ae, F. [rapīō], robbery, plunder.

rapiō, rapere, rapūi, raptum, tr., carry off, seize; impel, drive hurry along, hurry off.

ratiō, -ōnis, F. [reor, think], reckoning, consideration, account; reason, plan; course, system, way, method, means; theoretical knowledge; interest.

re-, red-, prefix, back, again; sometimes not, un-.

Reātīnus, -a, -um, of Reate, an ancient town in central Italy.

recēns, -entis, adj., fresh, new, recent.

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum [capiō], tr., take back, receive, admit, take upon (sībī), undertake; sē recipere, return.

recitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [citō], tr., read aloud, read.

reclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [clāmō], tr., cry out against, protest.

recognōscō, -cognōscere, -cognōvī, -cognitum [cognōscō]
tr., know again, recognize, recall; review.
recolô, -ere, -uí, -cultum [colô], tr., cultivate again, review.
reconciliátiô, -ônis, F. [reconciliô], restoration, renewal.
recondô, -ondere, -condi, -conditum [condô], tr., put away, hide, conceal.
recordor, -âri, -àtus sum [cor, heart], dep., call to mind, recall, remember, collect.
recreô, -âre, -âvi, -àtum [creô, make], tr., renew, refresh, restore, give strength to; sê recreate, recover.
rectâ, adv., [sc. viâ], straightway, straight forward, right on, directly.
rectê, adv. [rectus], rightly, properly, wisely.
recuperô, -âre, -âvi, -àtum, tr., recover, regain.
recurrô, -currere, -curri, — [currô], intr., run back, return.
recusátiô, -ônis, F. [recusô], a declining, refusal.
recúsô, -âre, -âvi, -àtum [re, causa], tr. and intr., object, refuse, decline.
redeô, -ire, -îi, -îtum [eô], intr., go back, return.
redimiô, -ire, -îvi, -îtum, tr., crown, wreathe.
redimô, -imere, -èmi, -îemptum [emô], tr., buy back, redeem; buy up, contract for, P. 18; ransom, P. 12.
reditus, -ûs, M. [redeô], a return.
redûcô, -dúcere, -dûxi, -ductum, tr., bring back, bring home.
reundô, -âre, -âvi, -àtum [undô, surge], intr., overflow, redound, accrue; be filled.
referciô, -ferciere, -fèsi, -fertum [farcíô], tr., stuff, fill.
referô, -fërre, rettulî, relàtum [ferô], tr., bring back, return, report, refer; ad senàtum referre, lay before, refer to, the Senate; gràtiâm referre, show gratitude.
rêfert, -fërre, -tulit [rês + ferô], impers., it is of advantage, it concerns, it matters, P. 7.
refertus, -a, -um [referciô], filled, crowded, swarming (with), abounding (in).
reficiô, -ficere, -fèci, -fertum [facciô], tr., make over, refresh.
refûtô, -âre, -âvi, -àtum, tr., refute, disprove.
régâlis, -e [rèx], of a king, regal, royal.
règiê, adv. [règius], tyrannically.
Règini, -ôrum, M., the inhabitants of Regium, in southern Italy.
regiô, -ônis, F. [regô], direction, line; boundary, region, district, country, territory, P. 18, règius, -a, -um [rèx], of a king, royal.
règnô-âre, -âvi, -àtum [règnum], tr., reign, rule.
règnum, -i, N. [regô], royal power, kingdom.
regô, -ere, rèxi, rèctum, tr., rule, direct, govern, manage.
réiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum [iaciō], tr., throw back, reject.
relaxō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [laxō], tr., ease, relax, release.
relevō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [levō], tr., lift up, lighten; relieve, ease.
religiō, -onis, F., (reverence for the gods), piety, religion; religious scruple, scrupulous honor.
remansus, -a, -um [remans], sacred, revered, holy.
reliquiae, -arum, F., leavings, what is left over.
reliquus, -a, -um [relinquo], remaining, the rest of, the rest, other; the future; reliquum est, it remains.
remex, rémigis, M. [remus, agō], a rower.
remissio, -onis, F. [remitto], mitigation, mildness: relaxation, recreation.
remissus, -a, -um [remitto], relaxed, lax, indulgent.
remoror, -āri, -ātus sum [moror], dep., hold back, delay, keep waiting.
removeō, -movēre, -móvī, -mó- tum [moveō], tr., move back, remove, take away; reject, Cat., IV, 4.
renovō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [novō] tr., renew.
renuntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [nuntiō], tr., report, return (of an election), declare elected.
repellō, repellere, repulū, repulsum [pellō], tr., drive back, repel, keep from.
repente, adv. [repēns], suddenly.
repentīnus, -a, -um [repēns], sudden.
reperiō, -ire, repperī, repertum [pariō, secure], tr., find out, find (by seeking or inquiring).
repetō, -petere, -petivī, -petitum [petō], tr., demand, claim; recall (to mind), look back, claim in turn, Ar. S.
reportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [portō], tr., bring back, carry off.
reprehendō, -ere, -hendi, hēn-sum [prehendō], tr., lay hold of, blame, censure.
reprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressum [premō], tr., press back, repress, check.
repudiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [repubidium], tr., cast off, reject, refuse, scorn, repudiate.
repugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [pugnō], intr., fight against, oppose.
requiēs, -ētis, F., rest, repose.
requirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisitum [quaerō], tr., seek again, seek out, demand, ask; be at a loss for, miss, P. 2; beg for, P. 23.
### LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>res, rei, F., thing, fact; circumstance, situation, consideration, argument, plan, undertaking, event, incident, matter, affair, question, property; quality; see gerō, militāris, novus, públicos, secundus.</td>
<td>retardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [tardō]</td>
<td>tr., delay, hinder, retard.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resecō, -secāre, -secūi, -sectum [secō], tr., cut away, cut off.</td>
<td>reticeō, -ēre, -uī, — [taceō], tr. and intr., be silent, keep silence; keep secret.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [servō], tr., keep back, reserve; keep, preserve.</td>
<td>retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum [teneō], tr., hold back, preserve, maintain, uphold, keep.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resideō, -sidēre, -sēdī [sedeō], (sit back), remain behind, be left, remain.</td>
<td>retorqueō, -torquēre, -torsi, -tortum [torquēō], tr., (twist back), turn back.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resīgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [sīgnō], tr., unseal; destroy, Ar. 5.</td>
<td>retundō, -ere, rettūdī, retūsum [tundō], tr., beat back, thrust back.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resistō, sistere, -stiti, — [ sistō], intr., stand back, remain; resist, withstand; survive, Cat., III, 10.</td>
<td>res, -i, M. [rēs], (one concerned in a thing), the defendant, accused, prisoner.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>respiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum [speciō], tr. and intr., look back, look back upon.</td>
<td>revertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum [vertō], usually dep. in pres. system, return.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>respondō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum [spondeō, promise], tr. and intr., answer, reply; be a match for, Cat., II, 11.</td>
<td>revincō, -vincere, -vici, -victum [vincō], tr., convict.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>respōnsum, -i, N. [respondeō], reply, answer.</td>
<td>revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [vocō], tr., call back, recall; turn, restore.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rēs pública, see públicos.</td>
<td>rex, rēgis, M., king.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>restinguō, -stinguere, -stinxī, -stinctum [stinguō], tr., quench, extinguish.</td>
<td>Rhodius, -a, -um, of Rhodes; pl. as noun, the Rhodians.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>restituō, -stituere, -stitiū, -stitūtum [stātuō], tr., (set up again), restore, renew.</td>
<td>ridiculus, -a, -um [ridēdō], ridiculous, absurd.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>restō, -stāre, -stītī, — [stō], intr., withstand, oppose; impers., it remains.</td>
<td>rōbur, rōboris, N., oak; strength.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rōbus, rōbustus, -a, -um [rōbur], (of oak), firm, solid, strong, vigorous, robust.</td>
<td>rogātus, -ūs, M. [rogō], request.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., ask, beg, request, implore; propose, enact, pass (laws).</td>
<td>Rōma, -ae, F., Rome.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rōmānus, -a, -um [Rōma], Roman.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latin</td>
<td>English</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rōmulus, -ī, M., Romulus, the founder and first king of Rome.</td>
<td>of Salamis, a town of Cyprus.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rōscius, -ī, M., Roscius, a family name; Quintus Rōscius Gallus, a celebrated actor.</td>
<td>saltō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of salīō, leap], intr., dance.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rudinus, -a, -um [Rudiae], of Rudiae, in southern Italy, the birthplace of Ennius.</td>
<td>saltus, -ūs, M., woodland pasture, pasture lands.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ruīna, -ae, F. [ruō], a rushing down, fall, downfall, ruin.</td>
<td>salūs, salūtis, F. [salvus], soundness, good health; safety, welfare.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rūmor, -ōris, M., rumor, report.</td>
<td>salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [salūs], tr., greet, salute, call upon, pay respects to.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rumpō, -ere, rūpi, ruptum, tr., break.</td>
<td>salvus, -a, -um, sound, safe, saved, solvent (financially).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ruō, -ere, ruī, rutum, intr., rush down, fall, go to ruin.</td>
<td>Samos, -ī, F., Samos (sā’mos), a city on the island Samos, in the Aegean.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rūsticor, -āri, -ātus sum [rūsticus], dep., go to the country.</td>
<td>sanctus, -a, -um [sanciō], sacred, holy; venerable; conscientious Ar. 5; inviolable, P. 14.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rūsticus, -a, -um [rūs], rural, of the country, rustic; without culture, Ar. 10.</td>
<td>sanē, adv. [sānus], (soundly), by all means, if you wish; certainly, indeed, wholly, utterly.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sacer, sacra, sacrum, sacred; sacra, -ōrum, pl. neut. as noun, sacred rites, ceremonies.</td>
<td>sanguis, sanguinis, M., blood, bloodshed.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sacrārium, -ī, N. [sacrarium], shrine, sanctuary.</td>
<td>sanctus, -a, -um, sound, whole; healthy; of the mind, rational, sane, sensible.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sacrōsāntus, -a, -um [sacer + sanctus], sacred, inviolable.</td>
<td>sapiēns, -entis, adj. [sapiō], wise; as noun, wise man, philosopher.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saeculum, -ī, N., race, generation; age; pl., ages, Cat., II, 5.</td>
<td>sapientia, -ae, F. [sapiēns], wisdom.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saepe, saepius, saepissimē, adv. often.</td>
<td>Sardinia, -ae, F., Sardinia.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saepiō, -īre, saepsi, saeptum [saepēs], tr., hem in, inclose.</td>
<td>satelles, -itis, M. or F., atten-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
dant; assistant, tool, accomplice.
satis, indecl. adj., often used as
a noun, enough, sufficient;
satis fació, do one's duty (to);
adv., sufficiently, quite, very.
Sáturñália, -órum, N. [Saturnus], the Saturnalia, feast of Saturn, beginning Dec. 17.
Sáturñinus, -í, M., Saturninus, a family name; L. Apúliexus
Sáturñinus, tribune 100 B.C.
saucius, -a, -um, wounded.
saxum, -i, N., rock.
scaena, -ae, F., stage (of a theater).
scaenicus, -a, -um [scaena], of
the stage, dramatic.
scleratóë, adv. [scleráto],
wickedly, impiously.
scleráto, -a, -um [scleró],
wicked, infamous, vicious; as
noun, scoundrel.
scelexus, scleréis, N., crime;
wickedness.
sclius, -entis, adj. [scló], know-
ing, acquainted (with), skilled.
scentía, -ae, F. [scló], knowledge.
sclícit, adv. [sclér + licet], you
may know, in fact, of course (ironical).
scló, scíre, sciví, scítum, tr.,
know.
Scipió, -ónis, M., Scipio, a fam-
ily name; 1. P. Cornélius
Scipió Násica, consul 138 B.C.;
2. P. Cornélius Scipió Africá-
nus Máiór, "the elder Scipio,"
conqueror of Hannibal 202
B.C.; 3. P. Cornélius Scipió
Aemiliánus Africánnus Minor,
destroyer of Carthage, 146
B.C.
scořtum, -i, N., harlot, mist-
tress.
scriba, -ae, M. [scribó], clerk,
secretary.
scribó, -ere, scripsi, scriptum,
tr., write, enroll, Ar. 5.
scriptor, -órís, M. [scribó],
writer, author.
scriptúra, -ae, F. [scribó], (writ-
ing), pasture tax.
sé-, séd-, prefix, apart, aside.
sécedó, -cedere, -cessi, -cessum
[cédo], intr., go apart, go away,
withdraw.
sécernó, -cernere, -créví, -cré-
tum [cernó], tr., separate, set
apart.
secundus, -a, -um [sequor], fol-
lowing, second, favorable; se-
cundae rès, prosperity.
secúris, -is, F. [secó, cut], ax;
see fascés.
sed, conj., but.
sedeó, -ère, sédí, sessum, intr.,
sit, remain.
sédès, -is, F. [sedeó], seat, dwell-
ing place, home, abode.
séditió, -ónis, F. [sé, eó], (a going
apart), dissension, insurrec-
tion, sedition; trans. pl. as
sing., Cat., I, 2.
sédó, -äre, -ávi, -átum, tr.,
(bring to rest), bring to an end,
settle, check, stop.
sédulítás, -tátis, F. [sédulus],
industry, attention.
ségregó, -äre, -ávi, -átum
[gregó], tr., separate, exclude.
séiungó, -iungere, -iünxi, iünc-
tum [iungō], tr., disunite, separate, disconnect.
sēlēctus, -a, -um [sēligō], singled out, selected.
sella, -ae, F., seat, work stool, chair.
semel, adv., once.
sēmen, sēminis, N. [serō, sow], seed.
seme, adv., always.
semperiternus, -a, -um [semper], everlasting, perpetual, eternal.
Semprōnius, -ī, M., Sempronius, a gentile name; see Gracchus; Sempronius, -a, -um, Sempronian.
secutor, -āris [senex], M., senator.
secutōrius, -a, -um [secutor], senatorial.
secutus, -ūs, M. [senex], Senate, see Introd. 28.
serpentus, -tūtis, F. [senex], old age.
senex, senis, adj., old, aged; as noun (App. 10), an old man.
sēnus, -ūs, M. [sentiō], feeling, senses, Ar. 7.
sententia, -ae, F. [sentiō], (way of thinking), opinion, decision, sentiment, idea, purpose; purpose, tenor, vole.
sentina, -ae, F., bilge water, dregs, refuse, rabble.
sentīō, -īre, sēnși, sēnsum, tr., feel; perceive, see, notice; think, understand, know; agree.
sepelīō, -ire, sepelīvī, sepultus, tr., bury, ruin.
sepulcrum, -ī, N. [sepelīō], (place of burial), tomb.
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, dep., follow, comply with, accede to, adopt, obey.
Sergius, -ī, M., Sergius, a gentile name; see Catilina.
sermō, -ōnis, M. [serō, join], speech, discourse, talk, remark, conversation, rumor.
sērō, adv. [sērus], late; comp. sērius, too late.
serpō, -ere, serpsī, serptum, intr., creep.
serta, -ōrum, N. [serō, entwine], garlands, chaplets.
Sertōriānus, -a, -um, of Sertorius, Sertorian.
servilis, -e [servus], of a slave, of slaves, servile.
servīō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum [servus], intr., be a slave, serve, labor for, minister to, be subject to, P. 14.
servitium, -ī, N. [servus], service, slavery; pl., slaves, Cat., IV, 2.
servītūs, -tūtis, F. [servus], slavery, servitude.
servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., make safe, save, preserve; guard, keep, protect.
servus, -i, M., slave, servant.
sēsē, see sui.
Sēstius, -i, M., Sestius, a gen-
tile name; P. Sēstius, quaes-
tor in 63 B.C.
sevērē, adv. [sevērus], severely.
sevēritās, -tātis, F. [sevērus],
strictness, severity, sternness,
rigor.
sevērus, -a, -um, serious, strict,
severely.
severitas, -tātis, F. [severus],
strictness, severity, sternness,
rigor.
severus, -a, -um, serious, strict,
severely.
sex, indecl. adj., six.
sexaginta, num. adj., sixty.
si, conj., if.
Sibyllinus, -a, -um [Sibylla, a
prophetess], Sibylline.
sic, adv., so, thus, in such a
manner.
sica, -ae, F. [secō, cut], dag-
ger.
sicarius, -i, M. [sica], assassin.
Sicilia, -ae, F., Sicily.
sic, or siciū, conj. adv. [sic +
ut], just as.
Sīgēum, -i, N., Sige'um, a prom-
ontory near Troy.
significātiō, -onis, F. [significō],
(a pointing out), expression,
sign, token.
significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [sig-
um, faciō], indicate, repre-
sent.
signum, ī, N., sign, standard,
signal; seal; statute.
Sīlānus, -ī, M., Sila'nus, a fam-
ily name; D. Iūnius Sīlānus,
consul elect in 63 B.C.
silentium, -ī, N. [silēns, still],
silence, stillness.
sileō, -ēre, -ūi, —, tr. and
intr., be silent, seek silence;
sinus, -ūs, M., fold, fold of a
toga; bosom; bay, inlet, P. 11.
sitis, sitis, F., thirst.
sive, or seu [si + ve], conj., or
if, if; sive ... sive, whether
... or, either ... or.
Smyrnaei, -orum, M., the peo-
ple of Smyrna, in Asia Mi-
nor.
sōbrius, -a, -um [sē + ēbrius],
not drunk, sober.
societás, -tātis, F. [socius], fel-
lowship, association, alliance,
Cat., I, 13.
socius, -i, M., partner, associate,
companion; ally, accomplice,
confederate.
sodālis, -is, M., F., associate,
comrade, boon companion,
table companion, crony.
sōl, sōlis, M., the sun.
sōlācium, -i, N., comfort.
soleō, -ère, solitus sum, semi-
dep., be accustomed, use.
sōlitūdō, -inis, F. [sōlus], soli-
tude, loneliness; desert, Ar. S.
sollicitātiō, -onis, F. [sollicitō],
inciting, tampering with.
sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [solli-
citus], tr., disturb, incite, in-
stigate; tamper with, solicit,
corrupt.
sollicitus, -a, -um, worried, anxi-
ous, alarmed.
solum, -i, N., soil.
sōlum [sōlus], adv., only, merely;
nōn sōlum, not only.
sōlus, -a, -um, gen. sōlius, dat.
sōlī, alone, only.
solūtiō, -onis, F. [solvō], (loos-
ing), payment.
solūtus, -a, -um [solvō], released,
lax, remiss.
solvō, -ere, solvi, solūtum, tr.,
loose, release.
somnus, -a, M., sleep, drowsi-
ness, Cat., III, 7.
sonō, -āre, -ui, -itum [sonuā],
tr., sound, utter.
sonus, -i, M., noise, sound.
soror, -ōris, F., sister.
sors, sortis, F., lot, allotment.
Sp., see Spurius.
spargō, -ere, sparsi, sparsum,
tr., scatter, sprinkle, mix.
spatium, -i, N., space (of place
or time).
speciēs, -ēī, F. [specīō], appear-
ance.
spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq.
of specīō], tr. and intr., look
at, face, see, attend; consider.
speculātor, -ōris, M. [speculor],
spy.
speculor, -ārī, -ātus sum [specu-
ula, watchtower]. dep., watch,
spy out.
spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [spēs],
tr. and intr., hope, hope for,
expect, trust.
spēs, speī, F., hope, expectation.
spīritus, -ūs, M. [spīrō, breathe],
breath, air, spirit.
splendor, -ōris, M. [splendeō,
shine], brilliancy, splendor.
spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., de-
prive, plunder.
spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., de-
prive, plunder.
spoum, -i, N., of an animal
skin, hide; pl., spoils, booty,
prey.
sponte, F. (abl. of obsolete
spōns), of one's own accord.
Spurius, -i, M., Spurius, a praenomen or personal name.

**Vocabulary**

- **Stabiliō, -ire, -ivi, -itum** [stabilis], tr., make firm, establish.
- **Statilius, -i, M.**, Statilius, a gentile name; L. Statilius, one of Catiline's conspirators.
- **Statim, adv. [stō]**, (on the spot), straightway, immediately, at once.
- **Stator, -ōris, M.** [stō], the Slayer, Defender, Protector; epithet of Jupiter.
- **Statua, -ae, F.** [stō], statue.
- **Statuō, statuere, statuī, statutum**, tr., set, set up, place, put, establish; determine, decide, resolve, conclude.
- **Status, -ūs, M.** [stō], state, condition, foundation, Cat., I, 1.
- **Stimulus, -ī, M.**, spur, stimulus, incentive.
- **Stipendium, -ī, N.** [stips, coin + pendō, pay], tax, pay; service (military), campaigning, P. 9; campaign.
- **Stirps, stirpis, F.**, stock, root; source, origin.
- **Stō, stāre, stēti, statum**, intr., stand.
- **Strēnuus, -a, -um**, vigorous, strenuous.
- **Strepitus, -ūs, M.** [strepō], noise.
- **Studeō, -ère, -uī, —, intr., strive, be eager, aim at, desire.**
- **Studiōsē, adv., eagerly, carefully.**
- **Studiōsus, -ā, -um** [studium], fond (of).
- **Studium, -ī, N.** [studeō], eagerness, zeal, desire, attachment; devotion, enthusiasm, good will, sympathy; (party) spirit; pursuit, study.
- **Stultitia, -ae, F.** [stultus], folly.
- **Stultus, -a, -um**, foolish, stupid.
- **Stuprum, -ī, N.**, defilement, impurity, debauchery; intrigue, Cat., I, 10.
- **Suādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, suāsum**, tr. and intr., advise, recommend; persuade.
- **Suāvitās, -tātis, F.** [suāvis], sweetness.
- **Sub, prep. w. acc. and abl., under.**
- **Subeō, -ire, -iī, -itum** [ēō], tr., undergo, endure.
- **Subiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum** [iaciō], tr., throw under, place under, hand up to, Ar. 10.
- **Subiector, -ōris, M.** [subiciō], forger.
- **Subigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum** [agō], tr., put down, subdue; induce.
- **Subitō, adv. [subitus]**, suddenly.
- **Sublātus, from tollō.**
- **Subsellium, -ī, N.** [sella], (low bench), bench, seat.
- **Subsidium, -ī, N.** [sum], support, aid, means; pl., sinews, P. 2.
- **Succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum** [sub + cēdō], tr. and intr., follow, succeed.
- **Sufferō, sufferre, sustuli, sublātum** [sub + ferō], tr., undergo, suffer.
- **Suffrāgium, -ī, N.** [sub, frangō], (fragment), ballot, vote.
- **Suī, sibi, sē**, reflex. pron. (App. 21), himself, herself, itself, themselves.
Sulla, -ae, M., Sulla, a family name; L. Cornelius Sulla, the famous general and dictator.

Sulpicius, -i, M., a gentile name; 1. C. Sulpicius Galba, praetor 63 B.C.; 2. P. Sulpicius Rufus, tribune 88 B.C.

sum, esse, fuī, fut. part. futūrus, irr., be.

summa, -ae, F. [sūmmus], supremacy, preeminence.

summus, -a, -um, sup. of superus, uppermost, highest; the top of; greatest, most important, most distinguished, excellent, eminent, supreme, extreme.

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsi, sūmpustum [sub + emō], tr., take, take to oneself, assume; w. supplicium, inflict.

sūmptuōsē, adv. [sumptuosus], expensively, extravagantly.

sūmptuōsus, -a, -um [sūmpitus], sumptuous; expensive.

sūmpitus, -ūs, M. [sumō], expense, cost; extravagance.

superbē, adv. [superbus], proudly, insolently, arrogantly.

superbia, -ae, F. [superbus], pride, haughtiness.

superbus, -a, -um, proud.

superior, -ius, comp. adj. [superus, App. 19], higher, upper; former, preceding, elder; superior nox, night before last.

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [superus], tr., overcome, conquer, defeat, surpass, exceed, get the upper hand.

supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus [super + sum], intr., be over, be left, remain.

superus, -a, -um [super], upper, higher.

suppedītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [sub, pēs], tr., supply, furnish.

suppetō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum [sub + petō], intr., be at hand, be in store.

supplex, -icis, adj. [sub, plicō], bending under, beseeching; as noun, a suppliant.

supplicātiō, -onis, F. [supplicō], (a public prayer), solemn thanksgiving, supplication.

supplicium, -i, N. [supplex], punishment, penalty.

suprā, adv. and prep. w. acc., above, beyond; more.

surgō, -ere, surrexi, surrectum [sub + regō], intr., arise.

suscēnseō, -ere, -ūi, — [sub + cēnseō], intr., be angry (with).

susciπo, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [sub + capiō], tr., undertake, incur, bring upon, adopt; suffer, P. 3; entertain, P. 4.

suspectus, -a, -um [part. of suspiciō], distrusted, suspected; an object of suspicion.

suspiπo, -ōnis, F. [sub + speciō, spy], suspicion.

suspiπor, -ārī, -ātus sum [suspiciō], dep., mistrust, suspect; surmise.

 sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of sustineō], tr., uphold, support; defer, put off.
sustineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tenantum [sub + teneō], tr., hold up, sustain, bear, endure, relieve.
sustulī, see tollō.
suus, -a, -um, poss. pron., his (own), her, its, their.
Syria, -ae, F., Syria, a country of Asia, on the coast of the Mediterranean.

T
T., see Titus.
tabella, -ae, F. [dim. of tabula], (little board), waxed tablet, letter, document.
taberna, -ae, F., hut, booth, shop; tavern.
tābēscō, -ere, tābui, — [tābeō], intr., pine away, languish.
tabula, -ae, F., tablet, record, account, list; painting.
tabulārium, -ī, N. [tabula], record office.
taceō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, tr. and intr., be silent, keep silence; pass over in silence, be silent about.
tacitē, adv., silently.
taciturnitās, -tātis, F. [taciturnus], silence.
tacitus, -a, -um [taceō], silent, mute, in silence.
tāctus, see tangō.
taeter, taetra, taetrum, offensive, foul; shameful, disgraceful, abominable.
tālāris, -e [tālus, ankle], of the ankles, reaching the ankles.
tālis, -e, adj., such, of such a nature.
tam, adv., so, so much.
tamen, conj. adv., yet, nevertheless, however.
tametsi, conj. [tamen + etsi], although; and yet.
tamquam, conj., just as, as if, as it were; as a sort of, Cat., IV, 2.
tandum [tam], adv., at length, finally, now; in questions and commands, pray, I ask.
tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum, tr., touch; strike, Cat., III, 8.
tantō, adv. [tantus], so much; tantō opere, so greatly, so much.
tantum, adv. [tantus], so much, so far; tantum modo, only, merely.
tantus, -a, -um, such, so great, so much; tantī, gen. of value, of such value; est tantī, it is worth while.
tardē, adv. [tardus], slowly, tardily, late.
tarditās, -tātis, F. [tardus], slowness, delay.
tardō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., delay, retard.
Tarentini, -orum, M., the inhabitants of Tarentum, in southern Italy.
tēctum, -ī, N. [tego], roof, shelter, house, home.
tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum, tr., cover, protect.
tēlum, -ī, N., missile, weapon, javelin.
temerē, adv., rashly, without cause, heedlessly.
temeritas, -tatis, F. [temerē], rashness.
temperantia, -ae, F. [temperāns], temperance, moderation, self-control, P. 13.
tempestās, -tatis, F., season, weather, storm.
tempestivus, -a, -um [tempestās], timely, seasonable, suitable; early, protracted, Ar. 6.
templum, -i, N. (in augury a place marked off by the augur’s staff), a consecrated place, temple.
temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [intens. of tendō], tr., make trial of, attempt; attack, assail, Cat., I, 10; tempt, disturb.
tempus, -oris, N., time, season; time of need; pl., the times; the needs, Cat., I, 9; ex tempore, offhand, without preparation, extempore.
tendō, -ere, tetendi, tentum, tr., stretch, stretch out.
tenebrae, -ārum, F., darkness, shades.
Tenedos (us), -ī F., Tenedos, an island in the Aegean Sea.
teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentum, tr., hold, hold fast, hold as prisoner; preserve; memoria tēnēre, remember.
tenuis, -e, slender, thin; poor, humble, insignificant.
ter, adv., three times, thrice.
Terentia, -ae, F., Terentia, wife of Cicero.
terminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [terminus], tr., limit, confine, terminate.
terminus, -ī, M., boundary line, limit.
terra, -ae, F., land, country, earth, ground.
terreō, -ere, -uī, -itum, tr., frighten, terrify.
terror, -ōris, M. [terreō], alarm, terror, scare.
tertius, -a, -um, third.
testamentum, -ī, N. [testor], a will.
testimonium, -ī, N., [testis], proof, testimony, evidence.
testis, -is, M. or F., witness.
testor, -ārī, -ātus sum [testis], dep., call to witness, invoke.
Teutonī, -ōrum, M., the Teutones, a nation of Germany.
Themistoclēs, -is (-ī), M., Themis'tocles, the celebrated Athenian.
Theopanēs, -is, M., Theo'phanes, a Greek writer of Mytilene, who accompanied Pompey in the East.
Ti., see Tiberius.
Tiberis, -is, M., the Tiber.
Tiberīnus-a-um, of the Tiber.
Tiberius, -ī, M., Tiberius, a praenomen or personal name.
Tigrānēs, -is, M., Tigra'nes, king of Armenia, son-in-law of Mithridates.
timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, tr. and intr., fear, be afraid.
timidē, adv. [timidus], timidly; reverently, P. 16.
timidus, -a, -um [timeō], timid.
timor, -ōris, M. [timeō], fear. dread, alarm.
Titus, -ī, M., Titus, a personal name.
toga, -ae, F. [tegō], toga (the citizen’s cloak or flowing robe).
togātus, -a, -um [toga], wearing the toga, in the garb of peace.
tolerābilis, -e [tolerō], endurable, tolerable.
tolerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., endure, bear.
tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, tr., lift up, exalt; take away, carry off, remove; destroy.
Tongilius, -ī, M., Tongilius, a gentile name.
Torquatus, -ī, M., Torquātus, a family name; L. Mānlius Torquātus, consul 65 B.C.
tot, indecl. adj., so many.
totiēns, adv. [tot], so often, so many times, as often.
tōtus, -a, -um (App. 13), the whole, the whole of, all, entire; adverbially, altogether, wholly.
trāctō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [freq. of trahō], tr., draw, manage, conduct, Cat., III, 12; present, Ar. 2, treat.
trādo, -ere, -didi, -ditum [trāns + dō], tr., give up, give over, surrender, deliver; hand down, transmit, leave.
trahō, -ere, trāxi, trāctum, tr. draw; influence.
trāctūlītās, -tātis, F. [trāctūlītus], stillness, tranquil state.
tranquillītus, -a, -um, calm, tranquil.
Trānsalpīnus, -a, -um, beyond the Alps, Transalpine.
trānscedō, -ere, trānscedī, trānsćensum [scandō], tr., climb over, cross.
trānsferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum [ferō], tr., bear over, carry over; transfer, remove.
trānsigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum [agō], tr. (drive through), carry through, accomplish, execute, perform.
trānsmarinus, -a, -um [marīnus], beyond the sea.
trānsmittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missum [mittō], tr., send across, transmit; devote, intrust; intr., cross over, P. 12.
trēs, tria, three.
tribūnāl, -ālis, N. [tribūnus], judgment seat, tribunal.
tribūnus, -ī, M. [tribus, tribe], tribune; see Introd. 37.
tribuō, -uere, -ui, -ūtum [tribus, tribe], tr., assign, bestow, grant, give, devote; ascribe, attribute.
trīduum, -ī, N. [trēs + diēs], three days.
triumphō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [triumphus], intr., triumph; rejoice.
triumphus, -ī, M., triumph, triumphal procession.
Trōiāni, -ōrum, M., the Trojans.
tropaeum, -ī, N. (Greek), trophy.
trucidō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum [trux, fierce + caedo], tr., cut to pieces, butcher, murder.
tū, tui, pers. pron. (App. 21), thou, you, yourself.
tuba, -ae, F., trumpet.
tueor, -ēri, tūtus (tuitus), sum, dep., look at, care for, protect, defend, uphold, preserve.
Tullia, -ae, F., Tullia, the daughter of Cicero.
Tullius, -i, M., Tullius, a gentile name; voc. Tullī.
Tullus, -i, M., Tullus, a family name; L. Volcātius Tullus, consul 66 B.C.
tum, adv., then, at that time; tum cum, at the time when; iam tum, at that very time, even then; tum . . . tum, at one time . . . at another.
tumultus, -ūs, M. [tumeō, swell], uprising, insurrection; uproar, confusion, excitement, tumult, disturbance.
tumulus, -i, M. [tumeō, swell], mound, hillock, tomb.
tunica, -ae, F., tunic, the garment worn under the toga.
turbulentus, -a, -um [turba], confused, miscellaneous.
turpis, -e, disgraceful, base, infamous, shameful.
turpiter, adv. [turpis], disgracefully, shamefully.
turpitūdō, -inis, F. [turpis], disgrace, dishonor, infamy.
tūtō, adv. [tūtus], safely, in safety, in security.
tūtor, -āri, -ātus sum [tueor], dep., protect, defend.
tūtus, -a, -um [tueor], guarded, safe, secure, in safety.
tuus, -a, -um, poss. pron., your; iste tuus, that of yours.
tyrannus, -i, M., tyrant.

U
über, -eris, N., teat, breast.
übertās, -tātis, F. [über], fertility, productiveness.
ubi, conjunctive adv., where, when.
ubinam, adv. [ubi + nam], where?
ubique, adv., anywhere.
ulciscor, -i, ultus sum, dep., take vengeance on, punish, avenge.
ūllus, -a, -um (App. 13), any.
ultimus, -a, -um, sup. adj. [ultrā, App. 19], farthest, most distant; earliest, last.
ultrā, adv., and prep. w. acc., beyond.
ultrō, adv., of one’s own accord voluntarily.
Umbrēnus, -ī, M., Umbrēnus, a family name; P. Umbrēnus, one of Catiline’s followers.
umquam, adv., ever, at any time.
ūnā, adv. [ūnus], along (with), together; at the same time, at the same place.
unde, adv., whence, from which; how, P. 14; from whom.
ūndēquīnq āgēsimus, -a, -um, forty-ninth.
undique, adv. [unde + que], from all sides, on all sides, everywhere.
unguentum, -i, N. [unguo], ointment.
ūnicē, adv. [ūnicus], singularly, greatly, especially.
ūniversus, -a, -um [ūnus +
versus], all together, whole, entire.

únus, -a, -um (App. 13), one, alone, only.

urbánus, -a, -um [urbs], of the city, in the city.

urbs, urbis, F., city, the city (i.e. Rome).

úsquam, adv., anywhere.

úsque, adv., all the way, all the time, even, constantly; see 1. quō.

úsura, -ae, F. [utor], use, enjoyment; interest, usury.

úsus, -ús, M. [útor], use, practice, experience.

ut or uti, conj. w. subjv., that, in order that, so that; after a verb of fearing, that not; w. indic., as, when, ever since; in comparisons, as; ut primum, as soon as.

uterque, utraque, utrumque [gen. utriusque; dat., utrique], adj. and pron., both, each, either.

útilis, -e [útor], useful, advantageous, expedient.

útilitās, -tātis, F. [útilis], usefulness, expediency, advantage.

utinam, adv. [uti + nam], oh that! I wish that! if only! would that.

útor, úti, úsus sum, dep., use, employ, enjoy.

utrum, interrog. conj. [uter], 1. introducing a double dir. question it has no English equivalent; correlative of an; 2. in indir. questions, whether.

uxor, -óris, F., wife.

V

vacillō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. (sway to and fro), stagger, totter.

vacuēfaciō, -facere, -fēci, -fac-tum [vacuus, + faciō], tr., make empty, clear, free, vacate.

vacuus, -a, -um [cf. vacō], empty, vacant, unoccupied, free, without.

vadimōnium, -i, N. [vas, bail], bail bond, bail, security.

vāgina, -ae, F., scabbard, sheath.

vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., wander about.

valdē, adv. [validus], completely, thoroughly, severely.

valēns, -entis [valeō], strong, powerful.

valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, intr., be strong, have power, have influence; have weight, prevail, succeed, be strong enough, be able, be eminent, Cat., III, 5; valē, farewell.

Valerius, -i, M., Valerius, a gentile name; L. Valerius Flaccus, consul w. Marius 100 B.C.

valetudō, -inis, F. [valeō], health.

validus, -a, -um [valeō], strong, vigorous.

vāllō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [vallisum], tr., intrench, fortify, defend.

varietās, -tātis, F. [varius],
variety, difference, dissent, diversity, Ar. 9.
varių, -a, -um, varied, various, versatile.
vās, vāsīs, N., vessel; plate.
vāstitās, -tātis, F. [vāstus], waste, desolation, devastation.
vāstātiō, -onis, F. [vāstō], devastation, destruction.
vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [vāstus], tr., (make empty), lay waste, ravage, destroy, devastate.
vātēs, -is, M. and F., soothsayer, prophet, seer.
-ve, conj., enclitic, or.
većtal, -ālis, N. [vehō], tax (on goods carried), revenue.
većtalīs, -e [vestigal], tributary; as noun, a tributary, tax payer.
vehemēns, -entis, adj., violent, forcible, emphatic, severe, earnest, strong, Cat., IV, 6.
vehementer, adv. [vehemēns], violently, earnestly, strongly, greatly, exceedingly, vigorously.
vel, conj. [volō], or; vel . . . vel, either . . . or; adv., even.
vēlum, -i, N., sail.
vēna, -ae, F., vein.
vēndō, -dere, -didi, -ditum [vēnum, sale, + dō], tr., sell.
venēficus, -a, -um [venēnum, faciō], poisonous; as noun, poisoner.
venēnum, -i, N., poison.
vēneō, -īre, -ii, -itum [vēnum, sale + eō], intr. (go to sale), be sold.
venēror, -āri, -ātus sum, dep., worship, adore, venerate.
venia, -ae, F., indulgence, forbearance, pardon.
veniō, -īre, vēni, ventum, intr., come.
ventus, -ī, M., wind.
venustās, -tātis, F., [venus], beauty, charm.
vēr, vēris, N., the spring.
verber, verberis, N., lash, whip; scourging.
verberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [verber], tr., scourage.
verbum, -i, N., word.
vērē, adv. [vērus], truly, rightly, really.
vereor, ārī, -ītus sum, dep., fear, arc-td.
vēritās, -tātis, F. [vērus], truth.
vērō [vērus], conjunctive adv., (in truth), in fact, indeed, really; but, however, on the other hand; iam vērō, furthermore, but now; see immō.
versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of vertō], tr., turn often, carry on (bellum); pass. as dep., move about, be employed, be engaged, be rife; be, exist, dwell, live, associate; be involved; be experienced, skilled, practiced; enjoy, Ar. 5.
versus, -ūs, M. [vertō], line, verse.
vērum, conj. [versus], but, but in truth: vērum etiam, but also, but even.
vērus, -a, -um, true, real, genuine, well-founded; proper, fitting, reasonable.
vespera, -ae, F., evening.
Vesta, -ae, F., Vesta, goddess of the hearth and household.
Vestālis, -e [Vesta], of Vesta, Vestal.
vester, -tra, -trum, poss. pron., your.
vēstigium, -i, N. [vēstīgō], footstep, track, trace, vestige; pl., Cat., IV, 6, ruins.
vēstimentum, -i, N., clothing, apparel.
vēstrum, (1) neuter of vester, (2) gen. pl. of tū.
vētō, -āre, -ūī, -ītum, tr., forbid.
vētus, vēteris, adj. (App. 16), old, long-standing, old-time, ancient.
vētustās, -tātis, F. [vētus], old age, antiquity, Ar. 6; duration, Ar. 12.
vēxātiō, -onis, F. [vēxō], harassing, troubling, distress, outrage.
vēxō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [freq. of vehō], tr., toss violently; attack, Cat., I, 11; influence, disturb, annoy, injure, harass, distress, Cat., I, 10.
via. -ae, F., road, way, course.
vibrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., brandish.
vīcēsimus, -a, -um, ordinal adj., twentieth.
vīcinus, -a, -um [vīcus], neighboring; as noun, neighbor.
victor, -ōris, M. [vincō], victor, conqueror; as adj., victorious, P. 9.
vīctoriā, -ae, F. [victor], victory.
vicus, -i, M., village.
vidēlicet, adv. [vidēre, licet], (one may see), clearly, evidently, in truth; (w. irony), of course, forsooth, Cat., I, 8.
vīdeo, -ēre, vīdī, visum, tr., see; pass., be seen, seem, seem good, seem best.
vigilāns, -antis, adj. [vigilō], watchful, vigilant, of active mind.
vigilia, -ae, F. [vigil, awake], a watching, watch (a fourth part of the night); wakeful night, Ar. 11; want of sleep; pl., the watch, watchmen, sentinels.
vigilō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [vigil, watchful], tr. and intr., watch, keep awake; watch for.
vīlis, -e, of little value, cheap.
vilitās, -tātis, F. [vīlis], cheapness.
villa, -ae, F. country-seat, villa, farm.
vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum, tr., conquer.
vinculum, -i, N. [vinciō], bond. chain, tie; pl., imprisonment; in vincula ducere, cast into prison.
vindex, -ics, M. and F., avenger, punisher.
vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [vindex], tr., lay claim to, demand, claim; punish; defend.
vīnum, -i, N., wine.
vīlo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [vis], tr., treat with violence, injure, attack, dishonor.
vir, viri, M., man (opp. mulier).
vīrgō, -inis, F., maid, maiden, virgin.
virtūs, -tūtis, F. [vir], (manliness), bravery, courage, valor; virtue, character, spirit, excellence, merit, ability.
vis, vis, F. (App. 10), force, strength, power, violence; amount; pl., virēs, strength, vigor, force.
vīscera, -um, N., pl., vītals, vital organs.
visō, -ere, vīsī, vīsum [freq. of video], tr., look at, witness; go to see, visit.
vīta, -ae, F., life.
vītium, -ī, N., fault, vice, offense.
vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., avoid, escape, evade.
vītuperātiō, -onis, F. [vītuperō], charge, reproach.
vīvō, -ere, vīxi, vīctum, intr., live.
vīvus, -a, -um [vīvō], alive, living.
vīx, adv., with difficulty, scarcely, hardly.
vīxdum, adv., scarcely yet, scarcely.
vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., call, . summon, bring.
volitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [volō, fly], hover about, flīt about.
volō, velle, volui (App. 48), tr. and intr., be willing, wish, desire, intend, mean, determine.
Volturcius, -ī, M., Volturcius, one of Catiline's confederates.
voluntās, -tātis, F. [volō], will-i-.ness, consent, will, good will, wish, desire, purpose, inclination.
voluptās, -tātis, F. [volō], pleasure, delight.
vōsmet, emphatic form of vōs.
vōtum, -ī, N. [vōveō], vow.
vōx, vōcis, F., voice, speech, utterance, word, saying.
vulgō, adv. [vulgus], commonly, generally.
vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [vulnus], tr., wound, injure.
vulnus, vulneris, N., wound; distress.
vultus, -ūs, M., the expression of the countenance, looks; the face.
INDEX

To the Grammatical Appendix and the Latin Prose Composition

(The numbers refer to pages.)

A

ā, ab, denoting separation, 320; place from which, 320; source, 320; agency, 320.
Ablative case, uses of, 320–322.
absolute, 322.
of accompaniment, 321.
of accordance, 322.
of agent, 320.
of attendant circumstance, 321.
of cause, 321.
of comparison, 320.
of degree of difference, 321.
of description, 321.
of manner, 321.
of material, 320.
of means, 321.
of place from which, 320; in which, 322.
of plenty or want, 322.
of route, 321.
of separation, 320.
of source, 320.
of specification, 321.
of time when or within which, 322.
with dignus, etc., 322.
with opus, usus, 322.
with prepositions, 342.
with utor, etc., 321.
Accusative case, uses of, 318–320.
adverbial, 319.

Accusative case, as direct object, 318.
as predicate accusative, 319.
as secondary object, 318.
as subject of infinitive, 319.
cognate, 319.
of duration of time, 319.
of exclamation, 320.
of extent of space, 319.
of place to which, 319.
with ask, demand, teach, 318.
with prepositions, 319.
with propior, proximus, 319.
Adjectives, agreement of, 323.
attributive, 323.
compared, 290.
of 1st and 2d declension, 288.
of 3d declension, 289.
predicate, 323.
uses of, 323.
Adverbs, comparison, 291; formation, 312; uses, 342.
Agreement, of nouns, 314; of adjectives, 323; of pronouns, 323; of verbs, 327.
alis, alter, 288, 326.
amplius, in comparisons, 321.
Anaphora, 344.
Answers, 314.
Antecedent, of relative pronoun, 325.
antequam, with temporal clauses, 333.
Antithesis, 344.
Apposition, 314.
Asyndeton, 344.
Attraction, subjunctive by, 335.

B
Base, of noun, 284.

C
Calendar, Roman, 345.
causā, with genitive, 343.
Causal clauses, 331, 333, 387.
Characteristic, clauses of, 331.
Chiasmus, 344.
Climax, 344.
Cognate accusative, 319.
Comparison, clauses of, 330.
Comparison of adjectives, 290.
of adverbs, 291.
Concessive clauses, 331, 333, 387.
Conditional sentences, 331, 334, 352, 354; in indirect discourse, 339.
Conjugations, 294–308.
Conjunctions classified, 342.
cum (conj.), causal, 333; concessive, 334; temporal, 332.
cum (prep.), denoting accompaniment, 321; manner, 321; sometimes omitted, 321.
cum primum, with indicative, 332.

dé, denoting place from which, separation, 320.
dēbeō, oportet, etc., with pres. inf., 337, 351.
Declension, 284–290.
Defective verbs, 307.
Deliberative question, 335.
Demonstrative pronouns, 292, 324.
Deponent verbs, 301.
Determinative clauses, 377.
Direct object, 318.
Direct reflexive, 324.
domi, 322; domō, 320; domum, 319.
dum, uses of, 328, 333, 335.

E
ē, ex, denoting place from which, separation, 320.
Emphasis, 343.
enim, position, 343.
eō, conjugated, 305.
Epistolary tenses, 329.
Ethical dative, 318.
etsi, with concessive clauses, 334.
Exhortations, 330.

F
Fearing, verbs of, with ut, nē, 336, 379.
ferō, conjugated, 305.
Fifth declension, 287.
Figures of speech, 344.
fio, conjugated, 304.
First conjugation, 294; declension, 284.
Formation of words, 308–313.
Fourth conjugation, 299; declension, 286.
Future perfect, 328.
Future tense, 328.
Genitive case, uses of, 315.
  objective, 315, 362.
  of description, 315.
  of indefinite value, 317.
  of material, 315.
  of the whole, 316.
  possessive, 315.
  subjective, 315, 362.
  with adjectives, 316.
  with verbs of accusing, feeling, interest, memory, 316.
  with potior, 316.
Gerund, gerundive, uses of, 340, 341.
Greek nouns, 287.

Hendiadys, 344.
Historical infinitive, 337.
Historical tenses, 329.

I
iam diū, iam dūdum, 375.
Imperative, uses of, 336.
Imperfect tense, 328.
imperō, with subjunctive, 336.
Impersonal verbs, 308, 327.
Indefinite pronouns, 293, 326.
Indicative, uses of, 330.
Indicative noun clauses, 335.
Indirect discourse, 338.
Indirect questions, 335.
Indirect reflexive, 324.
Infinitive, uses of, 337.
Infinitive noun clauses, 336.
Informal indirect discourse, 339.
Intensive pronoun, 293, 325.
Interrogative pronouns, 293, 326.
Irony, 344.
iūbeō, with infinitive, 337.

L
licet, conjugated, 308; how used, 351.
Litotes, 344.
Locative case, 322.
longius, in comparisons, 321.

M
mālo, conjugated, 306.
memini, conjugated, 307.
Metaphor, 344.
Metonymy, 344.

N
Names of persons, 345.
nē, with purpose clauses, 332; with noun clauses, 336, 382.
Negative adverbs, 342, 349.
Negative command, 337.
nesciō quis, 326.
nōlo, conjugated, 306.
Nominative case, uses of, 315.
Noun clauses, 330, 335.
Nouns, declension of, 284–287.

O
Obligation, subjunctive of, 332.
ōdi, conjugated, 307.
opportet, use of, 351.
opus, with ablative, 322.
Order of words, 343.

P
Participles, defined, 340; uses of, 340.
Perfect tense, 328.
Periodic style, 343.
Periphrastic conjugations, 301.
Personal pronouns, 291, 323.
Place, expressions of, 319, 320, 322.
Pluperfect tense, 328.
plus, in comparisons, 321.
Polysyndeton, 344.
Possession, 366.
Possessive pronouns, 292, 324.
possum, conjugated, 304; how used, 351.
postquam, with temporal clauses, 332.
Potential use of the subjunctive, 330.
potior, with genitive, 316; with ablative, 322.
Predicate, accusative, 319; genitive, 317; noun, 315.
Prefixes, 313.
Prepositions, with accusative, 342; with ablative, 342.
Present tense, 327.
Preterition, 344.
Primary tenses, 329.
priusquam, with temporal clauses, 333.
Prohibitions, 337.
Pronouns, declined, 291–294; uses of, 323–326; in indirect discourse, 339.
propior, proximus, etc., with accusative, 319.
proprius with genitive, 318.
Proviso, clauses of, 335.
Purpose clauses, 331, 332; expressions of purpose, 332.

Q
quam, with comparatives, 321.
quamquam, with concessive clauses, 334.
Questions, direct, 313, 346; de-
liberative, 335; double, 314; indirect, 335, 355.
qui, with indicative, 331; with subjunctive, 331, 332.
quin, quominus, with noun clauses, 336, 382.
quō, with purpose clauses, 332.
quod, with causal clauses, 333; with noun clauses, 335.

R
Reflexive pronouns, 291, 324.
Relative clauses, 331, 377.
Relative pronoun, 293, 325.
Result clauses, 332.
Rhetorical questions, 314.
Root, 308.

S
Second conjugation, 297; declension, 284.
Secondary object, 318; tenses, 329.
Semi-deponent verbs, 302.
Sequence of tenses, 329.
Stem, 284, 308.
Subject, of finite verb, 315; of infinitive, 319; of historical infinitive, 315.
Subjunctive, uses of, 330, 331, 349; by attraction, 335; in noun clauses, 335.
Substantive clauses, see Noun clauses.
Suffixes, 309–311.
sum, conjugated, 302.
Supine, uses of, 341.
Syntax, 313–343.

T
Temporal clauses, 332, 385.
Tenses, of indicative, 327; of infinitive, 337; of subjunc-
tive, 329; in indirect discourse, 338.
Third conjugation, 298, 299; declension, 285.
Time, when, within which, 322; during which, 319.

U
ubi, with temporal clauses, 332.
ut, with noun clauses, 336; with purpose clauses, 332; with result clauses, 332; with temporal clauses, 332.
útor, with ablative, 321.

V
Verbs, conjugated, 294–308; uses of, 327–341; agreement, 327; derivation, 311.
Vocative case, 315.
volō, conjugated, 306.

W
Wish, subjunctive of, 330.
Word, order, 343.

Z
Zeugma, 344.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LOAN PERIOD</th>
<th>1 MONTH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ALL BOOKS MAY BE RECALLED AFTER 7 DAYS
2-hour books must be renewed in person
Return to desk from which borrowed

DUE AS STAMPED BELOW

MAR 2 1979

Rec'd APR 4 79 - c Pim

MAY 01 2006